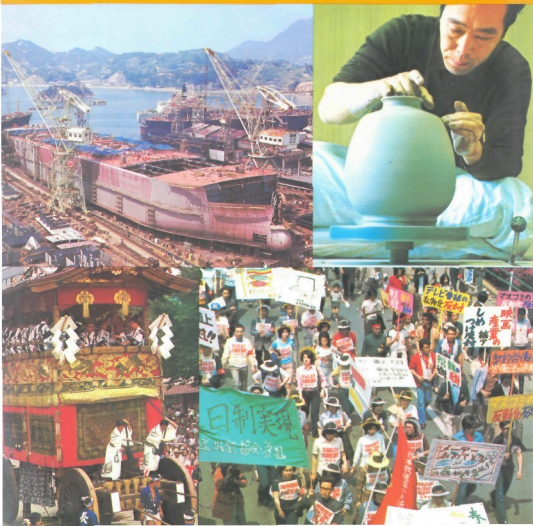


This textbook may not be reproduced in whole or part in any way for any purpose whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher.

374 221

ISBN4-05-151308-4 C0081 P3600E



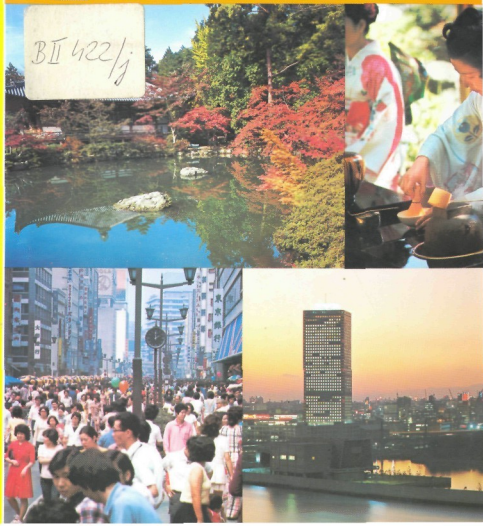
JAPANESE FOR TODAY

GAKKEN

# JAPANESE FOR TODAY

あたらしい日本語

 Gakken



## JAPANESE FOR TODAY

"It seems clear to me that keen and competent students will everywhere welcome such a fine textbook."

(John B. Hanson-Lowe in *The Japan Times*)

"For foreign students... who wish to acquire an everyday-life conversational proficiency as well as the ability to read Japanese, JAPANESE FOR TODAY... is just the thing."

(*Asahi Evening News*)

"If you're in the market for a language course to do at your own speed—check out Gakken's latest."

(Paul Bryant in *Mainichi Daily News*)

"...undoubtedly one of the best Japanese language texts on the market and probably the easiest to use of any basic text now available."

(John McCaleb in *The Daily Yomiuri*)

This new text has been developed by specialists at the Special Intensive Course in Japanese for Foreign Students of the Osaka University of Foreign Studies, one of Japan's leading centers for language research.

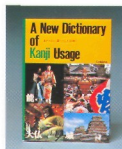
This comprehensive approach based upon long years of practical experience lays the foundations for active participation in Japanese life. The student who completes this course will have a firm grasp on contemporary written and spoken Japanese and will be able to conduct intelligent conversations as well as daily trivia.

The thirty lessons and eight tapes work together as an integrated whole to introduce the many diverse aspects of Japan today in "living" language.

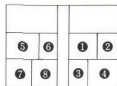
¥3,600 (in Japan) 日本国内定価 3,600円  
(本体 3,496円)

## A NEW DICTIONARY OF KANJI USAGE

Designed especially for the foreign student, this dictionary gives pronunciations, meanings, variant writings, syntactic functions, and 12,500 usage examples for the 2,000 most-important *kanji* arranged in order of modern usage frequency and cross-indexed by readings, English meanings, and stroke count for added convenience. Profuse notes make this an encyclopedic reference work for every student of Japanese language and culture.



This hardbound 504-page 21.6×15 cm (8½×6") book includes nearly 80 pages of indices and reference material.



### Captions:

1 Autumn in Japan (Daigo-ji) 2 Outside tea ceremony (courtesy of DANDY PHOTO) 3 Pedestrian mall 4 Evening skyline in Tokyo (BONCOLOR PHOTO AGENCY) 5 Shipbuilding yard 6 Potter at work 7 Kyoto's Gion Festival 8 May Day demonstration

Gakken Co., Ltd./Publishers  
Tokyo, Japan

Printed in Japan

# Japanese Syllabary Chart

Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana
a	あ	ア	ka	か	カ	sa	さ	サ	ta	た	タ	na	な	ナ	ha		
i	い	イ	ki	き	キ	shi	し	シ	chi	ち	チ	ni	に	ニ	hi		
u	う	ウ	ku	く	ク	su	す	ス	tsu	つ	ツ	nu	ぬ	ヌ	fu		
e	え	エ	ke	け	ケ	se	せ	セ	te	て	テ	ne	ね	ネ	he		
o	お	オ	ko	こ	コ	so	そ	ソ	to	と	ト	no	の	ノ	ho		
ya	や	ヤ	kya	きゃ	キャ	sha	しゃ	シャ	cha	ちゃ	チャ	nya	にゃ	ニャ	hya		
yu	ゆ	ユ	kyu	きゅ	キュ	shu	しゅ	シュ	chu	ちゅ	チュ	nyu	にゅ	ニュ	hyu		
yo	よ	ヨ	kyo	きょ	キョ	sho	しょ	ショ	cho	ちょ	チョ	nyo	にょ	ニョ	hyo		

Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	Rōma-ji	Hira-gana	Kata-kana	
は	ハ		ma	ま	マ	ra	ら	ラ	wa	わ	ワ	n	ん	ン
ひ	ヒ		mi	み	ミ	ri	り	リ						
ふ	フ		mu	む	ム	ru	る	ル						
へ	ヘ		me	め	メ	re	れ	レ						
ほ	ホ		mo	も	モ	ro	ろ	ロ	o	を	ヲ			
ひゃ	ヒャ		mya	みゃ	ミャ	rya	りゃ	リャ						
ひゅ	ヒュ		myu	みゅ	ミュ	ryu	りゅ	リュ						
ひょ	ヒョ		myo	みょ	ミョ	ryo	りょ	リョ						

	ga	が	ガ	za	ざ	ザ	da	だ	ダ			ba	ば	バ	pa	ぱ	パ
	gi	ぎ	ギ	ji	じ	ジ	ji	ぢ	ヂ			bi	び	ビ	pi	ぴ	ピ
	gu	ぐ	グ	zu	ず	ズ	zu	づ	ヅ			bu	ぶ	ブ	pu	ぷ	プ
	ge	げ	ゲ	ze	ぜ	ゼ	de	で	デ			be	べ	ベ	pe	ぺ	ペ
	go	ご	ゴ	zo	ぞ	ゾ	do	ど	ド			bo	ぼ	ボ	po	ぽ	ポ
	gya	ぎゃ	ギャ	ja	じゃ	ジャ						bya	びゃ	ビャ	pya	ぴゃ	ピャ
	gyu	ぎゅ	ギュ	ju	じゅ	ジュ						byu	びゅ	ビュ	pyu	ぴゅ	ピュ
	gyo	ぎょ	ギョ	jo	じょ	ジョ						byo	びょ	ビョ	pyo	ぴょ	ピョ

## Notes to the chart:

- This chart is also a nearly complete table of current Japanese syllable sounds, as well as an indispensable aid used by native-speaker students of the language studying traditional Japanese grammar.
- This chart is important in assisting the student using dictionaries and encyclopedias, since their entries are all in this same syllabic "alphabetical" order of the top five sounds, with the one exception that the ya group comes between the ma group and the ra group, and the finding of an entry is extremely chancy unless the student has memorized this order.
- Although ぢ(ヂ) and づ(ヅ) have the same sound values as じ(ジ) and ず(ズ) respectively, writing conventions limit their use to the following situations.

- (a) The euphonic change in the initial consonant of the second element in a compound word, as when はな and ち join to make はなぢ (nosebleed) or ゆう and つき join to make ゆうづき (evening moon).
- (b) Repetition of the same sound, as in ちぢみ (crêpe) or つづく (to continue).
- The "h" in the ha and hya groups is thought to have been a "p" in proto-Japanese. Because of this, the Japanese "h" frequently changes to a "b" or a "p," this last being given the special name of semi-sonant. Examples are in counting cylindrical things, which begins (1) ip-pon, (2) ni-hon, and (3) san-bon, or in combining stone (ishi) with bridge (hashi) to make a stone bridge (ishi-bashi).
- For reference, please see the relevant sections of the Introduction.

## Organization of the Lessons

Each of the thirty lessons consists of the following sections (twelve pages).

- Presentation** (1st & 2nd pages): The presentation of new sentence patterns in general spoken Japanese. This is mostly in the normal polite style, except in the monolog parts where the plain style is used. The instructor is strongly urged to present the patterns orally, using whatever visual aids are available, and *not* to bring a lesson by just having the student read the presentation.  
The romanized version of the Presentation is given on the 3rd page and the English translation on the 4th page.
- Grammatical explanations** for self-study or review (5th & 6th pages).
- Exercises** (7th & 8th pages): These exercises should also be conducted orally. Model answers to the Exercise questions are given on the 4th page.
- Conversation** (9th & 10th pages): This section introduces a variety of colloquial expressions, conversational phrases, and familiar and polite styles used between people in various relationships and situations. The English translation (on the inner sides of the pages) is not a word-by-word or sentence-by-sentence translation, but is intended to give the meaning of the total conversation.
- Reading** (11th page): This introduces Japanese as it is written. Beginning with Lesson 8, the normal written style is used, although phrases are separated with spaces until Lesson 20 to make it easier for the beginner to read. Here too, the English translation is to give the sense of the passage (12th page).

All new words are footnoted as they appear in each section. Verbs and Adjectives are given in their dictionary forms.

## Abbreviations and Notations:

N	Noun	Adv	Adverb
Nv	Nouns which can be used as Verb bases e.g. benkyō (Nv) → 'study' —(benkyō-suru) (V) 'to study'	P	Particle
Na	'na Adjective'	Conj	Conjunction
A	'i Adjective' (All A's are indicated by '-i' in the footnotes.)	PreN	Prenoun
V	Verb	Pref.	Prefix
Vi	Intransitive Verb	Suf.	Suffix
Vt	Transitive Verb (which takes a Direct Object) (A Verb is specified as Vi or Vt only when it has a formally related counterpart: e.g. hajimaru (Vi) 'begin'; hajimeru (Vt) 'begin')	Count.	Counter (See § 14)
--u	1st Group Verb (See § 42)	onomat	Onomatopoeic words
--ru	2nd Group Verb (See § 42)	Cph	Conversational phrase
		(m)	male
		(f)	female
		NB	( <i>nota bene</i> ) Note well.
		Ex. or e.g.	example
		cf.	related expressions
		=	synonyms, or variants of the same word
		←	derived from
		/	or

## CONTENTS

Introduction	5
第1課 これはさくらです。 § 1 N wa N desu. § 2 kore, sore, are, dore § 3 nan, dare, doko § 4 N no N Conversation: KONNICHI WA! Reading: ひらがな—1	10
第2課 わたしたちの工場 § 5 kono, sono, etc. § 6 N wa Adj desu. § 7 Adj+N § 8 konna, sonna, etc. § 9 konna-ni, sonna-ni, etc.; kō, sō, etc. § 10 Adv § 11 ne, yo Conversation: KOKO WA DOKO? Reading: ひらがな—2	22
第3課 へやの中 § 12 arimasu, imasu § 13 ue, shita, etc. § 14 How to count § 15 N to/ya N Conversation: ANATA NO SHUMI WA? Reading: カタカナ	34
第4課 わたし的一天 § 16 V-masu § 17 o § 18 ni § 19 e § 20 kara, made § 21 de § 22 Conj § 23 goro, hodo, gurai Conversation: IKURA? Reading: あなたとわたし	46
第5課 食堂 § 24 V-mashita § 25 Adv § 26 o § 27 ni § 28 o § 29 de § 30 V (Conj) as N Conversation: TSUKAREMASU! Reading: 日本	58
第6課 ハイキング § 31 N deshita § 32 A-katta desu § 33 to § 34 ...ni ikimasu § 35 Two uses of Adj § 36 ga, kara Conversation: OMOSHIROKATTA? Reading: 日本の行事—1	70
第7課 公園 § 37 V-te-imasu § 38 V-te, ... § 39 V-tari § 40 V-te kara Conversation: GOMEN-KUDASAI Reading: 日本の行事—2	82
第8課 夏休みの日記 § 41 Polite vs. Plain style § 42 Conjugation of V (1st, 2nd, & 3rd Groups) Conversation: GENKI KAI? Reading: 日本の着物	94
第9課 町の中 § 43 N o/V-te Kudasai. § 44 -nasai § 45 -nakereba narimasen § 46 -tewa ikemasen § 47 -temo ii desu § 48 -ta hō ga ii desu § 49 -mashō (ka?) Conversation: OISHII! Reading: 産業—1	106
第10課 夏の手紙 § 50 ...toki § 51 ...aida § 52 V-nagara § 53 V-ta mama § 54 A-kute, etc. Conversation: II TENKI DESU NE Reading: 日本の歴史—1	118
第11課 教室で § 55 ...to iimasu § 56 ...to omoimasu § 57 X o Y to iimasu § 58 Y to iu X Conversation: SHUPPATSU-SHIMASU Reading: マスコット	130
第12課 東京・京都・大阪 § 59 Comparative § 60 Superlative § 61 de (Scope) § 62 onaji, hodo, bai, etc. Conversation: RYOKAN WA ARIMASU KA? Reading: 教育	142
第13課 日本語の勉強 § 63 hoshii desu, V-tai desu § 64 suki/kirai desu § 65 ...no, wa, kai?, dai? Conversation: DŌ SHIMASHITA? Reading: 手紙	154
第14課 姉と音楽 § 66 dekimasu, jōzu/heta/tokui/nigate desu § 67 V (Dict. form)+koto Conversation: § 1 = ¥? Reading: 産業—2	166

第15課	ドライブ	178
§ 68 N wa/niwa N ga arimasu § 69 V-ta koto ga arimasu § 70 N wa N ga Adj Conversation: ODOROKIMASHITA! Reading: 日本の文字		
第16課	老人問題	190
§ 71 V-(r)areru (Passive) § 72 V-(s)aseru (Causative) Conversation: KARA-TEREBI? Reading: 日本の歴史—2		
第17課	結婚式	202
§ 73 ageru, morau, kureru (Giving and Receiving) § 74 V-te-agemasu, etc. Conversation: KIREI DESU NE! Reading: 日本人		
第18課	論文を書く	214
Will, Intent: § 75 V-masu § 76 V (ô/yô) to omoimasu § 77 tsumori § 78 Summary Conversation: HIKKOSU TSUMORI Reading: 日本の文学—1		
第19課	彼のこと	226
§ 79 ...deshô § 80 ...kamo shiremasen § 81 ...ni chigai arimasen Conversation: DÔZO KOCHIRA E Reading: 経済生活		
第20課	わたしのふるさと	238
§ 82 Potential forms § 83 Spontaneous forms Conversation: SOROIIMASHITA KA? Reading: 日本の芸能		
第21課	久しぶりの訪問	250
§ 84 V-te-aru § 85 V-te-oku § 86 V-te-iku § 87 V-te-kuru § 88 V-te-shimau § 89 V-te-miru Conversation: NOKOSHITE-OKITAI Reading: 企業		
第22課	冬の手紙	262
§ 90 A-ku/Na-ni (Adv) § 91 A-ku as N § 92 Onomatopoeia § 93 Idiomatic onomatopoeia Conversation: AME GA YAMIMASHITA Reading: 都市問題		
第23課	文章	274
Conditionals: § 94 -tara § 95 -reba § 96 -to § 97 Comparison Conversation: JIKO GA OKOREBA... Reading: 日本の芸術		
第24課	広告・宣伝・コマーシャル	286
§ 98 Sentence as a Noun modifier § 99 ... (ka dô) ka... Conversation: MOKUTEKI WA? Reading: 公害		
第25課	映画を見る	298
§ 100 Use of koto § 101 Use of no Conversation: MOSHI-MOSHI Reading: 日本の歴史—3		
第26課	ステレオを買う	310
§ 102 tokoro § 103 tame § 104 hodo § 105 tôri § 106 -tte Conversation: WASSHOI, WASSHOI! Reading: 日本の政治		
第27課	魚つり	322
§ 107 hazu § 108 wake § 109 noni Conversation: IRASSHAIMASE Reading: 日本の文学—2		
第28課	日本研究	334
§ 110 (furi)-sô desu § 111 (furu) sô desu § 112 rashii § 113 yô Conversation: GO-SHINPAI NE... Reading: 日本の宗教		
第29課	後悔	346
§ 114 (ki, etc.) ga suru § 115 (katachi, etc.) o shite-iru § 116 Omission § 117 N wa N desu (Condensed Predicate) Conversation: YORU NI NARUTO... Reading: 日本の文学—3		
第30課	先生への電話	358
§ 118 Honorific forms § 119 Humble forms § 120 Additional remark Conversation: MOCHIRON YOROKONDE... Reading: はぎの露—源氏物語から—		
Appendix		370
	Index	374

## INTRODUCTION

### I. Pronunciation

#### 1. Syllables

Japanese syllables are "open syllables" and almost always end in a vowel. Thus "hana" is syllabicated as ha-na, and "paipu" as pa-i-pu. At the same time, the language is also isochronous so that all syllables are the same sound duration. In all, there are seven kinds of syllables divisible into two groups.

Group	Kind	Example
i. General	i-i Consonant + vowel (most common)	"ka"
	i-ii Consonant + semi-vowel + vowel	"kya"
	i-iii Semi-vowel + vowel	"yu" or "wa"
	i-iv Vowel	"a"
ii. Special (Syllabics)	ii-i Special nasal syllabic	"N" of "saN"
	ii-ii Unpronounced consonant	"Q" of "iQpon"
	ii-iii Special syllabic for the second syllable of an extended vowel	"V" of "okaVsan"

Special mention should be made, however, that i-ii takes only "y" as its semi-vowel and only "a," "o," or "u" as its vowel, while in i-i "t" and "d" appear only before "e," "a," or "o." The syllabics of Group ii can never be pronounced alone, occurring only within or at the end of multisyllabic words and never at the beginning of a word.

#### 2. Sounds

Contemporary Japanese phonemes include 14 consonants, 2 semi-vowels, and 5 vowels.

- i) Consonants: k, g; p, b; t, d; c, z; s; r; h; m, n, ŋ
- ii) Semi-vowels: y, w
- iii) Vowels: a, e, i, o, u

These are pronounced as shown below.

#### (A) Letters (representing consonants)

- b [b]  
 ch [tʃ] as in the English "choice"  
 d [d]  
 f a bi-labial voiceless fricative, not the English labio-dental fricative, used only in "fu"  
 g [g] when it begins a word and [ŋ] when it is not the initial letter  
 h [h], but this always becomes "f" before the vowel "u"  
 j as in the English "join"  
 k [k]

- m [m] and always followed by a vowel  
 n the common nasal [n] and [m] before [p], [b], or [m] and the syllabic "N" as in "Ki-n-e-n"  
 p [p]  
 r a sound peculiar to Japanese pronounced with the tip of the tongue moving midway in the mouth but not rolled. If the tongue is given slightly more tension, this sound easily becomes "d." It is like neither "r" nor "l" in English but is sort of between the two, like the Spanish "r" in "pero."  
 s [s] although this is written "sh" before the vowel "i"  
 sh like the English "sh" unstressed  
 t [t]  
 ts like the English voiceless affricate [ts] as in "cats" and always followed by the vowel "u"  
 z the voiced affricate [dz] as in the English "words" and not the "z" of the English "zoo"

NB: Unvoiced consonants usually change to voiced when they come at the beginning of the second element of compound words. In such cases, "h" often changes to "p" or "b." Ex. "yama" + "sakura" → "yama-zakura"; "ishi" + "hashi" → "ishi-bashi"

(B) Letters (representing semi-vowels)

- w [w] and always followed by the vowel "a"  
 y as in the English "yard"

(C) Letters (representing vowels)

- a as in the English "father"  
 e as in the French "être"  
 i as in the English "see"  
 o as in the English "comb"  
 u as in the English "doodling" but of shorter duration

### 3. Syllabics

"N," "Q," and "V" are called "syllabics" because they constitute syllables even though they are not vowels.

- i) "N" is a special nasal sound written as "n" as in "pa-n" and "sa-n-po."
- ii) "Q" is the special one-syllable pause represented in Japanese *kana* by the small っ or っ. In romanization, this is usually shown by doubling the consonant which follows it, as in "Nippon" and "kitte."
- iii) "V" is the second syllable of a prolonged or extended vowel. In Japanese, vowels can be either long or short, although this is not in the same sense as English "long" and "short" vowels. Rather, Japanese long vowels are double-length, two-syllable vowels, such as in To-o-kyo-o or hi-i-ta. These long vowels are indicated either by putting a line over the vowel (Tōkyō) or by writing the vowel twice (hiita).

### 4. Devocalization of Vowels

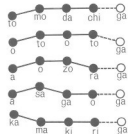
After a voiceless sound or between two voiceless sounds, the inaccentuated and narrow vowels "i" and "u" become voiceless, being pronounced very weakly as in "kusā," "hitō" and "āki."

### 5. Accent

The Japanese language has pitch accent, or musical accent, which is quite different from the stress accent in English, German, and other European languages, as well as some Asian languages. While stress accent pronounces the syllable louder, Japanese pitch accent pronounces the accentuated syllable of an independent word (not the particles or auxiliary verbs) at a higher pitch than the other syllables. In addition, the accentuated syllable should be pronounced at the same pitch throughout.

As a rule, n-syllable words can be accented in n+1 ways. For example, Japanese words of four syllables can be classified into five types according to accent pattern.

- i. low-high-high-high followed by high
- ii. low-high-high-high followed by low
- iii. low-high-high-low followed by low
- iv. low-high-low-low followed by low
- v. high-low-low-low followed by low



Each word has only one accent summit, although the location of this peak depends upon the word.

Japanese accent today functions more to show the unity of words than to distinguish the meanings of words which sound the same (homonyms).

## II. Writing

### I. General

i) Orthography in the European sense of the term is virtually non-existent in Japan, and there is very little effort made to adhere to any set standard. Thus "norikumi-in" (crew member) may be written のりくみいん, 乗り組み員, 乗組員, のりくみ員, or 乗組み員 and all are accepted as correct, each with its own rationale. Nevertheless, there is a clearly discernible trend toward orthography and the schools teach 乗組員 as "standard." Regardless, there is still little popular concern with orthography and it would be incorrect to brand different writings of the same word as deviant or erroneous.

ii) This neglect of orthography comes from the fact that Japanese everyday writing uses a combination of *kanji* and *kana* (*hiragana* and *katakana*) with even some foreign writing occasionally mixed in.

Because the early Japanese encountered great difficulties in trying to express perfectly their polysyllabic Japanese language with Chinese-origin *kanji*, at once ideographic and phonetic, they devised *kanji* cursive forms (*hiragana*) and abbreviations (*katakana*) as phonetic symbols suited to the open-syllable Japanese. In so doing, *kanji* was retained primarily for the semantemes (such as the word roots

and stems) while the *kana* phonetics were used mainly for such morphemes as endings, derivated parts, fixations, and particles.

For example, 起きる and 起こす have the same 起 *kanji* stems but differ in their *kana* endings, the former being "okiru" meaning to get up (Vi) and the latter "okosu" meaning to wake (Vt). By the same token, the *kanji* 上 meaning "up" is used in 上がる (ascend), 上げる (raise), and 上る (climb).

iii) There is no established custom of separating words and/or phrases in writing.

iv) There is no system of capital letters and small letters.

v) Although the European style of writing horizontally from left to right, top to bottom, has recently come into partial use, the traditional form is still to write vertically from top to bottom, right to left.

## 2. Kanji

i) Although there are said to be some 48,000 *kanji* characters in existence, only about 5,000 to 10,000 are commonly used. After World War II, the Japanese Government designated 1,850 basic characters as "Toyo *kanji*" and these are the only ones used in textbooks and official writings. Of these 1,850 *Toyo kanji*, 996 particularly basic characters have been selected for inclusion in the elementary school curriculum. Including these, this text uses the approximately 1,000 most commonly used characters according to recent statistical surveys.

ii) Each *kanji* usually has at least two readings. One is the "on" reading adapted from the ancient Chinese pronunciation and the other is the "kun" reading of the character's meaning in Japanese. It also frequently happens that a *kanji* has two or more "on" readings and/or "kun" readings, and thus the many different readings that may be given for a single character are all correct.

iii) As already noted, *kanji* are used for the roots of nouns, verbs, and adjectives. Naturally enough, words borrowed from the Chinese and given their "on" readings are, in principle, written in *kanji*.

## 3. Hiragana

*Hiragana* is used for Japanese words to which *kanji* cannot be easily fitted, words of sound symbolism, endings of words which conjugate, such as verbs and adjectives, particles, auxiliary verbs, and the like. In addition, pronouns, adverbs, conjunctions, and names of plants and animals are better written in *hiragana* (such as びくびく, わたしたち, and きつね).

## 4. Katakana

Foreign words, other than *kanji*, and onomatopoeia are written in *katakana* (such as ビール and ワンワン).

## 5. Roman Script

Although Western letters are not generally used, they have come into use recently for certain words such as units of measure and abbreviations. Examples are kg, Tel, PR, CM, SOS, Yシャツ, and PCB.

## 6. Notations

- i. Sonant (ga, za, da, ba)

• This is shown by ° to the upper right of the *kana* phonetic.

ii. Semi-sonant (pa)

This is shown by ° to the upper right of the *kana* phonetic.

iii. Reduplication

a. The mark ˆ indicates repetition of one syllabary.

b. The mark ˆ indicates repetition of the *kanji* character.

## III. Romanization

1. The romanization system adopted for transliteration in this text is the *Hyojun-shiki* (standard system), which is an adaptation of the Hepburn system.

2. The system used here has the following features.

i. Prolonged vowels are indicated by an ˉ over the vowel. However, the long "e" in all Chinese-origin words has been written "ei" and the long "i" of Japanese words as "ii."

ii. The syllabic "Q" has been shown by doubling the consonantal letter of words, such as in *kitte* (stamp) and *kippu* (ticket). However, the doubling of "ch," "sh," and "ts" have been written as "tch," "ssh," and "tts" respectively.

iii. The syllabic "N" has been consistently shown by "n" regardless of its actual sound value in the word.

iv. The hyphen has been adopted mainly to show the word structure of compound words.

## IV. Outline of the Sentence Structure

1. Although the sentence structure of Japanese is strikingly different from that of English, most of the "Content words" that make up a sentence can be categorized in roughly the same way as in English: Nouns (hon 'book'), Adjectives (atsui 'hot'), Verbs (yomu 'read'), Adverbs (yukkuri 'slowly'), Conjunctions, etc.

The "Function words," however, require special attention and more careful study: (1) Particles (ga, o, ni, kara), most of which are postposed to Nouns and indicate their grammatical relationships within the sentence; (2) Auxiliaries, which are postposed to Verbs or Adjectives to show negative, passive, causative, progressive, and so on.

2. The core of the sentence is the Predicate, which is always placed at the end of the sentence. Predicates are of three types: Verbal, Adjectival, and Nominal. The Nominal Predicate consists of a Noun and the Copula *desu* or its variants.

Preceding the Predicate are 'Noun+Particle' phrases which indicate Topic, Subject, Object, Location, Time, etc. These non-Predicate phrases may appear in any order and may be omitted whenever they are not necessary to understanding. When a word or a clause is modified by another word or clause, the modifier always precedes what it modifies.

3. The Predicate is inflected (conjugated) for Tense and Mood (Declarative, Imperative, Conditional, Volitional, etc.), all in at least the two styles of "Plain" and "Polite."

# 第 1 課

これは さくらです

TAPE  
No. 1  
Side 1

① これは <sup>1</sup>花<sup>2</sup>です。 <sup>3</sup>さくら<sup>4</sup>です。 <sup>5</sup>です。

それは <sup>6</sup>も<sup>7</sup>です。

あれは <sup>8</sup>ば<sup>9</sup>らです。

② これは <sup>10</sup>なん<sup>11</sup>ですか。

—それは <sup>12</sup>花<sup>13</sup>です。

それは <sup>14</sup>日本<sup>15</sup>の <sup>16</sup>花<sup>17</sup>です。

さくらの <sup>18</sup>花<sup>19</sup>です。

それも <sup>20</sup>さくら<sup>21</sup>の <sup>22</sup>花<sup>23</sup>ですか。

—はい、 <sup>24</sup>そう<sup>25</sup>です。

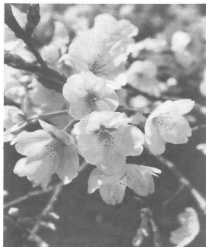
あれも <sup>26</sup>さくら<sup>27</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、 <sup>28</sup>あれは <sup>29</sup>さくら<sup>30</sup>ではありません。

あれは <sup>31</sup>ば<sup>32</sup>らです。

あれは <sup>33</sup>さくら<sup>34</sup>ですか、 <sup>35</sup>も<sup>36</sup>も<sup>37</sup>ですか。

—あれは <sup>38</sup>さくら<sup>39</sup>です。



## 語句

- 1 kore this See §2  
2 wa (a topic marker) See §1  
3 hana blossom, flower  
4 desu be See §1  
5 sakura cherry  
6 sore that, it See §2  
7 momo peach  
8 are that See §2  
9 bara rose  
10 nan = nani what See §3  
11 ka (a question marker) See §1  
12 Nippon Japan (Japanese say both "Nippon" and "Nihon." They are pronunciation variants of the same word.)

- 13 no of See §4  
14 mo also, too See §1  
15 Hai Yes  
16 sō so See §1  
17 iie No  
18 dewa arimasen be not See §1  
19 watashi I 20 Brown 'Brown'  
21 gakusei student  
22 anata you (sing.)  
23 kaisha-in company employee  
kaisha company -in member  
24 namae name  
25 imai (a family name)  
26 Nippon-jin Japanese (person)

③ わたしは <sup>19</sup>ブラウン<sup>20</sup>です。 <sup>21</sup>学生<sup>22</sup>です。

あなたも <sup>23</sup>学生<sup>24</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、 <sup>25</sup>そう<sup>26</sup>では <sup>27</sup>あり<sup>28</sup>ませ<sup>29</sup>ん。 <sup>30</sup>わたし<sup>31</sup>は <sup>32</sup>会社<sup>33</sup>員<sup>34</sup>です。

名<sup>35</sup>ま<sup>36</sup>え<sup>37</sup>は <sup>38</sup>今<sup>39</sup>井<sup>40</sup>です。 <sup>41</sup>日本<sup>42</sup>人<sup>43</sup>です。

彼女<sup>44</sup>は <sup>45</sup>だ<sup>46</sup>れ<sup>47</sup>て<sup>48</sup>す<sup>49</sup>か。

彼女<sup>50</sup>は <sup>51</sup>アン<sup>52</sup>ナ<sup>53</sup>です。 <sup>54</sup>わたし<sup>55</sup>の <sup>56</sup>妹<sup>57</sup>です。

—かれは <sup>58</sup>だ<sup>59</sup>れ<sup>60</sup>て<sup>61</sup>す<sup>62</sup>か。

かれは <sup>63</sup>ト<sup>64</sup>ム<sup>65</sup>です。 <sup>66</sup>わたし<sup>67</sup>の <sup>68</sup>い<sup>69</sup>と<sup>70</sup>こ<sup>71</sup>で<sup>72</sup>す。

—あなた<sup>73</sup>が<sup>74</sup>た<sup>75</sup>は <sup>76</sup>カナ<sup>77</sup>ダ<sup>78</sup>の <sup>79</sup>人<sup>80</sup>で<sup>81</sup>す<sup>82</sup>か。

はい、 <sup>83</sup>わたし<sup>84</sup>た<sup>85</sup>ち<sup>86</sup>は <sup>87</sup>カナ<sup>88</sup>ダ<sup>89</sup>人<sup>90</sup>で<sup>91</sup>す。

\* \* \*

④ ここは <sup>39</sup>ど<sup>40</sup>こ<sup>41</sup>で<sup>42</sup>す<sup>43</sup>か。

—ここは <sup>44</sup>銀<sup>45</sup>行<sup>46</sup>で<sup>47</sup>す。

郵便<sup>48</sup>局<sup>49</sup>は <sup>50</sup>ど<sup>51</sup>こ<sup>52</sup>で<sup>53</sup>す<sup>54</sup>か。

—郵便<sup>55</sup>局<sup>56</sup>は <sup>57</sup>あ<sup>58</sup>そ<sup>59</sup>こ<sup>60</sup>で<sup>61</sup>す。

切<sup>62</sup>手<sup>63</sup>の <sup>64</sup>売<sup>65</sup>り<sup>66</sup>場<sup>67</sup>は <sup>68</sup>こ<sup>69</sup>こ<sup>70</sup>で<sup>71</sup>す<sup>72</sup>か。

—いいえ、 <sup>73</sup>こ<sup>74</sup>こ<sup>75</sup>で<sup>76</sup>は <sup>77</sup>あ<sup>78</sup>り<sup>79</sup>ま<sup>80</sup>せ<sup>81</sup>ん。 <sup>82</sup>そ<sup>83</sup>こ<sup>84</sup>で<sup>85</sup>す。



- jin people of (nationality)  
27 kanojo she  
28 dare who See §3  
29 Anna 'Anna'  
30 imōto younger sister  
31 kare he 32 Tomu 'Tom'  
33 itoko cousin  
34 anata-gata you (pl.)  
-gata (Plural Suf. for Human N;  
Polite)  
35 Kanada 'Canada'  
36 hito man, person  
37 watashi-tachi we  
-tachi (Plural Suf. for Animate N)

- 38 Kanada-jin Canadian (person)  
39 koko here See §2  
40 doko where See §2, §3  
41 ginkō bank  
42 yūbin-kyoku post office  
yūbin mail  
-kyoku bureau  
43 asoko over there See §2  
44 kittle postage stamp  
45 uri-ba place for selling  
uri ←ur-u (sell) -ba place  
46 soko there See §2



# Dai 1-ka

## Kore wa sakura desu.

- 1 Kore wa hana desu. Sakura desu. Sore wa momo desu. Are wa bara desu.
- 2 Kore wa nan desu ka?  
—Sore wa hana desu. Sore wa Nippon no hana desu. Sakura no hana desu.  
Sore mo sakura no hana desu ka?  
—Hai, sō desu.  
Are mo sakura desu ka?  
—Iie, are wa sakura dewa arimasen. Are wa bara desu.  
Are wa sakura desu ka, momo desu ka?  
—Are wa sakura desu.
- 3 Watashi wa *Buraun* desu. Gakusei desu. Anata mo gakusei desu ka?  
—Iie, sō dewa arimasen. Watashi wa kaisha-in desu. Namae wa Imai desu. Nippon-jin desu. Kanojo wa dare desu ka?  
Kanojo wa *Anna* desu. Watashi no imōto desu.  
—Kare wa dare desu ka?  
Kare wa *Tomu* desu. Watashi no itoko desu.  
—Anata-gata wa *Kanada* no hito desu ka?  
Hai, watashi-tachi wa *Kanada*-jin desu.  
\* \* \*
- 4 Koko wa doko desu ka?  
—Koko wa ginkō desu.  
Yūbin-kyoku wa doko desu ka?  
—Yūbin-kyoku wa asoko desu.  
Kitte no uri-ba wa koko desu ka?  
—Iie, koko dewa arimasen. Soko desu.

# Lesson 1

## This is a cherry blossom.

- 1 This is a flower. This is a cherry blossom. That is a peach blossom. That is a rose.
- 2 What is this?  
—It is a flower. It is a Japanese flower. It is a cherry blossom.  
Is that a cherry blossom too?  
—Yes, it is.  
Is that a cherry blossom too?  
—No, it is not a cherry blossom. It is a rose.  
Is that a cherry blossom or a peach blossom?  
—It is a cherry blossom.
- 3 My name is Brown. I am a student. Are you a student too?  
—No, I am not. I am a company employee. My name is Imai.  
I am a Japanese. Who is she?  
She is Anna. She is my younger sister.  
—Who is he?  
He is Tom. He is my cousin.  
—Are you Canadians?  
Yes, we are Canadians.  
\* \* \*
- 4 What is this place?  
—It is a bank.  
Where is the post office?  
—It is over there.  
Is this the counter for postage stamps?  
—No, it is not. It is over there.



### ANSWERS (pp. 16, 17)

- I. (C) 1. Kore wa *Tomu* no *kamera* desu. 2. Kore wa anata no *tobako* desu. 3. Kore wa kanojo no *kasa* desu. 4. Kore wa watashi no *megane* desu. 5. Kore wa imōto no *tokai* desu. 6. Kore wa kare no *denki-sutāndo* desu.  
IV. 1. nan 2. doko 3. nan 4. anata; dare  
V. 1. (Watashi no namae wa) \_\_\_ desu. 2. (Watashi no kuni wa) \_\_\_ desu. 3. (Watashi no kuni no shuto wa) \_\_\_ desu.

## § 1 Identifying a Thing or Person

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  desu. 'N<sub>1</sub> is N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Watashi wa gakusei desu. 'I am a student.'

Negation:  $N_1$  wa  $N_2$  dewa arimasen. 'N<sub>1</sub> is not N<sub>2</sub>.'

**Wa** is a Particle ('P') indicating that the Noun ('N') to which it is attached is the Topic of the sentence. A Topic can be anything that the speaker wants to talk about. Remember that it is not quite the same as the 'subject' in English grammar. The essential function of **wa** is to attract the listener's attention to the word or phrase to which it is attached.

**Desu** is a Copula (like 'to be' in English) used most commonly in medially polite spoken Japanese, and is inflected for negative (*dewa arimasen*), Past tense, etc. 'N desu' constitutes the Nominal Predicate.

**Wa** is replaced by **mo** when the same predicate also applies to another N. e.g. Watashi wa gakusei desu. 'I am a student.'

Tomu mo gakusei desu. 'Tom is a student too.'

Question:  $N_1$  wa  $N_2$  desu ka? 'Is N<sub>1</sub> N<sub>2</sub>?'

**Ka** is a Sentence-final Particle ('Ps') expressing question or doubt. In an answer to a question, the predicate alone is sufficient; the Topic may be omitted whenever it is understood.

e.g. Tomu wa gakusei desu ka? 'Is Tom a student?'

—Hai, gakusei desu. 'Yes, (he) is a student.'

The answer sentence can be further simplified by using **sō**, which stands for the ' $N_1$  wa  $N_2$ ' part of the question sentence.

e.g. Anata wa gakusei desu ka? 'Are you a student?'

—Hai, sō desu. 'Yes, I am.'

—Iie, sō dewa arimasen. 'No, I am not.'

## § 2 Demonstratives

Japanese has a set of Demonstratives used for the speaker to point at or refer to a thing, place, being, or state of affairs. This lesson introduces three subsets (in boldface below).

	Nominal			Prenominal	Adjectival	Adverbial	
	thing	place	direction			(1)	(2)
I	<b>kore</b>	<b>koko</b>	<b>kochira</b>	kono	konna	konna-ni	kō
II	<b>sore</b>	<b>soko</b>	<b>sochira</b>	sono	sonna	sonna-ni	sō
III	<b>are</b>	<b>asoko</b>	<b>achira</b>	ano	anna	anna-ni	ā
?	<b>dore</b>	<b>doko</b>	<b>dochira</b>	dono	donna	donna-ni	dō

I (**ko-** series)...for whatever is near the 1st person (speaker)

II (**so-** series)...for whatever is near the 2nd person (listener)

III (**a-** series)...for whatever is near neither the speaker nor the listener, but is seen or known by both

? (**do-** series)...for a thing or state which the speaker is unable to point at, locate, or describe. This series usually appears in questions.

## § 3 Interrogative Nouns

Kore wa **hon** desu.

'This is a book.'

Sore wa **nān\*** desu ka?

'What is that?'

\*nan generally before t-, d-, n-; nani elsewhere.

Kare wa **Yamada** desu.

'He is Yamada.'

Kare wa **dare/donata\*\*** desu ka?

'Who is he?'

\*\*more polite

Koko wa **Ginza** desu.

'This is Ginza.'

Koko wa **doko** desu ka?

'Where is this?' or 'Where am I?'

§ 4 Connecting Two Nouns:  $N_1$  no  $N_2$  (roughly) 'N<sub>2</sub> of N<sub>1</sub>'

e.g. Watashi no hon 'my book' (literally, 'book of I')

Nippon-go no hon 'a book of/in/on Japanese'

N<sub>2</sub> is sometimes omitted when it is understood.

e.g. Kore wa watashi no desu. 'This is mine.'

I. Use the chart to practice the patterns as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (kitte) → Kore wa kitte desu.

1. (kamera<sup>1</sup>) 2. (tabako<sup>2</sup>) 3. (kasa<sup>3</sup>)

4. (megane<sup>4</sup>) 5. (tokei<sup>5</sup>) 6. (denki-sutando<sup>6</sup>)

(B) Ex. (pointing to Ex.) Kore wa nan desu ka?  
—Kitte desu.

(C) (Ex.+kare) → Kore wa kare no kitte desu.

1. (1+Tomu) 2. (2+anata) 3. (3+kanojo)

4. (4+watashi) 5. (5+imōto) 6. (6+kare)

II. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (hon?) Kore wa hon desu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, sō desu.

(lie) (shinbun<sup>8</sup>) lie, sō dewa arimasen.

Shinbun desu.

1. Q: (shinbun) A: (Hai)

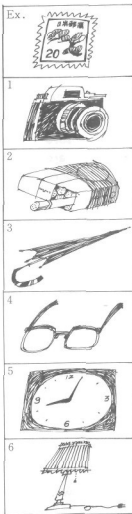
2. Q: (nōto<sup>9</sup>) A: (lie) (hon)

3. Q: (kitte) A: (Hai)

4. Q: (tokei) A: (lie) (kamera)

5. Q: (sakura no hana) A: (lie) (bara)

6. Q: (anata no kasa) A: (lie) (kare no)



## 語句

- 1 kamera 'camera'  
2 tabako 'tobacco,' cigarette  
3 kasa umbrella  
4 megane glasses  
5 tokei clock, watch  
6 denki-sutando desk lamp, reading lamp  
denki electricity sutando 'stand'  
7 hon book 8 shinbun newspaper

- 9 nōto 'notebook'  
10 byōin hospital  
11 tosho-kan library  
toshō books, library  
-kan building, house  
12 Tōkyō-eki Tokyo Station  
Tōkyō (the capital of Japan)  
eki station

III. Use the pictures to practice questions and answers as shown in the example.

Ex. (ginkō) → Q: Koko wa doko desu ka?

A: Koko wa ginkō desu.

1. (yūbin-kyoku) 2. (byōin<sup>10</sup>) 3. (toshō-kan<sup>11</sup>)  
4. (Tōkyō-eki<sup>12</sup>) 5. (daigaku<sup>13</sup>)

IV. Fill in the blanks.

Ex. "Kore wa (dare) no hon desu ka?"

"Sore wa watashi no hon desu."

1. "Sore wa ( ) no hon desu ka?"

"Kore wa Nippon-go<sup>14</sup> no hon desu."

2. "Kore wa ( ) no shashin<sup>15</sup> desu ka?"

"Sore wa Kyōto<sup>16</sup> no shashin desu."

3. "Are wa ( ) no kaisha desu ka?"

"Are wa jidōsha<sup>17</sup> no kaisha desu."

4. "Kore wa ( ) no bōru-pen<sup>18</sup> desu ka?" "lie,  
sore wa watashi no bōru-pen dewa arimasen."

"Soredewa,<sup>19</sup> ( ) no bōru-pen desu ka?"

"Sore wa Tomu-san<sup>20</sup> no desu."

V. Answer the following questions.

1. Anata no namae wa nan desu ka?

2. Anata no kuni<sup>21</sup> wa doko desu ka?

3. Anata no kuni no shuto<sup>22</sup> wa doko desu ka?



- 13 daigaku university, college  
14 Nippon-go = Nihon-go Japanese (lan-  
guage)  
-go language; word  
15 shashin photograph  
16 Kyōto (an old capital of Japan)  
17 jidōsha automobile, car  
18 bōru-pen 'ball-point pen'

- 19 soredewa well, then  
20 -san (Suf. for Human N or Name)  
Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms.  
21 kuni country, nation; one's home  
land  
22 shuto capital city

## KONNICHI WA!

Konnichi wa.<sup>1</sup>Ohayō gozaimasu.<sup>2</sup>

Ohayō.

Konban wa.<sup>3</sup>Sayōnara.<sup>4</sup>Oyasumi-nasai.<sup>5</sup>

Oyasumi.

Yamada<sup>6</sup>: Hajimemashite.<sup>7</sup>

Watashi wa Yamada desu.

Dōzo<sup>8</sup> yoroshiku.<sup>9</sup>

Buraun: Hajimemashite.

Watashi wa Buraun desu.

Dōzo yoroshiku.

Y: Kore wa watashi no meishi<sup>10</sup> desu.B: Dōmo<sup>11</sup> arigatō<sup>12</sup> gozaimasu.Y: Shitsurei desu ga,<sup>13</sup>o-kuni<sup>14</sup> wa doko desu ka?B: Igrisu<sup>15</sup> desu.

Hello.

Good morning. (Polite)

Morning. (Familiar)

Good evening.

Good-bye.

Good night. (Polite)

Good night. (Familiar)

Y: How do you do?

(&lt;-This is the first time for me to meet you.)

I am Yamada. I am

pleased to meet you.

(&lt;-I hope we shall become friends.)

B: How do you do?

I am Brown.

Pleased to meet you.

Y: This is my card.

B: Thank you very much.

Y: Excuse me, but

where are you from?

(&lt;-where is your country?)

B: England.

## 語句

1 Konnichi wa (Cph: daytime greeting)

2 Ohayō (gozaimasu) (Cph: morning greeting)

gozaimasu exist, there is, we have (Super-polite form of desu; aru, arimasu)

3 Konban wa (Cph: evening greeting)

4 Sayōnara=Sayonara (Cph: used in parting)

5 Oyasumi(-nasai) (Cph: greeting before going to bed)

-nasai (Polite imperative form of suru)

6 Yamada (a family name)

7 Hajimemashite (Cph: when introduced)

8 dōzo please

9 (Dōzo) yoroshiku (Cph: all-purpose request for favorable consideration)

10 meishi name card

Y: (From) London?

B: Yes, London.

Y: What is your occupation?

B: I am an architect.

Y: Is that so?

My younger brother is also an architect.

.....

Y: Hi, Mr. Tanaka.

This is Mr. Brown from England.

He is an architect.

T: How do you do?

I'm Tanaka.

B: I'm Brown. Glad to meet you.

11 dōmo very

12 arigatō (Cph: for expressing thanks)

13 Shitsurei desu ga (Cph)

Excuse me, but...  
shitsurei (Na/Nv) being impolite/rude  
ga but14 o-kuni nation, country  
o- (Pref. for politeness)

15 Igrisu 'England'

16 Rondon 'London'

17 Ē Yes (Informal)

18 shigoto work, job

19 kenchiku-ka architect  
kenchiku architecture  
-ka specialist

20 Sō desu ka (Cph) Is that so?

21 otōto younger brother

22 Yā Hey, Hi

23 Tanaka (a family name)

24 kochira this person/  
side/place See § 2Y: Rondon<sup>16</sup> desu ka?B: Ē,<sup>17</sup> Rondon desu.Y: O-shigoto<sup>18</sup> wa nan desu ka?B: Kenchiku-ka<sup>19</sup> desu.Y: Sō desu ka.<sup>20</sup>Watashi no otōto<sup>21</sup> mo kenchiku-ka desu.

.....

Y: Yā,<sup>22</sup> Tanaka<sup>23</sup>-san, kochira<sup>24</sup> wa Igrisu

no Buraun-san desu.

Kenchiku-ka desu.






T: Hajimemashite. Tanaka desu.

B: Buraun desu. Yoroshiku.

▼ Mt. Fuji








ひらがな 《HIRAGANA》—1

a	i	u	e	o
				






あい love あおい blue あう meet  
いえ house おおい many うえ above

ka	ki	ku	ke	ko
				






かく write こえ voice えき station  
あかい red いけ pond きく chrysanthemum

sa	shi	su	se	so
				






さけ sake せかい world あせ sweat  
うそ a lie すし sushi きそく regulation

ta	chi	tsu	te	to
				






たつ stand つき moon ちかてつ subway  
そと outside とち land くつした socks

na	ni	nu	ne	no
				




なに what ぬの cloth ななつ seven  
ねこ cat いぬ dog ねつ fever

ha	hi	fu	he	ho
				






はな flower ひふ skin あさひ morning sun  
ふね ship へた unskillful ほそい slender

ma	mi	mu	me	mo
				

うみ sea みなみ south むすめ daughter  
きもの kimono なまえ name まちあいしつ waiting room

ya	yu	yo
		

ゆき snow よい good やすみ rest  
よむ read ゆめ dream やま mountain

ra	ri	ru	re	ro
				

てら temple れきし history くらい dark  
くろい black きれい pretty りかい understanding

wa	o		
		わたし I わたしを me へいわ peace わらう laugh にわ garden わるい bad	

n	ほん book きねん commemoration みほん sample きんえん No smoking しんせつ kind りろん theory
	

## 第 2 課

### わたしたちの工場

TAPE  
No. 1  
Side 1

① これは <sup>おほ</sup>1 <sup>こほじょう</sup>2 大きい <sup>3</sup> 工場 <sup>4</sup> ですね。 <sup>なんの</sup>5 <sup>こほじょう</sup>6 工場 <sup>7</sup> ですか。

—この <sup>こほじょう</sup>8 工場 <sup>9</sup> は <sup>じどう</sup>10 自動車の <sup>11</sup> 工場 <sup>12</sup> です。

あの <sup>こほじょう</sup>13 工場 <sup>14</sup> は <sup>こほ</sup>15 小さい <sup>16</sup> ですね。

—あれは <sup>じてんしゃ</sup>17 自転車の <sup>18</sup> 工場 <sup>19</sup> です。

あまり <sup>20</sup> 大きく <sup>21</sup> ないです。

この <sup>たいや</sup>22 タイヤ <sup>23</sup> は <sup>つよ</sup>24 強い <sup>25</sup> ですか。

—はい、<sup>つよ</sup>26 強い <sup>27</sup> です。



② あの <sup>ふる</sup>28 古い <sup>29</sup> れんがの <sup>30</sup> 建物 <sup>31</sup> は <sup>32</sup> なん <sup>33</sup> ですか。

—あれは <sup>びじゅつかん</sup>34 美術館 <sup>35</sup> です。 <sup>有名な</sup>36 有名な <sup>37</sup> 美術館 <sup>38</sup> です。

この <sup>たてもの</sup>39 建物 <sup>40</sup> は <sup>ほてる</sup>41 ホテル <sup>42</sup> ですか。

—いいえ、これは <sup>げきじょう</sup>43 劇場 <sup>44</sup> です。

新しい <sup>45</sup> 劇場 <sup>46</sup> ですか。

—いいえ、あまり <sup>あたら</sup>47 新しく <sup>48</sup> ないです。

③ この <sup>あたり</sup>49 あたり <sup>50</sup> は <sup>しずか</sup>51 静か <sup>52</sup> ですね。

—はい、いつも <sup>22</sup> しずか <sup>23</sup> ですか。 あなたの <sup>いえ</sup>24 家の <sup>25</sup> あたり <sup>26</sup> は <sup>27</sup> どう <sup>28</sup> ですか。

あまり <sup>29</sup> しずか <sup>30</sup> では <sup>31</sup> あり <sup>32</sup> ません。

—あなたの <sup>まち</sup>33 町 <sup>34</sup> は <sup>35</sup> どん <sup>36</sup> な <sup>37</sup> 町 <sup>38</sup> ですか。

酒 <sup>2728</sup> で <sup>39</sup> 有名 <sup>40</sup> な <sup>41</sup> 町 <sup>42</sup> です。 <sup>うみ</sup>43 海 <sup>44</sup> にも <sup>45</sup> <sup>やま</sup>46 山 <sup>47</sup> にも <sup>48</sup> <sup>ちか</sup>49 近い <sup>50</sup> です。 <sup>くわ</sup>51 空気 <sup>52</sup> も

水 <sup>53</sup> も <sup>54</sup> <sup>たいへん</sup>55 たいへん <sup>56</sup> <sup>きれい</sup>57 きれいで <sup>58</sup> す。

▼ A sake factory



#### 語句

1 ōki-i large 2 kōjō factory

3 ne ..., isn't it? See §11

4 kono this See §5

5 ano that See §5

6 chiisa-i small 7 jitensha bicycle

8 amari too, too much, excessively

amari...nai not so...

9 -ku nai See §6

10 taiya 'tire'

11 tsuyo-i strong, powerful

12 furu-i old 13 renga brick

14 tatemono building

15 bijutsu-kan art museum

bijutsu fine arts

16 yūmei (Na) famous

17 hōteru 'hotel'

18 geki-jō theater

geki drama, play

-jō place, field

19 atarashi-i new, fresh

20 atari (N) neighborhood

kono atari this neighborhood

21 shizuka (Na) silent, quiet

22 itsumo always 23 ie house

24 dō how See §9

25 machi town

26 donna what sort of See §8

27 sake alcoholic drink, Japanese wine

28 de with, for

...de yūmei famous for...

29 umi sea, ocean

30 ni to

31 yama mountain

32 chika-i near

...ni chikai near...

33 kuki air

34 mizu water

35 taihen very See §10

36 kirei (Na) clean; pretty

## Dai 2-ka

### Watashi-tachi no Kōjō

- 1 Kore wa ōkii kōjō desu ne. Nan no kōjō desu ka?  
 —Kono kōjō wa jidōsha no kōjō desu.  
 Ano kōjō wa chiisai desu ne.  
 —Are wa jitensha no kōjō desu. Amari ōkiku nai desu.  
 Kono *taiya* wa tsuyoi desu ka?  
 —Hai, tsuyoi desu.
- 2 Ano furui renga no tatemono wa nan desu ka?  
 —Are wa bijutsu-kan desu. Yūmei-na bijutsu-kan desu.  
 Kono tatemono wa *hoteru* desu ka?  
 —Iie, kore wa gekijō desu.  
 Atarashii gekijō desu ka?  
 —Iie, amari atarashiku nai desu.
- 3 Kono atari wa shizuka desu ne.  
 —Hai, itsumo shizuka desu. Anata no ie no atari wa dō desu ka?  
 Amari shizuka dewa arimasen.  
 —Anata no machi wa donna machi desu ka?  
 Sake de yūmei-na machi desu. Umi nimo yama nimo chikai desu.  
 Kūki mo mizu mo taihen kirei desu.

▼ The National Museum of Western Art



▼ Osaka's Shin-Kabuki-za



## Lesson 2

### Our Factory

- 1 This is a big factory, isn't it? What do they make here?  
 —This factory is an automobile factory.  
 That factory is small, isn't it?  
 —That is a bicycle factory. That is not so big.  
 Is this tire strong?  
 —Yes, it is strong.
- 2 What is that old brick building?  
 —That is a museum. It is a famous museum.  
 Is this building a hotel?  
 —No, it is not. This is a theater.  
 Is it a new theater?  
 —No, it is not so new.
- 3 It is quiet in this neighborhood, isn't it?  
 —Yes, it is always quiet. What is your neighborhood like?  
 It is not so quiet.  
 —What kind of a town is your town?  
 It's a town famous for *sake*. It is close to both the sea and the mountains.  
 Both the air and the water are very clean there.

#### ANSWERS (pp. 28, 29)

- I. (A) 6. Q: Kono machi wa umi ni chikai desu ka? A: Iie, chikaku nai desu. Tōi desu.  
 (C) 1. Q: Ano ōkii tatemono wa nan desu ka? A: Ano ōkii tatemono wa daigaku no tosho-kan desu. 2. Q: Ano wakai onna no hito wa dare desu ka? A: Ano wakai onna no hito wa watashi no sensei desu.
- II. (A) 1. Kore wa nagai shōsetsu desu. 2. Kore wa takai kitte desu. 3. Kore wa watashi no atarashii jidōsha desu. 4. Kore wa benri-na *taipu-raito* desu. 5. Koko wa shizuka-na machi desu.  
 (B) 1. Kono benri-na *kamera* wa watashi no desu. Kono karui *kamera* wa dare no desu ka?  
 2. Kono chiisai ie wa watashi no desu. Kono furui ie wa dare no desu ka? 3. Kono shiroy kasa wa watashi no desu. Kono akai kasa wa dare no desu ka?  
 III. 1. Kore wa yūmei-na shōsetsu desu. Kono shōsetsu wa taihen omoshiroi desu. (Kore wa) amari muzukashiku nai desu. 2. "Ano ōkii tatemono wa nan desu ka?" "Atarashii tosho-kan desu." 3. "Kono shiroy hana no namae wa nan desu ka?" "Bara desu." 4. "Ano kirei-na onna no hito wa dare desu ka?" "Ano kirei-na onna no hito wa watashi-tachi no Nippon-go no sensei desu."

§ 5 Prenominal Demonstratives: **kono, sono, ano, dono**

e.g. Kono hana wa bara desu. 'This flower (here) is a rose.'

Ano hito wa Amerika-jin desu. 'That person (=He) is an American.'

Yamada-san wa dono hito desu ka? 'Which person is Mr. Yamada?'

## § 6 Describing Things—Adjectival Predicates

N wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ Na \end{array} \right\}$  desu.

e.g. Kono kōjō wa ōkii desu. 'This factory is big.'

Kono machi wa shizuka desu.

'This town is quiet.'

Question: N wa A/Na desu ka?

Negation: N wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A\text{-ku nai desu.} \\ Na\text{ dewa arimasen.} \end{array} \right.$

e.g. ...ōkiku nai desu. '...is not big.'

...shizuka dewa arimasen. '...is not quiet.'

Adjectives are of two kinds: 'i Adjectives' ('A') and 'na Adjectives' ('Na').

All A are indigenous Japanese adjectives, and they all end with '-i' in the present affirmative form (Dictionary form), e.g. ōkii 'big,' nagai 'long.' Na are mostly Chinese-origin words, some coming from other foreign languages, e.g. shizuka 'quiet,' kirei 'pretty,' sakan 'active, flourishing, popular,' etc. A and Na are conjugated in different ways.

## § 7 Using A or Na as Noun Modifiers

A  
Na(-na) } +N

e.g. ōkii kōjō 'a big factory'

shizuka-na machi 'a quiet town'

When foreign words are to be used as adjectives in Japanese, they conform to the Na pattern and not to the A pattern.

e.g. Sore wa nansensu desu. 'That's nonsense.'

nansensu-na hanashi 'a nonsensical story, a bit of nonsense'

modan-na tatemono 'a modern building'

NB: ōkii and chiisai, although they are 'i Adjectives,' sometimes take the '-na form' when used as Prenominal modifiers.

e.g. ōki-na kōjō (=ōkii kōjō) 'a big factory'

chiisa-na kōjō (=chiisai kōjō) 'a small factory'

## § 8 Adjectival Demonstratives (See Table in § 2)

The Demonstratives **konna, sonna, anna** are used before N, like Adjectives, expressing 'such...,' or '...like this/that.' **Donna** means 'what kind of...'

e.g. Sono machi wa donna machi desu ka? 'What is that town like?'

—Chisai shizuka-na machi desu. 'It's a small, quiet town.'

## § 9 Adverbial Demonstratives (See Table in § 2)

When the particle **ni** is attached to **konna, sonna**, etc., they function as Adverbs and are used to modify other Adjectives, expressing degree.

e.g. Itsumo konna-ni samui desu ka? 'Is it always this cold?'

Ima sonna-ni isogashiku nai desu. 'I am not so busy (as you may suppose) now.' or 'I am not all that busy now.'

Another set of Demonstratives **kō, sō, ā, dō**, are also used as Adverbs, but they are mainly used to modify Verbs, expressing manner.

e.g. Kyōto e wa dō ikimasu ka? 'How do I go to Kyoto?'

Kore wa dō desu ka? 'How is this?' or 'How do you like this?'

## § 10 Adverbs of Degree

e.g. taihen (ōkii) 'very (big)' totemo (kirei) 'very (pretty)'

taitai (ōkii) 'mostly (big)' amari (ōkiku nai) '(not) very (big)'

§ 11 Sentence-final Particles ('Ps'): **ne** and **yo**

In addition to *ka* (§ 1), the Ps which are most commonly used in spoken Japanese are **ne** and **yo**. The particle **ne** indicates that the speaker is expecting the listener's agreement, and **yo** that he is calling for the listener's particular attention to his statement. Others will be introduced later.



## I. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Q: (kono kaisha) (atarashii) Kono kaisha wa atarashii desu ka?

A: (lie) (furui) lie, atarashiku nai desu. Furui desu.

1. Q: (sono<sup>1</sup> hon) (omoshiroi<sup>2</sup>) A: (lie) (tsumaranai<sup>3</sup>)2. Q: (sono jidōsha) (takai<sup>4</sup>) A: (lie) (yasui<sup>5</sup>)3. Q: (sono yama) (takai) A: (lie) (hikui<sup>6</sup>)4. Q: (Nippon-go) (muzukashii<sup>7</sup>) A: (lie) (yasashii<sup>8</sup>)5. Q: (kono *taipu-raita*<sup>9</sup>) (karui<sup>10</sup>) A: (lie) (omoi<sup>11</sup>)6. Q: (kono machi) (umi ni chikai) A: (lie) (tōi<sup>12</sup>)

(B) Ex. Q: (Tōkyō) (kirei) Tōkyō wa kirei desu ka?

A: (taihen) Hai, taihen kirei desu.

(amari) lie, amari kirei dewa arimasen.

1. Q: (Tōkyō) (shizuka) A: (amari)

2. Q: (kono bijutsu-kan) (yūmei) A: (taihen)

3. Q: (kono kikai<sup>13</sup>) (benri<sup>14</sup>) A: (amari)4. Q: (ano byōin no hito-tachi<sup>15</sup>) (shinsetsu<sup>16</sup>) A: (taihen)

5. Q: (kanojo) (shinsetsu) A: (amari)

6. Q: (sono shōsetsu<sup>17</sup>) (yūmei) A: (amari)

7. Q: (anata no machi no kūki) (kirei) A: (amari)

(C) Ex. Q: (furui) (tatemono) Ano furui tatemono wa nan desu ka?

A: (bijutsu-kan) Ano furui tatemono wa bijutsu-kan desu.

1. Q: (ōkii) (tatemono) A: (daigaku no tosho-kan)

2. Q: (wakai<sup>18</sup>) (onna no hito<sup>19</sup>) A: (watashi no sensei<sup>20</sup>)

## 語句

- 1 sono that See § 5  
 2 omoshiro-i amusing, interesting  
 3 tsumaranai-i not interesting  
 4 taka-i expensive; high  
 5 yasui-i cheap 6 hiku-i low  
 7 muzukashi-i difficult

- 8 yasashi-i easy; gentle, tender  
 9 *taipu-raita* 'typewriter'  
 10 karu-i light, not heavy  
 11 omo-i heavy 12 tō-i far  
 13 kikai machine  
 14 benri (Na) convenient; useful

## II. Transform the following sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Kono hon wa omoshiroi desu. →Kore wa omoshiroi hon desu.

1. Kono shōsetsu wa nagai<sup>21</sup> desu.

2. Kono kitte wa takai desu.

3. Kono watashi no jidōsha wa atarashii desu.

4. Kono *taipu-raita* wa benri desu.

5. Kono machi wa shizuka desu.

(B) Ex. Kono jidōsha wa ōkii desu. →Kono ōkii jidōsha wa watashi no desu.

(atarashii) →Kono atarashii jidōsha wa dare no desu ka?

1. Kono kamera wa benri desu.

(karui)

2. Kono ie wa chiisai desu.

(furui)

3. Kono kasa wa shiroi<sup>22</sup> desu.(akai<sup>23</sup>)

## III. Put the following into Japanese.

1. This is a famous novel. This novel is very interesting. It is not very difficult.

2. "What is that big building?" "It is a new library."

3. "What is the name of this white flower?" "It is a rose."

4. "Who is that beautiful lady?" "That beautiful lady is our teacher of Japanese."

15 hito-tachi people

16 shinsetsu (Na) kind(ness)

17 shōsetsu novel

18 waka-i young

19 onna no hito woman, lady

onna woman, female (person)

20 sensei teacher

21 naga-i long

22 shiro-i white

23 aka-i red

## KOKO WA DOKO?

Sumimasen<sup>1</sup> ga...

Koko wa Yotsuya<sup>2</sup> desu ka?

—lie, chigaimasu.<sup>3</sup>

Yotsuya wa tsugi<sup>4</sup> desu.

Koko wa doko desu ka?

—Shinjuku<sup>5</sup> desu.

Ā,<sup>6</sup> sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō.

—Dō itashimashite.<sup>7</sup>



Chotto<sup>8</sup> sumimasen ga...

Are wa *hoteru* desu ka?

—lie, sō dewa arimasen.

Ano *biru*<sup>9</sup> wa daigaku desu.

*Hoteru* wa sono mukō<sup>10</sup> no takai *biru* desu.

Excuse me, but...

Is this (place) Yotsuya?

—No, it's not.

Yotsuya is the next station.

Where is this (place)?

—(This is) Shinjuku.

Oh, is that so? Thank you.

—Not at all.

Excuse me a minute.

Is that a hotel?

—No, it isn't.

That building is a university.

The hotel is the tall building beyond that.

## 語句

- 1 Sumimasen (Cph: apology)
- 2 Yotsuya (a place name)
- 3 Chigaimasu You're wrong. It is not.  
chiga-u be different  
-masu See § 16
- 4 tsugi (N) next
- 5 Shinjuku (a place name)
- 6 Ā Oh
- 7 Dō itashimashite You're welcome. Not at all.
- 8 chotto a little; a while
- 9 *biru* 'building'
- 10 mukō (N) over/beyond there

Is it close?

—Well, let me see...

It's not all that far.

It's about 5 minutes on foot.

Thanks.

Excuse me...

Where is Mr. Ota's house?

—Let's see... Mr. Ota?

That's Mr. Ota the doctor, isn't it?

No, the painter.

—Mr. Ota the painter?

Then... Taro Ota, is it?

Yes, that's it.

Is it around here?

—Yes, it's that house with the red roof.

Is that so? Thank you.

—You're welcome.

11 nē=ne See § 11

12 sonna-ni...nai not so

13 yo See § 11

14 aruite on foot

aruk-u walk

15 -fun =-pun minute

16 ...gurai about/approximately...

17 Ōta (a family name)

18 (o-)taku residence

19 Ē...to Well, let me see

20 isha medical doctor

21 gaka painter

22 Tarō (a given name (m))

23 yane roof

24 uchi=ie house, home

Chikai desu ka?

—Sō desu nē<sup>11</sup>....

Sonna-ni<sup>12</sup> tōku nai desu yo.<sup>13</sup>

Aruite<sup>14</sup> go-fun<sup>15</sup> gurai<sup>16</sup> desu.

Arigatō.

Sumimasen...

Ōta<sup>17</sup>-san no o-taku<sup>18</sup> wa doko desu ka?

—Ē...to,<sup>19</sup> Ōta-san desu ka?

O-isha<sup>20</sup>-san no Ōta-san desu ne?

Iie, gaka<sup>21</sup> desu.

—Gaka no Ōta-san?

Ā..., Ōta Tarō<sup>22</sup>-san desu ne?

Hai, hai, sō desu.

Kono atari desu ka?

—Ē, ano akai yane<sup>23</sup> no uchi<sup>24</sup> desu.

Sō desu ka. Dōmo arigatō.

—lie, dō itashimashite.



ひらがな 《HIRAGANA》—2

が <sup>ga</sup>	ぎ <sup>gi</sup>	ぐ <sup>gu</sup>	げ <sup>ge</sup>	ご <sup>go</sup>	かぜ wind でんわ telephone
ざ <sup>za</sup>	じ <sup>ji</sup>	ず <sup>zu</sup>	ぜ <sup>ze</sup>	ぞ <sup>zo</sup>	こども child かぞく family
だ <sup>da</sup>	ぢ <sup>ji</sup>	づ <sup>zu</sup>	で <sup>de</sup>	ど <sup>do</sup>	たばこ cigarette さんぽ a walk
ば <sup>ba</sup>	び <sup>bi</sup>	ぶ <sup>bu</sup>	べ <sup>be</sup>	ぼ <sup>bo</sup>	がくせい student えんぴつ pencil
ぱ <sup>pa</sup>	ぴ <sup>pi</sup>	ぷ <sup>pu</sup>	ぺ <sup>pe</sup>	ぽ <sup>po</sup>	しんぶん newspaper がいこくじん foreigner

きゃ <sup>kya</sup>	きゅ <sup>kyu</sup>	きょ <sup>kyo</sup>	にゃ <sup>nya</sup>	にゅ <sup>nyu</sup>	にょ <sup>nyo</sup>	ひゃく hundred きゃく guest
ぎゃ <sup>gya</sup>	ぎゅ <sup>gyu</sup>	ぎょ <sup>gyo</sup>	ひゃ <sup>hya</sup>	ひゅ <sup>hyu</sup>	ひょ <sup>hyo</sup>	ぎじゅつ technique きょねん last year
しゃ <sup>sha</sup>	しゅ <sup>shu</sup>	しょ <sup>sho</sup>	びゃ <sup>bya</sup>	びゅ <sup>byu</sup>	びょ <sup>byo</sup>	でんしゃ electric train りょかん inn
じゃ <sup>ja</sup>	じゅ <sup>ju</sup>	じょ <sup>jo</sup>	ぴゃ <sup>pya</sup>	ぴゅ <sup>pyu</sup>	ぴょ <sup>pyo</sup>	さんびやく 300 しゃかい society
ちゃ <sup>cha</sup>	ちゅ <sup>chu</sup>	ちょ <sup>cho</sup>	みゃ <sup>mya</sup>	みゅ <sup>myu</sup>	みょ <sup>myo</sup>	おちゃ tea ちゅうい caution
ぢゃ <sup>ja</sup>	ぢゅ <sup>ju</sup>	ぢょ <sup>jo</sup>	りゃ <sup>rya</sup>	りゅ <sup>ryu</sup>	りょ <sup>ryo</sup>	

Some Orthographical Rules

1. The difference between じ and ぢ (ji) and between ず and づ (zu) is not a matter of pronunciation but one of usage. じ and ず are generally used.

2. Double consonants are expressed by the small つ.

みつつ (mit-tsu) 'three' cf. みつ (mitsu) 'honey'

そっと (sotto) 'secretly' cf. そと (soto) 'outside'

もっと (motto) 'more' cf. もと (moto) 'origin'

3. (C<sup>+</sup>+)ō is usually written as (C<sup>+</sup>+)o and う (u). \*consonant

ふうとう (fūtō) 'envelope'

ありがとう (arigatō) 'thank you'

べんきょう (benkyō) 'study'

Exceptions: Some are written as (C+) o and お (o).

おおきい (ōkii) 'big' おおい (ōi) 'many, much'

とお (tō) 'ten' とおる (tōru) 'pass'

とおい (tōi) 'far' こおり (kōri) 'ice'

4. The Particle Wa (See § 1) is written は.

これは ほんです。'This is a book.'

ははは とうきょうに います。'My mother is in Tokyo.'

わたしは がくせいではありません。'I am not a student.'

5. The Particle e (See § 19) is written え.

あなたは どこへ いきますか。'Where are you going?'

わたしは くにへ かえります。'I will go back to my country.'

ここへ きてください。'Please come here.'

6. The Particle o (See § 17, § 26, § 28) is written を.

わたしは にっぽんごを べんきょう します。'I study Japanese.'

あなたは ごはんを たべましたか。'Did you eat?'

とりは そらを とびます。'Birds fly in the sky.'

# 第 3 課

## へやの中

TAPE  
No. 1  
Side 2

- ① ここは 営業課の へやです。  
この へやには ドアが 二つ あります。  
へやの 中には つくえが たくさん あります。  
人も たくさん います。
- ② —つくえは いくつ ありますか。  
一つ、二つ、三つ、四つ、五つ……全部で 十五 あります。  
いすも 十五 あります。  
—人は 何人 いますか。  
今、一人、二人、三人、四人、五人……八人 います。
- ③ —課長さんの つくえは どこですか。  
へやの 奥です。わたしの つくえは ことです。  
つくえの上には、本や ボールペンや 電話が あります。  
本は 五さつ、ボールペンは 三本 あります。

### 語句

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 eigyō-ka sales section           | 14 mit-tsu three See § 14          |
| eigyō business, trade, sales       | 15 yot-tsu four See § 14           |
| -ka section (smaller than -bu)     | 16 itsu-tsu five See § 14          |
| 2 heya room                        | 17 zenbu (N/Adv) all, whole        |
| 3 ni in, at See § 12               | zenbu de in all                    |
| 4 dō 'door' 5 ga See § 12          | 18 jū-go fifteen jū ten go five    |
| 6 futa-tsu two See § 14            | 19 isu chair                       |
| 7 ar-u exist See § 12              | 20 nan-nin how many people         |
| 8 naka (N) inside 9 tsukue desk    | nan- (+Count.) how many; what      |
| 10 takusan (N/Adv) many, much      | -nin (Count. for persons) See § 14 |
| 11 i-ru exist; stay See § 12       | 21 ima now 22 hito-ri one person   |
| 12 iku-tsu how many; how old (age) | 23 futu-ri two persons             |
| See § 14                           | 24 san-nin three persons           |
| 13 hito-tsu one See § 14           | 25 yo-nin four persons             |

へやの すみに 大きい 本だなが あります。 その 横に  
カレンダーが あります。  
まどの そばに ロッカーも あります。  
—計算機は 何台 ありますか。  
全部で 三台 あります。 わたしの うしろと へやの ま  
ん中と あの 黒板の 前に 一台ずつ あります。



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 26 go-nin five persons                                       | 37 yoko (N) beside, by                 |
| 27 hachi-nin eight persons                                   | 38 karenda 'calendar' 39 mado window   |
| 28 ka-chō section chief -chō chief                           | 40 soba (N) beside, close by           |
| 29 oku the end of a room, inner part                         | 41 rokkō 'locker'                      |
| 30 ue top; surface; upper part See § 13                      | 42 keisan-ki calculator, computer      |
| 31 ya and See § 15   | keisan calculation -ki machine         |
| 32 denwa telephone   | 43 -dai (Count. for machines) See § 14 |
| 33 -satsu (Count. for books) See § 14                        | 44 ushiro (N) back, rear               |
| 34 -bon =-hon, -pon (Count. for cylindrical things) See § 14 | 45 to and See § 15                     |
| 35 suri corner (seen from inside)                            | 46 man-naka center, middle             |
| cf. kado (corner from outside)                               | man- =ma- at the height/center of      |
| 36 hon-dana bookshelf  | 47 kokuban blackboard                  |
| -dana =tana shelf  | 48 mae (N) before, front               |
|  | 49 ...zutsu ...each                    |

## Dai 3-ka Heya no Naka

1 Koko wa eigyō-ka no heyasu desu.

Kono heyasu niwa *doa* ga futa-tsu arimasu.

Heyasu no naka niwa tsukue ga takusan arimasu.

Hito mo takusan imasu.

2 —Tsukue wa iku-tsu arimasu ka?

Hito-tsu, futa-tsu, mit-tsu, yot-tsu, itsu-tsu...zenbu de jū-go arimasu.

Iso mo jū-go arimasu.

—Hito wa nan-nin imasu ka?

Ima, hito-ri, futa-ri, san-nin, yo-nin, go-nin...hachi-nin imasu.

3 —Ka-chō-san no tsukue wa doko desu ka?

Heyasu no oku desu. Watashi no tsukue wa kore desu.

Tsukue no ue niwa, hon ya *bōru-pen* ya denwa ga arimasu.

Hon wa go-satsu, *bōru-pen* wa san-bon arimasu.

Heyasu no sumi ni ōkii hon-dana ga arimasu.

Sono yoko ni *karendā* ga arimasu.

Mado no soba ni *rokkā* mo arimasu.

—Keisan-ki wa nan-dai arimasu ka?

Zenbu de san-dai arimasu. Watashi no ushiro to heyasu no man-naka to ano kokuban no mae ni ichi-dai zutsu arimasu.

## Lesson 3 Inside the Room

1 This is the sales section's room.

There are two doors to this room.

There are many desks in the room.

There are also many people.

2 —How many desks are there?

One, two, three, four, five... There are fifteen in all.

There are also fifteen chairs.

—How many people are there?

One, two, three, four, five... There are eight persons here now.

3 —Where is the Section Chief's desk?

It is in the back of the room. This is my desk.

There are books, ball-point pens, and a telephone on the desk.

There are five books and three ball-point pens.

There is a big bookshelf in the corner of the room.

There is a calendar next to the bookshelf.

There are also some lockers near the window.

—How many computers are there?

There are three in all. There is one behind me, one in the middle of the room, and one in front of that blackboard.

### ANSWERS (pp. 40, 41)

I. (B) 1. (Tokel no migi ni) denwa ga arimasu. 2. (Tēburu no ue ni) ringo to *tabako* ga arimasu. 3. (Hana wa) *terebi* no ue ni arimasu. 4. (Hon wa) *terebi* no shita ni arimasu.

II. (B) 1. (Ki no shita ni) onna no ko ga imasu. 2. (Anata no yoko ni) *Tomu to Jon* ga imasu. 3. (Tarō wa) *jidōsha* no naka ni imasu. 4. (Neko wa) isu no ue ni imasu. 5. (Tori wa) ki no ue ni imasu.

IV. 1. Q: Bijutsu-kan wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Bijutsu-kan wa) *kōen* no man-naka ni arimasu. 2. Q: Toshō-kan wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Toshō-kan wa) *daigaku* no soba ni arimasu. 3. Q: Anata no *kazoku* wa doko ni imasu ka? A: Watashi no *kazoku* wa *Kanada* ni imasu. 4. Q: Byōin wa doko ni arimasu ka? A: (Byōin wa) *yūbin-kyoku* no mae ni arimasu. 5. Q: Ka-chō-san wa doko ni imasu ka? A: (Ka-chō-san wa) *mado* no soba ni imasu.

## § 12 Existence, Location, and Quantity

(Location)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{N (inanimate)} \\ \text{N (animate)} \end{array} \right\}$  **ga** (Quantity)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{arimasu.} \\ \text{imasu.} \end{array} \right.$

e.g. Koko ni denwa ga arimasu. 'Here is a telephone.'

Asoko ni gakusei ga imasu. 'There is a student over there.'

The Particle **ni** is attached to N denoting place and expresses the location of something that exists. *Arimasu* (Dictionary form *aru*) is used for inanimate objects or abstract N such as books, telephones, problems, causes, etc., while *imasu* (Dictionary form *iru*) is used for living beings such as people, dogs, fish, birds, etc.

When the location or quantity of a particular thing or person is the focus of the sentence, the following pattern is used.

N **wa** (Location) (Quantity) **arimasu/imasu.**

e.g. Anata no tsukue wa doko ni arimasu ka? 'Where is your desk?'

—(Watashi no tsukue wa) koko ni arimasu. 'My desk is here.'

## § 13 Relative Position

N no	ue	ni	}	'on/over/above/on top of'	
	shita			'under/beneath/below'	
	mae			'in front of'	
	ushiro			'behind/at the back of'	
	naka			'in/inside'	
	soto			'outside of'	
	hidari			'to the left of'	
migi	'to the right of'				
				}	N'

## § 14 How to Count Things or Persons (See Appendix)

Japanese has two different sets of Numerals: one native Japanese ('J' in the table below) and the other of Chinese origin ('C' below).

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
'J'	hito-	futa-	mi-	yo(n)-	itsu-	mu-	nana-	ya-	kokono-	tō
'C'	ichi	ni	san	shi	go	roku	shichi	hachi	ku/kyū	jū

When actually counting things, it is necessary to combine 'C' Numerals (with a few exceptions) and what are called Counters (or Counter-suffixes) depending upon the kind of thing to be counted. The Counters that are most commonly used are the following:

-mai for thin, flat objects like paper, plates, shirts, etc.

-hon for long, slender objects like trees, pencils, chalk, etc.

(h is replaced by p after 1, 6 and 10, and by b after 3. See Appendix.)

-satsu for books

-dai for automobiles, bicycles, typewriters, tape recorders, etc.

-hiki for small animals

-wa for birds (-pa after 6 and 10, and -ba after 3)

-nin for people

Exceptions: 'one person' = hito-ri; 'two —' = futa-ri; 'four —' = yo-nin

When expressing numbers in the abstract, as in mathematics, the 'C' Numerals alone are used. For things which are not clearly categorized or which are shapeless, the suffix -tsu is attached to the 'J' Numerals, e.g. stones, cups, boxes, stars, ideas, problems, etc.

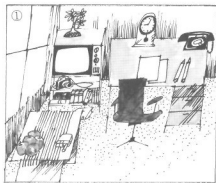
## § 15 Noun-conjoining Particles: to and ya

N<sub>1</sub> to N<sub>2</sub> to N<sub>3</sub> 'N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, and N<sub>3</sub>' (implying that these three things are all that there are—'exhaustive')

N<sub>1</sub> ya N<sub>2</sub> ya N<sub>3</sub> 'N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, and N<sub>3</sub>' (among others—'non-exhaustive')

## I. Practice with the picture.

(A) Locate the things in the picture (①) as shown in the examples.



1. Tsukue no mae ni isu ga arimasu.
2. Tsukue no ue ni denwa ya tokei ya enpitsu<sup>1</sup> ga arimasu.
3. Denwa no hidari<sup>2</sup> ni tokei ga arimasu.
4. Ringo<sup>3</sup> no migi<sup>4</sup> ni tabako ga arimasu.
5. Mado no soba ni terebi<sup>5</sup> to tēburu<sup>6</sup> ga arimasu.
6. Terebi no shita<sup>7</sup> ni kamera ga arimasu.

(B) Answer the following questions.

1. Tokei no migi ni nani<sup>8</sup> ga arimasu ka?
2. Tēburu no ue ni nani ga arimasu ka?
3. Hana wa doko ni arimasu ka?
4. Hon wa doko ni arimasu ka?

## II. Practice with the picture (②).

(A) Locate the people or animals in the picture.

1. Dōro<sup>9</sup> no soba ni kodomo<sup>10</sup> ga imasu.
2. Ki<sup>11</sup> no shita ni onna no ko<sup>12</sup> ga imasu.
3. Jidōsha no naka ni Tarō ga imasu.
4. Jidōsha no ushiro ni inu<sup>13</sup> ga imasu.
5. Ōkii ki to chiisai ki no aida<sup>14</sup> ni otoko<sup>15</sup> no ko ga imasu.
6. Tomu to Jon<sup>16</sup> no aida ni watashi ga imasu.
7. Watashi no tonari<sup>17</sup> ni Tomu ga imasu.

## 語句

1 enpitsu pencil	8 nani what	9 dōro road
2 hidari (N) left	10 kodomo child(ren)	
3 ringo apple	11 ki tree, wood	
4 migi (N) right	12 ko =kodomo child(ren)	
5 terebi 'television'	onna no ko girl	
6 tēburu 'table'	13 inu dog	14 aida (N) between
7 shita (N) under, beneath		

(B) Answer the following questions.

1. Ki no shita ni dare ga imasu ka?
2. Watashi no yoko ni dare to dare ga imasu ka?
3. Tarō wa doko ni imasu ka?
4. Neko<sup>18</sup> wa doko ni imasu ka?
5. Tori<sup>19</sup> wa doko ni imasu ka?



III. Practice with the pictures (①, ②).

(A) Practice the following sentences.

1. Denwa ga ichi-dai arimasu.
2. Kami<sup>20</sup> ga ni-mai<sup>21</sup> arimasu.
3. Ki wa zenbu de nan-bon arimasu ka? —Rop-pon arimasu.
4. Inu wa nan-biki<sup>22</sup> imasu ka? —Ni-hiki imasu.

(B) Make questions such as the following and answer them.

Q: Ringo wa iku-tsu arimasu ka? —A: Itsu-tsu arimasu.

## IV. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (anata no kaisha) Anata no kaisha wa doko ni arimasu ka?

A: (in Tokyo) Watashi no kaisha wa Tōkyō ni arimasu.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Q: (bijutsu-kan)                    | A: (in the middle of the park <sup>23</sup> ) |
| 2. Q: (toshō-kan)                      | A: (beside the university)                    |
| 3. Q: (anata no kazoku <sup>24</sup> ) | A: (in Canada)                                |
| 4. Q: (byōin)                          | A: (in front of the post office)              |
| 5. Q: (ka-chō-san)                     | A: (by the window)                            |

15 otoko man, male (person)

otoko no ko boy

16 Jon 'John'

17 tonari (N) (sitting/standing/living/  
placing) next (to...)

18 neko cat

19 tori bird

20 kami paper

21 -mai sheet (Count. for thin, flat  
objects) See § 1422 -biki =hiki, -piki (Count. for small  
animals)

23 kōen park

24 kazoku family

## ANATA NO SHUMI WA?

Anata no shumi<sup>1</sup> wa nan desu ka?

—*Gorufu*<sup>2</sup> desu.

Nippon niwa *gorufu-jō*<sup>3</sup> ga arimasu ka?

—Ē, takusan arimasu yo.

Hap-pyaku<sup>4</sup> gurai arimasu.

Hohō,<sup>5</sup> ōi<sup>6</sup> desu ne.

Anata wa doko no *menba*<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

—Hakone<sup>8</sup> *Kantori Kurabu*<sup>9</sup> desu.

Nan-yādo<sup>10</sup> gurai arimasu ka?

—Nana-sen-go-hyaku<sup>11</sup> desu.

Ōkii desu ne.

*Kyadi*<sup>12</sup> wa nan-nin gurai imasu ka?

—Hyaku-go-jū-nin<sup>13</sup> gurai desu.

Mina<sup>14</sup> ii<sup>15</sup> *kyadi* desu.

Mina otoko no *kyadi* desu ka?

—lie, Nippon dewa<sup>16</sup> *kyadi* wa taitei<sup>17</sup> onna desu.

Tokorode,<sup>18</sup> anata no shumi mo *gorufu* desu ka?

lie, watashi no shumi wa kitte no

What is your hobby?

—Golf.

Are there any golf courses in Japan?

—Yes, there are many.

There are about 800.

Really! That's a lot.

Where are you a member?

—Hakone Country Club.

About how many yards is it?

—7,500.

Big, isn't it?

About how many caddies are there?

—About 150.

They are all good caddies.

Are all of them male caddies?

—No. Caddies are usually women in Japan.

By the way, is your hobby golf too?

No, my hobby is stamp-collecting.

## 語句

- 1 shumi hobby
- 2 *gorufu* 'golf'
- 3 *gorufu-jō* golf course
- 4 hap-pyaku 800  
-pyaku = -hyaku, -yaku hundred
- 5 Hohō I see
- 6 ō-i many; much
- 7 *menba* 'member'
- 8 Hakone (a place name)
- 9 *kantori kurabu* 'country club'
- 10 *yādo* 'yard'
- 11 nana-sen-go-hyaku 7,500  
-sen = -zen thousand
- 12 *kyadi* 'caddie'
- 13 hyaku-go-jū-nin 150 persons
- 14 mina = minna (N/Adv) all
- 15 ii = yo-i good
- 16 de in, at
- 17 taitei (N/Adv) mostly

—Stamps are my younger sister's hobby too.

We have all kinds of beautiful and rare stamps at home.

Is that so? By the way, how old is your younger sister?

—Sixteen. She is a high school student.

This is a picture of my younger sister.

My, what a pretty sister!

—No, not really.

Do you have a younger sister too?

No, I have two younger brothers.

We are three brothers. My immediately younger brother is 25 years old.

My youngest brother is still a student.

—What university (is he going to)?

University of London. His hobby is music.

- 18 tokorode By the way
- 19 shūshū (Nv) collection
- 20 mezurashi-i rare
- 21 iroiro (N/Na/Adv)  
variety, several kinds
- 22 jū-roku-sai 16 years old  
-sai age, ...old
- 23 kōkō-sei high school student  
kōkō = kōtō-gakkō high school -sei student
- 24 Hō I see
- 25 iyā well, no...
- 26 ...hodo degree See § 104  
sore hodo to that degree
- 27 ni with See § 12, § 68
- 28 kyōdai brothers and/or sisters
- 29 ni-jū-go-sai 25 years old
- 30 mada still See § 25
- 31 ongaku music

shūshū<sup>19</sup> desu.

—Watashi no imōto no shumi mo kitte desu. Uchi niwa kirei-na kitte ya

mezurashii<sup>20</sup> kitte ga iroiro<sup>21</sup> arimasu.

Sō desu ka. Tokorode, imōto-san wa iku-tsu desu ka?

—Jū-roku-sai<sup>22</sup> desu. Kōkō-sei<sup>23</sup> desu.

Kore wa imōto no shashin desu.

Hō<sup>24</sup>..., kirei-na imōto-san desu ne...

—Iyā<sup>25</sup>... sore hodo<sup>26</sup> demo arimasen.

Anata nimo<sup>27</sup> imōto-san ga imasu ka?

lie, otōto ga futa-ri imasu.

Watashi-tachi wa san-nin kyōdai<sup>28</sup> desu.

Watashi no tsugi no otōto wa ni-jū-go-sai<sup>29</sup> desu.

Shita no otōto wa mada<sup>30</sup> gakusei desu.

—Doko no daigaku desu ka?

Rondon Daigaku desu.

Kare no shumi wa ongaku<sup>31</sup> desu.





## カタカナ 《KATAKANA》

1. *Katakana* is now used primarily for writing loan words (except Chinese) and foreign names. Its orthographical rules are the same as those mentioned on page 33, except for rule 3. Long vowels are expressed by *—* in *katakana*.

'news'	ニュース	(nyūsu)
'coffee'	コーヒー	(kōhi)
'elevator'	エレベーター	(erebētā)

2. Because of the phonetic characters in Japanese, some foreign pronunciations cannot be transliterated properly. Vowels are inserted into consonant clusters and added when a foreign word ends in any consonant except *n*.

'street'	ストリート	( <u>su</u> for <u>ito</u> )
'Christmas'	クリスマス	( <u>ku</u> ri <u>su</u> ma <u>su</u> )

Some sounds which are different in a foreign language, *l* and *r* for example, are expressed as the same sound in Japanese.

'locker'	ロッカー	(rokkā)
'rocket'	ロケット	(roketto)
'ballet'	バレエ	(barē)
'volleyball'	バレーボール	(barēbōru)
'bus'	バス	(basu)
'bath'		

3. Long words are often abbreviated.

'television'	テレビ	(terebi)
'building'	ビル	(biru)
'demonstration'	デモ	(demo)
'strike' (walkout)	スト	(suto)
'mass communication'	マスコミ	(masukomi)

ラジオ	radio
タクシー	taxi
レコード	record, disc
カメラ	camera
マッチ	matches
ミシン	sewing machine
フォーク	fork, folk
プレゼント	present, gift
ピンポン	ping-pong
ギター	guitar
ピアノ	piano

パン	bread
ビール	beer
ジュース	juice
サンドイッチ	sandwich
ノート	notebook
ボールペン	ball-point pen
ワイシャツ	white shirt
タイプライター	typewriter
テープレコーダー	tape recorder
バイオリン	violin
デパート	department store

アジア	Asia
アメリカ	America
タイ	Thailand
インド	India
マレーシア	Malaysia
フランス	France
イギリス	England
カナダ	Canada
オーストラリア	Australia
メキシコ	Mexico
モスクワ	Moscow
ロンドン	London
ノーベル	Nobel
ショパン	Chopin
ゲーテ	Goethe

アフリカ	Africa
ヨーロッパ	Europe
ビルマ	Burma
インドネシア	Indonesia
フィリピン	Philippines
ドイツ	Germany
スウェーデン	Sweden
ニュージーランド	New Zealand
アルゼンチン	Argentina
ブラジル	Brazil
ワシントン	Washington
ミュンヘン	Munich
ミケランジェロ	Michelangelo
プラトン	Plato
トルストイ	Tolstoy

# 第 4 課

## わたしの一日<sup>1</sup>

TAPE  
No. 1  
Side 2

① わたしは 毎朝 六時半に 起きます。そして ラジオの 中国語の 勉強を 始めます。中国語の 発音は たいへん むずかしいです。七時半ごろ 朝ご飯を 食べます。

② わたしの 家は 郊外に あります。会社は 町の まん中に あります。家から 駅まで 十分あまり 歩きます。そして 電車で 会社へ 行きます。家から 会社まで 五十五分 かかります。電車は いつも たいへん こみます。

③ 会社は 九時に 始まります。仕事は たいてい 六時に 終わります。  
ときどき 駅から タクシーで 帰ります。三分ぐらいて す。百七十円 かかります。

### 語句

1 -nichi day	18 kara from See § 20
2 mai-asa every morning	19 made till, to See § 20
mai- every	20 -pun=-fun minutes
asa (N/Adv) morning	21 ...amari a little over...
3 -ji o'clock 4-han half	22 densha tramcar
5 ni at See § 18	23 de with See § 21
6 oki-ru get up	24 e to, toward See § 19
7 soshite and; and then	25 ik-u go
8 rajio 'radio'	26 kakar-u (Vi) take; cost
9 Chūgoku-go Chinese (language)	27 kom-u get crowded
Chūgoku China	28 hajimar-u (Vi) begin
10 benkyō (Nv) study	29 taitēi (Adv) usually
11 o See § 17	30 owar-u (Vi) end
12 hajime-ru (Vt) begin, start	31 tokidoki sometimes, now and then
13 hatsuon (Nv) pronunciation	32 tokushi 'taxi'
14 ...goro about (for time) See § 23	33 kaer-u (Vi) go/come home
15 asa-gohan breakfast	34 -en yen
gohan meal; boiled rice	35 ryokō-sha travel agency
16 tabe-ru eat 17 kōgai suburb	ryokō (Nv) travel -sha company

④ わたしの 会社は 旅行社です。わたしは 本社に います。支店は 全国に 八か所 あります。仕事は たいへん おもしろいです。

わたしたちは よく 出張します。来週は 九州へ 行きます。しかし、出張は とても つかれます。

⑤ 日曜日は ほとんどの 会社は 休みます。しかし、わたしの 会社は めったに 休みません。社員は こうたいで 休みます。

休みの 日は 一か月に 四回ほどです。その 日は 昼ごろに 起きます。あまり 外出しませんが、うちで ゆっくり 小説を 読みます。夜は ビールを 少し 飲みます。そして ステレオで 音楽を 聞きます。ときどき テレビも 見ます。

36 hon-sha head office	51 sha-in member of a firm
37 shi-ten branch office	52 kōtai (Nv) shift, change
38 zenkoku the whole country	kōtai de by turns, alternately
39 -ka-sho (number of) places	53 yasumi holiday; absence
40 yoku often; well	54 hi day
41 shutchō (Nv) business trip	55 -ka-getsu (number of) months
42 rai-shū next week	56 ni in, per 57 -kai ...times
rai- next, coming shū week	58 ...hodo about, approximately
43 Kyūshū (the southern island of Japan)	59 hiru (N/Adv) noon, daytime
44 shikashi but, however	60 gaishutsu (Nv) going out
45 totemo=tottemo very much	61 de at, in See § 29
46 tsukare-ru get tired; tiring	62 yukkuri leisurely; slowly
47 Nichi-yōbi Sunday	63 yom-u read
-yōbi day of the week -bi day	64 yoru (N/Adv) night
48 hotondo (N/Adv) most, almost	65 biru 'beer'
49 yasum-u rest, have a holiday; be absent	66 sukoshi (N/Adv) a little, some
50 mettani...nai seldom...	67 nom-u drink 68 sutereo 'stereo'
	69 kiku-u listen, hear
	70 mi-ru see, watch

## Dai 4-ka

### Watashi no Ichi-nichi

1 Watashi wa mai-asa roku-ji-han ni okimasu. Soshite *rajio* no Chūgoku-go no benkyō o hajimemasu. Chūgoku-go no hatsuon wa taihen muzukashii desu. Shichi-ji-han goro asa-gohan o tabemasu.

2 Watashi no ie wa kōgai ni arimasu. Kaisha wa machi no man-naka ni arimasu. Ie kara eki made jū-pun amari arukimasu. Soshite densha de kaisha e ikimasu. Ie kara kaisha made go-jū-go-fun kakarimasu. Densha wa itsumo taihen komimasu.

3 Kaisha wa ku-ji ni hajimarisu. Shigoto wa taitei roku-ji ni owarimasu. Tokidoki eki kara *takushi* de kaerimasu. San-pun gurai desu. Hyakunana-jū-en kakarimasu.

4 Watashi no kaisha wa ryokō-sha desu. Watashi wa hon-sha ni imasu. Shi-ten wa zenkoku ni hachi-ka-sho arimasu. Shigoto wa taihen omoshiroi desu.

Watashi-tachi wa yoku shutchō-shimasu. Rai-shū wa Kyūshū e ikimasu. Shikashi, shutchō wa totemo tsukaremasu.

5 Nichi-yōbi wa hotondo no kaisha wa yasumimasu. Shikashi, watashi no kaisha wa mettani yasumimasen. Sha-in wa kōtai de yasumimasu.

Yasumi no hi wa ik-ka-getsu ni yon-kai hodo desu. Sono hi wa hiru goro ni okimasu. Amari gaishutsu-shimasen. Uchi de yukkuri shōsetsu o yomimasu. Yoru wa *biru* o sukoshi nomimasu. Soshite *sutereo* de ongaku o kikimasu. Tokidoki *terebi* mo mimasu.

## Lesson 4

### My Day

1 I get up at 6:30 every morning. Then I (begin to) study Chinese over the radio. Chinese pronunciation is very difficult. I have breakfast around 7:30.

2 My house is in the suburbs. Where I work is in the middle of town. It is about a ten-minute walk from my house to the train station. Then I take a train to my office. It takes about 55 minutes from my house to the office. The train is always very crowded.

3 My workday begins at 9:00. I usually finish work around 6:00.

Sometimes I go home from the station by cab. It takes about 3 minutes. It costs ¥170.

4 I work for a travel bureau. I am in the main office. We have eight branches throughout the nation. My work is very interesting.

We make a lot of business trips. Next week I will go to Kyushu. But business trips are very tiring.

5 Most companies have Sundays off. But we seldom take the day off where I work. The employees take turns taking days off.

We have about four days off a month. On those days, I get up around noon. I do not go out much. I read stories leisurely at home. In the evening, I have a little beer. Then I listen to music on my stereo. Sometimes I watch television too.

#### ANSWERS (pp. 52, 53)

I. Watashi wa mai-nichi 1. roku-ji jū-go-fun ni asa-gohan o tabemasu. 2. roku-ji-han ni shinbun o yomimasu. 3. ku-ji jū-pun mae ni kaisha e/ni ikimasu. 4. ku-ji ni shigoto o hajimemasu. 5. go-ji ni shigoto o owarimasu. 6. shichi-ji ni ie e/ni kaerimasu. 7. shichi-ji jū-go-fun ni *terebi* o mimasu. 8. jū-ji ni *rajio* o kikimasu. 9. jū-ichi-ji ni nemasu.

III. 1. de 2. ni/e/ni 3. o/o/wa/de/o 4. ni;ni/e/ni;kara;made/de

IV. 1. Rai-shū watashi wa (watashi no) itoko no ie e/ni ikimasu. Kare no ie wa Tōkyō no kōgai ni arimasu. Watashi no ie kara kare no ie made densha de ichi-jikan gurai desu/kakarimasu. Kare no ie no atari wa shizuka desu. 2. Kyūshū ni watashi no kaisha no shi-ten ga arimasu. Desukara watashi wa ni-ka-getsu ni ik-kai Kyūshū e shutchō-shimasu. Rai-shū watashi wa Kyūshū e ikimasu. Watashi wa itsumo Fukuoka e hikōki de ikimasu. Ichi-jikan-han hodo/gurai kakarimasu.

● 文法

§ 16 Expressing Actions or Events—Verbal Predicates

N wa/ga (Time) (Place) (Direction) (Object) V-masu.

Question: N wa . . . V-masu ka?

Negation: N wa . . . V-masen.

In ordinary polite speech, the present affirmative form of all Verbs ('V') ends with **-masu**: e.g. okimasu 'get up,' ikimasu 'go.' 'V-masu' expresses actions or events which regularly or repeatedly take place, or which are to take place in the future. (There is no 'future tense' as such in Japanese.) It may also express the speaker's will when N (ga/wa) is a first person Noun.

e.g. *Watashi wa mai-asa 6-ji ni okimasu.* 'I get up at 6:00 every morning.'

*Anata wa rai-shū Hokkaidō e ikimasu ka?* 'Will you go to Hokkaido next week?' 'Are you going to go to Hokkaido next week?'

→(affirmative answer) *Hai, ikimasu.* 'Yes, I will/am.'

→(negative answer) *lie, ikimasen.* 'No, I won't/am not.'

Object, Direction, Place, Time, etc., are expressed, in any order, in the form 'N+P' as shown in the following sections. 'N **ga**' indicates that N is the performer of an action or that which exists or undergoes a change ('Subject'). 'N **ga**' or 'N **o**' ('Direct Object') changes to 'N **wa**' when N is the Topic. **Wa** may be attached to other 'N+P' or Adverbs when that part of the sentence is being contrasted with something else.

§ 17 Direct Object: N o (+Vt) (Vt: 'Transitive Verb')

e.g. *Watashi wa hon o yomimasu.* 'I read books.'

I book read

*Anata wa nani o tabemasu ka.* 'What will you have (to eat)?'

—*Tenpura o tabemasu.* 'I'll have *tempura*.'

§ 18 Point of Time: N ni 'at (6:00),' 'on (Sunday)'

e.g. *Watashi wa roku-ji ni okimasu.* 'I get up at 6:00.'

NB: Some N or N-Phrases expressing time, period, or frequency do not require -ni because of their Adverbial character.

e.g. *kyō* 'today,' *kon-shū* 'this week'

§ 19 Direction: N e 'to...,' 'toward...'

e.g. *Tōkyō e ikimasu* 'go to Tokyo'

*Ashita koko e kimasu.* 'I'll come here tomorrow.'



§ 20 Starting Point: N kara 'from...'

Ending Point: N made 'till...,' 'up to...,' 'as far as...'

e.g. *Kyōto kara Ōsaka made hashirimasu* Kyōtō Ōsaka  
*ku-ji kara jū-ji made hashirimasu* 9:00 10:00



NB: 'N made' is different from 'N e' in that 'N made+V' implies that the action or event expressed by V continues up to the point of N, while 'N e' merely shows a physical direction in which something moves. Thus 'e' cannot be attached to N expressing time. 'From 6 till (to) 10' \*6-ji kara 10-ji e

§ 21 Instrument or Means: N de 'with...,' 'by...'

e.g. *noifu de kirimasu* 'cut with a knife'

*Tōkyō e hikōki de ikimasu* 'go to Tokyo by plane'



§ 22 Conjunctions

Soshite... 'And...'

Sore kara... 'And then...'

Shikashi... 'But...'

Keredomo... 'However, ...'

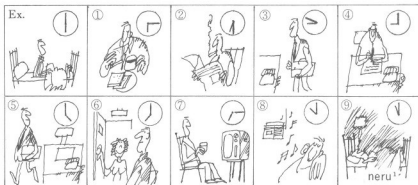
§ 23 Approximation: goro, hodo, and gurai

N (point of time) goro e.g. *jū-ji goro* '(at) about 10:00'

N (length of time or quantity) hodo/gurai e.g. *jup-pun hodo/gurai*

'(for) about 10 minutes' *sen-en hodo/gurai* 'about 1,000 yen'

## I. Make sentences to suit the chart.

Ex. (6-ji)→Watashi wa mai-nichi<sup>2</sup> roku-ji ni okimasu.

- |                                    |                  |
|------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. (6-ji 15-fun)                   | 6. (7-ji)        |
| 2. (6-ji-han)                      | 7. (7-ji 15-fun) |
| 3. (9-ji 10-pun mae <sup>3</sup> ) | 8. (10-ji)       |
| 4. (9-ji)                          | 9. (11-ji)       |
| 5. (5-ji)                          |                  |

## II. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. Q: (*pan*<sup>4</sup> o tabemasu) (mai-nichi)Anata wa mai-nichi *pan* o tabemasu ka?A: (Hai) Hai, mai-nichi *pan* o tabemasu.

(lie) lie, mai-nichi wa tabemasen. Tokidoki tabemasu.

1. Q: (*sanpo*<sup>5</sup>-shimasu) (mai-asa) A: (lie)  
 2. Q: (*denwa* o kakemasu<sup>6</sup>) (yoku) A: (Hai)

## 語句

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 ne-ru sleep                           | 7 tegami letter, mail  |
| 2 mai-nichi every day                   | 8 kak-u write; draw    |
| 3 mae before                            | 9 mai-shū every week   |
| 4 <i>pan</i> bread                      | 10 mai-ban every night |
| 5 sanpo (Nv) stroll, walk               | ban (N/Adv) night      |
| 6 denwa o kake-ru make a telephone call | 11 su-u inhale         |
|   | tabako o su-u smoke    |

3. Q: (*tegami*<sup>7</sup> o kakimasu<sup>8</sup>) (mai-shū<sup>9</sup>) A: (lie)4. Q: (*sake* o nomimasu) (mai-ban<sup>10</sup>) A: (lie)(B) Ex. Q: (*terebi* o mimasu) (yoku) Anata wa yoku *terebi* o mimasu ka?A: (*mettani*) lie, mettani mimasen.

1. Q: (*tabako* o suimasu<sup>11</sup>) (yoku) A: (*mettani*)  
 2. Q: (*shōsetsu* o yomimasu) (yoku) A: (*amari*)  
 3. Q: (*shutcho*-shimasu) (yoku) A: (*mettani*)

## III. Fill in the blanks.

Ex. Watashi wa mai-asa shinbun (o) yomimasu.

1. Watashi wa itsumo *bōru-pen* ( ) *tegami* o kakimasu.  
 2. Watashi wa mai-nichi *shichi-ji* ( ) *ie* ( ) *kaerimasu*.  
 3. Watashi wa yoku *terebi* ( ) mimasu. *Amari rajio* ( ) *kikimasen*.  
*Shikashi tokidoki rajio* ( ) *ongaku* ( ) *kikimasu*.  
 4. Watashi wa Tōkyō no *kaisha* ( ) imasu. *Kōbe*<sup>12</sup> ( ) *kaisha* no *shiten ga arimasu*. *Desukara*<sup>13</sup> *watashi wa yoku Kōbe* ( ) *ikimasu*. *Tōkyō* ( ) *Ōsaka*<sup>14</sup> ( ) *Shin-kansen*<sup>15</sup> ( ) *ikimasu*.

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. Next week I am going to my cousins'. His house is in the suburbs of Tokyo. It takes about an hour<sup>16</sup> by train from my house to his. It is quiet around his house.  
 2. My company has a branch office in Kyushu. So I make a business trip to Kyushu every two months. Next week I am going to Kyushu. I always go to Fukuoka<sup>17</sup> by plane.<sup>18</sup> It takes about an hour and a half.

12 Kōbe (a place name)

18 hikōki airplane

13 *desukara* thus, and so

14 Ōsaka (the second biggest city in Japan)

15 Shin-kansen New Trunk Line

16 *jikan* hour -kan for, during

17 Fukuoka (a place name)

## IKURA?

—Irasshaimase.<sup>1</sup>*Fuirumu*<sup>2</sup> wa arimasu ka?—Hai, gozaimasu. *Karā*<sup>3</sup> desu ka?Ē, san-jū-roku-mai-dori<sup>4</sup> desu.—*Nega-karā*<sup>5</sup> desu ka, *poji*<sup>6</sup> desu ka?*Nega* desu. *Ikura*<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

—Yon-hyaku-ni-jū-en desu.

*Zūmu renzu*<sup>8</sup> wa arimasu ka?—Hai, san-shurui<sup>9</sup> arimasu ga...*Shōto*<sup>10</sup> *zūmu*, arimasu ka?—*Shōto zūmu* desu ne.Chotto o-machi-kudasai.<sup>11</sup>Hai, o-matase-shimashita.<sup>12</sup> Kore desu.Naruhodo<sup>13</sup>... Karui desu ne.Nan-*miri*<sup>14</sup> kara nan-*miri* no *zūmu* desu

ka?

—Ē...to, yon-jū-san kara hachi-jū-roku-  
*miri* desu.

Benri desu yo.

—Can I help you?  
Do you have film?  
—Yes, we do. Color?  
Yes, with 36 exposures.  
—Negative color film (for prints) or positive (for slides)?  
Negative. How much is it?  
—420 yen.  
Do you have zoom lenses?  
—Yes, we have three different kinds.  
Do you have the short zoom?  
—Short zoom, is it?  
Wait a minute, please.  
Sorry to have kept you waiting. This is it.  
I see.  
Light, isn't it? From how many millimeters to how many millimeters (does this zoom lens work)?  
—Well, let me see. From 43 to 86 millimeters. It's very convenient.

## 語句

- 1 irasshaimase (Cph: greeting of welcome)  
(irassar-u (Honorific) be; come; go See § 118)
- 2 *fuirumu* 'film'
- 3 *karā* 'color'
- 4 *mai-dori* ...exposures (photo)  
-mai (Count. for paper, etc.) See § 14  
dori → tor-u (take)
- 5 *nega karā* 'negative color,' film for prints
- 6 *poji* 'positive,' slides
- 7 *ikura* how much
- 8 *zūmu renzu* 'zoom lens'
- 9 *shurui* kinds
- 10 *shōto* 'short'
- 11 O-machi-kudasai (Cph) -  
mats-u wait  
o...kudasai please  
kudasai please give/  
do...to/for me.  
See § 43

How much is it?  
—The list price is 34,000 yen, but (do you want to buy it) tax-free?  
Yes, tax-free.  
Here is my passport.  
—Well, in that case, it is 29,000 yen.  
OK, I'll take it.  
Here are three 10,000 yen bills.  
—Thank you.  
Wait a minute, please.  
Here is your 1,000 yen change. And this is your guarantee.  
Thank you.

- ←kudasar-u  
12 O-matase-shimashita (Cph)  
o...suru (Polite form of suru)  
-ase-ru See § 72  
13 *naruhodo* Oh, I see  
14 -*miri* 'millimeter'  
15 *teika* fixed/list price  
16 -*man* ten thousands  
17 *menzei* (N) tax-free  
zei tax  
18 *pasupōto* 'passport'  
19 *Jā* Then  
20 *satsu* bank note  
21 *shibaraku* for a while  
22 *tsuri* change, money  
given back for balance  
23 *sore kara* and then, after that  
24 *hoshō-sho* warranty card  
*hoshō* (Nv) guarantee  
-*sho* document

Ikura desu ka?

—*Teika*<sup>15</sup> wa *san-man*<sup>16</sup>-*yon-sen-en* desu  
ga, *menzei*<sup>17</sup> desu ka?Ē, *menzei* desu.*Watashi no pasupōto*<sup>18</sup> wa koko ni ari-  
masu.—*Soredewa*..., *ni-man-kyū-sen-en* desu.*Jā*,<sup>19</sup> *sore o* kudasai.Hai, *ichi-man-en-satsu*<sup>20</sup> *san-mai* desu.—*Arigatō gozaimasu*.*Shibaraku*<sup>21</sup> o-machi-kudasai.Hai, *sen-en* no o-*tsuri*<sup>22</sup> desu.*Sore kara*,<sup>23</sup> *kore wa hoshō-sho*<sup>24</sup> desu.*Dōmo arigatō gozaimashita*.

## あなたとわたし

①あなたは 学生<sup>がくせい</sup>です。会社員<sup>かいしゃいん</sup>ではありません。わたしも 会社員<sup>かいしゃいん</sup>ではありません。学生<sup>がくせい</sup>です。

②あの 人は ジョーンズ<sup>1</sup>さんです。医者<sup>いしや</sup>です。

③あなたは 何人<sup>なにじん</sup>ですか。

—わたしは 中国人<sup>ちゆうごくじん</sup>です。名まえは ウー<sup>4</sup>です。

④ジョーンズ<sup>1</sup>さんは 今<sup>いま</sup> 日本<sup>にっぽん</sup>に います。かれの 家族<sup>かぞく</sup>は ニューヨーク<sup>5</sup>に います。

⑤それは なんですか。

—これは 字引き<sup>じびき</sup>です。

英語<sup>えいご</sup>の 字引き<sup>じびき</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、そうではありません。

スペイン語<sup>えいご</sup>の 字引き<sup>じびき</sup>です。

⑥あしたは 五月<sup>ごご</sup> 三日<sup>みっぴ</sup>です。

けんぼう記念日<sup>きねんび</sup>です。

### Names of the MONTHS

一月 <sup>いちがつ</sup>	Jan.	七月 <sup>しちがつ</sup>	July
二月 <sup>にがつ</sup>	Feb.	八月 <sup>はちがつ</sup>	Aug.
三月 <sup>さんがつ</sup>	Mar.	九月 <sup>くがつ</sup>	Sept.
四月 <sup>しがつ</sup>	Apr.	十月 <sup>じゅうがつ</sup>	Oct.
五月 <sup>ごがつ</sup>	May	十一月 <sup>じゅういちがつ</sup>	Nov.
六月 <sup>ろくがつ</sup>	June	十二月 <sup>じゅうにがつ</sup>	Dec.

### 語句

- Jōzū 'Jones'
- nani-jin What nationality...  
nani=nan what
- Chūgoku-jin Chinese (person)
- Ū (a Chinese name)
- Nyū Yōku 'New York'
- jibiki=jisho dictionary
- ei-go English (language)  
cf. Ei-koku (England)
- Supein-go Spanish (language)  
Supein 'Spain'
- ashita=asu tomorrow
- Go-gatsu May
- mik-ka the third day (of the month)
- Kenpō-kinen-bi Constitution Memorial Day

- kenpō Constitution  
kinen (Nv) commemoration
- basu 'bus'
  - gakkō school
  - tabako-ya tobacco shop  
-ya shop
  - hako box
  - pon=-hon,-bon See § 14
  - Itaria 'Italy'
  - Rōma 'Rome'
  - Doitsu-jin German (person)  
Doitsu Germany
  - Furansu-jin French (person)  
Furansu 'France'
  - budō-shu wine  
budō grapes -shu liquor

⑦あなたの 自動車<sup>じどうしゃ</sup>は 大きい<sup>おお</sup>ですか。

—いいえ、大きくない<sup>ちひさい</sup>です。小さい<sup>ちひさい</sup>です。

⑧あなたは バス<sup>13</sup>で 学校<sup>がっこう</sup><sup>14</sup>へ 行き<sup>い</sup>ますか。

—いいえ、電車<sup>でんしゃ</sup>で 行き<sup>い</sup>ます。

⑨たばこ屋<sup>15</sup>は どこに あり<sup>あ</sup>りますか。

—あの ビルの うしろに あり<sup>あ</sup>ります。

⑩はこの 中<sup>なか</sup>に えんぴつ<sup>えんぴつ</sup>が 二本<sup>にほん</sup>と ボールペン<sup>ボールペン</sup>が 六本<sup>ろっぴん</sup><sup>17</sup> あり<sup>あ</sup>ります。

⑪イタリア<sup>18</sup>の 首都<sup>しよと</sup>は ローマ<sup>19</sup>です。ローマには 古い<sup>ふる</sup> 建物<sup>かたもの</sup>が たくさん あり<sup>あ</sup>ります。

⑫ドイツ人<sup>じよ20</sup>は ビール<sup>1</sup>を よく 飲み<sup>の</sup>ます。

フランス人<sup>じよ21</sup>は ぶどう酒<sup>ぶどうしよ</sup><sup>122</sup>を たくさん 飲み<sup>の</sup>ます。

### Names of the DAYS

- 日 tsuitachi
- 日 futsu-ka
- 日 mik-ka
- 日 yok-ka
- 日 itsu-ka
- 日 mui-ka
- 日 nano-ka
- 日 yō-ka
- 日 kokono-ka
- 日 tō-ka
- 日 jū-ichi-nichi
- 日 jū-ni-nichi
- 日 jū-san-nichi
- 日 jū-yok-ka
- 日 jū-go-nichi
- 日 jū-roku-nichi
- 日 jū-shichi-nichi
- 日 jū-hachi-nichi
- 日 jū-ku-nichi
- 日 hatsu-ka
- 日 ni-jū-ichi-nichi
- 日 ni-jū-yok-ka
- 日 san-jū-nichi

Translation: ① You are a student. You are not a company employee. I am not a company employee either. I am a student.

② That man is Mr. Jones. He is a doctor.

③ What nationality are you?—I am Chinese. My name is Wu.

④ Mr. Jones is in Japan now. His family is in New York.

⑤ What is that?—This is a dictionary.

Is it an English dictionary?—No, it is not. It is a Spanish dictionary.

⑥ Tomorrow is the third day of May. It is Constitution Day.

⑦ Is your car big?—No, it is not big. It is small.

⑧ Do you go to school by bus?—No, I go by train.

⑨ Where is a tobacco shop?—There is one behind that building.

⑩ There are two pencils and six ball-point pens in the box.

⑪ The capital of Italy is Rome. There are a lot of old buildings in Rome.

⑫ Germans drink much beer. French drink a lot of wine.

# 第 5 課 食堂で

TAPE  
No. 2  
Side 1

- ① 木村さん、あなたはもう昼ご飯を食べましたか。  
—いいえ、まだです。  
それではいっしょに地下の食堂で食べませんか。
- ② 大野さんは木村さんとろうかを歩きました。そしてエレベーターに乗りました。食堂の入り口で木村さんはたばこを買いました。—
- ③ —わたしはカレーライスを食べます。大野さんは何を食べますか。  
ぼくはきのうもおとともカレーライスを食べました。それで、きょうはすしにします。  
木村さんはゆうべの三チャンネルのコメディーを見ましたか。  
—いいえ、わたしは見ませんでした。  
うちではみんなよくテレビを見ます。ゆうべも八

語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Kimura (a family name)  | 17 <i>karé-raisu</i> 'curried rice'                                 |
| 2 <i>mō</i> already 3 <i>hiru-gohan</i> lunch                           | 18 <i>boku</i> I (male) 19 <i>kinō</i> yesterday                    |
| 4 <i>-mashita</i> See § 24  | 20 <i>ototoi</i> the day before yesterday                           |
| 5 <i>issho</i> (N) the same, together<br><i>issho-ni</i> (Adv) together | 21 <i>sorede</i> therefore  |
| 6 <i>chika</i> underground  | 22 <i>kyō</i> today   |
| 7 <i>shokudō</i> restaurant, dining hall                                | 23 <i>sushi</i> (a Japanese food of vinegared<br>rice and raw fish) |
| 8 Ōno (a family name)   | 24 ... <i>ni suru</i> will take/decide on                           |
| 9 to See § 33 10 <i>rōka</i> corridor, hall                             | 25 <i>yūbe</i> last night   |
| 11 o See § 28   | 26 <i>chaneru</i> 'channel'   |
| 12 <i>erebēto</i> 'elevator'  | 27 <i>komeidi</i> 'comedy'  |
| 13 <i>ni</i> See § 27 14 <i>nor-u</i> ride, get on                      | 28 <i>mina</i> = <i>mina</i> (N/Adv) all                            |
| 15 <i>iri-guchi</i> entrance 16 <i>ka-u</i> buy                         | 29 <i>hayaku</i> early; quick, fast ← <i>haya-i</i>                 |

時から九時半まで家族で見ました。木村さんはあまり見ませんか。

—はい、あまり見ません。いつも晩早く寝ます。  
そのかわり、朝は六時ごろ起きます。  
そうですか。早起きですね。

- ④ ところで、出張旅行の切符をもう買いましたか。  
—はい、きのう駅前の交通公社で買いました。  
わたしはまだです。きょう帰りに買います。座席指定券はまだありましたか。  
—はい、ありました。しかし、寝台券はもうありませんでした。  
しかしがありません。行きは指定席ですね。
- ⑤ —二人は食堂を出ました。そして、隣の喫茶店にはいりました。大野さんはコーヒーを飲みました。木村さんは紅茶を飲みました。それからエレベーターに乗りました。五階で二人は降りました。午後の仕事が始まります。—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 30 <i>kawari</i> substitute ← <i>kawar-u</i> (change)<br><i>sono kawari</i> instead  | 38 <i>shindai-ken</i> sleeping-car ticket<br><i>shindai</i> bed, berth   |
| 31 <i>haya-oki</i> early rising/riser  | 39 <i>shikata</i> means, way, method<br><i>shikata ga nai</i> can't be helped  |
| 32 <i>shutuchō-ryokō</i> business trip   | 40 <i>iki going</i> ← <i>ik-u</i> (go)   |
| 33 <i>kippu</i> ticket   | 41 <i>shitei-seki</i> reserved seat <i>seki</i> seat   |
| 34 <i>eki-mae</i> in front of the station  | 42 o See § 26  |
| 35 <i>Kōtsū-kōsha</i> (Japan Travel Bureau)<br><i>kōtsū</i> traffic <i>kōsha</i> corporation   | 43 <i>de-ru</i> leave, go out; graduate  |
| 36 <i>kaeri ni</i> on the way home ← <i>kaer-u</i>   | 44 <i>kissa-ten</i> teahouse, coffee shop  |
| 37 <i>zaseki-shitei-ken</i> reserved seat ticket<br><i>zaseki</i> seat (in trains, theaters, etc.)<br><i>shitei</i> (Nv) designation, specification<br><i>ken</i> ticket | 45 <i>hair-u</i> enter 46 <i>kahi</i> 'coffee'<br>47 <i>kōcha</i> black tea 48 <i>kai</i> floor<br>49 <i>ori-ru</i> get off; descend<br>50 <i>gogo</i> afternoon, p.m. |



## Dai 5-ka Shokudō de

- 1 Kimura-san, anata wa mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka?  
—lie, mada desu.  
Soredewa issho-ni chika no shokudō de tabemasen ka?
- 2 —Ono-san wa Kimura-san to rōka o arukimashita. Soshite *erebētā* ni norimashita. Shokudō no iri-guchi de Kimura-san wa *tabako* o kaimashita.—
- 3 —Watashi wa *karē-raisu* o tabemasu. Ōno-san wa nani o tabemasu ka?  
Boku wa kinō mo ototoi mo *karē-raisu* o tabemashita. Sorede kyō wa *sushi ni shimasu. Kimura-san wa yūbe no san-channeru no komedi* o mimashita ka?  
—lie, watashi wa mimasen deshita.  
Uchi dewa minna yoku *terebi* o mimasu. Yūbe mo hachi-ji kara ku-ji-han made *kazoku de mimashita. Kimura-san wa amari mimasen ka?*  
—Hai, amari mimasen. Itsumo ban hayaku nemasu.  
Sono kawari, asa wa roku-ji goro okimasu.  
Sō desu ka. Haya-oki desu ne.
- 4 Tokorode, *shutchō-ryokō* no kippu o mō kaimashita ka?  
—Hai, kinō eki-mae no *Kōtsū-kōsha* de kaimashita.  
Watashi wa mada desu. Kyō kaeri ni kaimasu. *Zaseki-shitei-ken* wa mada arimashita ka?  
—Hai, arimashita. *Shikashi, shindai-ken* wa mō arimasen deshita.  
Shikata ga arimasen. Iki wa *shitei-seki* desu ne.
- 5 —Futa-ri wa shokudō o demashita. Soshite, tonari no kissa-ten ni hairimashita. Ōno-san wa *kōhi* o nomimashita. Kimura-san wa *kōcha* o nomimashita. Sore kara *erebētā* ni norimashita. Go-kai de futa-ri wa orimashita. Gogo no shigoto ga hajimarimasu.—

## Lesson 5 At the Restaurant

- 1 Kimura, have you had lunch already?  
—Not yet.  
Then let's eat at the restaurant in the basement.
- 2 —Ono walked down the hall with Kimura. They got in the elevator. Kimura bought some cigarettes at the entrance to the restaurant.—
- 3 —I'll have the curried rice. What will you have, Ono?  
I had curried rice yesterday and the day before yesterday. So I'll have *sushi* today. Did you see the comedy on channel three last night, Kimura?  
—No, I didn't see it.  
We watch a lot of television at my house. Last night the whole family watched from 8:00 to 9:30. Don't you watch television very much, Kimura?  
—No, I don't watch much. I always go to bed early. But I get up around 6:00 in the morning instead.  
Is that so? An early-riser, are you?
- 4 Say, did you buy the ticket for your business trip yet?  
—Yes, I got it yesterday at the JTB office in front of the station.  
I haven't gotten mine yet. I'm going to get it on my way home today.  
Did they still have some reserved seat tickets left?  
—Yes, they did. But they didn't have any more sleeping car tickets.  
It can't be helped. I'll have to go by reserved seat, won't I?
- 5 —They left the dining hall. Then they went into the coffee shop next door. Ono had coffee. Kimura had tea. After that they got in the elevator. They got off at the fifth floor. The afternoon's work begins.—

### ANSWERS <pp. 64, 65>

III Kesa watashi wa 6-ji-han (ni/goro) okimashita. Soshite 7-ji goro (kara) 8-ji goro (made) kōen (o) sanpo-shimashita. Kyō wa Do-yōbi desu. Desukara watashi wa 9-ji (kara) 12-ji (made) kaisha (de) shigoto o shimashita. 12-ji-han ni kaisha (o) demashita. Soshite Shinjuku (e) ikimashita. Shinjuku (de) *Furansu* (no) eiga (o) mimashita. Eiga wa 4-ji (ni/goro) owari-mashita. Eiga-kan (kara) chika-tetsu no eki (made) arukimashita. Chika-tetsu no eki (de) tomodachi ni aimashita. Watashi wa tomodachi to issho-ni chika-tetsu (ni) norimashita. Tomodachi wa Ginza (de) chika-tetsu (o) orimashita. Watashi wa massugu ie (ni/e) kaeri-mashita.

- IV. Q: (Anata wa) itsu (*depoto* e) ikimashita ka? A: (Watashi wa) kono mae no Nichi-yōbi ni (*depoto* e) ikimashita. Q: (Anata wa) dare to ikimashita ka? A: (Watashi wa) imōto to ikimashita. Q: Nani o kaimashita ka? A: (Fuku ya kutsu ya shita-gi o) kaimashita.) Q: 7-kai no shokudō e ikimashita ka? A: Hai, ikimashita. Q: Nani o tabemashita ka? A: *Sushi* o tabemashita. Q: Nani o nomimashita ka? A: *Kōhi* o nomimashita.  
V. 1. Hai, hairimashita. (lie, hairimasen deshita.) 2. Hai, norimashita. (lie, norimasen deshita.) 3. Hai, (mō) yomimashita. (lie, mada desu.) 4. Watashi wa \_\_\_ Daigaku o demashita.

## § 24 Action or Event in the Past

N wa... V-mashita.

Negation: N wa... V-masen deshita.

- e.g. Watashi wa kyō Kyōto e ikimasu. 'I (will) go to Kyoto today.'  
 Watashi wa kinō Kyōto e ikimashita. 'I went to Kyoto yesterday.'  
 Kinō shinbun o yomimashita ka? 'Did you read the paper yesterday?'  
 —Hai, yomimashita. 'Yes, I did.'  
 —Iie, yomimasen deshita. 'No, I didn't.'

NB: 'V-mashita' indicates either (1) that an action or event took place in the past (= 'past tense' in English), or (2) that it has been finished at the time of speech (= 'present perfect' in English). This difference is shown often by Adverbs such as kinō ('yesterday'), mō ('already, yet'), etc., but sometimes only by context. When (1) is intended in a question of the form '...mashita ka?', the negative answer to it is '...masen deshita,' as seen above, whereas when (2) is intended, it should be 'mada...masen,' or simply 'mada desu.'

- e.g. (Mō) hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka? 'Have you eaten lunch yet?'  
 —Iie, mada tabemasen. 'No, I haven't eaten yet.'  
 —Iie, mada desu. 'No, not yet.'

## § 25 Adverbs (2)

	+ Aff. Predicate	+ Neg. Predicate
mō...	'already'	'(no) more; (no) longer...'
mada...	'still'	'(not) yet'
mettani...		'seldom,' 'rarely'

## § 26 Movement Out of: N o+V

ie o demasu  
 'home' 'leave'  
 'leave home'



densha o orimasu  
 'train' 'get down'  
 'get off the train'



## § 27 Movement Into: N ni+V

o-furo ni hairimasu  
 'bath' 'enter'  
 'get into the bath'



densha ni norimasu  
 'train' 'get on'  
 'get on the train'



NB: This ni is also sometimes used in place of e (See § 19).

## § 28 Walking, Flying, Passing, etc.: N o+V

kōen o sanpo-shimasu  
 'park' 'stroll'  
 'walk in the park'



Honkon o tōrimasu  
 'Hong Kong' 'pass'  
 'go by way of Hong Kong'



## § 29 General Expression of Place of Action: N de+V

- e.g. shokudō de gohan o tabemasu 'eat at the dining room'  
 Kyōto de densha ni norimashita 'got on the train in Kyoto'

## § 30 Nominal Use of the Conjunctive Form

The form to which -masu is attached is called the 'Conjunctive form.' This form can be used as a Noun (like the '-ing form' in English).

- e.g. Kyōto e ikimasu 'go to Kyoto'  
 →Iki wa densha desu. 'Going is by train.'  
 →Kyōto-iki no densha 'Kyoto-going train,' 'train for Kyoto'  
 hajimarimasu 'begin'  
 →Hajimari wa 6-ji desu. 'Beginning (time) is 6:00.'

I. Use the chart on page 52 to make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: Anata wa kinō nan-ji<sup>1</sup> ni okimashita ka?

A: Watashi wa kinō 6-ji ni okimashita.

II. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (hiru-gohan) (tabemasu) (mō)

Anata wa mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka?

A: (hai) Hai, mō tabemashita.

(jie) (kore kara<sup>2</sup>) lie, mada desu. Kore kara tabemasu.

1. Q: (shigoto) (owarimasu) (mō) A: (Hai)

2. Q: (kono hon) (yomimasu) (mō) A: (Hai)

3. Q: (hōkoku-sho<sup>3</sup>) (kakimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (kore kara)

4. Q: (ginkō) (ikimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (kore kara)

5. Q: (ano eiga<sup>4</sup>) (mimasu) (mō) A: (lie) (rai-shū)

III. Fill in the blanks.

Kesa<sup>5</sup> watashi wa 6-ji-han ( ) okimashita. Soshite 7-ji goro ( ) 8-ji goro ( ) kōen ( ) sanpo-shimashita. Kyō wa Do-yōbi<sup>6</sup> desu. Desu-kara watashi wa 9-ji ( ) 12-ji ( ) kaisha ( ) shigoto o shimashita.<sup>7</sup> 12-ji-han ni kaisha ( ) demashita. Soshite Shinjuku ( ) ikimashita. Shinjuku ( ) *Furansu* ( ) eiga ( ) mimashita. Eiga wa 4-ji ( ) owari-mashita. Eiga-kan<sup>8</sup> ( ) chika-tetsu<sup>9</sup> no eki ( ) arukimashita. Chika-tetsu no eki ( ) tomodachi<sup>10</sup> ni aimashita.<sup>11</sup> Watashi wa tomodachi to issho-ni

## 語句

- 1 nan-ji what time  
2 kore kara from now  
3 hōkoku-sho written report  
hōkoku report  
4 eiga movies 5 kesa this morning

- 6 Do-yōbi Saturday 7 suru do  
8 eiga-kan movie theater  
9 chika-tetsu subway  
chika underground  
-tetsu←-tetsudō (railway)

chika-tetsu ( ) norimashita. Tomodachi wa Ginza<sup>12</sup> ( ) chika-tetsu ( ) orimashita. Watashi wa massugu<sup>13</sup> ie ( ) kaerimashita.

IV. Continue the following dialog, using the words in parentheses.

Q: Anata wa yoku *depāto*<sup>14</sup> e ikimasu ka?

A: (amari) lie, watashi wa amari *depāto* e ikimasen.

Q: (itsu<sup>15</sup>)?

A: (kono mae no<sup>16</sup> Nichi-yōbi)

Q: (dare to)?

A: (imōto to)

Q: (nani) (kaimasu)?

A: Fuku<sup>17</sup> ya kutsu<sup>18</sup> ya shita-gi<sup>19</sup> o kaimashita.

Q: (7(nana)-kai no shokudō) (ikimasu)?

A: (Hai)

Q: (nani) (tabemasu)?

A: (sushi)

Q: (nani) (nomimasu)?

A: (kōhi)

V. Answer the following questions.

1. Kyō anata wa kīssa-ten ni hairimashita ka?
2. Kyō anata wa *takushi* ni norimashita ka?
3. Anata wa mō kyō no shinbun o yomimashita ka?
4. Anata wa dono<sup>20</sup> daigaku o demashita ka?

- 10 tomodachi friend 11 a-u meet  
12 Ginza (a shopping street in Tokyo)  
13 massugu (Na/Adv) straight  
14 *depāto* 'department store'  
15 itsu when

- 16 kono mae no last, previous  
17 fuku clothes, suit 18 kutsu shoes  
19 shita-gi underwear  
-gi clothes cf. *fudan-gi*  
20 dono which, what See § 5

## TSUKAREMASU!

O-taku kara kaisha made dore gurai<sup>1</sup>  
kakarimasu ka?

—Sō desu ne...

Ichi-jikan-han gurai desu.

Taihen<sup>2</sup> desu nē.

Mai-asa nan-ji ni okimasu ka?

—Roku-ji desu.

Soto<sup>3</sup> wa mada kurai<sup>4</sup> desu.

Uchi kara eki made ichi-kiro<sup>5</sup> hodo  
arukimasu.

Shichi-ji no kyūkō<sup>6</sup> ni norimasu.

Itsumo man'in<sup>7</sup> desu.

Sore wa tsukaremasu ne.

Kaeri no densha mo man'in desu ka?

—Ē, asa mo ban mo man'in desu.

Hiru-gohan wa doko de tabemasu ka?

—Taitēi kaisha no shokudō de  
tabemasu.

Kaisha wa nan-ji ni owarimasu ka?

—Go-ji desu ga,

How long does it take  
from your house to your  
company?

—Well, let me see....

About an hour and a  
half.

It must be very hard for  
you.

What time do you get up  
every morning?

—Six o'clock.

It's still dark outside.

I walk about one kilo-  
meter from my house to  
the station.

I take the seven o'clock  
express.

It's always crowded.

It must be very tiring for  
you.

Is the train home crowd-  
ed too?

—Yes, the trains are  
crowded in the mornings  
and in the evenings.

Where do you have lunch?

—I usually eat in the  
company cafeteria.

What time does your office  
close?

—It closes at five, but I

usually stay on at the  
office until about eight.

Oh, you are so busy.

Do you get a good salary?

—So-so.

I entered this company  
the year before last.

My current salary is  
about 80,000 yen.

Is that so?

By the way,  
when did you get married?

—Last spring.

Do you have any children?

—Yes, one born in Feb-  
ruary this year. A boy.

Does he walk yet?

—Not yet.

taitēi hachi-ji goro made kaisha ni  
nokorimasu.<sup>8</sup>

Isogashii<sup>9</sup> desu ne.

Kyūryō<sup>10</sup> wa ii desu ka?

—Māmā<sup>11</sup> desu.

Kono kaisha ni ototoshi<sup>12</sup> hairimashita.

Īma no kyūryō wa hachi-man-en gurai  
desu.

Sō desu ka.

Tokorode,

itsu kekkon<sup>13</sup>-shimashita ka?

—Kyo-nen<sup>14</sup> no haru<sup>15</sup> desu.

Kodomo-san wa imasu ka?

—Ē, kotoshi<sup>16</sup> no Ni-gatsu ni umare-  
mashita.<sup>17</sup> Otoko no ko desu.

Mō arukimasu ka?

—Mada desu.

▼ A wedding ceremony



## 語句

- 1 dore gurai about how  
much/long dore which
- 2 taihen (Na) no easy  
task, lots of trouble
- 3 soto (N) outside
- 4 kura-i dark
- 5 -kiro 'kilometer/kilo-  
gram'
- 6 kyūkō express
- 7 man'in (N) full (of peo-  
ple)
- 8 nokor-u remain

- 9 isogashi-i busy
- 10 kyūryō salary, wages
- 11 māmā moderate, so-so
- 12 ototoshi the year be-  
fore last
- 13 kekkon (Nv) marriage
- 14 kyo-nen last year
- nen year
- 15 haru spring
- 16 kotoshi this year
- 17 umare-ru be born

# 日本

日本は島国です。おもな島は北海道と、本州と、四国と、九州です。そのほか小さい島がたくさんあります。大きさはだいたい 370,000 km<sup>2</sup> (三十七万平方キロメートル) です。これはインドの  $\frac{1}{9}$  (九分の一)、アメリカの  $\frac{1}{25}$  (二十五分の一)、ソ連の  $\frac{1}{60}$  (六十分の一) です。しかし、人口は多いです。だいたい 100,000,000 人 (一億人) います。人口密度は 1 km<sup>2</sup>

に 280 人 (二百八十人) ぐらいです。

全体に山が多いです。火山もたくさんあります。そして、平野が少ないです。長い川もあまりありません。

北海道では、冬雪が降ります。しかし、九州では、めったに雪が降りません。

六月にはよく雨が降ります。夏にはいつも台風が来ます。春、さくらがさきます。たいへんきれいです。秋の

もみじも美しいです。



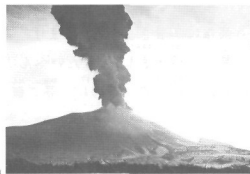
# Japan

Japan is an island country. The main islands are Hokkaido, Honshu, Shikoku, and Kyushu. Besides these, there are many small islands.

Japan is about 370,000 km<sup>2</sup> in size. This is 1/9 of India, 1/25 of the U. S. A., and 1/60 of the U. S. S. R. But Japan has a large population, about 100,000,000. The population density is about 280 people per km<sup>2</sup>.

As a whole, Japan has many mountains, including many volcanos, but few plains. There are not many long rivers either.

In winter, it often snows in Hokkaido, but seldom in Kyushu. It rains a lot in June. There are typhoons every summer. In spring, the cherry blossoms come out. They are very pretty. The maple leaves in autumn are beautiful too.



▶ Asamayama

## 語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 shima-guni island country                    | 16 oku hundred million                     |
| shima island                                   | 17 jinko-mitsudo population density        |
| -guni=kuni country, nation                     | mitsudo density                            |
| 2 omo (Na) main                                | 18 zentai (N) whole                        |
| 3 Hokkaido (the northern-most island of Japan) | zentai ni as a whole                       |
| 4 Honshu (the main Japanese island)            | 19 kazan volcano                           |
| 5 Shikoku (a southern Japanese island)         | 20 heiya plain, open field                 |
| 6 hoka other                                   | 21 sukuna-i few, little (quantity), scarce |
| sono hoka besides that                         | 22 kawa river                              |
| 7 ōki-sa size ←ōki-i (large)                   | 23 fuyu winter                             |
| 8 daitai about, approximately                  | 24 yuki snow                               |
| 9 heihō the square (of a number)               | 25 fur-u fall (rain, snow, etc.)           |
| 10 meteru 'meter'                              | 26 ame rain                                |
| 11 Indo 'India'                                | 27 natsu summer                            |
| 12 (x)bun-no-(y) y/x                           | 28 taifu typhoon                           |
| 13 Amerika 'America'                           | 29 kuru come                               |
| 14 Sa-ren the Soviet Union                     | 30 sak-u bloom                             |
| 15 jinkō population                            | 31 aki autumn, fall                        |
|  | 32 momiji maple                            |
|  | 33 utsukushi-i beautiful                   |

# 第 6 課

## ハイキング

TAPE  
No. 2  
Side 1

① きのは <sup>にちようび</sup> 日曜日 <sup>1</sup> でした。 <sup>さいわい</sup> さいわい <sup>2</sup> 朝 <sup>あさ</sup> から <sup>たいへん</sup> たいへん  
いい <sup>てんき</sup> 天気 <sup>3</sup> でしたから、 <sup>わたし</sup> わたしは <sup>ごにん</sup> 五人 <sup>4</sup> の <sup>とも</sup> 友 <sup>だち</sup> だちと <sup>ハイキ</sup> ハイキ  
ング <sup>5</sup> に <sup>いきました</sup> 行きました。 <sup>おほおか</sup> 大阪 <sup>6</sup> から <sup>きょうと</sup> 京都 <sup>7</sup> まで <sup>でんしゃ</sup> 電車 <sup>8</sup> で <sup>いきました</sup> 行きました。  
② <sup>たか</sup> 高雄 <sup>10</sup> に <sup>つ</sup> 着 <sup>11</sup> きました。 <sup>まず</sup> まず <sup>12</sup> <sup>こうしん</sup> 高山 <sup>13</sup> 寺 <sup>へ</sup> へ <sup>ゆうめい</sup> 有名 <sup>な</sup> な <sup>うし</sup> 鳥 <sup>獣</sup> 獣 <sup>戯</sup> 戯 <sup>画</sup> 画  
を <sup>み</sup> 見 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>いきました</sup> 行きました。 <sup>たいへん</sup> たいへん <sup>おもしろ</sup> おもしろ <sup>かった</sup> かったです。 <sup>わたし</sup> わた  
し <sup>たちは</sup> たちは <sup>ちかく</sup> 近くの <sup>ちやん</sup> 茶店 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>ひるごはん</sup> 昼ご飯 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>たべ</sup> たべ <sup>に</sup> に <sup>は</sup> は <sup>い</sup> い <sup>り</sup> り <sup>まし</sup> ました。

③ <sup>あそ</sup> あそこ <sup>から</sup> から <sup>さん</sup> 山 <sup>道</sup> 道 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>さん</sup> 三 <sup>キロ</sup> キロ <sup>ほど</sup> ほど <sup>あ</sup> 歩  
きました。 <sup>みち</sup> 道 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>あまり</sup> あまり <sup>いそ</sup> 急 <sup>て</sup> て <sup>は</sup> は <sup>あり</sup> あり  
ませんでした。 <sup>やま</sup> 山 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>くわい</sup> 空気 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>たい</sup> たい <sup>へん</sup> へん  
きれいで <sup>した</sup> でした。 <sup>あま</sup> 空 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>とても</sup> とても <sup>あ</sup> 青 <sup>か</sup> かった  
です。 <sup>やま</sup> 山 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>みどり</sup> みどり <sup>も</sup> も <sup>うつく</sup> 美しく <sup>な</sup> かったです。

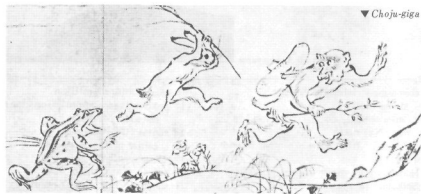
④ <sup>やが</sup> やが <sup>て</sup> て <sup>きよ</sup> 清 <sup>たに</sup> たに <sup>に</sup> に <sup>つ</sup> 着 <sup>き</sup> きました。 <sup>む</sup> む  
かし <sup>ばし</sup> 芭蕉 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>こ</sup> こ <sup>で</sup> で <sup>ゆう</sup> 有名 <sup>な</sup> な <sup>ばい</sup> 俳句 <sup>を</sup> を  
つ <sup>くり</sup> くり <sup>まし</sup> ました。 <sup>たに</sup> たに <sup>の</sup> の <sup>みづ</sup> 水 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>たい</sup> たい <sup>へん</sup> へん  
冷 <sup>た</sup> た <sup>か</sup> かった <sup>です</sup> です。 <sup>とも</sup> 友 <sup>だち</sup> だち <sup>は</sup> は <sup>しや</sup> 写 <sup>真</sup> 真 <sup>を</sup> を  
た <sup>く</sup> たく <sup>さん</sup> さん <sup>とり</sup> とり <sup>まし</sup> ました。

⑤ <sup>わたし</sup> わたし <sup>たちは</sup> たちは <sup>ごご</sup> 午後 <sup>四</sup> 四 <sup>時</sup> 時 <sup>ごろ</sup> ごろ <sup>あし</sup> 嵐 <sup>山</sup> 山 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>つ</sup> 着 <sup>き</sup> きました。 <sup>とも</sup> 友  
だ <sup>ち</sup> ちは <sup>と</sup> と <sup>と</sup> と <sup>も</sup> も <sup>つ</sup> つ <sup>か</sup> かれ <sup>まし</sup> ましたが、 <sup>わたし</sup> わたし <sup>は</sup> は <sup>あ</sup> あ <sup>ま</sup> ま <sup>り</sup> り  
つ <sup>か</sup> かれ <sup>ま</sup> ま <sup>せ</sup> せ <sup>ん</sup> んで <sup>した</sup> した。 <sup>あし</sup> 足 <sup>も</sup> も <sup>いた</sup> いた <sup>く</sup> く <sup>な</sup> なかった <sup>です</sup> です。 <sup>たい</sup> たい <sup>へん</sup> へん <sup>たの</sup> たの <sup>しい</sup> しい  
ハイ <sup>キン</sup> キン <sup>グ</sup> グ <sup>で</sup> で <sup>した</sup> した。

⑥ <sup>わたし</sup> わたし <sup>たちは</sup> たちは <sup>ごご</sup> 午後 <sup>四</sup> 四 <sup>時</sup> 時 <sup>ごろ</sup> ごろ <sup>あし</sup> 嵐 <sup>山</sup> 山 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>つ</sup> 着 <sup>き</sup> きました。 <sup>とも</sup> 友  
だ <sup>ち</sup> ちは <sup>と</sup> と <sup>と</sup> と <sup>も</sup> も <sup>つ</sup> つ <sup>か</sup> かれ <sup>まし</sup> ましたが、 <sup>わたし</sup> わたし <sup>は</sup> は <sup>あ</sup> あ <sup>ま</sup> ま <sup>り</sup> り  
つ <sup>か</sup> かれ <sup>ま</sup> ま <sup>せ</sup> せ <sup>ん</sup> んで <sup>した</sup> した。 <sup>あし</sup> 足 <sup>も</sup> も <sup>いた</sup> いた <sup>く</sup> く <sup>な</sup> なかった <sup>です</sup> です。 <sup>たい</sup> たい <sup>へん</sup> へん <sup>たの</sup> たの <sup>しい</sup> しい  
ハイ <sup>キン</sup> キン <sup>グ</sup> グ <sup>で</sup> で <sup>した</sup> した。



▲Arashiyama



▼Chōjū-giga

語句

- 1 deshita See § 31
- 2 *saiwai* (Na/Adv) luckily, fortunately
- 3 tenki (N) weather; good weather
- 4 kara (Conj) as, since, because  
See § 36
- 5 *haikingu* 'hiking'
- 6 ...ni ik-u go (for...) See § 34
- 7 Kyōto-eki Kyoto station
- 8 ippai (N) full  
...de ippai filled with...

- 9 hashir-u run
- 10 Takao (a place name)
- 11 tsuk-u arrive
- 12 mazu firstly, before anything else
- 13 Kōzan-ji (a temple in Kyoto)  
-ji (Buddhist) temple
- 14 Chōjū-giga (an ink sketch of birds  
and beasts at play)
- 15 -katta desu See § 32
- 16 chikaku neighborhood←chika-i (near)

- 17 cha-mise old-fashioned tea house  
cha tea mise shop
- 18 yama-michi mountain path  
michi way, road
- 19 kyū (Na) steep; sudden; urgent
- 20 sora sky 21 ao-i blue; green
- 22 midori green
- 23 yagate presently, soon
- 24 Kiyo-taki (a place name)  
taki waterfall

- 25 mukashi olden times
- 26 Bashō (a haiku poet: 1644-94)
- 27 haiku (a 5-7-5 syllabled poem)
- 28 tsukur-u make, produce, compose
- 29 tsumeta-i cold
- 30 tor-u take
- 31 Arashi-yama (a place name)
- 32 ashi foot; leg
- 33 ita-i painful, hurt
- 34 tanoshi-i pleasant

## Dai 6-ka Haikingu

1 Kinō wa Nichi-yōbi deshita. Saiwai asa kara taihen ii tenki deshita kara, watashi wa go-nin no tomodachi to *haikingu* ni ikimashita. Ōsaka kara Kyōto made densha de ikimashita. Kyōto-eki kara *basu* ni norimashita. Densha mo *basu* mo hito de ippai deshita. *Basu* wa yama no naka o hashirimashita.

2 Takao ni tsukimashita. Mazu Kōzan-ji e yūmei-na Chōjū-giga o mi ni ikimashita. Taihen omoshirokatta desu. Watashi-tachi wa chikaku no cha-mise ni hiru-gohan o tabe ni hairimashita.

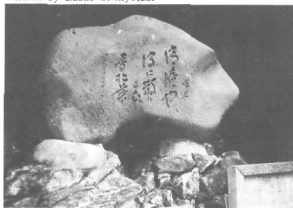
3 Soko kara yama-michi o san-*kiro* hodo arukimashita. Michi wa amari kyū dewa arimasen deshita. Yama no kūki wa taihen kirei deshita. Sora wa totemo aokatta desu. Yama no midori mo utsukushikatta desu.

4 Yagate Kiyo-taki ni tsukimashita. Mukashi Bashō wa koko de yūmei-na haiku o tsukurimashita. Taki no mizu wa taihen tsumetakatta desu. Tomodachi wa shashin o takusan torimashita.

5 Watashi-tachi wa gogo yo-ji goro Arashi-yama ni tsukimashita. Tomodachi wa totemo tsukaremashita ga, watashi wa amari tsukaremasen deshita. Ashi mo itaku nakatta desu. Taihen tanoshii *haikingu* deshita.

▼ Haiku by Basho at Kiyotaki

清滝や  
波に散り  
芭蕉  
青松葉  
こむ



## Lesson 6 Hiking

1 Yesterday was Sunday. Happily, it was a very nice day since morning, so I went hiking with five of my friends. We took the train from Osaka to Kyoto. From Kyoto station, we took a bus. Both the train and the bus were filled with people. The bus ran through the mountains.

2 We got to Takao. First we went to Kozan-ji Temple to see the famous "Chōju-giga." It was very interesting. We went into a nearby tea house to have lunch.

3 After that we walked the mountain paths for some three kilometers. The paths were not very steep. The mountain air was very clear. The sky was very blue. The mountain greenery was very beautiful too.

4 Soon we came to Kiyotaki. A long time ago, Basho composed a famous *haiku* here. The water in the waterfall was very cold. My friends took a lot of pictures.

5 We got to Arashiyama around 4:00 in the afternoon. My friends were very tired, but I was not very tired. My feet did not hurt either. It was a very enjoyable outing.

### ANSWERS <pp. 76, 77>

I. 1. ...4-gatsu 3(mik)-ka, Do-yōbi deshita. 2. 4-gatsu 6(mu)-ka, Ka-yōbi desu. 3. ... Moku (-yōbi deshita.) 4. ...Kin-yōbi desu. 5. ...Sui-yōbi deshita. 6. ...3-gatsu 28-nichi (deshita.) 7. ...4-gatsu 8(yō)-ka desu.

II. 1. Q: Kare no hanashi wa nagakatta desu ka? A: Ie, nagaku nakatta desu. Mijikakatta desu. 2. Q: Kono ferebi wa yasukatta desu ka? A: Ie, yasuku nakatta desu. Takakatta desu. 3. Q: Kono mae no shiken wa muzukashikatta desu ka? A: Ie, muzukashiku nakatta desu. Yasashikatta desu. 4. Q: Shutchō no tetsuzuki wa kantan deshita ka? A: Ie, kantan dewa arimasen deshita. Fukuzatsū deshita. 5. Q: Sono ryokō-sha no hito wa shinsetsu deshita ka? A: Ie, shinsetsu dewa arimasen deshita. Fu-shinsetsu deshita.

III. Kinō wa ii tenki deshita. Sora ga taihen aokatta desu. Niwa no bara no hana mo taihen kirei deshita. Kinō watashi no kaisha wa yasumi deshita. Watashi wa hima deshita. Ototoi made totemo isogashikatta desu. Kinō watashi wa yukkuri yasumimashita. Uchi ni imashita. Ototoi kara watashi no kodomo wa byōki deshita. Shikashi kinō wa sukoshi genki deshita. Watashi wa gogo isha ni ai ni ikimashita.

IV. (B) 1. ...amari shizuka dewa arimasen deshita. 2. ...totemo shizuka deshita. 3. ...sukoshi shizuka deshita. 4. ...sukoshi mo shizuka dewa arimasen deshita. (D) 1. ...zutto byōki deshita. 2. ...kyō mo mada byōki desu. 3. ...kinō made byōki deshita.

V. Watashi wa kotoshi no 4-gatsu ni Nippon-go no benkyō o hajimemashita. Hajime wa Nippon-go wa taihen muzukashikatta desu. Shikashi ima wa amari muzukashiku nai desu. Nippon-go no hatsuon mo muzukashiku nai desu. Watashi wa mai-shū Ka-yōbi to Kin-yōbi ni Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu. Kyō Nippon-go no jugyō ga arimashita. Kyō no jugyō wa omoshirokatta desu. Atarashii kotoba o takusan naraimashita.

## § 31 Past Tense Form of the Nominal Predicate

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  **deshita.** 'N<sub>1</sub> was N<sub>2</sub>.'

Negation:  $N_1$  wa  $N_2$  dewa **arimasen deshita.** 'N<sub>1</sub> was not N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi desu. 'Today is Sunday.'

Kinō wa Do-yōbi deshita. 'Yesterday was Saturday.'

Kinō wa yasumi deshita ka? 'Was yesterday a holiday?'

—Iie, yasumi dewa arimasen deshita. 'No, it wasn't a holiday.'

## § 32 Past Tense Forms of A and Na

Negation:

N wa	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Na} \\ \text{A-ku} \end{array} \right.$	<b>deshita.</b>	—	Na dewa arimasen deshita.
		<b>A-katta desu.</b>	—	A-ku $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nakatta desu.} \\ \text{arimasen deshita.} \end{array} \right.$

e.g. Hanako-san wa kirei desu ne. 'Hanako is pretty, isn't she?'

Mukashi mo anna-ni kirei deshita ka? 'Was she that pretty before too?'

—Iie, mukashi wa anna-ni kirei dewa arimasen deshita.

'No, she wasn't that pretty a long time ago.'

Ano eiga wa omoshirokatta desu ka? 'Was the movie interesting?'

—Iie, amari omoshiroku nakatta desu. 'No, it wasn't very interesting.'

## § 33 Joint Actions: N to (V) 'do...' with N'

e.g. Tomodachi to eiga ni ikimashita. 'I went to a movie with a friend.'

Watashi to pinpon o shimasen ka? 'Won't you play ping-pong with me?'

NB: This N must be Animate, typically Human.

## § 34 Purpose

$\left. \begin{array}{l} N \\ V \text{ (Conj. form)} \end{array} \right\} + ni$	<b>ikimasu.</b>	'go	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{'for...'} \\ \text{'in order to...'} \end{array} \right\}$
	<b>kimasu.</b>	'come	
	<b>kaerimasu.</b>	'go home	

e.g. haikingu ni ikimasu 'go hiking (go for a hike)'

Gohan o tabe ni kaerimasu. 'I go home to eat.'

NB: This expression of purpose is possible only when the main (following) Verb is iku, kuru, or kaeru. For all other Verbs, another pattern is necessary. (See § 103)

## § 35 Predicative vs. Prenominal Uses of Adjectives

Most of the 'i Adjectives' can be used as Prenominal modifiers for N as well as sentence predicates as seen in § 6 and § 7.

There are, however, a few Adjectives which take different forms depending upon whether they are used as Predicates or as Prenominal modifiers.

e.g. Sono mise wa chikai desu. 'That shop is near.'

Chikaku no mise de kaimashita. 'I bought it at a nearby shop.'

tōku no machi 'a faraway town' (cf. tōi desu. '...is far.')

ōku no hito 'many people' (cf. ōi desu. '...are many/much.')

There is also a group of words that are only used as Prenominal modifiers for N (abbreviated as 'PreN').

e.g. tonda 'awful' sugureta eiga 'an excellent movie'

## § 36 Conjunctive Particles

Sentence <sub>1</sub> +	<b>ga</b>	Sentence <sub>2</sub>	'(S <sub>1</sub> ), but (S <sub>2</sub> )'
	<b>kara</b>		'As/Because (S <sub>1</sub> ), (S <sub>2</sub> )'

e.g. Ii tenki deshita kara, haikingu ni ikimashita.

'As the weather was fine, I went hiking.'



## I. Complete the sentences.

Kyō wa 4(shi)-gatsu 5(itsu)-ka, Getsu-yōbi<sup>1</sup> desu.

Kinō wa 4-gatsu 4(yok)-ka, Nichi-yōbi deshita.

- Ototoi wa \_\_\_\_\_
- Ashita wa \_\_\_\_\_
- 4-gatsu tsuitachi<sup>2</sup> wa \_\_\_\_ -yōbi deshita.
- 4-gatsu 9(kokono)-ka wa \_\_\_\_\_
- 3-gatsu 31(san-jū-ichi)-nichi wa \_\_\_\_\_
- Sen-shū<sup>3</sup> no Nichi-yōbi wa \_\_\_\_\_ deshita.
- Kon-shū<sup>4</sup> no Moku-yōbi wa \_\_\_\_\_

Days of the Week
Nichi-yōbi
.....Sunday
Getsu-yōbi
.....Monday
Ka-yōbi
.....Tuesday
Sui-yōbi
.....Wednesday
Moku-yōbi
.....Thursday
Kin-yōbi
.....Friday
Do-yōbi
.....Saturday

## II. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (kinō no pāti<sup>5</sup>) (omoshiroi)

Kinō no pāti wa omoshirokatta desu ka?

A: (lie) (tsumaranai)

lie, omoshiroku nakatta desu. Tsumaranakatta desu.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Q: (kare no hanashi <sup>6</sup> ) (nagai)                      | A: (lie) (mijikai <sup>7</sup> )       |
| 2. Q: (kono terebi) (yasui)  | A: (lie) (takai)                       |
| 3. Q: (kono mae no shiken <sup>8</sup> ) (muzukashii)              | A: (lie) (yasashii)                    |
| 4. Q: (shutchō no tetsuzuki <sup>9</sup> ) (kantan <sup>10</sup> ) | A: (lie) (fukuzatsu <sup>11</sup> )    |
| 5. Q: (sono ryokō-sha no hito) (shinsetsu)                         | A: (lie) (fu-shinsetsu <sup>12</sup> ) |

## III. Substituting kinō for kyō, change the entire passage to suit.

Kyō wa ii tenki desu. Sora ga taihen aoi desu. Niwa<sup>13</sup> no bara no hana

## 語句

1 Getsu-yōbi Monday	7 mijika-i short
2 tsuitachi the 1st day of the month	8 shiken examination
3 sen-shū last week sen-last	9 tetsuzuki procedure, formalities
4 kon-shū this week kon-this	10 kantan (Na) not complicated, simple
5 parti 'party'	11 fukuzatsu (Na) complicated
6 hanashi story; talk ←hanas-u	12 fu-shinsetsu (N/Na) unkind

mo taihen kirei desu. Kyō watashi no kaisha wa yasumi desu. Watashi wa hima<sup>14</sup> desu. Kinō made totemo isogashikatta desu. Kyō watashi wa yukkuri yasumimasu. Uchi ni imasu. Kinō kara watashi no kodomo wa byōki<sup>15</sup> desu. Shikashi kyō wa sukoshi genki<sup>16</sup> desu. Watashi wa gogo isha ni ai ni ikimasu.

## IV. Make sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (omoshiroi)→Ano eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.

1. (nagai)      2. (furui)      3. (tsumaranai)

(B) Ex. (taihen)→Sono heya wa taihen shizuka deshita.

1. (amari)      2. (totemo)  
3. (sukoshi)      4. (sukoshi mo<sup>17</sup>)

(C) Ex. (totemo)→Watashi wa kinō totemo isogashikatta desu.

1. (sukoshi)      2. (amari)  
3. (sukoshi mo)      4. (taihen)

(D) Ex. (kinō)→Watashi wa kinō byōki deshita.

1. (zutto<sup>18</sup>)      2. (kyō mo mada)      3. (kinō made)

## V. Put the following into Japanese.

I began to study Japanese this April. At first,<sup>19</sup> Japanese was very difficult. But now it is not so difficult. Japanese pronunciation is not difficult either. I study Japanese every Tuesday and Friday. I had Japanese lessons<sup>20</sup> today. Today's lessons were interesting. I learned<sup>21</sup> many new words.<sup>22</sup>

13 niwa garden	18 zutto (Adv) all the time
14 hima (Na) leisure; not busy	19 hajime beginning ←hajime-ru hajime wa at first
15 byōki (N) sick, sickness	20 jugyō class (lesson)
16 genki (Na) healthy	21 nara-u learn
17 sukoshi mo...nai not...at all	22 kotoba language; word

## OMOSHIROKATTA?

—Kono mae no Nichi-yōbi  
doko e ikimashita ka?

Kyōto e ikimashita.

—Kyōto kenbutsu<sup>1</sup> wa omoshirokatta  
desu ka?

Ē, omoshirokatta desu.

—Kyōto wa furui machi desu.

Yūmei-na o-tera<sup>2</sup> ya niwa ga takusan  
arimasu.

Kyōto no doko e ikimashita?

Heian-jingū,<sup>3</sup> Nanzen-ji,<sup>4</sup> Nijō-jō<sup>5</sup> nado<sup>6</sup> e  
ikimashita.

—Doko ga yokatta<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

Nijō-jō no niwa ga utsukushikatta desu.

—Hito wa sukunakatta desu ka?

lie, taihen ōkatta desu.

—Sō deshō.<sup>8</sup> Kyōto no meisho<sup>9</sup> wa  
itsumo hito ga ōi desu.

Jū-nen<sup>10</sup> gurai mae wa motto<sup>11</sup> shizuka-

—Where did you go last  
Sunday?

I went to Kyoto.

—Was it interesting sight-  
seeing in Kyoto?

Yes, it was interesting.

—Kyoto is an old town.  
There are many famous  
temples and gardens.

Where did you go in  
Kyoto?

I went to Heian Shrine,  
Nanzen-ji Temple, Nijo  
Castle, and so on.

—Where did you enjoy  
most?

The garden at Nijo Castle  
was beautiful.

—Wasn't it crowded?

(←Were there few peo-  
ple?)

Yes, it was crowded.

(←No, there were many.)

—That's what I expected.  
Famous places in Kyoto  
are always crowded.

## 語句

- 1 kenbutsu (Nv) sight-seeing
- 2 tera (Buddhist) temple
- 3 Heian-jingū (a Shinto shrine in Kyoto)
- 4 Nanzen-ji (a temple in Kyoto)
- 5 Nijō-jō (a castle in Kyoto)
- 6 ...nado ...and some others, et cetera
- 7 yo-i=ii good, satisfactory
- 8 deshō (Future or Presumptive form of desu)
- 9 meisho famous place
- 10 -nen ...year(s)

It was a much quieter  
town about ten years  
ago.

What did you buy in  
Kyoto?

I bought a lot of picture  
postcards.

They are beautiful.

I also took a lot of pic-  
tures.

—Did you go to Nara too?

Yes, I did.

The Great Buddha was  
very big.

Kasuga Shrine was also  
very beautiful.

—Weren't the deer there?

There were many.

The fawns were quite cute.  
I took many pictures of  
the fawns. I'll send them  
to my younger sister at  
home.

na machi deshita.

Kyōto de nani o kaimashita ka?

E-hagaki<sup>12</sup> o takusan kaimashita.

Kirei-na e-hagaki desu.

Shashin mo takusan torimashita.

—Nara<sup>13</sup> e mo ikimashita ka?

Ē, ikimashita.

Daibutsu<sup>14</sup> wa taihen ōkikatta desu.

Kasuga-taisha<sup>15</sup> mo totemo kirei deshita.

—Shika<sup>16</sup> ga imasen deshita ka?

Takusan imashita.

Ko-jika<sup>17</sup> ga kawairashikatta<sup>18</sup> desu.

Ko-jika no shashin o takusan torimashita.

Kuni no imōto ni okurimasu.<sup>19</sup>

▼Nara Park



- 11 motto more
- 12 e-hagaki picture postcard
- 13 Nara (an old capital of Japan)
- 14 Daibutsu (Great Buddha statue)
- 15 Kasuga-taisha (a Shinto shrine in Nara)
- 16 shika deer
- 17 ko-jika young deer
- 18 kawairashi-i cute
- 19 okuru send

## 日本の 行事—1

日本の 行事は たいいてい 中国から 来ました。その 中の いくつかは もう なくなりました。しかし、今でも まだ ほとんどの 家庭で いろいろな 行事を します。

まず 一月には 正月の 行事が あります。家の 入り口に 門松や しめなわを かざります。朝は おもちを 食べます。たくさんの 人が お寺や 神社に 参ります。

二月の 初めに 節分が あります。長い 冬の 終わりで。節分の 晩には まめを まきます。まめで おにを 追い出します。そして 福の 神を 家の 中へ 招きます。

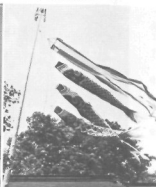
三月三日は ひな祭りで。女の子は ひな人形を へやの 中に かざります。五月五日の たんごの 節句は 男の子の 祭りで。こいのぼりを 立てます。

七月には たなばたが あります。星の 祭りで。牛かいの 星が 一年に 一度 この 夜だけ 天の川を わたります。そして おひひめの 星に 会います。この ロマンチックな 話は 中国の 伝説でした。

▼Hina dolls

▼Carp streamers

▼Tanabata



## Ceremonial Events—1

Most of Japan's ceremonial events came from China. Some of them have since disappeared, but some are still celebrated in most families.

January begins with New Year's Day. People decorate the gates to their houses with pine branches and sacred ropes. They eat rice cakes for breakfast. Many go to the temples and shrines to worship.

*Setsubun* at the beginning of February means the end of the long winter. On that night, the people scatter beans to drive away the evil spirits and to invite in good luck.

Girls exhibit their *Hina* dolls on the Doll's Festival, March 3. May 5 is the Boy's Festival when boys put up their carp streamers.

*Tanabata* is in July. It is the Stars' Festival. According to a romantic Chinese legend, this is the one night of the year when the Cowherd Star is able to cross the Milky Way and meet the Weaver Star.

### 語句—

- 1 gyōji ceremonial event
- 2 ikutsu ka some, several
- 3 naku-nar-u vanish, be lost; die
- 4 ima demo even now
- 5 katei family, home
- 6 Shō-gatsu New Year's Day(s)
- 7 kado-matsu (pine branches as New Year's gate decorations)
- 8 shime-nawa (sacred rope)
- 9 kazar-u decorate
- 10 mochi (rice cake)
- 11 jinja shrine
- 12 mair-u 'go to worship
- 13 ...no hajime the beginning of...
- 14 Setsubun (the day before the beginning of spring in the lunar calendar)
- 15 owari end ←owar-u (end)
- 16 mame beans, peas
- 17 mak-u scatter
- 18 oni ogre
- 19 oidas-u drive away
- 20 Fuku no kami God/Goddess of Luck  
kami god
- 21 manek-u invite
- 22 Hina-matsuri (Girl's Festival)  
matsuri festival
- 23 Hina-ningyō (Girl's Festival dolls)  
ningyō doll
- 24 Tango no Sekku (Boy's Festival)
- 25 koi-nobori carp streamer  
koi carp  
nobori streamer, flag ←nobor-u  
(rise, climb)
- 26 tate-ru hoist, make...stand; build
- 27 Tanabata (Stars' Festival)
- 28 hoshi star
- 29 ushi-kai cowherd  
ushi cow  
kai ←ka-u (keep animals)
- 30 ichi-nen one year
- 31 ichi-do once  
-do times (frequency)
- 32 ...dake only
- 33 Ama no gawa the Milky Way  
gawa←kawa (river)
- 34 watar-u cross
- 35 Ori-hime Weaver Princess  
ori ←or-u (weave) hime princess
- 36 romanchikku (Na) 'romantic'
- 37 densetsu legend

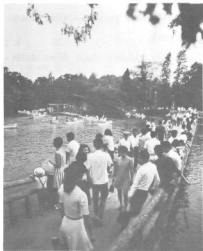
# 第 7 課

## 公園

TAPE  
No. 2  
Side 2

① 公園には たくさん 花が さいています。木も たくさん あります。子どもが おおぜい 遊んでいます。小鳥が 木の上で 歌っています。池には 橋が かかっています。こい が およんでいます。赤い こい も 黒い こいも います。

② 向こうで 中学生が 写生を しています。男の子と 女の子が ぶらんこに 乗っています。女の 人が そばで 見えています。こか けて 若い 男女が 話していま す。公園の 中は 明るい 光て



③ わたしたちは 先週の 土曜日、お弁当を もって、公園へ

### 語句

- 1 te-i-ru = de-i-ru See § 37
- 2 ōzei a large number of people
- 3 asob-u play
- 4 ko-tori little bird
- 5 uta-u sing 6 ike pond
- 7 hashi bridge
- 8 kakar-u span; be built over
- 9 oyog-u swim 10 kuro-i black
- 11 chūgaku-sei junior high school student chūgaku=chū-gakkō junior high school
- 12 shasei (Nv) sketching
- 13 buranko swing

- 14 ko-kage shade of a tree  
kage shade; shadow; silhouette;  
image; reflection
- 15 dan-jo man and woman
- 16 hanas-u speak, tell, talk
- 17 akuru-i bright, light; cheerful
- 18 hikari light, ray
- 19 bentō lunch (to take out)
- 20 mots-u have, hold
- 21 kadan flower bed
- 22 -te kara after...ing See § 40
- 23 mawar-u (Vi) go round; (make a) detour

行きました。花壇の 美しい 花を 見てから、池を 回っ て、ベンチで 休みました。わたしは 本を 読みました。

妹は 写生を しました。それから こかげて 歌を 歌った り、ハーモニカを ふいたりしました。小学生が ボールを 投げたり、すもうを とったりして 遊んでいました。わた したちは うしろの 丘に 上って、町を 見おろしました。 汽車が 走っていました。遠くに 川が 光っていました。

④ わたしたちは 川の 近くに 住んでいます。わたしは 川の こちらの 町は よく 知っています。しかし、川の 向こうがわの 町の ことは あまり 知りません。



- 24 benchi 'bench'
- 25 uta song
- 26 tari=dari See § 39
- 27 hamonika 'harmonica'
- 28 fuk-u (Vi) blow
- 29 shōgaku-sei primary school pupil shōgaku=shō-gakkō primary school
- 30 bōru 'ball'
- 31 nage-ru throw
- 32 sumō (Japanese traditional wrestling)
- 33 sumō o tor-u do sumo
- 34 oka hill

- 34 nobor-u climb; rise
- 35 mi-oros-u look down
- 36 kisha (steam-powered) train
- 37 tōku (N/Adv) faraway place ←tō-i (far)
- 38 hikar-u shine, glitter
- 39 sunde-i-ru live, reside sum-u (live) See § 37 NB
- 40 shitte-i-ru know shir-u get to know See § 37 NB
- 41 mukō-gawa that side, the other side -gawa side
- 42 koto thing; matter; fact; situation

## Dai 7-ka Kōen

1 Kōen niwa takusan hana ga saite-imasu. Ki mo takusan arimasu. Kodomo ga ōzei asonde-imasu. Ko-tori ga ki no ue de utatte-imasu. Ike niwa hashi ga kakatte-imasu. Koi ga oyoide-imasu. Akai koi mo kurōi koi mo imasu.

2 Mukō de chūgaku-sei ga shasei o shite-imasu. Otoko no ko to onna no ko ga buranko ni notte-imasu. Onna no hito ga soba de mite-imasu. Ko-kage de wakai dan-jo ga hanashite-imasu. Kōen no naka wa akarui hikari de ippai desu.

3 Watashi-tachi wa sen-shū no Do-yōbi, o-bentō o motte, kōen e ikimashita. Kadan no utsukushii hana o mite kara, ike o mawatte, *benchi* de yasumi-mashita. Watashi wa hon o yomimashita. Imōto wa shasei o shimashita. Sore kara ko-kage de uta o utattari, *hāmonika* o fuitari shimashita. Shōgaku-sei ga *bōru* o nagetari, *sumō* o tottari shite asonde-imashita. Watashi-tachi wa ushiro no oka ni nobotte, machi o mi-oroshimashita. Kisha ga hashitte-imashita. Tōku ni kawa ga hikatte-imashita.

4 Watashi-tachi wa kawa no chikaku ni sunde-imasu. Watashi wa kawa no kochira no machi wa yoku shitte-imasu. Shikashi, kawa no mukō-gawa no machi no koto wa amari shirimasen.



## Lesson 7 The Park

1 There are many flowers blooming in the park. There are many trees too. Many children are playing there. The birds are singing in the trees. There is a bridge over the pond. The carp are swimming. There are red carp and black carp.

2 Over there, some junior high school students are sketching. A boy and a girl are swinging on the swings. A woman is watching nearby. A young man and woman are talking in the shade of the trees. The park is filled with bright sunshine.

3 We took our lunches to the park last Saturday. Looking at the beautiful flowers in the flower beds, we went around the lake and rested on the benches. I read a book. My younger sister drew some sketches. Then we sang and played our harmonicas in the shade. Grade school children were throwing balls, wrestling, and playing other games. We climbed up the hill behind the park and looked down on the town. A train was going by. The river glittered in the distance.

4 We live near the river. I know the town on this side of the river very well. But I do not know the town on the other side of the river very well.

### ANSWERS <pp. 88, 89>

I. A: Kono hito wa ima: 1. *piano* o hiite-imasu. 2. hanashite-imasu. 3. (uta o) utatte-imasu. 4. *ireebi* o mite-imasu. 5. shashin o totte-imasu. 6. oyoide-imasu. 7. hon o yonde-imasu. 8. asonde-imasu. 9. *basu* o maite-imasu.

II. (A) 1. Watashi wa yoku *piano* o hiitari, utattari shimasu. 2. Watashi wa yoku tomodachi to hanashitari, asondari shimasu. 3. Watashi wa kinō hon o yondari, *ireebi* o mitari, shashin o tottari shimashita. 4. Watashi wa kinō oyoidari, hon o yondari shimashita.

III. (A) 1. Watashi wa kesa 7-ji ni okite sanpo-shimashita. 2. Watashi wa yūbe eiga o mite, ban-gohan o tabete kaerimashita. 3. Watashi wa kinō tomodachi ni atte, *biru* o nonde hanashimashita. 4. Watashi wa yūbe ie ni kaette *rajiro* o kiite, hon o yonde nemashita.

IV. 1. Kare wa kutsu o nuide heya ni hairimashita. 2. Anata wa ima ikura o-kane o motte-imasu ka? 3. "Anata wa kaisha no chikaku ni sunde-imasu ka?" "Iie, watashi no ie wa kaisha kara totemo/taihen tōi desu." "Sore wa fu-ben desu ne." "Iie, watashi wa kuruma o motte-imasu. Mai-nichi kuruma de kaisha e ikimasu." 4. "Anata wa kare no atarashii ie no denwa-bangō o shitte-imasu ka?" "Iie, furui bangō wa shitte-imasu ga, atarashii bangō no wa shirimasen." 5. "Kyō *depoto/hyakka*-ten wa aite-imasu ka?" "Iie, shimatte-imasu. Kyō wa Getsu-yōbi desu." 6. Kinō watashi wa ginkō e ittari, denwa o kaketari, tegami o kaitari shite totemo/taihen isogashikatta desu.

## § 37 Progressive (or Continuous) Form of Verbs

## ... V-te-imasu.

This form indicates:

1. An action or event in progress (for V expressing continuous, durative actions or events, such as walking, eating, raining, etc.)

e.g. Kodomo ga asonde-imasu. 'Children are playing.'

Anata wa nani o shite-imasu ka? 'What are you doing?'

—Shasei o shite-imasu. 'I am sketching.'

2. A state resulting from a previous action or event (for V expressing instantaneous or momentary events or actions, such as beginning or arriving)

e.g. Matsuri wa mō hajimatte-imasu. (hajimatte←hajimaru 'to begin')

'The festival has already started (and is now going on).' (not 'is beginning')

Ginkō wa mada aite-imasu ka? 'Is the bank still open?'

—Iie, mō shimatte-imasu. 'No, it is already closed.'

3. A particular quality, state, condition, or manner of something

e.g. Ike ni hashi ga kakatte-imasu. (kakatte←kakaruru 'to hang')

'There is (hanging) a bridge over the pond.'

Michi ga magatte-imasu. 'The road is curved.'

Tanaka-san wa futotte (yasete)-imasu. 'Tanaka is fat (thin).'

NB: (1) The 'V-te-imashita form' is the past counterpart of the 'V-te-imasu.'

e.g. Kodomo ga asonde-imashita. 'Children were playing.'

Matsuri wa hajimatte-imashita. 'The festival had already started.'

(2) Remember that some events or actions may be seen as continuous in English but instantaneous in Japanese, and vice versa.

e.g. shinde-imasu (shinde←shinu 'to die') 'is dead,' not '(someone) is dying'

Hankachi ga ochite-imasu. (ochite←ochiru 'to fall') 'A handkerchief is lying on the ground.'

(3) Some verbs such as the following are 'Stative verbs' in English, hence their equivalents must take the 'te-imasu form' in Japanese.

'know'→shitte-imasu 'have'→motte-imasu

'live (in Kyoto)'→(Kyōto ni) sunde-imasu

(4) For the formation of 'V-te,' see Appendix.

(5) The 'te-imasu form' of V is often used to express the speaker's immediate reaction to a particular state of affairs, and in that case, the Subject takes the Particle ga, and not wa.

## § 38 Succession of Two or More Actions or Events

## ... V-te, (...V-te), ... V-masu/-mashita.

e.g. Oka ni nobotte, machi o mimashita.

'We climbed the hill, and looked at the town.'

## § 39 Alternative (or Indefinite Number of) Actions or Events

## ... V-tari, ...V-tari shimasu/shimashita.

e.g. Oka ni nobottari, machi o mitari shimashita.

'We did such things as climbing the hill, looking at the town (and maybe some other things, not necessarily in this order).'

## § 40 'After doing ...'

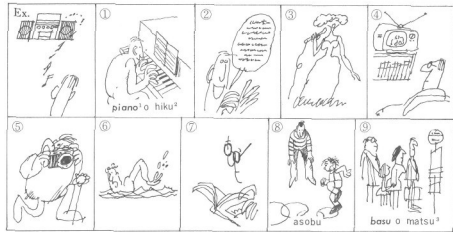
## ... V-te kara ...

e.g. Hana o mite kara, oka ni noborimashita.

'After looking at the flowers, we climbed the hill.'

NB: 'te, ...te' also indicates the order in which the series of actions or events takes place, but 'te kara' makes it clearer.

## I. Use the chart to make dialogs as shown in the example.



Ex. Q: Kono hito wa ima nani o shite-imasu ka?

A: Kono hito wa ima ongaku o kiite-imasu.

## II. Use the chart to make sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Ex)+1 (yoku) Watashi wa yoku ongaku o kiitari, piano o hiitari shimasu.

1. 1+3 (yoku)                      2. 2+8 (yoku) (tomodachi to)  
 3. 7+4+5 (kinō)                  4. 6+7 (kinō)

(B) Ex. (Ex)+3 (kyō) Kyō watashi wa ongaku o kiite kara uta o utaimashita.

1. 4+3 (yūbe)    2. 1+7 (itsumo)    3. 7+8 (itsumo)  
 4. 3+5 (kinō) (watashi-tachi)    5. 2+8 (kyō) (tomodachi to)  
 6. 6+3 (kono mae no Nichi-yōbi)    7. 8+4 (kinō) (watashi-tachi)

## 語句

1 piano 'piano'	6 furo ni hair-u take a bath
2 hik-u play (musical instrument); pull	7 yam-u stop (rain, snow, etc.)
3 mats-u wait	8 nug-u take off (clothes, shoes, socks, etc.)
4 ban-gohan supper	9 kane money (=o-kane); metal
5 furo bath	

## III. Combine the sentences.

(A) Ex. (kyō) (Yūbin-kyoku e ikimasu.) (Kitte o kaimasu.)

Watashi wa kyō yūbin-kyoku e itte kitte o kaimasu.

1. (kesa) (7-ji ni okimasu.) (Sanpo-shimasu.)  
 2. (yūbe) (Eiga o mimasu.) (Ban-gohan<sup>4</sup> o tabemasu.) (Kaerimasu.)  
 3. (kinō) (Tomodachi ni aimasu.) (Birui o nomimasu.) (Hanashimasu.)  
 4. (yūbe) (Ie ni kaerimasu.) (Rajio o kikimasu.) (Hon o yomimasu.) (Nemasu.)  
 (B) Ex. (mai-asa) (Sanpo-shimasu.) (Asa-gohan o tabemasu.)

Watashi wa mai-asa sanpo-shite kara asa-gohan o tabemasu.

1. (kyō) (Shigoto ga owarimasu.) (Tomodachi ni aimasu.)  
 2. (mai-ban) (O-furo<sup>5</sup> ni hairimasu.<sup>6</sup>) (Nemasu.)  
 3. (yūbe) (Ame ga yamimasu.<sup>7</sup>) (Gaishutsu-shimasu.)

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. He took off<sup>8</sup> his shoes and entered the room.  
 2. How much money<sup>9</sup> do you have now?  
 3. "Do you live near your office?"  
 "No, I don't. My house is very far from my office."  
 "It is inconvenient,<sup>10</sup> isn't it?"  
 "No. I have a car.<sup>11</sup> I go to work by car every day."  
 4. "Do you know the telephone number<sup>12</sup> at his new house?"  
 "No. I knew his old number, but I don't know his new one."  
 5. "Is the department store<sup>13</sup> open<sup>14</sup> today?" "No. It's closed.<sup>15</sup> Today is Monday."  
 6. Yesterday I was very busy, going to the bank, making phone calls, and writing letters.

10 fu-ben (Na) inconvenient	bangō number
ben ←benri (Na) convenient; use-ful	13 hyakka-ten = <i>depōto</i> department store
11 kuruma car; wheel	14 ak-u (Vi) open; become available
12 denwa-bangō telephone number	15 shima-u (Vi) close

## GOMEN-KUDASAI

Gomen-kudasai.<sup>1</sup>Taeko<sup>2</sup>-san wa irasshaimasu ka?—Hai, orimasu.<sup>3</sup>Dochira-sama<sup>4</sup> deshō ka?*Rinda*<sup>5</sup> desu.—Ā, *Rinda*-san! O-machi-shite-imashita.

Dōzo, kochira e.

O-jama<sup>6</sup> shimasu.

—Ara?! Irasshai!

Konnichi wa.

—O-kā-san,<sup>8</sup> kochira ga *Rinda*-san.*Rinda*-san, watashi no haha<sup>9</sup> desu.*Rinda* desu. Yoroshiku.

Kono atari wa totemo shizuka desu ne.

—Ē, kuruma mo amari tōrimasen<sup>10</sup> kara.O-tō-san<sup>11</sup> wa?—Chichi<sup>12</sup> wa ima ni-kai de hon o yonde-  
imasu.

Excuse me.

Is Taeko at home?

—Yes, she is.

May I ask your name?

Linda.

—Ah, Linda! We have  
been waiting for you.Please come this way.  
Thank you very much.  
(←I'm sorry to intrude on  
you like this.)

—Hey! Come on in!

It's nice to see you.

—Mother, this is Linda.

Linda, this is my moth-  
er.I am Linda. Glad to meet  
you.This neighborhood is quiet  
indeed, isn't it?—Yes, and we don't have  
very many cars passing  
by here either.

Your father is...?

—Father is upstairs read-  
ing a book now.

## 語句

- Gomen-kudasai (Cph)  
Anybody home?
- Taeko (a given name (f))
- or-u =i-ru be staying/  
in
- dochira-sama who (very  
polite) dochira which  
-sama (politer than -san)
- Rinda* "Linda"
- jama (Na/Nv) obstacle,  
interruption, something  
in the way
- Ara Hey (fem.)
- o-kā-san mother (Polite)
- haha mother
- tōr-u pass
- o-tō-san father (Polite)
- chichi father
- ato de later
- go...suru (Polite form  
of suru)

I'll introduce you later.

Your mother is a tea cere-  
mony teacher, isn't she?—Yes, on Sunday after-  
noons she teaches tea  
ceremony and flower  
arrangement.How many students does  
she have?

—About thirty.

Taeko, do you make tea  
yourself?

—No, I can't.

I make very good coffee  
though.

Oh, that's interesting.

—This is my room.

There are so many books,  
*aren't there?*—On holidays, I read  
books or listen to rec-  
ords here.You've got a lot of rec-  
ords too.—I collect modern jazz  
records.go- See § 118  
shōkai (Nv) introduc-  
tion15 o-cha tea ceremony; tea  
16 Ikebana flower arrange-  
ment17 oshie-ru teach; show;  
tell18 *deshi* (personal) student

19 o-cha o tate-ru make tea

20 dame (Na) no good

21 jōzu (Na) skillful, be  
good at...22 *kōhi* o ire-ru make coffee  
ire-ru (VI) put...in

23 Mā Oh (female)

24 *rekodo* 'record,' disc25 *modan* (Na) 'modern'26 *jazu* 'jazz'27 atsume-ru (Vt) collect,  
gatherAto de<sup>13</sup> go-shōkai-shimasu.<sup>14</sup>O-kā-san wa o-cha<sup>15</sup> no sensei desu ne?

—Hai, Nichi-yōbi no gogo o-cha to

ikebana<sup>16</sup> o oshiete<sup>17</sup>-imasu.O-deshi<sup>18</sup>-san wa nan-nin imasu ka?

—San-jū-nin gurai desu.

Taeko-san, anata mo o-cha o tatemasu<sup>19</sup>

ka?

—Watashi wa dame<sup>20</sup> desu.*Kōhi* wa jōzu<sup>21</sup>-ni iremasu<sup>22</sup> ga....Mā,<sup>23</sup> omoshiroi desu ne.

—Koko ga watashi no heya desu.

Hon ga takusan arimasu ne.

—Yasumi no hi wa, koko de hon o

yondari *rekodo*<sup>24</sup> o kiitari shimasu.*Rekodo* mo takusan arimasu ne.—*Modan*<sup>25</sup> *jazu*<sup>26</sup> no *rekodo* o atsumete<sup>27</sup>-  
imasu.



## 日本の行事—2

関東では七月、関西では八月におぼんがあります。おぼんには先祖のたましいが帰ります。おぼんの最初の日に先祖のたましいをむかえます。最後の日には火をつけて、たましいを送ります。有名な京都の大文字もその行事の一つです。秋は空もすんでいて月もたいへんきれいです。九月の満月の日にお月見をします。

十月はスポーツのシーズンです。学校では運動会があります。また人びとはハイキングに行ったり、サイクリングをしたりします。

お米の取り入れも始まります。そして十月、十一月には豊作を祝って、村や町で秋祭りがあります。

十一月十五日は七五三です。親が三歳と五歳と七歳の子どもを連れて、神社に参ります。

年のくればみんなたいへんいそがしいです。大そうじをしたり、おもむきをついたりします。大みそかには夜中の十二時から除夜の

かねを聞いて新しい年をむかえます。

▼Daimonji



▼Harvest Festival



▼Joya no kane



## Ceremonial Events—2

We have the "Bon Festival" in July in the Kanto District and in August in Kansai. Our ancestors' souls come back to this world during Bon. We welcome them on the first day and see them off on the last day, lighting the way back. The famous Daimonji in Kyoto is one of these events.

In the autumn, the sky is clear and the moon is beautiful. We enjoy viewing the full moon in September. October is a good season for sports. Schools hold athletic events, and many people go hiking and cycling.

Autumn is also the season for harvest. Many villages and towns have festivals celebrating good crops in October and November.

November 15 is Shichi-go-san, when parents take their children aged three, five, and seven years old to the shrines.

Everyone is very busy at the end of the year, cleaning house and pounding rice for rice cakes. We welcome the new year with the bells of the temples at midnight on New Year's Eve.

### 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Kantō (Tokyo and the surrounding prefectures)                      | undō physical exercise kai meeting  |
| 2 Kansai (Osaka, Kyoto, Kobe, and the surrounding prefectures)       | 21 mata and also; again   |
| 3 (o-)bon (Bon Festival: Buddhist)                                   | 22 hito-bito people   |
| 4 senzo ancestors  | 23 saikuringu 'cycling'   |
| 5 tamashii spirit, soul  | 24 kome rice  |
| 6 saisho (N/Adv) the first   | 25 tori-ire harvest, crop ←tori-ire-ru (take...in; harvest)   |
| 7 mukae-ru welcome, receive  | 26 hōsaku abundant harvest  |
| 8 saigo (N) the last   | 27 iwa-u celebrate  |
| 9 hi fire  | 28 mura village   |
| 10 tsuke-ru attach; turn on (light, TV, etc.) hi o tsuke-ru set fire | 29 aki-matsuri harvest festival   |
| 11 okur-u see off; send  | 30 Shichi-go-san (festival for children three, five, and seven years old)                           |
| 12 Dai-monji (the mountain bonfire shaped like the character 大)      | 31 oya parent   |
| dai- big, great  | 32 tsure-ru accompany, take   |
| 13 ...no hito-tsu one of...  | 33 toshi year; age  |
| 14 sunde-i-ru be clear ←sum-u (get clear)                            | 34 kure (N) toward the end  |
| 15 tsuki moon; month   | 35 ō-sōji general cleaning  |
| 16 man-getsu full moon   | ō- big; large-scale   |
| man- full-getsu moon; month  | sōji (Nv) cleaning, sweeping  |
| 17 tsuki-mi moon-viewing (ceremonially) cf. hana-mi (flower-viewing) | 36 mochi o tsuk-u pound boiled rice into paste  |
| 18 supōtsu 'sports'  | 37 Ō-misoka New Year's Eve  |
| 19 shizun 'season'   | 38 yonaka midnight; (during) the night  |
| 20 undō-kai athletic meeting   | 39 joya no kane temple bells to ring out the old year and ring in the new year (Buddhist) kane bell |

# 第 8 課

## 夏休みの日記<sup>1</sup>

TAPE  
No. 2  
Side 2

しちがつとおかのあめ  
七月十日(雨)

① き<sup>1</sup>のうも<sup>2</sup> 雨<sup>3</sup>だった。きょうも<sup>4</sup> また<sup>5</sup> 雨<sup>6</sup>だ。一週間<sup>7</sup> 一度<sup>8</sup>も<sup>9</sup> 晴<sup>10</sup>れな<sup>11</sup>かった。ことしは<sup>12</sup> つゆ<sup>13</sup>明け<sup>14</sup>が<sup>15</sup> おそ<sup>16</sup>い。

あす<sup>17</sup>から<sup>18</sup> 夏<sup>19</sup>休み<sup>20</sup>が<sup>21</sup> 始<sup>22</sup>まる。去<sup>23</sup>年<sup>24</sup>の<sup>25</sup> 夏<sup>26</sup>は<sup>27</sup> 山<sup>28</sup>に<sup>29</sup> 登<sup>30</sup>った。  
夏<sup>31</sup>山<sup>32</sup>は<sup>33</sup> ほん<sup>34</sup>と<sup>35</sup>うに<sup>36</sup> すば<sup>37</sup>ら<sup>38</sup>し<sup>39</sup>か<sup>40</sup>った。雪<sup>41</sup>も<sup>42</sup> 高<sup>43</sup>山<sup>44</sup>植<sup>45</sup>物<sup>46</sup>も<sup>47</sup> 美<sup>48</sup>し<sup>49</sup>か<sup>50</sup>った。空<sup>51</sup>も<sup>52</sup> 雲<sup>53</sup>も<sup>54</sup> き<sup>55</sup>れ<sup>56</sup>い<sup>57</sup>だ<sup>58</sup>った。

② ことし<sup>1</sup>の<sup>2</sup> 夏<sup>3</sup>休み<sup>4</sup>には<sup>5</sup> 北<sup>6</sup>海<sup>7</sup>道<sup>8</sup>へ<sup>9</sup> 行<sup>10</sup>く。北<sup>11</sup>海<sup>12</sup>道<sup>13</sup>で<sup>14</sup>は、礼<sup>15</sup>幌<sup>16</sup>の<sup>17</sup> 町<sup>18</sup>や<sup>19</sup> 摩<sup>20</sup>周<sup>21</sup>湖<sup>22</sup>や<sup>23</sup> 知<sup>24</sup>床<sup>25</sup>半<sup>26</sup>島<sup>27</sup>など<sup>28</sup>を<sup>29</sup> 回<sup>30</sup>る。わ<sup>31</sup>た<sup>32</sup>し<sup>33</sup>は<sup>34</sup> 北<sup>35</sup>海<sup>36</sup>道<sup>37</sup>の<sup>38</sup> こと<sup>39</sup>は<sup>40</sup> あ<sup>41</sup>ま<sup>42</sup>り<sup>43</sup> 知<sup>44</sup>ら<sup>45</sup>な<sup>46</sup>い。と<sup>47</sup>き<sup>48</sup>ど<sup>49</sup>き<sup>50</sup> ガ<sup>51</sup>イ<sup>52</sup>ド<sup>53</sup>・ブ<sup>54</sup>ッ<sup>55</sup>グ<sup>56</sup>を<sup>57</sup> 開<sup>58</sup>いて、旅<sup>59</sup>行<sup>60</sup>の<sup>61</sup> こと<sup>62</sup>を<sup>63</sup> 考<sup>64</sup>え<sup>65</sup>て<sup>66</sup>い<sup>67</sup>る。



▲ Shiretoko National Park

語句

- 1 nikki diary
- 2 datta See § 41 -ta See § 41
- 3 mata again; also
- 4 da (Plain form of desu) See § 41
- 5 is-shū-kan a week  
-kan during, between
- 6 ichi-do mo...nai never, not once
- 7 hare-ru clear up
- 8 -nakatta See § 41
- 9 tsuyu-ake end of the rainy season  
tsuyu rainy season ake ←ake-ru (end and begin anew)  
cf. yo-ake (dawn)
- 10 oso-i late; slow
- 11 asu=ashita tomorrow
- 12 natsu-yasumi summer vacation

- 13 nobor-u climb
- 14 natsu-yama summer mountains
- 15 hontō (N) true, real  
hontō-ni truly, really, indeed
- 16 subarashi-i wonderful
- 17 kōzan-shokubutsu alpine plants  
kōzan high mountain  
shokubutsu plants, vegetation
- 18 kumo cloud
- 19 Sapporo (the biggest city in Hokkaido)
- 20 Mashū-ko Lake Mashu  
-ko lake
- 21 Shiretoko-hantō Shiretoko Peninsula  
hantō peninsula
- 22 -nai See § 41

はちがつこのか 日 26  
八月九日(晴れ)

③ ゆうべ<sup>1</sup> 北<sup>2</sup>海<sup>3</sup>道<sup>4</sup>から<sup>5</sup> 帰<sup>6</sup>った。北<sup>7</sup>海<sup>8</sup>道<sup>9</sup>は<sup>10</sup> 実<sup>11</sup>に<sup>12</sup> よ<sup>13</sup>か<sup>14</sup>った。  
礼<sup>15</sup>幌<sup>16</sup>は<sup>17</sup> 北<sup>18</sup>海<sup>19</sup>道<sup>20</sup>の<sup>21</sup> 文<sup>22</sup>化<sup>23</sup>と<sup>24</sup> 政<sup>25</sup>治<sup>26</sup>と<sup>27</sup> 産<sup>28</sup>業<sup>29</sup>の<sup>30</sup> 中<sup>31</sup>心<sup>32</sup>で<sup>33</sup>あ<sup>34</sup>る。し<sup>35</sup>かし<sup>36</sup> 古<sup>37</sup>い<sup>38</sup> 町<sup>39</sup>で<sup>40</sup>は<sup>41</sup>な<sup>42</sup>い。新<sup>43</sup>しい<sup>44</sup> ユ<sup>45</sup>ニ<sup>46</sup>ーク<sup>47</sup>な<sup>48</sup> 町<sup>49</sup>で<sup>50</sup>あ<sup>51</sup>る。  
わ<sup>52</sup>た<sup>53</sup>し<sup>54</sup>は<sup>55</sup> 北<sup>56</sup>海<sup>57</sup>道<sup>58</sup>の<sup>59</sup> 自<sup>60</sup>然<sup>61</sup>に<sup>62</sup> 感<sup>63</sup>動<sup>64</sup>した。青<sup>65</sup>い<sup>66</sup> 湖<sup>67</sup>、広<sup>68</sup>い<sup>69</sup> 野<sup>70</sup>原<sup>71</sup>、地<sup>72</sup>平<sup>73</sup>線<sup>74</sup>の<sup>75</sup> 夕<sup>76</sup>日<sup>77</sup>……

④ 毎<sup>1</sup>日<sup>2</sup>毎<sup>3</sup>日<sup>4</sup>が<sup>5</sup> 充<sup>6</sup>実<sup>7</sup>して<sup>8</sup>い<sup>9</sup>た。わ<sup>10</sup>た<sup>11</sup>し<sup>12</sup>は<sup>13</sup> 少<sup>14</sup>し<sup>15</sup>も<sup>16</sup> つ<sup>17</sup>か<sup>18</sup>れ<sup>19</sup>を<sup>20</sup> 感<sup>21</sup>じ<sup>22</sup>な<sup>23</sup>か<sup>24</sup>った。今<sup>25</sup>度<sup>26</sup>の<sup>27</sup> 旅<sup>28</sup>行<sup>29</sup>の<sup>30</sup> 収<sup>31</sup>穫<sup>32</sup>は<sup>33</sup> け<sup>34</sup>っ<sup>35</sup>て<sup>36</sup> 小<sup>37</sup>さ<sup>38</sup>な<sup>39</sup> も<sup>40</sup>の<sup>41</sup>て<sup>42</sup>は<sup>43</sup>な<sup>44</sup>い。



▲ Akan National Park

- 23 gaido-bukku 'guidebook'
- 24 hirak-u (Vi/Vi) open
- 25 kangae-ru think, consider  
sen line
- 26 hare fine weather ←hare-ru
- 27 jitsu-ni really, truly, indeed
- 28 bunka culture
- 29 seiji politics
- 30 sangyō industry
- 31 chūshin center
- 32 de aru=da, desu
- 33 dewa nai See § 41
- 34 yunikū (Na) 'unique'
- 35 shizen nature
- 36 kandō (Nv) being impressed/moved
- 37 mizuumi lake
- 38 hiro-i spacious, vast; broad

- 39 nohara field, plain (smaller than heiya)
- 40 chihel-sen horizon  
sen line
- 41 yū-hi setting sun cf. asa-hi  
yū- evening hi sun
- 42 jūjitsu (Nv) fullness, completeness; be full/fulfilled
- 43 tsukare tiredness, fatigue  
←tsukare-ru (get tired)
- 44 kanji-ru feel
- 45 kondo (N/Adv) this time; next time
- 46 shūkaku (Nv) harvest, yield
- 47 keshite...nai never
- 48 chiisa-na=chiisa-i small See § 7
- 49 mono thing

## Dai 8-ka Natsu-yasumi no Nikki

Shichi-gatsu tō-ka (Ame)

1 Kinō mo ame datta. Kyō mo mata ame da. Is-shū-kan ichi-do mo hare-nakatta. Kotoshi wa tsuyu-ake ga osoi.

Asu kara natsu-yasumi ga hajimaru. Kyo-nen no natsu wa yama ni nobotta. Natsu-yama wa hontō-ni subarashikatta. Yuki mo kōzan-shoku-butsu mo utsukushikatta. Sora mo kumo mo kirei datta.

2 Kotoshi no natsu-yasumi niwa Hokkaidō e iku. Hokkaidō dewa, Sapporo no machi ya Mashū-ko ya Shiretoko-hantō nado o mawaru. Watashi wa Hokkaidō no koto wa amari shiranai. Tokidoki *gaido-bukku* o hiraitte, ryokō no koto o kangaete-iru.

Hachi-gatsu kokono-ka (Hare)

3 Yūbe Hokkaidō kara kaetta. Hokkaidō wa jitsu-ni yokatta. Sapporo wa Hokkaidō no bunka to seiji to sangyō no chūshin de aru. Shikashi furui machi dewa nai. Atarashii *yuniku*-na machi de aru.

Watashi wa Hokkaidō no shizen ni kandō-shita. Aoi mizuumi, hiroi nohara, chihei-sen no yūhi...

4 Mai-nichi-mai-nichi ga jūjūitsu-shite-ita. Watashi wa sukoshi mo tsukare o kanjinakatta. Kondo no ryokō no shūkaku wa kesshite chiisa-na mono dewa nai.



▶ Akan National Park

## Lesson 8 Summer Vacation Diary

July 10 (Rainy)

1 It was rainy yesterday too. And it is rainy again today. It hasn't been clear once all week. The rainy season is late ending this year.

The summer vacation starts tomorrow. Last summer I went mountain climbing. The summer mountains were just fabulous. The snow and the alpine plants were beautiful. The sky and the clouds were beautiful too.

2 This summer vacation I'm going to go to Hokkaido. In Hokkaido, I'm going to go to Sapporo, Lake Mashu, the Shiretoko Peninsula, and lots of other places. I don't know much about Hokkaido. Sometimes I open my guidebooks and think about my trip.

August 9 (Clear)

3 I got home from Hokkaido last night. Hokkaido was really great. Sapporo is the center of Hokkaido culture, politics, and industry. But it is not an old city. It is a new and unique city.

I was impressed by Hokkaido's nature. The blue lakes, vast plains, and the sun setting on the horizon...

4 Every day was full. I didn't feel tired in the least. I got a lot out of this trip.

### ANSWERS (pp. 100, 101)

I. (A) 1. ...kōen o sanpo-suru. 2. ...o-sake o nomu. 3. ...kuni e kaeru. 4. ...kōen ga aru. 5. ...Nippon-go o hanasu. 6. ...pan o kau. 7. ...sakana o takusan taberu. (B) 1. ...eiga o minai. 2. ...doko e mo ikanai. 3. ...chikaku o tōranai. 4. ...dare mo inai. 5. ...denwa ga nai. (C) 1. ...hon o katta. 2. ...eki made aruita. 3. ...jiko o shitta. 4. ...yoku oyoida. 5. ...4-gatsu ni shinda. (D) 1. ...pōri ni ikanakatta. 2. ...depote e itta ga, nani mo kawanakatta. 3. ...bese o matta ga, ...sonna-ni matanakatta. 4. ...kaze ga fuita. Sorede hikōki wa tobanakatta.

II. 1. (omoi; omoku nai; omokatta; omoku nakatta) 2. (karu; karuku nai; karukatta; karuku nakatta) 3. (yasui; yasuku nai; yasukatta; yasuku nakatta) 4. (taki; takaku nai; takakatta; takaku nakatta) 5. (benri da; benri dewa nai; benri datta; benri dewa nakatta) 6. (kirei da; kirei dewa nai; kirei datta; kirei dewa nakatta) 7. (Orando-sei da; Orando-sei dewa nai; Orando-sei datta; Orando-sei dewa nakatta)

III. 1. (nai) 2. (shizuka dewa nai) 3. (datta); (da) 4. (datta); (kirei dewa nai) 5. (da); (da/hon da); (dewa nai/hon dewa nai)

IV. Watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kita. Ima Kyōto ni sunde-iru ga, amari Kyōto no koto o shiranai. Tokidoki yūmei-na o-tera o tazuneru. Sen-shū Koke-dera e itta. Yūmei-na niwa o mita. O-chaseki ga atta ga, watashi wa hairanakatta. Taitei watashi wa o-tera de e-hagaki o kau ga, sono hi wa ii e-hagaki ga nakatta. Sorede, nani mo kawanakatta.

## § 41 Two Levels of Speech: Polite Style vs. Plain Style

All the Predicates have at least two forms ('styles') corresponding to the speaker's degree of politeness toward the listener. The forms we have been using so far in this book are examples of the Polite style, which is used most commonly in daily conversation between adults who are not close friends. The Plain style, on the other hand, is used between members of a family, classmates, or between people in similar relationships. It is also used in writing, such as books, theses, newspapers, diaries, etc. In writing letters, however, the Polite style is more common, since it is a more or less faithful copy of the spoken language.

		Polite style		Plain style
V	present	aff.	tabemasu 'eat'	taberu
		neg.	tabemasen	tabenai
	past	aff.	tabemashita	tabeta
		neg.	tabemasen deshita	tabenakatta
A	present	aff.	osoi desu 'be late'	osoi
		neg.	{osoku nai desu osoku arimasen}	osoku nai
	past	aff.	osokatta desu	osokatta
		neg.	{osoku nakatta desu osoku arimasen deshita}	osoku nakatta
N/Na + Copula	present	aff.	ame desu 'be rainy'	ame da/de aru
		neg.	ame dewa arimasen	ame de(wa) nai
	past	aff.	ame deshita	ame datta/de atta
		neg.	{ame dewa arimasen deshita (ame dewa nakatta desu)}	ame de(wa) nakatta

NB: dewa is sometimes contracted as ja or jã.

## § 42 Conjugation of Verbs: 3 Kinds of V

The Verb forms which we have been using so far, such as ikimasu, nomimasu, norimasu, tabemasu, mimasu, shimasu, etc., are composed of two parts: '-masu,' an Auxiliary expressing the Polite style, and the part that precedes it. The part preceding '-masu' is called the 'Conjunctive form,' and is used in various ways (besides being used as the 'base' for the 'V-masu form') as we will see later. The forms of V or A you find in the dictionary (called the 'Dictionary form') are the present affirmative forms in the Plain style of V or A. The Dictionary form of V or A is conjugated for Past, Negative, Past Negative, Imperative, Volitional, etc., just as the 'V-masu form' is conjugated for Negative, Past, etc., as we have seen in the preceding lessons.

Japanese Verbs are divided, in terms of conjugation pattern, into '1st Group' Verbs, '2nd Group' Verbs, and two 'Irregular' Verbs (suru 'do' and kuru 'come'). 1st Group V are those whose 'STEMS' (capitalized in the table below) end in consonants, and 2nd Group V are those whose STEMS end in vowels (e or i).

	Conj. +masu	Dict. form	Negative	'te'	'ta' (past)
1st Group	KAKimasu	KAKu	KAKanai	KAlte	KAlta
	OYOGimasu	OYOGu	OYOGanai	OYOIdete	OYOIdeta
	HANASHimasu	HANASu	HANASanai	HANASHItete	HANASHIteta
	YOMimasu	YOMu	YOManai	YONdete	YONdeta
	SHINImasu	SHINu	SHINanai	SHINdete	SHINdeta
	TOBImasu	TOBu	TOBanai	TONdete	TONdeta
	MACHImasu	MATsu	MATanai	MATtete	MATteta
	NORImasu	NORu	NORanai	NOTtete	NOTteta
	KAImasu	KA(W)u	KAWanai	KATtete	KATteta
	2nd Group	TABEmasu	TABeru	TABEnai	TABEtete
MImasu		MImru	MIMinai	MIMetete	MIMeteta
Irreg.	Shimasu	Suru	Shinai	Shite	Shita
	KImasu	Kuru	Konai	Kite	Kita

NB: Certain sound changes occur at the final part of the STEM of 1st Group V in forming the '-te' or '-ta' form.

## I. Rewrite the following sentences in the Plain style.

- (A) 1. Watashi wa mai-nichi kōen o sanpo-shimasu.  
 2. Watashi wa mai-ban o-sake o nomimasu.  
 3. Watashi wa rai-nen<sup>1</sup> kuni e kaerimasu.  
 4. Kono machi niwa kirei-na kōen ga arimasu.  
 5. Kare wa jōzu-ni Nippon-go o hanashimasu.  
 6. Watashi wa itsumo kono mise de *pan* o kaimasu.  
 7. Nippon-jin wa sakana<sup>2</sup> o takusan tabemasu.
- (B) 1. Watashi wa amari eiga o mimasen.  
 2. Kotoshi no natsu wa doko e mo ikimasen.  
 3. Kono *basu* wa watashi no ie no chikaku o tōrimasen.  
 4. Ano heya niwa dare mo imasen.  
 5. Kono heya niwa denwa ga arimasen.
- (C) 1. Kinō *depōto* de hon o kaimashita.  
 2. Kesa eki made arukimashita.  
 3. *Terebi* de sono jiko<sup>3</sup> o shirimashita.  
 4. Kyo-nen no natsu wa yoku oyogimashita.  
 5. Watashi no haha wa kotoshi no 4-gatsu ni shinimashita.<sup>4</sup>
- (D) 1. Watashi wa kinō no *pāti* ni ikimasen deshita.  
 2. Kinō *depōto* e ikimashita ga, nani mo kaimasen deshita.  
 3. Kinō wa teiryū-jo<sup>5</sup> de 10-pun hodo *basu* o machimashita ga, kyō wa sonna-ni machimassen deshita.  
 4. Yūbe tsuyoi kaze<sup>6</sup> ga fukimashita.<sup>7</sup> Sorede hikōki wa tobimassen<sup>8</sup> deshita.

## 語句

- 1 rai-nen next year  
 2 sakana fish 3 jiko accident  
 4 shin-u die  
 5 teiryū-jo streetcar/bus stop

- jo=-sho place  
 6 kaze wind 7 fuku (Vi) blow  
 8 tob-u fly; jump  
 9 *Oranda-sei* made in Holland

II. Replace the underlined words by the words in parentheses, and make sentences as shown in the examples.

Ex. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashii desu.

- a. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashii.  
 b. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashiku nai.  
 c. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashikatta.  
 d. Kanojo no jitensha wa atarashiku nakatta.
1. (omoi) 2. (karui) 3. (yasui) 4. (takai)  
 5. (benri-na) 6. (kirei-na) 7. (*Oranda-sei*)<sup>9</sup>

III. Fill in the blanks using Plain style verbs.

1. Kono machi niwa tosho-kan wa aru ga, bijutsu-kan wa ( ).  
 2. Kyōto wa shizuka-na machi da. Shikashi Tōkyō wa amari ( ).  
 3. Kinō made kare wa byōki ( ). Shikashi kyō wa mō genki ( ).  
 4. Mukashi kono kawa no mizu wa kirei ( ) ga, ima wa mō amari ( ).  
 5. Kore wa watashi no hon ( ). Are mo watashi no ( ). Shikashi sono ōkii hon wa watashi no ( ).

IV. Rewrite the following in the Plain style.

Watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kimashita. Ima Kyōto ni sunde-imasu ga, amari Kyōto no koto o shirimasen. Tokidoki yūmei-na o-tera o tazunemasu.<sup>10</sup> Sen-shū Koke-dera<sup>11</sup> e ikimashita. Yūmei-na niwa o mimashita. O-cha-seki<sup>12</sup> ga arimashita ga, watashi wa hairimasen deshita. Taitei watashi wa o-tera de e-hagaki o kaimasu ga, sono hi wa ii e-hagaki ga arimasen deshita. Sorede, nani mo kaimasen deshita.

- Oranda* 'Holland'  
 -sei made in... e.g. Nippon-sei  
 10 tazune-ru visit; ask  
 11 Koke-dera (a Kyoto temple famous

- for its moss garden)  
 koke moss -dera=tera temple  
 12 (o-)cha-seki tea ceremony; place  
 where tea ceremony is performed

## GENKI KAI?

Tarō: Yā, genki kai<sup>1</sup>?

Hanako<sup>2</sup>: Ē, genki yo.

Anata mo kuroku natta<sup>3</sup> wa ne.<sup>4</sup>

Oyogi<sup>5</sup> ni itta no<sup>6</sup>?

T: Iya,<sup>7</sup> yama e itta yo.

H: Doko no yama e itta no?

Hodaka<sup>8</sup>? Soretomo,<sup>9</sup> Norikura<sup>10</sup>?

T: Iya, Minami-Arupusu<sup>11</sup> ni nobotta.

Kita-dake<sup>12</sup> ga yūdai<sup>13</sup> de

taihen yokatta.

H: Nan-nichi hodo itta no?

T: Is-shū-kan da.

Yama-goya<sup>14</sup> ni tomattari<sup>15</sup> *tento*<sup>16</sup> o  
hattari<sup>17</sup> shite tanoshikatta yo.

Kimi<sup>18</sup> wa doko e itta?



T: Hi, you OK?

H: Yes, I'm OK.

You look so tan.

Did you go swimming?

T: No, I went to the mountains.

H: What mountain did you go to?

Hodaka, or Norikura?

T: No, I went climbing in the Southern Alps.

Kita-dake was majestic and very exciting.

H: How many days were you there?

T: One week.

We had a fantastic time staying in mountain huts and sometimes in a tent. Where did you go?

H: I went to Shonan Beach and had a nice time swimming, playing games, and singing songs around the campfire at night; it was great.

T: How many people were there in your group?

H: There were four of us. This same group is going to go again to a swimming pool.

T: Always having fun, aren't you? What about your studies?

H: Of course. They're OK.

T: Well, see you again, then.

H: Shōnan-kaigan<sup>19</sup> de asonda wa.

Oyoidari *gemu*<sup>20</sup> o shitari,  
yoru wa *kyanpu-faiya*<sup>21</sup> o kakonde<sup>22</sup>  
uta o utattari shite  
tanoshikatta wa.

T: Nan-nin hodo no *gurūpu*<sup>23</sup> datta?

H: Yo-nin de itta no.<sup>24</sup>  
Onaji<sup>25</sup> *gurūpu* de mata *pūru*<sup>26</sup> ni iku  
no.

T: Asonde bakari<sup>27</sup> da ne.  
Benkyō wa daijōbu<sup>28</sup> kai?

H: Mochiron<sup>29</sup> yo.

T: Jā, mata ne.

## 語句

1 kai See § 65

2 Hanako (a given name (f))

3 kuroku naru get sunburnt  
nar-u become

4 wa ne See § 65

5 oyogi swimming  
←oyog-u (swim)

6 no (Ps. indicating a question (Familiar))

7 Iya No, not that

8 Hodaka (name of a mountain)

9 soretomo or else

10 Norikura (name of a mountain)

11 Minami-Arupusu Southern Alps (in Japan)

minami south

Arupusu 'Alps'

12 Kita-dake (name of a mountain)

kita north

-dake high mountain

13 yūdai (Na) majestic

14 yama-goya mountain hut  
-goya=koya hut, small house

15 tomar-u (Vi) stay (overnight); stop

16 *tento* 'tent'

17 har-u stretch, pitch (a tent)

18 kimi you (sing. Friendly)

19 Shōnan-kaigan Shonan Beach

kaigan beach

20 *gemu* 'game'

21 *kyanpu-faiya* 'campfire'

22 kakom-u surround

23 *gurūpu* 'group'

24 no ..., you know (fem.)

25 onaji same

26 *pūru* 'pool' swimming pool

27 ...bakari only, just

28 daijōbu all right

29 mochiron of course



## 日本の 着物

三世紀ごろの中国の歴史の本は、日本の着物について書いてる。日本人は当時大きい布にあなたをあけて頭からかぶっていた。三世紀から七世紀ごろの古墳のはにわの人形はいろいろな着物を着ている。これが当時の日本の服装であった。このころは、ワンピースからツーピースにかわって、男女ともはかまを

はいた。  
八世紀の初めの法律では役人の服装が決まっていた。だいたい中国や朝鮮の服装とにいた。  
平安時代、宮廷の婦人はきれいな着物をたくさん重ねて着ていた。これが十二ひとえである。  
鎌倉時代ごろから下着の小そでをふだん着として着た。次の室町時代では婦人は正式な服装としても小そでを着た。それが今の着物に発達した。  
着物は日本人のスタイルにも日本の気候にも適している。しかしそでやすそが長いから活動には適していない。  
若い人はいつも洋服を着て、お正月や結婚式などの特別な機会にしか着物を着ない。



▲Junihitoe (計箱襦袢考証・所蔵)



▲A modern kimono

## Kimono

A Chinese history book written in the 3rd century says that the Japanese cut holes in large pieces of cloth and wore them at that time. The clay images found in the old tombs made from the 3rd to the 7th centuries show the costume of the people in those days. Around that time they began to wear two-piece clothes, an upper garment and a skirt.

In the early 8th century, there was a law regulating the government officials' costumes, which resembled those in China and Korea.

In the Heian Period the court ladies wore *Junihitoe*, several beautiful *kimonos* one over another. People started wearing *kosode*, which they used to wear as undergarments, as home wear in the Kamakura Period, and ladies wore *kosode* even as formal clothing in the following, the Muromachi, period. This has developed into the *kimono* which we wear today.

*Kimono* is suitable both for the Japanese build and climate. But it limits a person's movement, since it has long sleeves and is ankle-length. Young people wear Western clothes in every day life and *kimonos* only on special occasions such as New Year's Day and weddings.

語句

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 seiki century   | 2 rekishi history  | jidai period, age   |
| 3 kimono (traditional Japanese clothing)                              | 28 kyūtei imperial court   |   |
| 4 ...ni tsuite about, concerning...                                   | 29 fujin lady  |   |
| 5 tōji at that time, those days                                       | 30 kasane-ru fold, put one on top of another   |   |
| 6 nuno cloth  | 7 ana hole   | 31 jū-ni-hitoe (a special kind of kimono)                             |
| 8 ake-ru (Vt) open  | 9 atama (upper part of) head   | 32 Kamakura-jidai Kamakura Period (1192-1333) Kamakura (a place name) |
| 10 kabur-u put on (hat, pullover sweater, etc.) put...over one's head | 33 kosode (a kind of kimono) sode sleeve   |   |
| 11 kofun old mound  | 34 fudan-gi everyday clothes shudan everyday, usual  |   |
| 12 haniwa clay image  | 35 ...to fute as...  |   |
| 13 ki-ru wear (shirts, dress)   | 36 Muromachi-jidai Muromachi Period (1338-1573)  |   |
| 14 fukusō style of dress, costume                                     | 37 seishiki (N/Na) formal  |   |
| 15 ...no koro the time/age/days of...                                 | 38 hattatsu (Nv) develop   |   |
| 16 wanpisu 'one-piece'  | 39 sutai-ru 'style' 40 kikō climate  |   |
| 17 tsūpisu 'two-piece'  | 41 teki-suru be suitable for, suit   |   |
| 18 kawar-u (Vi) change  | 42 suso hem of clothes/skirt/trousers  |   |
| 19 ...tomo both/all...together  | 43 katsudō (Nv) activity   |   |
| 20 hakama (a formal kimono skirt)                                     | 44 yō-fuku Western clothes yō- Western cf. yō-shiki (Western style) yō-sho (imported book) |   |
| 21 hak-u put on, wear (trousers, skirt, socks, shoes)                 | 45 kekkon-shiki wedding ceremony shiki ceremony  |   |
| 22 hōritsu law  | 46 tokubetsu (N/Na/Adv) special  |   |
| 23 yakunin government worker, official                                | 47 kikai occasion, opportunity   |   |
| 24 kimar-u (Vi) get fixed/decided cf. kime-ru (Vt)                    | 48 shika...nai only  |   |
| 25 Chōsen Korea   |  |   |
| 26 nite-iru resemble ←ni-ru   |  |   |
| 27 Heian-jidai Heian Period (794-1192)                                |  |   |

第 9 課

町の中

TAPE  
No. 3  
Side 1

① 車が たくさん 通りますね。

—はい、この へんは いつも 自動車や バイクで いっぱいですから、<sup>3</sup> 気を <sup>4</sup> つけて <sup>5</sup> 歩いてください。この 前の 日曜日にも <sup>6</sup> すぐ <sup>7</sup> そこで <sup>8</sup> 事故が <sup>9</sup> ありました。

信号は どこに ありますか。

—百メートル 先の 交差点まで ありません。あの 交差点で <sup>10</sup> あちら側へ <sup>11</sup> 渡りましょう。この へんは <sup>12</sup> むかしは <sup>13</sup> 静かな <sup>14</sup> いい <sup>15</sup> 町でしたが、<sup>16</sup> 今は <sup>17</sup> すっかり <sup>18</sup> 変わりました。

空気も よく ないですね。

—子どもは いつも 家の <sup>19</sup> 中で <sup>20</sup> 遊ばなければなりませんから、<sup>21</sup> かわいそうです。

② —今 信号は 青ですが、もう 赤に 変わります。

今から <sup>22</sup> 渡らない <sup>23</sup> ほうが <sup>24</sup> いいですね。待ちましょうか。

—ええ、ちょっと <sup>25</sup> 待った <sup>26</sup> ほうが <sup>27</sup> いいです。次の 青

語句

1 hen the area of; around	achira there, yonder
2 baiku 'bike,' motorcycle	11 -mashō let us See § 49
3 ki mind; care	12 sukkari completely, quite
4 ki o tsuke-ru be careful	13 -nakereba narana-i have to See § 45
5 -te-kudasai See § 43	14 kawaiō (Na) pitiful
6 sugu (Adv) soon; near	15 ao (N) blue; green ←ao-i
sugu soko right over there	16 aka (N) red ←aka-i
7 shingō signal; traffic light	17 hō ga ii had better See § 48
8 saki (N) ahead, away; tip; future	18 ao-shingō green light
9 kōsa-ten intersection	19 ...ni nar-u become...
kōsa cross ten point	20 Sā Now, Well
10 achira-gawa that side	21 tōri street

信号まで <sup>18</sup> 待ちましょう。

ああ、青に <sup>19</sup> なりました。さあ、<sup>20</sup> 渡りましょう。

この 通りは <sup>21</sup> だいぶん <sup>22</sup> 静かです。お宅は <sup>23</sup> もう <sup>24</sup> すぐ <sup>25</sup> ですね。

—はい、あと <sup>26</sup> 二百メートルほどです。ああ、<sup>27</sup> 向こうから <sup>28</sup> 一郎が <sup>29</sup> 来ました。

③ —おとうさん、お帰り。公園へ <sup>30</sup> 遊びに <sup>31</sup> 行っても <sup>32</sup> いい。

—お客さんに <sup>33</sup> あいさつを <sup>34</sup> しなさい。

—おじさん、今日は。

やあ、今日は。

—もう <sup>35</sup> おそいから <sup>36</sup> いっしょに <sup>37</sup> 帰ろう。

これこれ、<sup>38</sup> そんなに <sup>39</sup> 道の <sup>40</sup> まん中に <sup>41</sup> 出ては <sup>42</sup> いけません。さあ、<sup>43</sup> もっと <sup>44</sup> 右の <sup>45</sup> ほうを <sup>46</sup> 歩きなさい。

④ ああ、<sup>47</sup> ちよっと <sup>48</sup> 待ってください。いい <sup>49</sup> 店が <sup>50</sup> ありました。ケーキを <sup>51</sup> 買いましょう。……一郎くん、<sup>52</sup> はい。

—おじさん、ありがとう。

—どうも <sup>53</sup> ありがとうごさいます。しかし、<sup>54</sup> この <sup>55</sup> 次から <sup>56</sup> は <sup>57</sup> そんなに <sup>58</sup> 気を <sup>59</sup> つかわなくて <sup>60</sup> ください。

22 daibun =daibu fairly, largely	See § 46
23 ato the rest; after	33 hō side; direction
24 Ichirō (a given name (m))	34 kēki 'cake'
25 O-kaeri (Cph) Welcome home.	35 -kun Mr. (Suf. used by men, usually to men of equal or lower status/age)
26 -temo ii may, can, be allowed to See § 47	36 Hai Here it is; Yes
27 kyaku guest, visitor; customer	37 kono tsugi next time
28 aisatsu (Nv) greeting	29 -nasai See § 44
29 -nasai See § 44	38 tsuka-u use
30 oji-san Sir!, Mister!; uncle	ki o tsuka-u be attentive/considerate
31 Kore-kore! Here, here.	
32 -tewa ikenai should not, ought not	



## Dai 9-ka Machi no Naka

### 1 Kuruma ga takusan tōrimasu ne.

—Hai, kono hen wa itsumo jidōsha ya *baiku* de ippai desu kara, ki o tsukete aruite-kudasai. Kono mae no Nichi-yōbi nimo sugu soko de jiko ga arimashita.

Shingō wa doko ni arimasu ka?

—Hyaku-mētoru saki no kōsa-ten made arimasen. Ano kōsa-ten de achira-gawa e watarimashō. Kono hen wa mukashi wa shizuka-na ii machi deshita ga, ima wa sukkari kawarimashita.

Kūki mo yoku nai desu ne.

—Kodomo wa itsumo ie no naka de asobanakereba narimasen kara, kawaisō desu.

### 2 —Ima shingō wa ao desu ga, mō aka ni kawarimasu.

Ima kara wataranai hō ga ii desu ne. Machimashō ka?

—Ē, chotto matta hō ga ii desu. Tsugi no ao-shingō made machimashō.

Ā, ao ni narimashita. Sā, watarimashō.

Kono tōri wa daibun shizuka desu ne. O-taku wa mō sugu desu ne.

—Hai, ato ni-hyaku-mētoru hodo desu. Ā, mukō kara Ichirō ga kimashita.

### 3 —O-tō-san, o-kaeri. Kōen e asobi ni ittemo ii?

—O-kyaku-san ni aisatsu o shi-nasai.

—Oji-san, konnichi wa!

Yā, konnichi wa!

—Mō osoi kara ishsho-ni kaerō. Kore-kore, sonna-ni michi no man-naka ni detewa ikemasen. Sā, motto migi no hō o aruki-nasai.

### 4 Ā, chotto matte-kudasai. Ii mise ga arimashita. Kēki o kaimashō..... Ichirō-kun, hai.

—Oji-san, arigatō.

—Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Shikashi, kono tsugi kara wa sonna-ni ki o tsukawanaide-kudasai.

## Lesson 9 In the Town

### 1 There sure are a lot of cars, aren't there?

—Yes. Watch where you're walking, since this area is always filled with cars and motorcycles. Last Sunday there was an accident right over there.

Where's the traffic light?

—There isn't one until that intersection 100 meters on up.

Let's cross over that way at that intersection. This area used to be a nice quiet neighborhood, but it sure has changed.

The air isn't very good either.

—I feel sorry for the children, because they always have to play inside.

### 2 —The light is green now, but it's changing to red.

We'd better not cross the street now. Let's wait, shall we?

—Yes, it's better to wait a bit. Let's wait for the next green light.

It's green. Well, let's go. This street is pretty quiet. It's only a little way more to your house, right?

—Right. It's about 200 meters more. Here comes Ichiro.

### 3 —Welcome home, Father. Can I go to the park to play?

—Say hello to our guest.

—Hello, sir.

Hello.

—It's late, so let's go home together. Hey, don't walk out into the middle of the street like that. Walk more on the right-hand side.

### 4 Wait up a minute, please. There was a very nice shop. Let's buy some cake.

.....Here you are, Ichiro.

—Thank you.

—Thank you very much. But please don't worry about things like that next time.

### ANSWERS (pp. 112, 113)

I. 1. ...made hataraitte Nichi-yōbi ni yasumimasu. 2. ...nete asa hayaku... 3. ...yoru naide benkyō-shimasu. 4. ...yorimanaide terebi bakari... 5. ...benkyō-shinaide itsumo... 6.

...matanaide tokushi de... 7. ...kawanaide biru...

III. 1. (ikanakutemo ii desu). 2. (nottewa ikemasen). 3. (katta hō ga ii desu). 4. (mamoranakereba narimasen). 5. "(konakereba narimasen ka)?" "(kite-kudasai)." 6. "(kaettemo ii desu ka)?" "(kaettewa ikemasen). (ite-kudasai)." 7. (utawanaide-kudasai). 8. (sutewa ikemasen). 9. (ikanai hō ga ii desu). 10. (doo o shime-nasai).

IV. 1. Ashita watashi-tachi wa hoikingu ni ikimasu. Watashi-tachi wa asa kara ban made arukanakereba narimasen. Asa hayaku shuppatsu-shimasu kara, kon'ya wa hayaku nemashō. 2. Ashita wa kaisha e konakutemo ii desu ga, asatte wa kanarazu kite-kudasai. 3. Kodomo wa o-sake o nondari, tobako o sutтари shitewa ikemasen.

## § 43 Requesting a Thing or Action

N o	} kudasai.	'Please give me....'
... V-te		'Please do...(for me).'
Neg: V-(a)naide		'Please do not....'

e.g. Mizu o kudasai. 'Give me water, please.'

Matte-kudasai. 'Please wait.' (matte ←matsu 'wait')

Matanaide-kudasai. 'Please do not wait.'

NB: matanaide is the '-te form' of matanai, which is the negative form of matsu 'wait.' For the formation of the Plain negative forms of the 3 kinds of V, see the table in § 42.

## § 44 Order or Command

V (Conj. form)-nasai.

e.g. Machi-nasai. 'Wait!'

Koko ni namae o kaki-nasai. 'Write your name here.'

NB: This is a more straightforward way of ordering someone to do something, but still the style is polite. Its plain variation, which is a more blunt and harsh expression, is mate, kake, tabero, miro, etc. (formed by adding an 'e' to 1st Group V stems and 'ro' to 2nd Group V stems). The Irregular Plain imperatives are shiro (←suru) and koi (←kuru).

## § 45 Duty or Obligation

V-(a)nakereba narimasen. '...have to do....' 'must do....'

e.g. Watashi wa Nara e ikanakereba narimasen. 'I have to go to Nara.'

Anata wa isoganakereba narimasen. 'You have to hurry.'

NB: Literally, this means, 'if...do not do..., it won't work out.'

## § 46 Prohibition

V-tewa ikemasen. '...must not do....'

e.g. Koko de tabako o suttewa ikemasen. 'You may not smoke here.'

Koko o watattewa ikemasen. 'You must not cross the street here.'

## § 47 Permission

V-temo ii desu.

'It will be all right to do....'

'You may do....'

e.g. Koko de tabako o suttemo ii desu ka? 'May I smoke here?'

—Hai, (suttemo) ii desu. 'Yes, you may (smoke).'

—Iie, (suttewa) ikemasen. 'No, you may not (smoke).'

## § 48 Advice

V-ta hō ga ii desu.

'It would be better if you did....'

'You'd better do....'

Negation: V-(a)nai hō ga ii desu. 'It would be better not to do....'

NB: 'hō' is used in a sentence almost like any other Noun, although it never occurs without being modified by other words or phrases. Such Nouns are called Pseudo Nouns.

## § 49 Expressions of Will, Offering, or Inviting

V-mashō.

'Let us do....'; 'I will do....'

V-mashō ka?

'Shall we do...?'; 'Shall I do...?'

e.g. Biru o nomimashō ka? 'Shall we have some beer?'

—Hai, nomimashō. —'Yes, let's (have some).'

Anata o machimashō ka? 'Shall I wait for you?'

—Hai, matte-kudasai. —'Yes, please (wait).'

## I. Transform the sentences as shown in the examples.

Ex. *Pen*<sup>1</sup> *de* *kakimasu*.(A) Q: *Pen* *de* kakanakereba narimasen *ka*?A: *Pen* *de* kakanakutemo ii desu *ga*, *pen* *de* kaita hō ga ii desu.(B) Q: *Pen* *de* kaitemo ii desu *ka*?A: *lie*, *pen* *de* kaitewa ikemasen. *Pen* *de* kakanaide-kudasai.(C) Q: *Pen* *de* kakimashō *ka*?A: *Hai*, *pen* *de* kaite-kudasai.(D) *Pen* *de* kaki-nasai.

- Kyō Nagoya<sup>2</sup> e ikimasu.
- Ashita koko e kimasu.
- Kono hon o yomimasu.
- Mado o shimemasu.<sup>3</sup>
- Kono fuku o sentaku<sup>4</sup>-shimasu.
- Kare o machimasu.
- Ima o-kane o haraimasu.<sup>5</sup>
- Nippon-go de hanashimasu.

## II. Combine the sentences.

- Watashi-tachi wa Getsu-yōbi kara Do-yōbi made hatarakimasu.<sup>6</sup> Soshite Nichi-yōbi ni yasumimasu.
- Yoru hayaku ne-nasai. Soshite asa hayaku oki-nasai.
- Kare wa tokidoki yoru nemasen. Soshite benkyō-shimasu.
- Kare wa mettani shinbun o yomimasen. *Terebi* bakari mite-imasu.
- Sono kodomo wa benkyō-shimasen deshita. Itsumo asonde-imashita.
- Watashi-tachi wa *basu* o machimasen deshita. *Takushi* de ikimashita.
- Watashi wa sono o-kane de hon o kaimasen deshita. (Sono o-kane de) *biru* o nomimashita.

## 語句

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>pen</i> 'pen'                                  | 5 <i>hara-u</i> pay                |
| 2 Nagoya (a name of a city between Tokyo and Osaka) | 6 <i>hatarak-u</i> work            |
| 3 <i>shime-ru</i> (Vt) close, shut                  | 7 <i>tomar-u</i> stop              |
| 4 <i>sentaku</i> (Nv) washing (clothes)             | 8 <i>jisho</i> =jibiki dictionary  |
|   | 9 <i>kisoku</i> regulations, rules |

## III. Complete the sentences.

- Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi desu kara, kaisha e (need not go).
- Kono densha wa anata no eki niwa tomarimasen<sup>7</sup> kara, (should not get on it).
- Kono jisho<sup>8</sup> wa taihen ii jisho desu kara, (better buy it).
- Watashi-tachi wa iroiro-na kisoku<sup>9</sup> o (should observe<sup>10</sup>).
- "Ashita nan-ji ni koko e (have to come)?"  
"Kanarazu<sup>11</sup> 9-ji ni koko e (please come)."
- "Kyō wa tsukaremashita. Mō (may I go home)?" "lie, (please don't go home). Mō sukoshi koko ni (please stay)."
- Kodomo ga nete-imasu. Sonna-ni ōkii koe<sup>12</sup> de (please do not sing).
- Eiga-kan dewa *tabako* o (should not smoke).
- Netsu<sup>13</sup> ga arimasu kara, kyō wa kaisha e (better not go).
- Samui*<sup>14</sup> *kara* (shut the door).

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

- Tomorrow we are going on a hike. We'll have to walk from morning till evening. We'll start<sup>15</sup> early in the morning, so let's go to bed early tonight.<sup>16</sup>
- You don't have to come to work tomorrow, but be sure to come the day after tomorrow.<sup>17</sup>
- Children must neither drink nor smoke.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 10 <i>mamor-u</i> keep (a promise); observe (the rules); obey; protect | <i>netsu ga aru</i> feverish              |
| 11 <i>kanarazu</i> (Adv) without fail                                  | 14 <i>samu-i</i> cold (for weather only)  |
| 12 <i>koe</i> voice  | 15 <i>shuppatsu</i> (Nv) departure, start |
| 13 <i>netsu</i> fever  | 16 <i>kon'ya</i> tonight                  |
|  | 17 <i>asatte</i> the day after tomorrow   |

## OISHII!

—Shokujī<sup>1</sup> ni ikimashō ka?

Ē, oishii<sup>2</sup> mise ni tsurete-itte<sup>3</sup>-kudasai.

—Nani ga ii desu ka?

Wa-shoku<sup>4</sup>? Soretomo, Chūka-ryōri<sup>5</sup>?

Wa-shoku ga ii desu.

—Jā, sushi-ya<sup>6</sup> e ikimashō.

Koko wa kirei-na sushi-ya deshō?

Tokidoki kimasu. Sonna-ni takaku nakute, oishii desu yo.

Sate,<sup>7</sup> nani ni shimasu ka?

Tekka<sup>8</sup> ni shimasu. Anata wa?

—Watashi wa moriawase<sup>9</sup> desu.

Akadashi<sup>10</sup> wa ikaga<sup>11</sup> desu?

Miso<sup>12</sup> sūpu<sup>13</sup> desu ne.

Chūmon<sup>14</sup>-shite-kudasai.

—Chotto... Tekka to moriawase, sore ni<sup>15</sup> akadashi futa-tsu kudasai.

—Shall we go to eat?  
Yes, please take me to someplace good.

—What would you like?  
Japanese food or Chinese food?  
I prefer Japanese food.  
—OK, let's go to a *sushi* shop.

This is a good *sushi* shop, isn't it?  
I come here sometimes. It isn't so expensive and the food is delicious.  
Well, what'll you have?  
I'll take *tekka*. How about you?

—I'll have *moriawase*.  
Don't you want *akadashi*?

That's 'miso' soup, isn't it? Please order.

—Say! Can we have one *tekka* and one *moriawase*, and two *akadashi*?

## 語句

- 1 shokujī (Nv) meal, eating
- 2 oishi-i delicious
- 3 tsurete-iku take (a person) to, accompany
- 4 wa-shoku Japanese food
- 5 Chūka-ryōri Chinese food
- 6 sushi-ya *sushi* shop
- 7 Sate Well, ...
- 8 tekka (a kind of *sushi*)
- 9 moriawase (a kind of *sushi*)
- 10 akadashi (a kind of soup)

—What will you have to drink, sir?  
—One bottle of beer, please.

—Sorry to have kept you waiting.  
Well, beautiful, isn't it? Japanese cooking is always arranged so beautifully. It's just... it's never served warm.

—That's so. Soup and rice are better served hot, but *sushi* and *sashimi* are better cold.

—How is it? Is it good?  
Yes, very.

—O-nomimono<sup>16</sup> wa?

—*Biru* ip-pon kudasai.

—Hai, o-machidō-sama.<sup>17</sup>

Hō, kirei desu ne. Nippon no ryōri wa *mina taihen kirei desu*.

Tada,<sup>18</sup> amari atatakaku<sup>19</sup> nai desu ne.

—Sō desu ne. *Sūpu* ya gohan wa *atsui*<sup>20</sup> hō ga ii desu ga, *sushi* ya *sashimi*<sup>21</sup> wa tsumetai hō ga ii desu.

—Ikaga desu? Oishii desu ka?

Ē, totemo totemo.



- 11 ikaga? How do you like ...?; What about...?
- 12 miso bean paste
- 13 sūpu 'soup'
- 14 chūmon (Nv) order (a thing)
- 15 sore ni besides; moreover
- 16 nomimono something to drink
- 17 o-machidō-sama (Cph)
- 18 tada only
- 19 atataka-i warm
- 20 atsu-i hot
- 21 sashimi (raw fish)

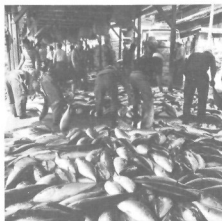
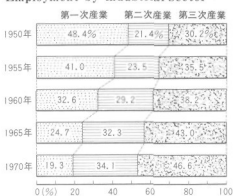
## 産 業—1

日本はもともと農業国だったが、戦後工業が急速に発達して、今では世界の有名な工業国の一つである。労働人口のうち約19%が農業や水産業などの第一次産業、34%ぐらいが工業などの第二次産業、約47%がサービス業などの第三次産業で働いている。

農業人口はこの20年間に約半分に減った。農業でも機械化がずいぶん進んでいる。むかしから農業生産物のおもなものは米だ。日本はまわりが海だから、むかしから水産業がさかんだ。沿岸では工場の廃水で水がよごれていて、さかなが減っているから、遠洋漁業がふえている。

木材の需要は年々ふえている。しかし国内の木材の供給はあまり多くないから、木材を外国から輸入しなければならない。日本には鉄や鋼などの鉱物ほとんどない。石油もほとんどない。石炭はむかしはたくさんあったが、今ではたいへん少ない。これらのものはほとんど外国から輸入している。

Employment by industrial sector



## Industry—1

Japan was originally an agricultural country, but the rapid industrial development since World War II has made her one of the world's main industrial countries. About 19% of the working population is engaged in primary industries such as agriculture and fishing, about 34% in secondary industries such as manufacturing, and about 47% in tertiary industries such as service.

The farming population has fallen to about half what it was twenty years ago. Agriculture has also been mechanized considerably. Rice has been the main crop for many years.

Fishing has flourished for a long time in Japan, surrounded as it is by the sea. Lately, deep-sea fishing has been increasing because the coastal seas are polluted by foul drainage from factories, and this has cut catches there.

The demand for timber is increasing every year, but timber must be imported because the domestic supply is so small. Nor is Japan rich in mineral resources such as iron and copper. There is not much petroleum either. Japan used to have a lot of coal but she has only a little now. Thus Japan imports almost all of these raw materials.

### 語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 motomoto originally                          | the next step                                |
| 2 nō-gyō-koku agricultural country             | 22 nō-gyō-seisan-butsu agricultural products |
| nō-gyō agriculture                             | seisan-butsu product                         |
| -gyō vocation, profession                      | seisan (Nv) production                       |
| -koku country, nation                          | 23 mawari surroundings                       |
| 3 sen-go postwar                               | 24 sakan (Na) flourishing                    |
| 4 kō-gyō engineering industry                  | 25 engan (N) coast along...                  |
| 5 kyūsoku (Na) rapid                           | 26 haisui (Nv) drainage, sewage              |
| kyūsoku-ni rapidly                             | 27 yogore-ru become dirty                    |
| 6 sekai world                                  | 28 en'yō-gyō-gyō deep-sea fishery            |
| 7 kō-gyō-koku industrial nation                | en'yō deep-sea gyō-gyō fishery               |
| 8 rōdō-jinkō working population                | 29 fue-ru (V) increase                       |
| rōdō (Nv) labor                                | 30 mokuzai timber, wood                      |
| 9 ...no uchi among...                          | 31 juyō (N) demand                           |
| 10 yaku about, approximately                   | 32 nen-nen year after year                   |
| 11 pāsenfo 'percent'                           | 33 koku-nai (N) within the country,          |
| 12 suisang-gyō fisheries industry              | domestic -nai within                         |
| 13 dai-ichi-ji-sangyō primary industry         | 34 kyōkyū (Nv) supply                        |
| dai- (Pref. expressing ordinal numbers)        | 35 gaikoku foreign country                   |
| dai-...-ji the ...-th                          | 36 yunyū (Nv) import                         |
| 14 dai-ni-ji-sangyō secondary industry         | cf. yushutsu (export)                        |
| 15 sōbiu-gyō service industry                  | 37 tetsu iron                                |
| sōbiu (Nv) 'service'                           | 38 dō copper                                 |
| 16 dai-san-ji-sangyō tertiary industry         | 39 kōbutsu mineral                           |
| 17 hanbun half                                 | 40 hotondo almost                            |
| 18 her-u (Vi) decrease, be reduced             | 41 sekiyu petroleum                          |
| 19 kikai-ka (Nv) mechanization, automatization | -ka (Nv) -ization                            |
| 20 zuibun extremely; quite                     | 42 sekitan coal                              |
| 21 susum-u advance, progress, go on to         | 43 kore-ra these                             |
|  | -ra (Suf. expressing plural)                 |

# 第 10 課

## 夏の手紙

TAPE  
No. 3  
Side 1

- ① マリアさん、毎日暑い日が続きますが、お元気ですか。きょうは八月七日で、立秋です。しかし、「秋の始まり」も名まえだけで、まだ真夏の暑さですね。
- ② 休みが始まってから、もう一か月たちました。この前わたしがあなたの家へ行ってから、半月になりますね。この半月のあいだ、わたしは山に登ったり、海水浴に行ったりして、よく遊びました。中部地方の山は高くてきれいでした。山のの上にはまだ雪が残っていました。わたしたちが山に登っているあいだはずっとよい天気でしたが、海へ行っているあいだはよく雨が降りました。そののちは毎日むし暑くてたいへんです。
- ③ わたしはこのごろ毎朝六時に起きて、すずしいあいだに二時間フランス語の勉強をします。夜は暑

### 語句

- 1 Maria 'Maria'  
2 atsu-i hot  
3 tsuzuku- (Vi) continue  
cf. tsuzuke-ru (Vi)  
4 de See § 54  
5 Rishū (the first day of autumn on the lunar calendar)  
6 hajimari beginning ←hajimar-u  
7 ma-natsu midsummer  
ma- at the height/center of  
8 atsu-sa heat ←atsu-i  
9 tats-u elapse  
10 han-tsuki half a month  
11 ...ni naru amount to...

- 12 ...no aida during... See § 51  
13 kaisuiyoku swimming at the beach  
kaisui sea water -yoku bathing  
14 Chūbu-chihō (Nagoya and the surrounding prefectures)  
chihō district, locality  
15 yama-yama many mountains  
cf. hito-bito, ie-ie (many houses)  
16 nochi later, after  
17 mushi-atsu-i sultry, hot and stuffy  
mushi- ←mus-u (steam)  
18 -kute See § 54  
19 kono-goro these days, recently  
20 zuzushi-i cool

いときはまどをあけたまま寝ます。

- ④ 八月二十日は土曜日で、ぼんおどりの日です。町の人々はみな夜通しおどります。いつも晩は静かでさびしい町も、その夜だけはさわがしくてにぎやかな町になります。歌やわらい声が見物人に流れます。みんな歌いながらおどります。見物人もおどりの輪を見ながらいっしょに歌います。ぼんおどりはたいへんおもしろいので、マリアさん、土曜の夕方からぜひ来てください。いっしょにおどりましょう。ごちそうを作って待っています。
- ⑤ まだ暑さが続きますから、どうぞおからだに気をつけてください。さようなら。
- 八月七日

友子

- 21 Furansu-go French (language)  
22 toki time, occasion See § 50  
23 ake-ru open (Vi)  
24 -ta mama See § 53  
25 Bon-odori Bon Festival Dance  
odori dance ←odor-u  
26 yo-dōshi all night  
27 odor-u dance  
28 sabishi-i lonely, forlorn, desolate  
29 sawagashi-i noisy  
30 nigiyaka (Na) lively, animated  
31 warai-goe sounds of laughter  
warai←wara-u (laugh)  
goe←koe voice

- 32 machi-jū the whole town  
-jū the whole, throughout  
33 nagare-ru flow  
34 -nagara while ...ing See § 52  
35 kenbutsu-nin onlooker  
36 wa circle, ring  
37 Do-yō=Do-yōbi Saturday  
38 yūgata evening  
39 zehi by all means, without fail  
40 gochisō good food, feast  
41 tsukur-u make  
42 karada body; health  
43 Tomoko (a given name (f))

## Dai 10-ka Natsu no Tegami

**1** *Maria-san, mai-nichi atsu hi ga tszukimasu ga, o-genki desu ka? Kyō wa Hachi-gatsu nano-ka de, Rissshū desu. Shikashi, 'aki no hajimari' mo namae dake de, mada ma-natsu no atsu-sa desu ne.*

**2** *Yasumi ga hajimatte kara, mō ik-ka-getsu tachimashita. Kono mae watashi ga anata no ie e itte kara, han-tsuki ni narimasu ne. Kono han-tsuki no aida, watashi wa yama ni nobottari, kaisuiyoku ni ittari shite, yoku asobimashita. Chūbu-chihō no yama-yama wa takakute kirei deshita. Yama no ue niwa mada yuki ga nokotte-imashita. Watashi-tachi ga yama ni nobotte-iru aida wa zutto yoi tenki deshita ga, umi e itte-iru aida wa yoku ame ga furimashita. Sono nochi wa mai-nichi mushi-atsukute taihen desu.*

**3** *Watashi wa kono-goro mai-asa roku-ji ni okite, suzushii aida ni ni-jikan Furansu-go no benkyō o shimasu. Yoru wa atsui toki wa mado o aketa mama nemasu.*

**4** *Hachi-gatsu ni-jū-ni-nichi wa Do-yōbi de, bon-odori no hi desu. Machi no hito-bito wa mina yodōshi odorimasu. Itsumo ban wa shizuka de sabi-shii machi mo, sono yoru dake wa sawagashikute nigiyaka-na machi ni narimasu. Uta ya warai-goe ga machi-jū ni nagaremasu. Minna utainagara odorimasu. Kenbutsu-nin mo odori no wa o minagara issho-ni utaimasu. Bon-odori wa taihen omoshiroi desu kara, Maria-san, Do-yō no yūgata kara zehi kite-kudasai. Issho-ni odorimashō. Gochisō o tsukutte matte-imasu.*

**5** *Mada atsu-sa ga tszukimasu kara, dōzo o-karada ni ki o tsukete-kudasai. Sayōnara!*

Hachi-gatsu nano-ka

Tomoko

## Lesson 10 A Summer Letter

August 7

**1** Dear Maria,

The days continue hot, but I hope you are in good health. Today is August 7, *Rissshū*. But it is "the beginning of fall" in name only, and it is still as hot as midsummer.

**2** It is already a month since our vacation started. And it is half a month since I went to your house, isn't it? During this half-month, I have been having a lot of fun, climbing mountains, going swimming in the ocean, and everything. The mountains in the Chubu area are high and beautiful. There was still some snow left on the mountain tops. All the time I was mountain climbing, the weather was good, but it rained a lot while I was at the beach. Since then, it has been terribly muggy every day.

**3** Recently, I have been getting up every morning at 6:00 and studying French for two hours while it is still cool. At night when it is hot I sleep with my bedroom window open.

**4** August 22 is a Saturday and the day of the *bon* dance. The people in our town dance all night. Even towns which are always quiet and lonely at night become noisy and lively that one night. The town rings with song and laughter. Everyone sings and dances. Even the spectators sing along while watching the circle of dancers. The *bon* dancing is very interesting, so I hope you will please come on Saturday evening. Let's dance together. I'll fix a big supper and be waiting for you.

**5** The hot days are continuing yet, so please take care of your health. Good-bye.

Tomoko

### ANSWERS <p. 124, 125>

I. (A) 1. (Rai-nen Yōroppa e) iku toki (tomodachi to issho-ni ikimasu). 2. (...ga) kita toki (watashi...). 3. (...ga) nai toki (tomodachi...). 4. (...ga) ite toki (yoku...).

(B) 1. (...ga) futte-iru aida (kissa-ten...). 2. (...) watashi ga Nippon ni inai aida (anata...). 3. (...ga) byōki no aida (watashi...).

(C) 1. (...) tabenagara (*ferēbi*...). 2. (...o) abinagara (uta...). 3. (...o) kangaenagara (kōen...). 4. (Hiru) hatarakinagara (yoru...).

(D) 1. (...o) haita mama (ie...). 2. (...o) aketa mama (asa...). 3. (...hayaku) dekaeta mama (mada...). 4. (...ni) suwatta mama (nagai...).

(E) 1. a. Shūshoku-shite kara (kekkon...). b. Shūshoku-suru mae ni (kekkon...). 2. a. (...e) itte kara (*Biru*...). b. (...e) iku mae ni (*Biru*...). 3. a. (...ni) atte kara (shokuji...). b. (...ni) au mae ni (shokuji...).

II. 1. toki 2. toki 3. aida 4. tsuketa mama 5. utainagara 6. neru mae ni

III. (A) 1. Nippon no dōro wa semakute abunai desu. 2. Kyōto wa shizuka de kirei desu. 3. Kare no ie wa eki kara tōkute fu-ben desu. (B) 1. Kanojo wa watashi no imōto de, namae wa An desu. 2. Kyō wa Nichi-yōbi de, kaisha wa yasumi desu.

## § 50 Phrases and Clauses Expressing Time

kono/sono/ano	} + <b>toki (ni)</b>	'(at) this/that time'
N no		'(at) the time of...'
Na-na		'(at) a...time'
A (Dict. form)		'(at) a...time'
V (Dict. form)		'When...'
V-ta		'When...has/had done...'
V-te-iru		'When...is/was doing...'

**Toki** by itself means 'time,' but it is mostly used as a Pseudo Noun (See § 48), and it functions something like the conjunction 'when' in English. The Particle **ni** can be omitted because of **toki**'s Adverbial character.

e.g. *ame no toki* '(at) a time of rain'='when it rains'

*hima-na toki* '(at) a leisurely time'='when one is not busy'

*samui toki* '(at) a cold time'='when it is cold'

*unten-suru toki* '(at) a driving time'='when one drives'

Politeness (style) or Past (tense) need not be observed in the phrase or clause preceding **toki**, because it is a subordinate (or dependent) clause, and style and tense are expressed by the form of the Predicate at the end of the whole sentence. Thus when the main Predicate expresses the Past tense, then the V or A preceding **toki** may or may not take the Past tense form ('-ta form'). The '-ta form' of V usually shows that the action or event is finished at the time expressed by the main Predicate. Compare the following:

*Nippon e kuru toki, kare ga kūkō made kite-kuremashita.*

'When I came to Japan, he came to the airport (to see me off).'

*Nippon e kita toki, kare ga kūkō made kite-kuremashita.*

'When I came to Japan, he came to the airport to meet me.'

## § 51 Other Expressions of Temporal Relations

N no } + **aida** 'while...'; 'during the time of...'

N no } + **mae (ni)** 'before...'

N no } + **ato (de)** 'after...'

## § 52 Two Simultaneous Actions

V<sub>1</sub> (Conj. form) + **•nagara** V<sub>2</sub> 'do(V<sub>2</sub>) while doing(V<sub>1</sub>)'

e.g. *terebi o minagara gohan o taberu* 'eat while watching TV'

## § 53 'as...is'

V<sub>1</sub>-**ta** + **mama** V<sub>2</sub>

This presupposes that the Subject is already in a certain state (expressed by V-ta, A, or some other modifier) and performs some action (V<sub>2</sub>) while maintaining the original state.

e.g. *Watashi wa tatta (<tatsu 'stand') mama kōhi o nomimashita.*

'(I had been standing and) I drank my coffee standing.'

## § 54 Conjoining Adjectival or Nominal Predicates

... A-kute, ...  
... Na de, ... '..., and...'  
... N de, ...

e.g. *Kanojo wa wakakute, kirei desu.* 'She is young and pretty.'



I. Combine the following sentences.

(A) using 'toki'

1. (Rai-nen *Yōroppa*<sup>1</sup> e ikimasu.) (Tomodachi to issho-ni ikimasu.)
2. (Kare ga kimashita.) (Watashi wa mada nete-imashita.)
3. (O-kane ga arimasen.) (Tomodachi ni karimasu.<sup>2</sup>)
4. (Tenki ga ii desu.) (Yoku kōen de asobimasu.)

(B) using 'aida'

1. (Ame ga futte-imashita.) (Kissa-ten ni imashita.)
2. (Kotoshi no natsu watashi wa Nippon ni imasen.) (Anata wa watashi no ie o tsukattemo<sup>3</sup> ii desu.)
3. (Kodomo ga byōki desu.) (Watashi wa kaisha o yasumanakereba narimasen.)

(C) using 'nagara'

1. (Gohan o tabemasu.) (*Terebi* o mimasu.)
2. (*Showā*<sup>4</sup> o abimasu.<sup>5</sup>) (Uta o utaimasu.)
3. (Iroiro-na koto o kangaemasu.) (Kōen o sanpo-shimasu.)
4. (Hiru hatarakimasu.) (Yoru daigaku de benkyō-shimasu.)

(D) using 'mama'

1. (Kutsu o hakimasu.) (Ie ni haittewa ikemasen.)
2. (Mado o akemashita.) (Asa made nemutte<sup>6</sup>-imashita.)
3. (Kanojo wa asa hayaku dekakemashita.<sup>7</sup>) (Mada kaerimasen.)
4. (Kare wa sono isu ni suwarimashita.<sup>8</sup>) (Nagai aida ugokimasen<sup>9</sup> deshita.)

## 語句

1 <i>Yōroppa</i> 'Europe'	6 nemur-u sleep cf. ne-ru (go to bed, lie down, sleep)
2 kari-ru borrow cf. kas-u (lend)	7 dekake-ru go out
3 tsuka-u spend, use	8 suwar-u sit
4 <i>showa</i> 'shower'	9 ugok-u (Vi) move
5 abi-ru pour/dash (water, etc.) over oneself	10 mae ni See § 51

(E) using '-te kara,' and then '...mae ni!<sup>10</sup>'

1. (Shūshoku<sup>11</sup>-shimasu.) (Kekkon-shimasu.)
2. (Anata no ie e ikimasu.) (*Biru*<sup>12</sup> ni denwa o kakemasu.)
3. (Kare ni aimasu.) (Shokujī-shimashō.)

II. Choose the correct word.

1. Watashi ga *hōmu*<sup>13</sup> ni tsuita (aida, toki), densha no *doo* ga shimarimashita.
2. Watashi ga sono mise de kaimono<sup>14</sup> o shite-iru (aida, toki), kare ga mise no mae o tōrimashita.
3. Watashi ga sono mise de kaimono o shite-iru (aida, toki), kare wa watashi o matte-imashita.
4. *Rajio* o (tsuketa<sup>15</sup> mama, tsukenagara) asa made nemutte-imashita.
5. Minna de uta o (utatta mama, utainagara) yama ni noborimashita.
6. Yoru (neru mae ni, nete kara) ha<sup>16</sup> o migakimasu.<sup>17</sup>

III. Make sentences using the key phrases.

(A) Ex. (kono tatemono) (ōkii) (atarashii)

→Kono tatemono wa ōkikute atarashii desu.

1. (Nippon no dōro) (semai<sup>18</sup>) (abunai<sup>19</sup>)

2. (Kyōto) (shizuka) (kirei)

3. (kare no ie) (eki kara tōi) (fu-ben)

(B) Ex. (kore) (toshō-kan) (are) (bijutsu-kan)

→Kore wa toshō-kan de, are wa bijutsu-kan desu.

1. (kanojo) (watashi no imōto) (namae) (*An*<sup>20</sup>)

2. (kyō) (Nichi-yōbi) (kaisha) (yasumi)

11 shūshoku (Nv) get/find employment	17 migak-u polish, brush
12 <i>Biru</i> 'Bill'	18 sema-i small and narrow cf. hiro-i
13 <i>hōmu</i> 'platform'	19 abuna-i dangerous
14 kaimono shopping	20 <i>An</i> 'Ann'
15 tsuke-ru turn on	
16 ha tooth	

## II TENKI DESU NE

Tsutomu<sup>1</sup>: Ii tenki desu ne.

Dō desu,<sup>2</sup> *tenisu*<sup>3</sup> o  
shimasen ka?

Emiko<sup>4</sup>: Ē, ii wa yo.<sup>5</sup>

Kigae<sup>6</sup> o shite kara iku wa.  
Sukoshi matte-ite ne.

T: Un,<sup>7</sup> jā boku wa *raketto*<sup>8</sup> to  
*bōru* o karite-kimashō.<sup>9</sup>

E: O-negai ne.<sup>10</sup> Sugu kuru wa.

E: O-machidō-sama.

T: Sā, ikimashō.

E: Mā, takusan no hito ne.

*Kōto*<sup>11</sup> ga hito-tsu mo<sup>12</sup> aite<sup>13</sup>-inai wa.

T: Do-yōbi no gogo desu kara, hito ga  
ōi desu.

E: Dō shimashō?

T: Kono *benchi* ni kakete<sup>14</sup> sukoshi  
machimashō.

Honto<sup>15</sup>-ni ii o-tenki desu nē....

T: It's a nice day, isn't  
it?  
How about a game of  
tennis?

E: Yes, fine with me.  
I'll go after I change  
clothes.  
Wait a minute, will  
you?

T: Sure. I'll go borrow  
some rackets and balls.  
E: Please.  
I'll be right back.

E: Sorry to have kept you  
waiting.

T: Let's go.

E: My, there are so many  
people here. There is  
not a single court avail-  
able.

T: It's because it's Satur-  
day afternoon that  
there are so many  
people.

E: What shall we do?

T: Let's sit down on this  
bench and wait a bit.  
It really is a nice day,  
isn't it?

## 語句

- 1 Tsutomu (a given name (m))
- 2 Dō desu (Cph) What do you say to ...ing?
- 3 *tenisu* 'tennis'
- 4 Emiko (a given name (f))
- 5 ii wa yo Fine with me. (fem.)
- 6 *kigae* changing (clothes)
- 7 Un=Hai Ok (Familiar)
- 8 *raketto* 'racket'
- 9 *karite-kuru* borrow...and come -te-kuru See § 87
- 10 O-negai ne (Cph: short for 'O-negai-shimasu' and used when asking a favor) *negai* wishes, hopes ←*nega-u* (wish)
- 11 *kōto* 'court'

E: Shall we have some  
juice while we are  
waiting?

T: I'll go buy it.

E: It's cold and delicious.  
They are playing vol-  
leyball and basketball  
here too.

T: They are even playing  
baseball over there.

E: Autumn really is the  
season for sports, isn't  
it?

T: Look, there is a court  
free now. Let's begin.

E: Yes, let's go.

Oh dear, I've left my  
tennis shoes behind.  
Is it all right to play  
in these shoes?

T: No, you can't go onto  
the court with those  
shoes on.  
I'll go get your tennis  
shoes.

Can you wait here a  
moment?

E: I'm sorry, really.

E: Matte-iru aida, *jūsu*<sup>16</sup> demo<sup>17</sup>  
nomimasan ka?

T: Boku ga katte-kimashō.

E: Tsumetakute oishii wa.

*Barē-bōru*<sup>18</sup> ya *basuketto-bōru*<sup>19</sup> mo  
shite-imasu ne?

T: Mukō dewa *yakyū*<sup>20</sup> mo *yatte*<sup>21</sup>-imasu.

E: *Supōtsu* no aki ne.

T: Ā, *kōto* ga akimashita.

Hajimemashō ka?

E: Ē, hajimemashō.

*Ara, tenisu-shūzu*<sup>22</sup> o *wasurete*<sup>23</sup>-kita wa.  
Kono *kutsu* de *shitemo* ii *kashira*<sup>24</sup>?

T: Iya, sono *kutsu* de *kōto* ni haittewa  
ikemasen.

Boku ga *tenisu-shūzu* o *totte-kimashō*.<sup>25</sup>

Koko de *matte-ite-kudasai*.

E: Gomen-nasai<sup>26</sup> ne.



- 12 hito-tsu mo...nai not a  
single
- 13 ak-u be vacant; open
- 14 *kake-ru* (on a chair)
- 15 *honto*=hontō
- 16 *jūsu* 'juice'
- 17 ...demo ...or something
- 18 *barē-bōru* 'volleyball'
- 19 *basuketto-bōru* 'basket-  
ball'
- 20 *yakyū* baseball
- 21 *yar-u* =*suru* do; play  
(sport)
- 22 *tenisu-shūzu* 'tennis shoes'
- 23 *wasure-ru* forget
- 24 *kashira* I wonder
- 25 *totte-kuru* go (and) get
- 26 Gomen-nasai (Cph: apol-  
ogizing)

## 日本の歴史—1

わが国のいちばん<sup>1</sup>古い<sup>2</sup>歴史の本は「古事記」である。それより<sup>4</sup>前の<sup>3</sup>ことは考古学の資料<sup>5</sup>らしか<sup>6</sup>わからない。そのころ<sup>7</sup>日本には「縄文文化」<sup>8</sup>と「弥生文化」<sup>9</sup>があって、「弥生時代」<sup>10</sup>には農業<sup>11</sup>が発達<sup>12</sup>してきた。次の「古墳時代」<sup>11</sup>は<sup>12</sup>いわゆる氏族制度<sup>13</sup>の時代で、天皇家も<sup>14</sup>氏族の一つ<sup>15</sup>であった。



▲Jomon pottery

聖徳太子は七世紀の初め、わが国最初の憲法を作った。太子はたいへんかしこくて、一度に十人のうったえを聞きながら判断を下した。太子は法隆寺などたくさんのお寺を建てた。この時代から710年に奈良に都が移る前までのあいだが、「飛鳥時代」である。太子はまた留学生を中国へ送った。かれらは日本に帰って、中国の政治制度を伝えた。

645年の「大化の改新」<sup>31</sup>や672年の「壬申の乱」<sup>32</sup>ののち、天皇中心の政治体制が確立した。

「奈良時代」に中央政府は都や地方にたくさんのお寺を作って、それらを人々の精神的中心にした。しかし、それで財政的に困った。そのあいだに藤原氏の勢力がのびた。



▲Shotoku Taishi

The oldest Japanese history book is *Kojiki*. Only archeological data can give us information on the ages before this, during which the Jomon and Yayoi cultures flourished. Agriculture was developed in the Yayoi Period. The Kofun Age was called the age of the clan system, the Imperial family being one of these clans.

Shotoku Taishi wrote the first Japanese Constitution at the beginning of the 7th century. He was clever enough to pass judgment on cases while listening to ten people's appeals at the same time. He built Horyu-ji and many other temples. The period from his rule until the capital was moved to Nara in 710 is called the Asuka Period. Taishi sent some students to China. They came back and introduced the Chinese political system. The emperor-centered political structure was strengthened after the Taika Restoration of 645 and the Jinshin Revolt of 672.

The central government built many temples in the Nara capital and in the countryside, making them the spiritual centers of the nation. But this also created financial difficulties. During this period, the Fujiwaras gained power.

## 語句

- 1 waga our; my
- 2 waga kuni our country
- 3 2 ichiban the most; first See § 60
- 3 Kojiki (the oldest Japanese chronicle, compiled in 712)
- 4 ...yori than... See § 59
- 5 kōko-gaku archaeology
- 5 -gaku -ology; learning
- 6 shiryō data, information resource
- 7 wakar-u understandable; understand
- 8 Jōmon-bunka Jomon Culture (8-7000-300 B.C.)
- 9 Yayoi-bunka Yayoi Culture (300 B.C.-300 A.D.)
- 10 Yayoi-jidai Yayoi Period
- 11 Kofun-jidai Kofun Period
- 12 iwayuru so-called
- 13 shisei-seido clan system
- 13 shisei clan, family seido system
- 14 Tennō-ke Imperial family
- 14 Tennō Emperor of Japan
- 15 shizoku clan
- 16 Shōtoku Taishi Prince Shotoku (574-622) taishi prince
- 17 kashiko-i wise, clever
- 18 ichi-do ni at once, at the same time
- 19 uttae appeal ←uttae-ru (appeal, sue)
- 20 handan (Nv) judgment
- 21 handan o kudash-i pass judgment; judge
- 22 Hōryū-ji (a temple in Nara)
- 23 tate-ru build
- 24 miyako capital city, governmental site
- 25 utsur-u (Vi) transfer, move
- 26 Asuka-jidai Asuka Period (593-710)
- 27 ryūgaku-sei Foreign student, student studying abroad
- ryūgaku (Nv) studying abroad
- 28 kare-ra they
- 29 seiji-seido political system
- 30 tsutae-ru convey (ideas, information)
- 31 Taika-no-kaishin Taika Restoration
- 32 Jinshin-no-ran Jinshin Revolt
- 33 -chūshin centered on/in...
- 34 seiji-taisei political structure
- 34 taisei structure, establishment
- 35 kakuritsu (Nv) establishing
- 36 Nara-jidai Nara Period (710-794)
- 37 chūō-seifu central government
- chūō center seifu government
- 38 chihō local places
- 39 seishin-teki (Na) spiritual
- seishin spirit
- teki having the quality of...
- 40 ...ni suru make (something)...
- 41 zaisei-teki (Na) financial
- zaisei finance
- 42 komar-u be in trouble, be at a loss
- 43 Fujiwara-shi Fujiwara family
- shi =-uji ...family; clan
- 44 seiryoku power, influence
- 45 nobi-ru extend, expand; increase

# 第 11 課

## 教室<sup>1</sup>で

TAPE  
No. 3  
Side 2

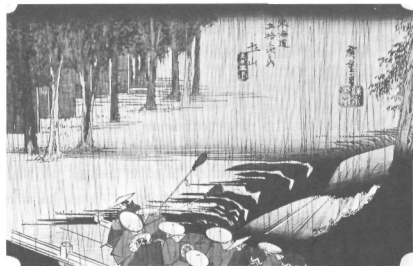
- ① ブラウンさんが立<sup>た</sup>って本<sup>を</sup>読<sup>み</sup>ます。  
日本人<sup>は</sup> 飯<sup>を</sup>食<sup>べ</sup>る前<sup>に</sup>、「いただきます<sup>3</sup>」と  
言<sup>い</sup>ます。食<sup>べ</sup>おわ<sup>つ</sup>た時<sup>に</sup>、「ごちそうさま<sup>4</sup>」と  
言<sup>い</sup>ます。朝<sup>に</sup> 人<sup>に</sup> 会<sup>っ</sup>た時<sup>に</sup>は、「おはようご  
ざいます<sup>5</sup>」と 言<sup>い</sup>ます。昼間<sup>に</sup> 人<sup>に</sup> 会<sup>っ</sup>た時<sup>に</sup>は、  
「こんにちは<sup>6</sup>」と 言<sup>い</sup>て、日<sup>が</sup> くれ<sup>て</sup>からは、「こん  
ばんは<sup>7</sup>」と 言<sup>い</sup>ます。また、人<sup>と</sup> 別<sup>れ</sup>る時<sup>に</sup>は  
「さようなら<sup>8</sup>」と 言<sup>い</sup>ます。手紙<sup>の</sup> 終<sup>わ</sup>りにもよく  
「さようなら<sup>9</sup>」と 書<sup>き</sup>ます。晚<sup>寝</sup>る前<sup>に</sup>は、「おやす  
みなさい<sup>10</sup>」と 言<sup>い</sup>ます。
- ② 「はい、けっこう<sup>11</sup>です。」と 先生<sup>が</sup> 言<sup>い</sup>ました。その  
時<sup>に</sup> 「先生<sup>、</sup> 質<sup>問</sup>があります。」と 一人<sup>が</sup> 言<sup>い</sup>ました。  
ビル<sup>と</sup>いう 学<sup>生</sup>です。「何<sup>で</sup>ですか。どうぞ。」と 先生<sup>は</sup>  
答<sup>え</sup>ました。「英語<sup>の</sup> greetings<sup>は</sup>、日本<sup>語</sup>で 何<sup>と</sup> 言<sup>い</sup>ます  
か。」と ビル<sup>は</sup> たずねました。「あいさつ<sup>と</sup> 言<sup>い</sup>ます。」  
「おはようございます<sup>と</sup>いう ことば<sup>は</sup> どん<sup>な</sup> 意<sup>味</sup>ですか。」

### 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 kyōshitsu classroom  | ...to i-u say that...   |
| -shitsu room   | 5 -owar-u finish ...ing                                       |
| 2 tats-u stand (up); start   | 6 ...toki (ni) when... See § 50                               |
| 3 itadakimasu (Cph)  | 7 Gochisō-sama (Cph)  |
| itadaku receive (things, food,<br>drink, etc.) (Humble, hence polite,<br>expression of mora-u) | 8 hiru-ma during the day                                      |
| 4 i-u say  | 9 kure-ru get dark; come to the end<br>(of a day, year, etc.) |
|  | 10 wakare-ru (Vi) part, separate                              |

「It's very early! という 意<sup>み</sup>です。英語<sup>では</sup> Good Morning!  
と 言<sup>い</sup>ますね。」 「よく わかりました。」

- ③ 「日本人<sup>は</sup> あいさつ<sup>の</sup> 中<sup>に</sup>、よく 天<sup>気</sup>や 季<sup>節</sup>の こ  
とば<sup>を</sup> 使<sup>い</sup>ます。これは 日本<sup>人</sup>の 国<sup>民</sup>性<sup>だ</sup>と 思<sup>い</sup>ます。」



▲A scene from Hiroshige's "Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 11 kekkō (Na) satisfactory, good, fine | kokumin citizens of a nation, |
| 12 shitsumon (Nv) question             | people                        |
| 13 ...to i-u called/named... See § 58  | -sei character                |
| 14 kotae-ru answer, reply              | 19 ...to omo-u think See § 56 |
| 15 tazune-ru inquire; call on/at       |                               |
| 16 imi (Nv) meaning                    |                               |
| 17 kisetsu season                      |                               |
| 18 kokumin-sei national character      |                               |

# Dai 11-ka

## Kyōshitsu de

1 *Burau-san* ga tatte hon o yomimasu.

Nippon-jin wa gohan o taberu mae ni, "Itadakimasu" to iimasu. Tabeowatta toki ni, "Gochisō-sama" to iimasu. Asa hito ni atta toki niwa, "Ohayō gozaimasu" to iimasu. Hiru-ma hito ni atta toki wa, "Kon-nichi wa" to itte, hi ga kurete kara wa, "Konban wa" to iimasu. Mata, hito to wakareru toki wa "Sayōnara" to iimasu. Tegami no owari nimo yoku "Sayōnara" to kakimasu. Ban neru mae niwa, "Oyasumi-nasai" to iimasu.

2 "Hai, kekkō desu." to sensei ga iimashita. Sono toki "Sensei, shitsumon ga arimasu." to hito-ri ga iimashita. *Biru* to iu gakusei desu. "Nan desu ka? Dōzo." to sensei wa kotaemashita. "Ei-go no 'greetings' wa, Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka?" to *Biru* wa tazunemashita. "Aisatsu to iimasu." "Ohayō gozaimasu to iu kotoba wa donna imi desu ka?" "It's very early!" to iu imi desu. Ei-go dewa 'Good morning' to iimasu ne." "Yoku wakarimashita."

3 "Nippon-jin wa aisatsu no naka ni, yoku tenki ya kisetsu no kotoba o tsukaimasu. Kore wa Nippon-jin no kokumin-sei da to omoimasu."



▶ A scene from Hiroshige's  
"Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

# Lesson 11

## In the Classroom

1 Mr. Brown stands up and reads from his text.

"Japanese say 'Itadakimasu' before they eat. After they have finished eating, they say 'Gochisosama.' When they meet someone in the morning, they say 'Ohayo gozaimasu.' When meeting in the afternoon, they say 'Kon-nichi wa,' and after sundown they say 'Konban wa.' When parting with someone, they say 'Sayonara.' They often write 'Sayonara' at the end of letters too. Before going to bed they say 'Oyasuminasai!'"

2 The teacher said, "Yes, that's fine." Then one student said, "Sir, I have a question." It is a student named Bill. The teacher responded, "Yes, what is it?" Bill asked, "What is the Japanese for the English word 'greetings'?" "It is 'aisatsu.'" "What does the phrase 'Ohayo gozaimasu' mean?" "It means 'It's very early.' But in English it translates as 'Good morning.'" "I see."

3 "The Japanese also often use weather or seasonal expressions in their greetings. I think this is part of the Japanese national character."



▶ A scene from Hiroshige's  
"Fifty-three stages of the Tokaido"

### ANSWERS (pp. 136, 137)

- II. 1. Kare wa Takahashi to iu Nippon no *pianisuto* desu.
2. Ano hito wa Yamada to iu Nippon-go no sensei desu.
3. Watashi wa Tachikawa to iu Tōkyō no chikaku no machi ni sunde-imasu.
4. Ima 'Kokoro' to iu shōsetsu o yonde-imasu.
5. Watashi wa kono aida Tōkyō de Shinjuku-gyoen to iu kirei-na niwa o mimashita.
6. Kokutetsu de Hakone e iku toki Odawara to iu eki de densha o norikaenakereba narimasen.
- III. 1. hana 2. hon/kyōka-sho 3. hito
- V. 1. 'Ball-point pen' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? —*Bōru-pen* to iimasu.
2. 'Newspaper' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? —*Shinbun* to iimasu.
3. 'To introduce' wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? —*Shōkai-suru* to iimasu.
- VI. 1. Kare wa ashita koko e konai to omoimasu. 2. Kaigi wa mō owatta to omoimasu. 3. *Tomu-san* wa byōki da to omoimasu. 4. Sono eiga wa omoshiroi to omoimasu. 5. Kono kasa wa *Sumizu-san* no da to omoimasu.

## § 55 Quoting

**N wa/ga ... to iimasu.** 'N says....'

e.g. Tarō wa ohayō gozaimasu to iimashita. 'Taro said, "Good morning."  
= Ohayō gozaimasu to Tarō wa iimashita.

The Verbs of Saying, besides i(w)-u, include: kotae-ru 'answer, reply'; hanas-u 'tell, talk'; kak-u 'write'; happyō-suru 'announce, make public'; etc.

NB: When N is a third person, it is better to use '-te-iru form' instead of the simple Present form. The Past form can be used for any person.

e.g. Tarō wa kaeru (kaerimasu) to itte-imasu. 'Taro says he is going home.'

Rajio wa taifū ga kuru to itte-imasu.

'The radio says a typhoon is on its way.'

## § 56 Telling What Someone Thinks

**N wa ... to omoimasu.** 'N thinks that....'

e.g. Watashi wa kare wa/ga Nippon-jin da to omoimasu.

'I think (that) he is a Japanese.'

NB: (1) The Predicate expressing the thought content (the Predicate preceding 'to') normally takes the Plain style, unlike the part quoted by the Verbs of Saying.

(2) When the sentence is in the Present tense, the N, unless otherwise specified, is assumed to be the speaker himself in a statement and the addressee in a question. Thus, a sentence like

Yamada-san wa ma ni au to omoimasu.

means only, 'I think Mr. Yamada will be in time.' and not, 'Yamada thinks...'

In other tenses, however, it is often necessary to specify.

## § 57 Calling or Naming

**(N wa) X o Y to iimasu.** '(N) calls X Y.'

e.g. Nippon-jin wa kore o hashi to iimasu.

'Japanese people call these "hashi" ("chopsticks").'

When the N is an unspecified and indefinite number of people, 'N wa' is omitted, and 'X o' changes to 'X wa,' X becoming the Topic of the sentence.

e.g. Kore wa 'hashi' to iimasu. 'These are called "hashi".'

When one introduces himself, he says, 'Watashi wa ... to iimasu (or mōshimasu, a Humble form of iimasu),' instead of saying, 'Watashi no namae wa ... desu.'

e.g. Watashi wa Sumisu to mōshimasu. 'I am called "Smith".'

## § 58 Changing the above pattern into a Nominal Construction

**Y to iu X** 'X (which is) called Y'

e.g. Sumisu to iu hito 'a man called/named Smith'

o-hashī to iu mono 'something called o-hashī'

'Pisu' to iu tabako 'cigarettes named "Peace"'

Question: Kore wa nan to iu mono desu ka? 'What is this called?'

You will find that some such constructions are equivalent to the 'Appositive construction' in English. Compare the following.

Kinō (watashi wa) Tarō ga kekkon-shita to iu shirase o kikimashita.

'Yesterday I heard *the news that* Taro got married.'

Watashi wa Nippon-go o Rōma-ji-ka shita hō ga ii to iu iken o motte-imasu (or, ... to iu iken desu). 'I have *the opinion* (or, I am *of the opinion*)

*that* it is better to Romanize Japanese.'

Kare wa sensō ga owatta to iu koto o shiranakatta.

'He did not know *the fact that* the war had ended.'

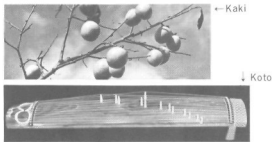
## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. (kore) (tabemono<sup>1</sup>) (sushi) Q: Kore wa nan to iu tabemono desu ka?

A: Sūshi to iu tabemono desu.

1. (kore) (kudamono<sup>2</sup>) (kaki<sup>3</sup>)2. (kore) (gakk<sup>4</sup>) (koto<sup>5</sup>)3. (kore) (tori) (uguisu<sup>6</sup>)

4. (koko) (o-tera) (Koke-dera)

5. (koko) (eki) (Kanda<sup>7</sup>)6. (koko) (tokoro<sup>8</sup>) (Ueno<sup>9</sup>)

## II. Combine the sentences.

Ex. (Kore wa Nippon no gakk<sup>1</sup> desu.) (Namae wa koto desu.)→Kore wa koto to iu Nippon no gakk<sup>1</sup> desu.1. (Kare wa Nippon no pianisuto<sup>10</sup> desu.) (Namae wa Takahashi<sup>11</sup> desu.)

2. (Ano hito wa Nippon-go no sensei desu.) (Namae wa Yamada desu.)

3. (Watashi wa Tōkyō no chikaku no machi ni sunde-imasu.) (Machi no namae wa Tachikawa<sup>12</sup> desu.)4. (Ima shōsetsu o yonde-imasu.) (Shōsetsu no namae wa 'Kokoro'<sup>13</sup> desu.)5. (Watashi wa kono aida<sup>14</sup> Tōkyō de kirei-na niwa o mimashita.) (Niwa no namae wa Shinjuku-gyoen<sup>15</sup> desu.)6. (Koku-tetsu<sup>16</sup> de Hakone e iku toki, sono eki de densha o norikaenake-<sup>17</sup> reba narimasen.) (Eki no namae wa Odawara<sup>18</sup> desu.)

## 語句

1 tabemono food

2 kudamono fruit

3 kaki persimmon

4 gakk<sup>4</sup> musical instrument

5 koto (a Japanese musical instrument)

6 uguisu nightingale

7 Kanda (a place name)

8 tokoro place

9 Ueno (a place name)

10 pianisuto 'pianist'

11 Takahashi (a family name)

12 Tachikawa (a place name)

13 Kokoro (the title of a novel by Natsume Soseki)

kokoro heart, mind

14 kono aida the other day

15 Shinjuku-gyoen Shinjuku Royal Garden

16 Koku-tetsu Japan National

Railways

## III. Fill in the blanks.

1. Sakura to iu ( ) wa haru ni sakimasu.

2. Watashi-tachi no Nippon-go no kyōka-sho<sup>19</sup> wa 'Atarashii Nippon-go' to iu ( ) desu.3. Kinō anata no rusu<sup>20</sup> no aida ni Sumisu<sup>21</sup>-san to iu ( ) kara anata ni denwa ga arimashita.<sup>22</sup>

## IV. Answer the following questions.

1. Nippon-jin wa hito to wakareru toki, 'Sayōnara' to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?

2. Nippon-go de denwa o kakeru toki, hajime ni 'Moshi-moshi'<sup>23</sup> to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?3. Nippon-jin wa ie o hōmon<sup>24</sup>-suru toki, genkan<sup>25</sup> de 'Gomen-kudasai' to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?4. Nippon-go de o-iwai<sup>26</sup> o iu toki, 'Omedetō'<sup>27</sup> to iimasu. Anata no kuni dewa nan to iimasu ka?

## V. Practice the following pattern.

Ex. "Stamp" wa Nippon-go de nan to iimasu ka? —Kitte to iimasu.

1. "ball-point pen" 2. "newspaper" 3. "to introduce"

## VI. Expand the following sentences with "to omoimasu."

1. Kare wa ashita koko e kimasen.

2. Kaigi<sup>28</sup> wa mō owarimashita.

3. Tomu-san wa byōki desu.

4. Sono eiga wa omoshiroi desu.

5. Kono kasa wa Sumisu-san no desu.

←Nihon Kokuyū Tetsudō

kokuyū national, owned by the state tetsudō railway

17 norikaeru change cars/trains/planes

18 Odawara (a place name)

19 kyōka-sho textbook -sho book

20 rusu being away from home/office; absent

21 Sumisu 'Smith'

22 denwa ga ar-u get a phone call

23 Moshi-moshi (Cph) Hello (telephone)

24 hōmon (Nv) visit

25 genkan entrance of a house

26 iwai celebration, congratulations

←iwa-u (congratulate, celebrate)

27 Omedetō (Cph) Congratulations!

28 kaigi meeting, conference

## SHUPPATSU-SHIMASU

Katō: Suzuki<sup>1</sup>-san, *Furansu* e iku to iu hanashi desu nē.

Suzuki: Ē, Go-gatsu no sue<sup>3</sup> ni shuppatsu-shimasu.

K: Oku-san<sup>4</sup> mo issho desu ka?

S: Hai, tsuma<sup>5</sup> mo kodomo mo tsurete-ikimasu.

K: Chō-kikan<sup>6</sup> no taizai<sup>7</sup> desu ka?

S: Ē, ni-nen gurai desu.

K: O-kā-san wa?

S: Sono aida, haha wa ane<sup>8</sup> no ie de kurashimasu.<sup>9</sup>

K: O-kā-san wa hantai<sup>10</sup> dewa arimasen deshita ka?

S: Ē, iku-na<sup>11</sup> to iimashita ga, shigoto desu kara

shikata ga arimasen.

Tokorode, anata no oji-san wa mada *Yōroppa* desu ka?

Tashika<sup>12</sup> *Furansu* desu ne?

K: Mr. Suzuki, I hear you are going to France, is that right?

S: Yes, I'm leaving at the end of May.

K: Is your wife going with you?

S: Yes, I'm taking both my wife and my children.

K: Are you going to stay long?

S: Yes, about two years.

K: What about your mother?

S: During that time, my mother will be living with my elder sister.

K: Didn't your mother object?

S: Yes, she said I should not go, but since it's my job, there's nothing I can do about it.

By the way, is your uncle still in Europe? If I remember right, he is in France, isn't he?

## 語句

- Katō (a family name)
- Suzuki (a family name)
- sue end of a term
- oku-san wife (Polite)
- tsuma wife
- chō-kikan (for) a long term/time chō- long kikan term, period of time
- taizai (st) stay
- ane elder sister cf. imōto (younger sister)
- urus-u live; spend time
- hantai (Nv) objection
- na don't (Prohibition)
- tashika (Na) quite surely, if I remember right
- gaikoku-sei foreign-made

K: He came home last October.

Since he uses only foreign goods, all his relatives call him by the nickname "Jean Gabin."

He always says Paris is so wonderful.

S: Then, is it all right if I go to listen to his stories about when he was abroad?

K: Of course it is. I am sure he will be pleased. My uncle was working for a company in Paris called NKK.

S: If I remember right, it's near the Champs Elysées.

I'll be living in the same area, because my company's Paris branch is near Etoile.

14 ...bakari only, exclusively, nothing but...

15 shinrui relatives

16 mono person

17 *Jan Gyaban* 'Jean Gabin'

18 adana nickname

19 yob-u call

20 *Pari* 'Paris'

21 sorejā then

22 ...tomo for sure; of course (Emphatic)

23 kitto surely, certainly

24 yorokob-u be glad

25 oji uncle cf. oba (aunt)

26 tsutome-ru work for (a company)

27 *Shanzerize* 'Champs Elysées'

28 *Etowaru* 'Etoile'

K: Kyo-nen no Jū-gatsu ni kaette-kimashita.

Gaikoku-sei<sup>13</sup> no mono bakari<sup>14</sup> tsukai-masu kara, shinrui<sup>15</sup> no mono<sup>16</sup> wa *Jan Gyaban*<sup>17</sup> to iu adana<sup>18</sup> de yonde.<sup>19</sup> imasu.

Itsumo *Pari*<sup>20</sup> wa subarashii to itte-imasu.

S: Sorejā,<sup>21</sup> mukō no o-hanashi o kiki ni ittemo ii desu ka?

K: Ii desu tomo.<sup>22</sup>

Kitto<sup>23</sup> yorokobimasu<sup>24</sup> yo.

Oji<sup>25</sup> wa *Pari* no *NKK* to iu kaisha ni tsutomete<sup>26</sup>-imashita.

S: Tashika, *Shanzerize*<sup>27</sup> no chikaku desu ne. Watashi mo ano atari ni sumu to omoimasu.

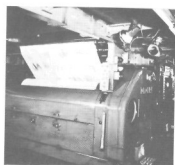
Watashi no kaisha no *Pari*-shiten wa *Etowaru*<sup>28</sup> no chikaku desu kara.





## マスコミ

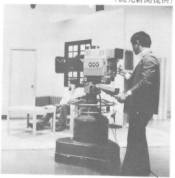
新聞や<sup>1</sup> ざっし、ラジオ、テレビでの<sup>2</sup> 情報活動<sup>3</sup> をマスコミと<sup>4</sup> 言います。日本では近年<sup>5</sup> マスコミが非常に<sup>6</sup> 発達しています。新聞には<sup>7</sup> 四つの<sup>8</sup> おもな<sup>9</sup> 全国紙<sup>10</sup>、多くの<sup>11</sup> 地方紙<sup>12</sup>、専門紙<sup>13</sup>があります。1970年の<sup>14</sup> 調査では日本の<sup>15</sup> 日刊新聞<sup>16</sup>の発行部数は人口<sup>17</sup> 1,000人あたり<sup>18</sup> 511部<sup>19</sup>で、これはスウェーデンの<sup>20</sup> 534部<sup>21</sup>に<sup>22</sup> ついで<sup>23</sup> 世界第二位<sup>24</sup> です。



(読売新聞提供)

テレビの<sup>25</sup> 普及率<sup>26</sup>は人口<sup>27</sup> 1,000人あたり<sup>28</sup> 223台<sup>29</sup>で、たいていの<sup>30</sup> 家庭<sup>31</sup>に<sup>32</sup> 一台<sup>33</sup>は<sup>34</sup> あります。「オリンピックを<sup>35</sup> カラーで<sup>36</sup> 見よう」とか、「月での<sup>37</sup> 散歩を<sup>38</sup> カラーで<sup>39</sup> 見よう」という<sup>40</sup> 広告で<sup>41</sup> 電機メーカー<sup>42</sup>は<sup>43</sup> カラーテレビ<sup>44</sup>を<sup>45</sup> たくさん<sup>46</sup> 売りました。その<sup>47</sup> 結果<sup>48</sup>、今では<sup>49</sup> カラーテレビも<sup>50</sup> かなり<sup>51</sup> 普及<sup>52</sup>しています。

マスコミ、とくに<sup>53</sup> テレビは<sup>54</sup> 子どもに<sup>55</sup> 大きな<sup>56</sup> 影響<sup>57</sup>を<sup>58</sup> 与えています。子どもたちは<sup>59</sup> 夜<sup>60</sup> おそくまで<sup>61</sup> テレビの<sup>62</sup> 前を<sup>63</sup> 離れないので、親は<sup>64</sup> 困っています。こんな<sup>65</sup> 子どもを<sup>66</sup> 「テレビっ子<sup>67</sup>」と言います。「テレビっ子<sup>68</sup>」は<sup>69</sup> だんだん<sup>70</sup> ふえています。また、ラジオを<sup>71</sup> 聞きながら、あるいは<sup>72</sup> テレビを<sup>73</sup> 見ながら<sup>74</sup> 勉強<sup>75</sup>します。こんな<sup>76</sup> 人を<sup>77</sup> 「ながら族<sup>78</sup>」と言います。もちろん、おとなの<sup>79</sup> 中にも<sup>80</sup> 「ながら族<sup>81</sup>」は<sup>82</sup> たくさん<sup>83</sup> います。



Radio, television, and press information activities are called "mass communication." Mass communication has recently shown great development in Japan.

There are four main nation-wide newspapers and many local and specialized ones. According to a 1970 survey, 511 daily newspapers are published per 1,000 people every day in Japan, a figure led internationally only by Sweden's 534.

The television ownership ratio is up to 223 sets per 1,000 people, and almost all families have at least one set. Electrical appliance manufacturers sold many color sets with advertisements saying "Let's watch the Olympics in color," and "Let's watch the moon walk in color." As a result, color television is pretty widely diffused.

Mass Media, especially television, have a great influence on children. Yet many parents are worried that their children stay up late at night watching television. We call such children "TV children." The number of "TV children" is gradually increasing. Many students study while listening to the radio or watching television. We call these people the "—ing crowd," although of course this also includes many adults.

## 語句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 zasshi magazine   | -ritsu ratio, proportion, percentage                                 |
| 2 jōhō-katsudō information activities   | 19 Orinpikku 'Olympic Games'   |
| jōhō information  | 20 mimiyo (Plain style of mimashō)                                   |
| 3 masu-kōmi 'mass communication,' mass media                                      | 21 ...toka such as...  |
| 4 kin-nen (in) recent years   | 22 kōkoku (Nv) publicity, advertisement                              |
| 5 hijō-ni=taihen very, greatly  | 23 denki-mēko electric appliance maker                               |
| 6 zenkoku-shi nation-wide paper   | denki electrical appliance   |
| -shi newspaper  | mēko 'maker,' manufacturer   |
| 7 ōku no many, most cf. 6-i See § 35  | 24 kara-tarebi 'color television'                                    |
| 8 chihi-shi local paper   | 25 ur-u sell   |
| 9 senmon-shi specialty newspaper  | 26 kekka result  |
| senmon specialty  | sono kekka as a result, consequently                                 |
| 10 chōsa (Nv) investigation, survey   | 27 kanari quite, fairly  |
| 11 nik-kan-shinbun daily newspaper  | 28 tokuni especially   |
| nik-kan published daily cf. shū-kan (weekly), gek-kan (monthly), nen-kan (annual) | 29 ōki-na=ōki-i large See § 7  |
| 12 hakkō-busū number of copies printed, circulation                               | 30 eikyō (Nv) influence, effect                                      |
| hakkō (Nv) issue  | 31 atae-ru give  |
| busū number of copies   | 32 kodomo-tachi children   |
| 13 ...atari per...  | 33 yoru osoku late at night  |
| 14 -bu ...copies  | 34 hanare-ru (Vi) detach, leave                                      |
| 15 Sweden 'Sweden'  | 35 ...node since, as   |
| 16 ...ni tsuide next/second to...   | 36 kana like this See § 8  |
| -tsug-u succeed to; follow...   | 37 Terebik-ko 'TV' child   |
| 17 sekai-dai...i the ...-th in the world  | 38 dandan gradually, step by step                                    |
| 18 fukyū-ritsu diffusion ratio  | 39 aruiwa or else  |
| fukyū (Nv) diffusion, spread  | 40 Nagara-zoku people who do two things at once See § 52 -zoku tribe |
|   | 41 otona adult   |

## 第 12 課

### 東京・京都・大阪

TAPE  
No. 3  
Side 2

① 東京は日本の首都です。京都はむかし日本の首都でした。東京という名まえは東のみやこという意味です。東京は京都よりずっと大きいです。人口も京都よりずっと多いです。

② —東京と京都とどちらが古いですか。  
京都のほうが東京より古いです。東京は京都ほど古くはありません。東京は京都より新しい町です。

—東京と京都とどちらが静かですか。  
もちろん京都のほうが東京より静かです。東京の町は車ていっぱい、たいへんさわがしいです。

—では、どちらがきれいですか。  
京都です。町があまり大きくなくて、まわりに山があります。それで町全体が落ち着いています。

③ —商業や工業はどちらがさかんですか。  
もちろんどちらも東京のほうがさかんです。東京は日本の政治・経済の中心です。会社も工場も東京に

集中しています。京都は伝統産業と観光の町です。  
—東京と京都と大阪の中で、どこがいちばん大きいですか。

東京がいちばん大きいです。人口も東京がいちばん多いです。

④ —東京から大阪へは、何て行きますか。  
たいいてい新幹線で行きます。新幹線はたいへん速いです。新幹線の「ひかり」は東京から大阪まで三十分で走ります。「こだま」は四十分で走ります。東海道線の列車は七時間以上かかります。「ひかり」がいちばん速くて便利です。東京と大阪の間には飛行機も飛んでいます。飛行機は五十分ぐらいしかかかりません。飛行機のほうが「ひかり」より二倍以上速いです。しかし、東京都心から羽田空港までと大阪市内から伊丹空港までが不便です。ですから、多くの人が飛行機よりも新幹線のほうをよく利用しています。料金は飛行機のほうが二倍ぐらいかかります。

#### 語句

1 higashi east	10 dochira mo both
2 ...yori than... See § 59	11 keizai economy
3 zutto much, by far; all the time	12 shūchū (Nv) concentration
4 dochira which	13 dentō-sangyō traditional industry
5 ...no hō ga ...is more... See § 59	dentō tradition
6 ...hodo to the extent of... See § 62	14 kankō tourism; sightseeing
7 dewa Well, then...	15 haya-i fast, quick
8 ochitsuk-u become calm/settled	16 Hikari super-express Hikari hikari light
9 shō-gyō commerce	

17 Kodama limited express Kodama kodama echo
18 Tōkaidō-sen Tokaido Line
19 ressha train
20 ...ijō more than...
21 bai ...times, -fold See § 62
22 toshin the center of a city
23 Haneda-kūkō Haneda Airport Haneda (a place name)

kūkō airport
24 shinaï (N) in the city
25 Itami-kūkō Itami Airport Itami (a place name)
26 riyō (Nv) utilizing, use
27 ryōkin fee, fare, charge

## Dai 12-ka

### Tōkyō, Kyōto, Ōsaka

- 1** Tōkyō wa Nippon no shuto desu. Kyōto wa mukashi Nippon no shuto deshita. Tōkyō to iu namae wa higashi no miyako to iu imi desu. Tōkyō wa Kyōto yori zutto ōkii desu. Jinkō mo Kyōto yori zutto ōi desu.
- 2** —Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga furui desu ka?  
Kyōto no hō ga Tōkyō yori furui desu. Tōkyō wa Kyōto hodo furuku wa arimasen. Tōkyō wa Kyōto yori atarashii machi desu.  
—Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga shizuka desu ka?  
Mochiron Kyōto no hō ga Tōkyō yori shizuka desu. Tōkyō no machi wa kuruma de ippai de, taihen sawagashii desu.  
—Dewa, dochira ga kirei desu ka?  
Kyōto desu. Machi ga amari ōkiku nakute, mawari ni yama ga arimasu. Sorede machi zentai ga ochitsuite-imasu.
- 3** —Shō-gyō ya kō-gyō wa dochira ga sakan desu ka?  
Mochiron dochira mo Tōkyō no hō ga sakan desu. Tōkyō wa Nippon no seiji, keizai no chūshin desu. Kaisha mo kōjō mo Tōkyō ni shūchū-shite-imasu. Kyōto wa dentō-sangyō to kankō no machi desu.  
—Tōkyō to Kyōto to Ōsaka no naka de, doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka?  
Tōkyō ga ichiban ōkii desu. Jinkō mo Tōkyō ga ichiban ōi desu.
- 4** —Tōkyō kara Ōsaka e wa nani de ikimasu ka?  
Taitei Shinkan-sen de ikimasu. Shinkan-sen wa taihen hayai desu. Shinkan-sen no 'Hikari' wa Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made san-jikan jup-pun de hashirimasu. 'Kodama' wa yo-jikan jup-pun de hashirimasu. Tōkaidō-sen no ressha wa shichi-jikan ijō kakarimasu. 'Hikari' ga ichiban hayakute benri desu. Tōkyō to Ōsaka no aida niwa hikōki mo tonde-imasu. Hikōki wa go-jup-pun gurai shika kakarimasen. Hikōki no hō ga 'Hikari' yori san-bai ijō hayai desu. Shikashi, Tōkyō-toshin kara Haneda-kūkō made to Ōsaka-shinai kara Itami-kūkō made ga fu-ben desu. Desukara, ōku no hito ga hikōki yori mo Shinkan-sen no hō o yoku riyō-shite-imasu. Ryōkin wa hikōki no hō ga ni-bai gurai kakarimasu.

## Lesson 12

### Tokyo, Kyoto, and Osaka

- 1** Tokyo is the capital of Japan. Kyoto is an ancient capital of Japan. The name Tokyo means "Eastern Capital." Tokyo is much bigger than Kyoto. Its population is also much larger than Kyoto's.
- 2** —Which is older, Tokyo or Kyoto?  
Kyoto is older than Tokyo. Tokyo is not as old as Kyoto. Tokyo is a newer town than Kyoto.  
—Which is quieter, Tokyo or Kyoto?  
Kyoto is quieter than Tokyo, of course. Tokyo is filled with cars and is very noisy.  
—Then which is prettier?  
Kyoto. It is not a very big town and it is surrounded by mountains. Thus the entire town seems calm and settled.
- 3** —Which has more business and industry?  
Of course, Tokyo has more of both. Tokyo is the political and economic center of Japan. Companies and factories are also concentrated in Tokyo. Kyoto is a town of traditional industries and tourism.  
—Which is the biggest, Tokyo, Kyoto, or Osaka?  
Tokyo is the biggest. Tokyo has the most people too.
- 4** —How do you get from Tokyo to Osaka?  
You usually go by New Tokaido Line. The New Tokaido Line is very fast. The New Tokaido Line super-express *Hikari* runs from Tokyo to Osaka in three hours and ten minutes. The *Kodama* takes four hours and ten minutes. The old Tokaido Line takes over seven hours. The *Hikari* is the fastest and most convenient. There are also airplanes flying between Tokyo and Osaka. The airplane takes only about fifty minutes. The airplane is more than three times as fast as the *Hikari* express. But it is very inconvenient to go from downtown Tokyo to Haneda Airport or from central Osaka to Itami Airport. So most people use the New Tokaido Line rather than go by airplane. The airplane is about twice as expensive.

#### ANSWERS <pp. 148, 149>

- II. 1. takai 2. samui 3. wakai 4. atsui
- IV. (A) 1. Q: ...no naka de doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka? A: Chūgoku ga ichiban ōkii desu. 2. Q: ...no naka de dore ga ichiban takai desu ka? A: Eberesuto ga ichiban takai desu. 3. Q: ...no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban muzukashii desu ka? A: ..... 4. Q: ...no naka de dare ga ichiban se ga takai desu ka? A: ..... 5. Q: ...no naka de doko ga ichiban furui desu ka? A: Romo ga ichiban furui desu. 6. Q: ...no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban hayai desu ka? A: Hikōki ga ichiban hayai desu. 7. Q: ...no naka de dore/nani ga ichiban kantan desu ka? A: ..... (B) 1. Q: ...no naka de nani ga ichiban oishii desu ka? 2. Q: ...no naka de nani ga ichiban tanoshikatta desu ka? 3. Q: ...no naka de nani ga ichiban omoshiroi desu ka? 4. Q: ...no naka de dare ga ichiban hima desu ka? 5. Q: ...no naka de doko ga ichiban kirei desu ka?
- V. 1. Tōkyō-tawō (Tokyo Tower) desu. 2. Fuyu desu. 3. Nara ni arimasu.

## § 59 Comparing Two Things ('Comparative')

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  yori  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ N_a \end{array} \right\}$  desu. 'N<sub>1</sub> is more...than N<sub>2</sub>.'

e.g. Tōkyō wa Ōsaka yori ōkii desu. 'Tokyo is larger than Osaka.'

Question and Answer:

$N_1$  to  $N_2$  to dochira ga  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ N_a \end{array} \right\}$  desu ka? 'Which is more..., N<sub>1</sub> or N<sub>2</sub>?'

$N_1$  no hō ga  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ N_a \end{array} \right\}$  desu. 'N<sub>1</sub> is more...'

e.g. Chika-tetsu to basu to dochira ga benri desu ka?

'Which is more convenient, the subway or the bus?'

Chika-tetsu no hō ga benri desu. 'The subway is more convenient.'

## § 60 Comparing Three or More Things ('Superlative')

$N_1$  to  $N_2$  to  $N_3$  to ...  $N_n$  } no  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{naka} \\ \text{uchi} \end{array} \right\}$  de  $N_1$  ga ichiban  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} A \\ N_a \end{array} \right\}$  desu.

'N<sub>1</sub> is the most...  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{among } N_1 \ N_2 \ N_3 \dots N_n. \\ \text{in } X. \end{array} \right.$

(X: a set including N<sub>1</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>3</sub>, ...N<sub>n</sub>)

e.g. A-san to B-san to C-san no naka de }  
Kono san-nin no naka de } dare ga ichiban wakai desu ka?  
Kono kurasu (no naka) de }

'Who is the youngest  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of these three?} \\ \text{in this class?} \end{array} \right.$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mr. A, Mr. B, or Mr. C?} \\ \end{array} \right.$

A-san ga ichiban wakai desu. 'Mr. A is the youngest.'

## § 61 Scope or Limit: N de

e.g. Fuji-san wa Nippon de ichiban takai desu.

'Mt. Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan.'

Kono mikan wa ikura desu ka? 'How much are these tangerines?'

—Zenbu de hyaku-en desu. 'One hundred yen (for the whole lot).'

Ichi-nen-jū de ichiban samui tsuki wa itsu desu ka?

'Which is the coldest month of the year?'

## § 62 Some More Expressions of Comparison

onaji 'the same'

e.g. A-san to B-san to dochira ga se ga takai desu ka?

'Who is taller, Mr. A or Mr. B?'

—Onaji (gurai) desu. 'They are (about) the same.'

A wa B to onaji gurai se ga takai desu.

'A is about as tall as B.'

...hodo '(to) the extent'

e.g. A wa B hodo se ga takaku nai desu. 'A is not as tall as B.'

cf. B wa A yori se ga takai desu. 'B is taller than A.'

Kon-shū wa sen-shū hodo isogashiku arimasen.

'I am not as busy this week as I was last week.'

A-bai 'A times as...as...'

e.g. Ōsaka no jinkō to Kyōto no jinkō to dochira ga ōi desu ka?

'Which is larger, the population of Osaka or the population of Kyoto?'

—Ōsaka no jinkō no hō ga ōi desu. Ni-bai gurai desu.

'The population of Osaka is larger. It's about twice as large.'

Chikyū no chokkei wa tsuki (no chokkei) no yon-bai desu.

'The diameter of the earth is 4 times that of the moon.'

A-bun no B  $\frac{B}{A}$

e.g. ni-bun no ichi '1/2'=han-bun 'half' yon-bun no san '3/4'

Tsuki wa chikyū no yon-bun no ichi (no ōki-sa) desu.

'The moon is one fourth (the size) of the earth.'

## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. (Tōkyō) (Kyōto) (ōkii) Q: Tōkyō to Kyōto to dochira ga ōkii desu ka?

A: Tōkyō no hō ga ōkii desu.

1. (kono jisho) (ano jisho) (benri)
2. (Shinkan-sen) (hikōki) (hayai)
3. (sake) (*biru*) (oishii)
4. (Nippon no jitensha) (*Oranda* no jitensha) (jōbu<sup>1</sup>)
5. (Nippon no eiga) (gaikoku no eiga) (yoku mimasu)

## II. Fill in the blanks with a suitable word from among those given below.

atsui, samui, ōkii, takai, wakai, ōi

Ex. Tōkyō no jinkō wa Kyōto no jinkō yori (ōi) desu.

1. *Eberesuto*<sup>2</sup> wa Fuji-san<sup>3</sup> yori ( ) desu.
2. Hokkaidō no fuyu wa Tōkyō no fuyu yori ( ) desu.
3. Haha wa chichi yori ( ) desu.
4. *Karukatta*<sup>4</sup> wa Ōsaka yori ( ) desu.

## III. Make sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Tōkyō) (Kyōto) (furui) Tōkyō wa Kyōto hodo furuku nai desu.

1. (soroban<sup>5</sup>) (keisan-ki) (benri)
2. (kotoshi no fuyu) (kyo-nen no fuyu) (samui)
3. (Shugakuin-rikyū<sup>6</sup>) (Katsura-rikyū<sup>7</sup>) (yūmei)

## 語句

- 1 jōbu (Na) strong, stout, solid; healthy
- 2 *Eberesuto* 'Everest'
- 3 Fuji-san Mt. Fuji  
-san mountain
- 4 *Karukatta* 'Calcutta'

- 5 soroban Japanese abacus
- 6 Shugakuin-rikyū Shugakuin Detached Palace (Kyoto)
- 7 Katsura-rikyū Katsura Detached Palace (Kyoto)
- 8 *Ōutoraria* 'Australia'

## IV. Make questions and answer them.

(A) Ex. (Tōkyō) (Ōsaka) (Nagoya) (ōkii)

Q: Tōkyō to Ōsaka to Nagoya no naka de doko ga ichiban ōkii desu ka?

A: Tōkyō ga ichiban ōkii desu.

1. (*Kanada*) (*Ōsutoraria*<sup>8</sup>) (Chūgoku) (ōkii)
2. (*Eberesuto*) (*Mattāhorun*<sup>9</sup>) (Fuji-san) (takai)
3. (*Furansu-go*) (*Roshia-go*<sup>10</sup>) (Nippon-go) (muzukashii)
4. (anata) (o-tō-san) (o-kā-san) (se ga takai<sup>11</sup>)
5. (*Rōma*) (*Nyū Yōku*) (*Pari*) (furui)
6. (Shinkan-sen) (hikōki) (jidōsha) (hayai)
7. (*tenisu*) (*pinpon*<sup>12</sup>) (*bōringu*<sup>13</sup>) (kantan)

(B) Ex. (ichi-nen) (atsui)

Q: Ichi-nen no naka de itsu ga ichiban atsui desu ka?

A: Hachi-gatsu ga ichiban atsui desu.

1. (Nippon no tabemono) (oishii)
2. (gakusei-jidai<sup>14</sup> no omoide<sup>15</sup>) (tanoshikatta)
3. (*supōtsu*) (omoshiroi)
4. (anata-gata) (hima)
5. (Nippon no toshi<sup>16</sup>) (kirei)

## V. Answer the following questions.

1. Tōkyō de ichiban takai tatemono wa nan desu ka?
2. Nippon de ichiban samui kisetsu<sup>17</sup> wa itsu desu ka?
3. Nippon de ichiban furui o-tera wa doko ni arimasu ka?

- 9 *Mattāhorun* 'Matterhorn'
- 10 *Roshia-go* Russian (language)  
*Roshia* 'Russia'
- 11 se ga takai tall
- 12 *pinpon* 'ping-pong,' table tennis
- 13 *bōringu* 'bowling'

- 14 *gakusei-jidai* when one is/was a student
- 15 *omoide* memory, recollection
- 16 *toshi* city, urban
- 17 *kisetsu* season

## RYOKAN WA ARIMASU KA?

*Hoteru*-annai-sho<sup>1</sup> wa doko desu ka?

—Sono kaidan<sup>2</sup> o nobotte-kudasai.

Hidari-te<sup>3</sup> ni arimasu.

Arigatō.

Sumimasen ga,

watashi wa *hoteru* o sagashite<sup>4</sup>-imasu.

li *hoteru* o shōkai-shite-kudasai.

—Kono atari niwa yō-shiki<sup>5</sup> no *hoteru* wa arimasen ga, Nippon no ryokan<sup>6</sup> wa arimasu. Ryokan demo ii desu ka?

Ryokan no hō ga ii desu.

Nippon no *mūdo*<sup>7</sup> ga aru to omoimasu.

—Jā, Asahi Ryokan ni shimasu ka?

Kono atari de mottomo<sup>8</sup> rippa-na<sup>9</sup> ryokan desu.

Takaku nai desu ka?

—Ē, kanari takai desu yo.

Ni-shoku-tsuki<sup>10</sup> de, ip-paku<sup>11</sup> roku-sen-en desu.

Where is the hotel information office?

—Go up those stairs.

It's on the left-hand side.

Thanks.

Excuse me, I'm looking for a hotel.

Can you recommend a good hotel?

—There are no Western style hotels around here, but there are some Japanese inns.

Is a Japanese inn all right?

A Japanese inn is even better.

I think it has a Japanese atmosphere.

—Well, how about the Asahi Inn? It's the finest inn around here.

Isn't it expensive?

—Well, it's rather expensive.

It's 6,000 yen a night, including two meals.

## 語句

- 1 *hoteru*-annai-sho hotel information annai-sho information bureau annai (Nv) guide -sho=jo office
- 2 kaidan stairs
- 3 hidari-te the left-hand side cf. migi-te
- 4 sagas-u look for, search
- 5 yō-shiki Western style -shiki style
- 6 ryokan inn
- 7 *mūdo* 'mood,' atmosphere
- 8 mottomo the most
- 9 rippa (Na) excellent
- 10 shoku-tsuki with... meals
- 11 tsuki including, at-

On top of that, there is a 10% tax and a 5% service charge.

A cheaper one would be better.

—It's a little far from here, but what about the Momiji Inn?

It's quieter and cheaper. How long does it take to walk there?

—Let me see.... Over twenty minutes, I think.

Fine, I'll go there.

—I'll draw you a map. Thanks. Sorry to have troubled you.

How much do I owe you?

—What? For the information? It's free.

Well, then, this is for you.

No, thank you.

We don't accept tips in Japan.

Oh, is that so?

Thanks, really.

tached with...

- 11 -paku =-haku...over-night stay
- 12 zeikin tax
- 13 *sabisu*-ryō service charge -ryō=ryōkin fee
- 14 nedan price
- 15 chizu map
- 16 sewa (Nv) care (o)-sewa ni nar-u receive kindness/care
- 17 Hā? What?
- 18 *tesū*-ryō commission
- 19 *mu*-ryō no charge, free
- 20 *chippu* 'tip'
- 21 *kekkō* desu (Cph: for either accepting or declining)
- 22 *shūkan* habit, custom

Soreni, zeikin<sup>12</sup> ga *jup-pāsento*,

*Sabisu*-ryō<sup>13</sup> ga *go-pāsento* desu.

Motto yasui hō ga ii desu ga...

—Koko kara sukoshi tōi desu ga,

Momiji Ryokan wa ikaga deshō?

Koko yori shizuka de, nedan<sup>14</sup> mo yasui desu yo.

Aruite nan-pun kakarimasu ka?

—Sō desu ne... , ni-jup-pun ijō kakaru to omoimasu.

li desu. Sono ryokan ni shimasu.

—Dewa, chizu<sup>15</sup> o kakimashō.

Arigatō.

Dōmo o-sewa<sup>16</sup> ni narimashita.

Ikura desu ka?

—Hā?<sup>17</sup> *Tesū*-ryō<sup>18</sup> desu ka?

*Mu*-ryō<sup>19</sup> desu.

Sorejā, kore wa *chippu*<sup>20</sup> desu.

—Iie, *kekkō*<sup>21</sup> desu.

Nippon niwa *chippu* no *shūkan*<sup>22</sup> wa arimasen.

Sō desu ka.

Hontō-ni arigatō.

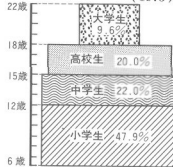
## 教育

日本の教育制度は6・3・3・4制、つまり小学校6年、中学校3年、高等学校3年、大学4年です。そして最初の9年間は義務教育です。この期間の就学率は100%に近いですが、日本では文盲の人がほとんどいません。文盲率は約0.7%です。

高等学校への進学率は87%ぐらいですが、年々増加の傾向にあります。その率は地方より都会のほうが高いです。高等学校の卒業生の30%ぐらいが大学へ進学しますが、入学試験を受けなければなりません。

大学は全国に約890校あります。そのうち国公立が約180校であとは全部私立です。大学の数はアメリカがいちばん多いですが、日本はその次ぐらいです。しかし有名な大学に志願者が集中しますから、その入学試験の競争率はたいへん高いです。入学試験に落ちて、多くの学生が一年か二年浪人生活を送ります。大学はふつう4年ですが、医学部は6年です。大学の上に大学院があります。修士課程が2年、博士課程が3年です。

Distribution of students (1975)



▲An entrance examination

## Education

The educational system in Japan is a 6-3-3-4 system, that is, 6 years of elementary school, 3 of junior high school, 3 of senior high school, and 4 of college. The first nine years are compulsory. The percentage of school attendance during this period is almost 100%, and illiteracy is very low, about 0.7%.

About 87% of all junior high school graduates go on to senior high school, although this percentage is increasing every year and the figure is higher for urban areas than for rural areas. About 30% of the senior high school graduates go to college, but they have to take entrance examinations.

There are about 890 colleges and universities in Japan. About 180 of them are national or public, and the others are all private. The U. S. A. has more colleges and universities than any other country, but Japan is probably in second place. However, because everybody wants to go to the "name schools," there is keen competition in the entrance examinations. Many students, having failed in the examinations, stay out of school for one or two years rather than go to a second-choice college.

Most colleges and universities are for four years, but medical school is six. After a student finishes his undergraduate work, there is graduate school, which has a two-year master's course and a three-year doctorate course.

### 語句

- kyōiku-seido educational system
- kyōiku education
- Roku-san-san-yon-sei 6-3-3-4 system  
-sei=seido system
- tsumari namely, in other words
- shō-gakkō elementary school
- chū-gakkō junior high school
- kōtō-gakkō (senior) high school
- gimu-kyōiku compulsory education  
gimu duty, obligation
- kikan period of time
- shūgaku-ritsu school attendance rate  
shūgaku (Nv) going to school
- ...ni chika-i almost...; nearly
- monmō (N) illiterate; illiteracy
- monmō-ritsu illiteracy rate
- rei-ten-nana 0.7  
rei zero ten point
- shingaku-ritsu percentage of students  
going on to higher education  
shingaku (Nv) going on to a higher school
- zōka (Nv) increase
- keikō tendency
- tokai urban area
- sotsugyō-sha graduate (person)  
sotsugyō (Nv) graduation  
-sha person, -er
- nyūgaku-shiken=nyū-shi entrance  
examination nyūgaku (Nv) enter-  
ing school
- uke-ru take, receive  
shiken o uke-ru sit for/take an exam
- kō =gakkō school
- ritsu souchi among them
- kō-kō-ritsu national and public  
+kōku-ritsu (state-supported),  
kō-ritsu (public-supported)
- ato the rest
- shi-ritsu private (school, institute)
- kazu number
- shigan-sha applicant  
shigan (Nv) apply, volunteer
- kyōsō-ritsu competition ratio  
kyōsō (Nv) competition
- ochi-ru (Nv) drop, fail; fail (in the  
exam)
- rōnin-seikatsu life away from school  
rōnin masterless samurai; unsuccess-  
ful examinee who stays out of  
school to study for the next year's  
exam  
seikatsu (Nv) life, daily life
- okur-u spend (time); send
- futsū (N) usually, ordinary
- igaku-bu medical science depart-  
ment  
-igaku medical science  
-bu department  
-gaku-bu department (university)
- daigaku-in graduate school
- shūshi-katei master's course  
shūshi master of arts/science  
katei course
- hakushi-katei doctorate course  
hakushi=hakase doctorate, Ph.D

# 第 13 課

## 日本語の 勉強

TAPE  
No. 4  
Side 1

① わたしは 三か月 前から 日本語の 勉強 を しています。  
それで、いつも いい 辞書が ほしーと 思っています。  
英和辞典だけでなく、和英辞典も ほしーです。しかし、  
外国人用の いい 辞書が なかなか 見つからなくて、困っ  
ています。

② わたしの 教科書の 索引には、単語が 千三百しか あ  
りませんから、とても 不便です。あと 二千語が 三千語  
あったほうが いいです。わたしの 友だちも いい 辞書を  
ほしがっています。みんなが 「正しい 日本語を 書きたい。」  
「美しい 日本語を 話したい。」と 言っています。

③ 先週 わたしたちは、教室で 日本の 歌の  
テープを 聞きました。「さくら さくら」 「赤  
とんぼ」などでした。わたしは 前から 日本の  
歌が 好きでしたが、日本語の 勉強を 始め  
てから、日本語で 歌いたいと 思いはじめま



### 語句

- 1 hoshi-i (A) desirable, want See § 63
- 2 Ei-Wa-jiten English-Japanese dictionary
- 3 ...dake de naku not only...but
- 4 Wa-Ei-jiten Japanese-English dictionary
- 5 gaikoku-jin-yō for foreigners

- gaikoku-jin foreigner  
-yō for  
6 nakanaka (not) easily, very; considerably  
7 mitsukar-u (Vi) be found  
8 sakuin index  
9 tango word  
10 -byaku = -hyaku, -pyaku hundred

した。みんなは 何度も 「赤とんぼ」を 聞きたがりました。  
あんな 美しい メロディーが きらいな 人は いないと わ  
たしは 思います。

## 赤とんぼ

♩ = 60

三木露風作词  
山田耕伴作曲

1 ゆうや け こやけーの あかとんぼ  
2 やーま の はたけーの くわのみを  
3 じゅうご で ねえやーは よめにゆき  
4 ゆうや け こやけーの あかとんぼ

おわれ て みたのーはーいつのーひーか  
こかご に つんだーはーまぼろーしーか  
おさと の たよりーもーたえはーてーた  
とまーつ て いーるーもーさおのーさーき

©1927 Rofu Miki, Kosaku Yamada  
Used by permission of JASRAC Licence Na8324005-932

- 11 -go (Count. for words)  
12 -zen = -sen thousand  
13 -gar-u show signs of... See § 63  
14 tadashi-i correct, right  
15 -ta-i want to See § 63  
16 tepu 'tape'  
17 Sakura Sakura (title of a song)  
18 Aka-tonbo (title of a song)

- tonbo dragonfly  
19 suki (Na) like, favorite See § 64  
20 -hajime-ru begin to...  
21 nan-do mo many times  
22 anna like that See § 8  
23 merodi 'melody'  
24 kirai (Na) dislike



## Dai 13-ka Nippon-go no Benkyō

1 Watashi wa san-ka-getsu mae kara Nippon-go no benkyō o shite-imasu. Sorede, itsumo ii jisho ga hoshii to omotte-imasu. Ei-Wa-jiten dake de naku, Wa-Ei-jiten mo hoshii desu. Shikashi, gaikoku-jin-yō no ii jisho ga nakanaka mitsukaranakute, komatte-imasu.

2 Watashi no kyōka-sho no sakuin niwa, tango ga sen-san-byaku shika arimasen kara, totemo fu-ben desu. Ato ni-sen-go ka san-zen-go atta hō ga ii desu. Watashi no tomodachi mo ii jisho o hoshi-gatte-imasu. Minna ga "Tadashii Nippon-go o kakitai." "Utsukushii Nippon-go o hanashitai." to itte-imasu.

3 Sen-shū watashi-tachi wa, kyōshitsu de Nippon no uta no *tēpu* o kiki-mashita. 'Sakura Sakura,' 'Aka-tonbo' nado deshita. Watashi wa mae kara Nippon no uta ga suki deshita ga, Nippon-go no benkyō o hajimete kara, Nippon-go de utaitai to omoi-hajimemashita. Minna wa nan-do mo 'Aka-tonbo' o kikita-garimashita. Anna utsukushii *merodi* ga kirai-na hito wa inai to watashi wa omoimasu.



## Lesson 13 Studying Japanese

1 I have been studying Japanese for the last three months. So I have always wished I had a good dictionary. I want not only an English-Japanese dictionary but also a Japanese-English dictionary. But I am having trouble because it is hard to find a good dictionary for foreigners.

2 Since there are only 1,300 words in the index in my textbook, it is very inconvenient. It would be nice if there were 2,000 or 3,000 words more. My friends also want good dictionaries. They all say, "I want to write correct Japanese," and "I want to speak good Japanese."

3 Last week we heard a tape of Japanese songs in the classroom. There were *Sakura Sakura*, *Akatonbo*, and others. I have liked Japanese songs for a long time, but since I have started studying Japanese I have begun to want to sing them in Japanese. Everyone wanted to hear *Akatonbo* over and over. I do not think there is anyone who does not like that beautiful melody.

### ANSWERS (pp. 160, 161)

I. (D) 1. Q: Anata no suki-na sak-ka wa dare desu ka? 2. Q: Anata no suki-na iro wa nan desu ka? 3. Q: Anata no suki-na Nippon no machi wa doko desu ka? 4. Q: Anata no kirai-na kisetsu wa itsu desu ka? 5. Q: Anata no kirai-na *terebi* no bangumi wa nan desu ka?  
II. (A) 1. Kono hon ga/o karitai desu. 2. Kōcha ga/o nomitai desu. 3. Nippon no koto ga/o motto shiritai desu. 4. Mai-nichi Nippon-go ga/o benkyō-shitai desu. 5. Fuji-san ni noboritai desu.

(B) 1. Hikōki ni noritaku nai desu. 2. Tōkyō ni sumitaku nai desu. 3. Ima dare nimo aitaku nai desu.

(C) 1. Benri-na jisho ga hoshii desu. 2. Atsui *kōbi* ga hoshii desu. 3. Nagai kyūka ga hoshii desu.

III. Ex. 1 Noda ga kawakimashita kara, (*juu* ga hoshii desu.) 2. Onaka ga sukimashita kara, (*sushi* ga tabetai desu.) 3. Atama ga itai desu kara, (*dare nimo aitaku nai desu*.) 4. Nippon-go o benkyō-shite-imasu kara, (*ii jisho ga hoshii desu*.) 5. Ii tenki desu kara, (*haikingu* ni ikitai desu.) 6. Tsukaremashita kara, (*yasumitai desu*.) 7. Kinō tetsuya o shimashita kara, (*kyō ichi-nichi netai desu*.)

## § 63 Expressions of Desire or Hope

$N_1$  wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} N_2 \text{ ga hoshii desu.} \\ (N_2 \text{ ga/o) V-tai desu.} \end{array} \right.$  'N<sub>1</sub> wants N<sub>2</sub>.'  
'N<sub>1</sub> wants to do...(N<sub>2</sub>).'

- e.g. Watashi wa *kamera* ga hoshii desu. 'I want a camera.'  
Watashi wa *kamera* ga kai-tai desu. 'I want to buy a camera.'

NB: Hoshii is an A. '-tai' (want to) is attached to the Conj. form of V, and the V is then used as an A.

- e.g. Anata wa *kamera* ga hoshii/kai-tai desu ka?

'Do you want (to buy) a camera?'

—lie, hoshiku nai/kai-taku nai desu. 'No, I don't want (to buy) one.'

Watashi wa sono *kamera* ga hoshikatta desu ga, o-kane ga arimasen deshita. 'I wanted that camera, but I did not have any money.'

Iki-taku nakatta desu ga, ikimashita.

'I didn't want to go, but I went.'

NB: These Predicates, like many other Adjectives expressing emotion or feeling, are basically to express the feelings of the speaker (and those of a second person in a question). When you want to use them for a third person, some modifications are necessary, such as the following. It is not enough to simply substitute Topics.

- e.g. Watashi wa *kamera* ga hoshii desu.

×Tarō wa *kamera* ga hoshii desu.

Tarō wa *kamera* ga hoshii to itte-imasu.

'Taro says he wants a camera.'

Tarō wa *kamera* o hoshi-gatte-imasu. (Literally, 'Taro is showing signs of wanting a camera.')

Tarō wa *kamera* ga hoshii no desu.

The 'Adjectives of emotion' include: *ureshii* 'glad, happy'; *kanashii* 'sad'; *kowai* 'afraid'; *sabishii* 'lonely.'

NB: The object of V-tai (N<sub>2</sub>) may be indicated with either o or ga.

## § 64 Expressions of Like or Dislike

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  ga  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suki} \\ \text{kirai} \end{array} \right\}$  desu. 'N<sub>1</sub>  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{likes} \\ \text{dislikes} \end{array} \right\}$  N<sub>2</sub>.'

NB: Both *suki* and *kirai* are Na. When they are used as pronominal modifiers they take the '-na' form.

- e.g. *suki-na tabemono* 'food that one likes' 'one's favorite food'

To express 'like/dislike...very much,' the prefix **dai-** is attached.

- e.g. Anata wa *kōhi* ga *suki* desu ka? 'Do you like coffee?'

—Hai, dai-suki desu. 'Yes, I like it very much.'

Anata no *kirai-na tabemono* wa nan desu ka?

'What food don't you like?'

—Sashimi desu. '*Sashimi*.'

NB: 'N<sub>2</sub> ga' in the above pattern changes to 'N<sub>2</sub> wa' in negative answers, and also when N<sub>2</sub> is contrasted with some other thing.

- e.g. Anata wa *kōcha* ga *suki* desu ka? 'Do you like (black) tea?'

—lie, *kōcha* wa *suki* dewa arimasen. 'No, I don't like tea.'

Watashi wa *biru* wa *suki* desu ga, o-sake wa *suki* dewa arimasen.

'I like beer, but I don't like *sake*.'

In all the 'N<sub>1</sub> wa N<sub>2</sub> ga....' constructions, the substitution of 'N<sub>2</sub> wa' for 'N<sub>2</sub> ga' has the same effect.

- e.g. Anata wa *kamera* ga hoshii desu ka? 'Do you want a camera?'

—lie, *kamera* wa hoshiku nai desu. 'No, I don't want a camera.'

Watashi wa *tēpu-rekōdā* wa hoshii desu ga, *kamera* wa hoshiku nai desu.

'I want a tape recorder, but I don't want a camera.'

## § 65 Expressions of Intimacy in the Sentence-final Forms

In conversations between intimate friends, a variety of Sentence-final forms (mostly Sentence-final Particles) are used. Most commonly used are:

... **no?** (Question, mostly by women); ... **wa.** (Confirmation, by women only); and ... **kai?/... dai?** (Question, by men only)

I. Make dialogs as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Nihon-ryōri<sup>1</sup>) Q: Anata wa Nihon-ryōri ga suki desu ka?

A: Iie, suki dewa arimasen. Kiraii desu.

1. (bōringu) 2. (uisukī<sup>2</sup>) 3. (neko) 4. (gurūpu-ryokō<sup>3</sup>)

(B) Ex. Q: (supōtsu) Anata wa supōtsu no naka de nani ga ichiban suki desu ka?

A: (tenisu) Tenisu ga ichiban suki desu.

1. Q: (Furansu no shōsetsu-ka<sup>4</sup>) A: (Roman Roran<sup>5</sup>)

2. Q: (Yōroppa no toshi) A: (Junēbu<sup>6</sup>)

3. Q: (Nippon no shiki<sup>7</sup>) A: (aki)

(C) Ex. Q: (tabemono) Anata wa donna tabemono ga suki desu ka?

A: (sarada<sup>8</sup>) Sarada ga suki desu.

1. Q: (nomimono) A: (tomato-jūsu<sup>9</sup>)

2. Q: (ongaku) A: (jazu)

3. Q: (josei<sup>10</sup>) A: (kawairashii josei)

(D) Ex. Q: (suki) (shōsetsu) Anata no suki-na shōsetsu wa nan desu ka?

A: (S.F.<sup>11</sup> shōsetsu) S.F. shōsetsu desu.

1. Q: (suki) (sak-ka<sup>12</sup>) A: (Matsumoto Seichō<sup>13</sup>)

2. Q: (suki) (iro<sup>14</sup>) A: (ao to midori)

3. Q: (suki) (Nippon no machi) A: (Kurashiki<sup>15</sup>)

4. Q: (kirai) (kisetsu) A: (fuyu)

5. Q: (kirai) (terebi no bangumi<sup>16</sup>) A: (manga<sup>17</sup> no bangumi)

語句

1 Nihon-ryōri Japanese cooking

2 uisukī 'whisky'

3 gurūpu-ryokō 'group' travel

4 shōsetsu-ka novelist

5 Roman Roran 'Romain Rolland'

6 Junēbu 'Geneva'

7 shiki four seasons

-ki season (←kisetsu)

8 sarada 'salad'

9 tomato-jūsu 'tomato juice'

10 josei female, woman

cf. danshi (male)

11 S.F. 'science fiction'

12 sak-ka writer

13 Matsumoto Seichō (a contemporary writer; 1909- )

II. Change the sentences as shown in the examples.

(A) Ex. (Kyō no shinbun o yomimasu.) Kyō no shinbun ga/o yomitai desu.

1. (Kono hon o karimasu.)

2. (Kōcha o nomimasu.)

3. (Nippon no koto o motto shirimasu.)

4. (Mai-nichi Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu.)

5. (Fuji-san ni noborimasu.)

(B) Ex. (Kyō wa doko e mo ikimasen.) Kyō wa doko e mo ikitaku nai desu.

1. (Hikōki ni norimasen.)

2. (Tōkyō ni sumimasu.)

3. (Ima dare nimo aimasen.)

(C) Ex. (Kono mizu wa tsumetai desu.) Tsumetai mizu ga hoshii desu.

1. (Kono jisho wa benri desu.)

2. (Kono kōhi wa atsui desu.)

3. (Kondo no kyūka<sup>18</sup> wa nagai desu.)

III. Complete the following sentences.

1. Noda<sup>19</sup> ga kawakimashita<sup>20</sup> kara,

2. Onaka<sup>21</sup> ga sukimashita<sup>22</sup> kara,

3. Atama ga itai<sup>23</sup> desu kara,

4. Nippon-go o benkyō-shite-imasu kara,

5. Ii tenki desu kara,

6. Tsukaremashita kara,

7. Kinō tetsuya<sup>24</sup> o shimashita kara,

14 iro color

15 Kurashiki (a place name)

16 bangumi program (radio or TV)

17 manga cartoon

18 kyūka=yasumi vacation

19 noda throat

20 kawak-u get dry

noda ga kawak-u get thirsty

21 onaka stomach, belly

22 suk-u become empty/vacant

onaka ga suk-u get hungry

23 ita-i hurt, painful

atama ga ita-i have a headache

24 tetsuya (Nv) sitting/staying up all night

## DŌ SHIMASHITA?

—Kao-iro<sup>1</sup> ga warui<sup>2</sup> desu ne.

Dō shimashita?

Ni-san-nichi mae kara

atama ga itai desu.

Soreni, sukoshi netsu ga arimasu.

—Sore wa ikemasen<sup>3</sup> ne.

Tabun<sup>4</sup> kaze<sup>5</sup> deshō.

Isha e ikitai to omoimasu ga,

ii o-isha-san o oshiete-kudasai.

—Watashi no kakari-tsuke<sup>6</sup> no

o-isha-san o shōkai-shimashō.

Arigatō.

Kyō no gogo sassoku<sup>7</sup> ittemo ii desu ka?

—Ii desu yo. Soretomo,

ima kara issho-ni ikimasen ka?

Soredewa o-negai-shimasu.<sup>8</sup>

—Watashi mo sukoshi atama ga itakute,

soreni netsu mo arimasu.

Isshō-ni ikimashō.

—You don't look very well.

What's the matter?

I've had a headache for the last 2 or 3 days.

Moreover, I've got a slight fever.

—That will never do.

It's probably a cold.

I think I ought to go see a doctor. Could you recommend a good one?

—I'll give you the name of the doctor I always go to.

Thanks.

Would it be all right to go right away this afternoon?

—Of course. Or, why don't we go together right now?

If that's all right with you, please, let's go.

—I've got a bit of a headache and a slight fever myself.

Let's go together, then.

## 語句

1 kao-iro facial color, complexion kao face

2 waru-i bad

3 ikenai not good

4 tabun probably

5 kaze a cold

6 kakari-tsuke a doctor one always consults

kakari ← kakar-u (see a doctor)

-tsuke ← tsuke-ru (habitually do...)

7 sassoku right now, without delay

8 O-negai-shimasu (Cph) used when asking a favor

9 daru-i dull, lethargic

—Please sit down.

What's the matter with you?

I've got a bad headache and feel run down.

—That's too bad.

Open your mouth, please.

Hmmm...

Please take off your shirt.

.....

It's a cold.

It's all right. No need to worry.

I'll give you a shot, but are you allergic to anything?

No, it's all right.

But I'm not very fond of shots....

—Take two of these tablets after every meal and before you go to bed.

I see.

Thank you very much.

—Take care of yourself.

karada ga daru-i feel run down

10 kuchi mouth

11 Hahān Hm..., I see

12 shatsu 'shirt'

13 shinpai (Nv) worry

14 ir-u need, be necessary

15 chūsha (Nv) injection

16 arerugi 'allergy'

17 demo although, but

18 kusuri medicine

19 -jō (Count. for tablets)

20 nom-u take (medicine);

drink

21 O-daiji-ni (Cph) Take good care (of yourself) (to a sick person).

—Dōzo koko ni suwatte-kudasai.

Dō shimashita?

Totemo atama ga itakute karada ga darui<sup>9</sup> desu.

—Sore wa ikemasen nē.

Chotto kuchi<sup>10</sup> o akete-kudasai.

Hahān<sup>11</sup>....

Shatsu<sup>12</sup> o nuide-kudasai.

.....

Kaze desu.

Daijōbu desu. Shinpai<sup>13</sup> irimasen.<sup>14</sup>

Chūsha<sup>15</sup> o shimasu ga,

arerugi<sup>16</sup> wa arimasen ka?

Hai, daijōbu desu.

Demo,<sup>17</sup> chūsha wa amari suki dewa nai desu....

—Kono kusuri<sup>18</sup> o, shokujū no ato to neru mae ni, ni-jō<sup>19</sup>-zutsu nonde<sup>20</sup>-kudasai.

Hai, wakarimashita.

Dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.

—O-daiji-ni.<sup>21</sup>

## 手紙

みんな ときどき 友だちに 会って 話が したいです。 友だちが 遠くに いる ときも ようすが 知りたいです。 だから そんな ときは 手紙を 書きます。

たいていの 手紙は 前文、本文、結びの 部分から できています。前文は 「拜啓」、 「お手紙 ありがとうございます。」 などの あいさつで 始めます。 次に 季節の あいさつを 述べます。「もう 春です。」 とか 「きびしい 寒さの おり……」 とか 書きます。 それから 相手の ようすを 聞いたり、自分の ようすを 書いたりします。 前文を 省きたい ときは、「前略」と 書いて、 すぐ 本文に はいります。 本文は 自然な ことばで 書いた ほうが いいです。 ていねいな 口語体を よく 使います。

結びには 「おからだを たいせつに」 などの 別れの あいさつや 「皆さまに よろしく」 などの ことばでの あいさつを 書きます。 その あとに 「さようなら」、 「では また」 などの 結びの ことばを 書いて 手紙を 終わります。 そして 日付、自分の 名まえ、相手の 名まえを 書きます。

若い 人は こんな 形式に あまり 従いたがりません。 簡単な 用事の ときは 手紙よりも はがきを よく 書きます。 お正月に たくさん 年賀状を 出しますが、これも はがきです。 夏の 暑い 間には 暑中見舞いの はがきを 書きます。



## Letters

Everyone wants to see and talk with friends once in a while. When our friends live far away, we want to ask them how they are. Thus we write letters.

Most letters include a salutation, body, and closing remarks. The salutation begins with "Haikai." After this comes "Thank you for your letter" and the compliments of the season such as "Already it is spring" or "During this severe cold...." Then we inquire about the addressee's health and tell about ours. When we want to omit the salutation, we write "Zenryaku" and start with the body.

The body is best written in natural language, and polite colloquial is often used in letters.

In closing we write "Please take care" and "Please give my best to everybody," and then "Good-bye." Then we write the date, our name, and the addressee's name.

Young people do not want to follow this format as strictly. When there is not much to say, we use postcards rather than letters. Postcards are also used for New Year's Cards and Summer's Greetings.

### 語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 yōsu manner, condition, state of things   | 20 teinei (Na) polite; detailed                               |
| 2 dakara =desukara therefore, so  | 21 kōgo-tai colloquial style                                  |
| 3 sonna such, like that See § 8   | kōgo colloquial speech  |
| 4 zenbun preface  | cf. bungo (literary speech)                                   |
| 5 honbun main text, body  | -tai style  |
| 6 musubi closing ←musub-u (conclude; tie)   | 22 taisetsu (Na) =daiji important                             |
| 7 bubun part  | 23 wakare parting ←wakare-ru (part with, separate from)       |
| 8 ...kara dekite-iru consist of...  | 24 mina-sama everybody (Polite)                               |
| 9 Haikai Dear... (letter)   | 25 ...ni yoroshiku give best regards to...                    |
| 10 tsugi ni next  | 26 kotozute message   |
| 11 nobe-ru state, mention, note   | 27 Dewa mata Will write again                                 |
| 12 kibishi-i severe, harsh, rigid   | 28 hi-zuke date   |
| 13 samu-sa (N) cold ←samu-i   | 29 keishiki form, formality                                   |
| 14 ori occasion   | 30 shitaga-u follow, obey                                     |
| 15 aite the other side (when two persons or groups are involved); partner; opponent | 31 yōji errand, business                                      |
| 16 jibun oneself  | 32 Nenga-jō New Year's Card                                   |
| 17 habuk-u omit   | nenga New Year's Day greetings                                |
| 18 Zen-ryaku Omitting the greeting (letter)   | -jō letter  |
| 19 shizen (N/Na) nature, natural  | 33 das-u put out; send (letter)                               |
|   | 34 Shochū-mimai Summer's Greetings                            |
|   | shochū during the hot season                                  |
|   | mimai inquiring after (a sick person) ←mima-u (inquire after) |

第 14 課

姉と音楽

TAPE  
No. 4  
Side 1

① わたしの姉は音楽大学の一年生で、ことしの春  
大学に入学したときからイタリア語を勉強しています。  
それで、今ではイタリア語が少しわかります。イタリ  
ア語で「サンタ・ルチア」や「帰れソレントへ」を歌うこと  
ができます。姉の専門はピアノですが、最近では音楽も  
好きだと言っています。ピアノは小学生のときから習い  
はじめたので、たいへんじょうずです。

② わたしの家では父も母も歌を歌うことが好き  
ですが、二人ともあまりじょうずではありません。楽器も  
二人そろってへたです。わたしもハーモニカとアコー  
ディオンだけはできますが、そのほかの楽器はみな  
にがてです。第一、楽譜を見て歌うことができません。  
近ごろの小学生はほとんどみな楽譜だけで歌う  
ことができますから、外国の人はよく「日本の音楽教

語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 ongaku-daigaku music college               | (the members being present)                              |
| 2 -nen-sei ...-th grader of school           | 10 heta (Na) unskillful                                  |
| 3 Itaria-go Italian (language)               | 11 okodon 'accordion'                                    |
| 4 Santa Lucia 'Santa Lucia'                  | 12 hoka (N) the others/rest                              |
| 5 Kaere Sorento e (title of an Italian song) | sono hoka other than that                                |
| Kaere (Imperative form of kaer-u)            | 13 nigate (Na) weak point                                |
| Sorento ('Sorrento')                         | 14 dai-ichi (the) first; primarily, before anything else |
| 6 deki-ru be possible/able See § 66          | 15 gakufu sheet music, score                             |
| ...koto ga deki-ru can...                    | 16 chika-goro (N/Adv) recent, these days                 |
| 7 saikin (N/Adv) recently, of late           | 17 ongaku-kyōiku musical education                       |
| 8 seigaku vocal music                        | 18 reigai exception                                      |
| 9 sorotte all together ←soro-u (all          | 19 shōtai (Nv) invitation                                |

育はすばらしいです。」と言います。わたしはたぶん  
例外だと思ひます。

③ 姉はよくパーティーから招待を受けます。知り合  
いからよく電話がかかってくる。「道子さんの歌と  
ピアノをパーティーで聞きたい。」という注文や、「土曜  
の晩に市民会館へ来ることができますか。」という問  
い合わせです。姉はピアノ演奏も歌も好きですから、た  
いてい引き受けますが、近ごろは、「わたしは時間がな  
くて勉強できない。」と言いはじめました。しかし、わ  
たしはうらやましくてしかたありません。なぜなら、姉  
は好きなことに時間を使っていそがしがっているから  
です。

④ わたしのほうは大学の入学試験の準備で、一つも  
好きなスポーツができません。毎日毎日きれいな数学  
や英語の勉強をしなければなりません。大学では、のび  
のびと好きな研究ができることがいちばんすばらし  
いと思いながら、いやな勉強を続けています。

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 20 shiriai acquaintance   | 27 jikan time                                       |
| +shiria-u (become acquainted with)  | 28 urayamashi-i envious; enviable                   |
| 21 denwa ga kakar-u =denwa ga ar-u get<br>a phone call cf. denwa o kake-ru/<br>suru (make a phone call) | 29 naze nara because<br>naze why ...nara if         |
| 22 Michiko (a given name (f))   | 30 ...no hō ...side, direction                      |
| 23 shimin-kaikan citizens' hall   | 31 junbi (Nv) preparation                           |
| shimin citizen (of a city/town)   | 32 hito-tsu mo...nai not a single..., not<br>at all |
| kai-kan assembly hall   | 33 sōgaku mathematics                               |
| 24 toi-awase inquiry for information  | 34 nobi-nobi to in an relaxed manner                |
| 25 piano-ensō piano recital   | 35 kenkyū (Nv) research, study                      |
| ensō (Nv) musical performance   | 36 iya (Na) unfavorable, distasteful,<br>nasty      |
| 26 hiki-uke-ru accept (an offer of work)  | 37 tsuzuke-ru (Vt) continue                         |

## Dai 14-ka Ane to Ongaku

1 Watashi no ane wa ongaku-daigaku no ichi-nen-sei de, kotoshi no haru daigaku ni nyūgaku-shita toki kara *Itaria-go* o benkyō-shite-imasu. Sorede, ima dewa *Itaria-go* ga sukoshi wakarimasu. *Itaria-go* de 'Santa Ruchia' ya 'Kaere Sorento e' o utau koto ga dekimasu. Ane no sermon wa *piano* desu ga, saikin wa seigaku mo suki da to itte-imasu. *Piano* wa shōgaku-sei no toki kara narai-hajimeta node, taihen jōzu desu.

2 Watashi no ie dewa chichi mo haha mo uta o utau koto ga suki desu ga, futa-ri tomo amari jōzu dewa arimasen. Gakki mo futa-ri sorotte heta desu. Watashi mo *hāmanika* to *okōdian* dake wa dekimasu ga, sono hoka no gakki wa mina nigate desu. Dai-ichi, gakufu o mite utau koto ga dekimasen. Chika-goro no shōgaku-sei wa hotondo mina gakufu dake de utau koto ga dekimasu kara, gaikoku no hito wa yoku "Nippon no ongaku-kyōiku wa subarashii desu." to iimasu. Watashi wa tabun reigai da to omoimasu.

3 Ane wa yoku *pāti* kara shōtai o ukemasu. Shiriai kara yoku denwa ga kakatte-kimasu. "Michiko-san no uta to *piano* o *pāti* de kikitai." to iu chūmon ya, "Do-yō no ban ni shimin-kaikan e kuru koto ga dekimasu ka?" to iu toi-wakase desu. Ane wa *piano-ensō* mo uta mo suki desu kara taitai hiki-ukemasu ga, chika-goro wa, "Watashi wa jikan ga nakute benkyō dekinai." to ii-hajimemashita. Shikashi, watashi wa urayamashikute shikata ga arimasen. Naze nara, ane wa suki-na koto ni jikan o tsukatte isogashi-gatte-iru kara desu.

4 Watashi no hō wa daigaku no nyūgaku-shiken no junbi de, hito-tsu mo suki-na *supōtsu* ga dekimasen. Mai-nichi-mai-nichi kirai-na sūgaku ya Ei-go no benkyō o shinakereba narimasen. Daigaku dewa, nobi-nobi to suki-na kenkyū ga dekiru koto ga ichiban subarashii to omoinagara, iya-na benkyō o tsuzukete-imasu.

## Lesson 14 My Sister and Music

1 My elder sister is a freshman at a college of music, and since she entered the college this spring she has been studying Italian. So now she understands a little Italian. She can sing *Santa Lucia* and *Torna a Surriento* in Italian. Although her major is piano, she has recently said she likes vocal music as well. Since she has been taking piano lessons since she was in primary school, she is very good.

2 At my house, both my father and mother like to sing too, but they are not very good singers. And they are both poor musicians too. I can play only the harmonica and the accordion, but I am no good at any other instruments. In the first place, I can not read sheet music for singing. Nowadays, almost all grade school children can sing with just the sheet music, so foreigners say that Japanese musical education is very good. I think maybe I am an exception.

3 My sister gets invited to a lot of parties. She gets a lot of phone calls from people she knows. They say, "Michiko, please play the piano and sing for us at the party," or ask her "Can you come to the civic auditorium on Saturday evening?" Since she likes to play the piano and to sing, she usually says she can, but lately she has begun to complain of not having enough time to study. Still, I envy her no end. She is busy using her time with something that she enjoys doing.

4 I am busy getting ready for my college entrance exams and can not play any of my favorite sports. Every day I have to study hateful math and English. But I continue this distasteful studying, thinking how wonderful it would be to be able to do research you like leisurely at the university.

### ANSWERS (pp. 172, 173)

1. (A) 1. Q: Anata wa jidōsha no unten ga dekimasu ka? 2. Q: Anata wa *Furansu-go* ga dekimasu ka? 3. Q: Anata wa *gorufu* ga dekimasu ka? 4. Q: Anata wa ryōri ga dekimasu ka? 5. Q: Anata wa koto ga dekimasu ka? (B) 1. Q: Anata wa jidōsha no unten ga jōzu desu ka? 2. Q: Anata wa *Furansu-go* ga jōzu desu ka? 3. Q: Anata wa *gorufu* ga jōzu desu ka? 4. Q: Anata wa ryōri ga jōzu desu ka? 5. Q: Anata wa koto ga jōzu desu ka? IV. 1. Kare wa Nippon-go no kaiwa ga jōzu desu. 2. Kanojo wa *Itaria-go* o taihen jōzu-ni hanasu koto ga dekimasu. 3. Watashi wa made Nippon/Nippon-go no shinbun o yomu koto ga dekimasen. 4. "Anata wa kare no kōen ga wakarimashita ka?" "Iie, zenzen wakarimasen deshita." 5. "Ashita/Asu watashi-tachi wa watashi no ie de *pāti* o shimasu. Kimasen ka?" "Zannen desu ga, watashi wa odoru koto ga dekimasen." "Odoru koto ga dekinakutemo ii desu. Hanashi o shi ni kite-kudasai." 6. "Kondo no Nichi-yōbi watashi wa tomodashi to (issho-ni) *saikuringu* ni ikimasu." "Watashi mo ikitai desu. Otōto wa itsumo *saikuringu* ni ikitai to itte-imasu. Kare o tsurete-ittemo ii desu ka?" "Mochiron. Dare demo watashi-tachi to issho-ni iku koto ga dekimasu. Shikashi, (anata no) otōto-san wa nagai jikan jitensha ni noru koto ga dekimasu ka? Watashi-tachi wa asa kara ban made (jitensha ni) noranakereba narimasen."

## § 66 Ability

$N_1$ wa $N_2$ ga	dekimasu.	} $N_2$ .'
	jōzu desu.	
	heta desu.	
	tokui desu.	
	nigate desu.	
	wakarimasu.	
		}
		('N <sub>1</sub> (can do N <sub>2</sub> is good at is poor at is good at (and likes) is poor at (and dislikes) (can) understand

e.g. Anata wa *tenisu* ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you play tennis?'

—Hai, dekimasu. 'Yes, I can.'

Watashi wa *tenisu* ga tokui desu. 'Tennis is my favorite sport.'

(or, *Tenisu* wa tokui desu.)

—Iie, dekimasen. 'No, I can't.'

Watashi wa *tenisu* ga nigate desu. 'I seldom play tennis, and when

(or, *Tenisu* wa nigate desu.) I do, I am awful.'

Yamada-san wa *Tai-go* ga dekimasu ka? 'Can Yamada speak Thai?'

—Hai, kare wa *Tai-go* ga taihen jōzu desu. 'Yes, he speaks Thai very well.'

NB: (1) Dekimasu (<deki-ru 'be possible') is conjugated just like any other V, but it belongs to a special class of V which have many other features in common with A or Na. This class of V includes: ar-u 'exist, there is'; i-ru 'there is (for people), stay'; ir-u 'need, necessary'; etc. These verbs are called 'Stative Verbs.' Since they express states, they have no '-te-iru form' (See § 37), and all of them except i-ru ('stay') lack the imperative form.

(2) Jōzu and heta are 'Na adjectives'; tokui and nigate are used either as N or Na.

*Tai-go* ga jōzu-na hito 'a person (who is) good at Thai'

Tokui no/na *supōtsu* '(one's) favorite sport'

## § 67 Nominalizing a Verb: the Use of koto

When it is necessary to use a V in a position that is reserved for an N, the V must be given an N-like quality. The commonest way is to use the Pseudo Noun koto after the V.

e.g. Eiga wa omoshiroi desu. 'Movies are interesting.'  
(N)

Eiga o tsukuru koto wa omoshiroi desu. 'To make movies is interesting.'  
(V)  
(N)

Watashi wa shi ni kyōmi o motte-imasu. 'I am interested in poetry.'  
(N)

Watashi wa shi o kaku koto ni kyōmi o... 'I am interested in writing poetry.'  
(V)  
(N)

Thus it is possible now to expand the patterns introduced so far, for instance:

§ 64 →  $N_1$  wa ( $N_2$  o) V (Dict.) **koto ga suki/kirai desu.**

e.g. Watashi wa yama ni noboru koto ga suki desu.  
'I like to climb mountains.'

§ 59 → (N o) V (Dict.) **koto wa** (N o) V (Dict.) **koto yori A/Na desu.**

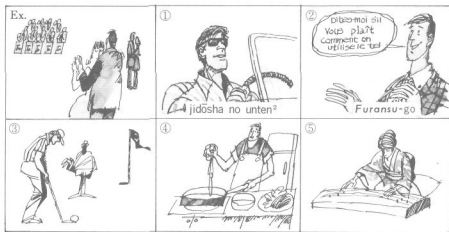
e.g. *Bokushingu* o miru koto wa (*bokushingu* o) suru koto yori omoshiroi desu.  
'To watch a boxing match is more fun than to box.' 'It is more fun to watch a boxing match than (it is) to box.'

§ 66 →  $N_1$  wa ( $N_2$  o) V (Dict.) **koto ga dekimasu (jōzu desu, etc.).**

e.g. Watashi wa Chūgoku-go o yomu koto ga dekimasu. Shikashi, hanasu koto wa dekimasen.  
'I can read Chinese, but I can't speak it.'



## I. Make dialogs using the chart.

(A) Ex. Q: Anata wa *dansu*<sup>1</sup> ga dekimasu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, dekimasu.

(lie) lie, *dansu* wa dekimasen.(B) Ex. Q: Anata wa *dansu* ga jōzu desu ka?

A: (Hai) Hai, jōzu desu.

(lie) lie, amari jōzu dewa arimasen. Heta desu.

## II. Change the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Nippon-go o hanashimasu)

Watashi wa Nippon-go o hanasu koto ga dekimasu.

1. (Kan-ji<sup>3</sup> o kakimasu.)      2. (Jidōsha o kumitatemasu.<sup>4</sup>)3. (Tatta mama nemasu.)      4. (*Taipu*<sup>5</sup> o uchimasu.<sup>6</sup>)5. (Kono kikai no kōzō<sup>7</sup> o setsumei<sup>8</sup>-shimasu.)

## 語句

- 1 *dansu* (Nv) 'dance'  
2 *unten* (Nv) driving, operating (car/  
train/machine)  
3 *kan-ji* Chinese character/letter  
4 *kumitate-ru* assemble, put together  
5 *taipu* 'typewriter'; typing

- 6 *uts-u* strike, hit  
*taipu* o *uts-u* type (V)  
7 *kōzō* structure, construction  
8 *setsumei* (Nv) explanation  
9 *tokui* (Na) (something) which one is  
good at See § 66

## III. Answer the following questions.

- Anata no kazoku wa minna Nippon-go ga dekimasu ka?
- Anata no tomodachi wa minna *gorufu* ga dekimasu ka?
- Anata wa kaimono ga jōzu desu ka?
- Anata no o-kā-san wa ryōri ga jōzu desu ka?
- Anata no ichiban tokui<sup>9</sup>-na ryōri wa nan desu ka?
- Anata no tokui-na gaikoku-go<sup>10</sup> wa nan desu ka?
- Anata no tokui-na *supōsu* wa nan desu ka?
- Anata no suki-na haiyū<sup>11</sup> wa dare desu ka?

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

- He is good at Japanese conversation.<sup>12</sup>
- She can speak Italian very well.
- I can't read Japanese newspapers yet.
- "Did you understand his lecture<sup>13</sup>?"  
"No, I didn't understand it at all.<sup>14</sup>"
- "Tomorrow we are going to have a party at my house. Would you please come?"  
"I'm sorry,<sup>15</sup> but I can't dance."  
"It doesn't matter if you can't dance. Come and talk."
- "Next Sunday I am going bicycling with my friends."  
"I want to go too. My brother always says that he wants to go bicycling. Do you mind if I take him?"  
"No, anybody<sup>16</sup> can go with us. But can your brother ride a bicycle for a long time? We have to ride from morning till evening."

10 *gaikoku-go* foreign language11 *haiyū* actor, actress12 *kaifu* (Nv) conversation13 *kōen* (Nv) lecture (to a large audience) cf. *kōgi* (university lecture)14 *zenzen...nai* not at all15 *zannen* (Na) regrettable16 *dare demo* anybody, anyone, whoever

## \$1 = ¥?

Koko de *toraberazu chekku*<sup>1</sup> o  
en ni kaeru<sup>2</sup> koto ga dekimasu ka?

—Hai, dekimasu.

Doko no ginkō no kogitte<sup>3</sup> desu ka?

'Bank of America' desu.

Hyaku-hachi-jū-doru<sup>4</sup> o negai-shimasu.

—*Pasupōto* o misete<sup>5</sup>-kudasai.

Shibaraku o-machi-kudasai ne.

Ichi-doru wa en de ikura desu ka?

—Kyō wa ni-hyaku-roku-jū-hachi-en desu.

Koko de kitte o kau koto mo  
dekimasu ka?

—Iie, koko wa ginkō desu kara,  
kitte wa utte-imasen.

Yūbin-kyoku e itte-kudasai.

Ā, sō desu ka.

Yūbin-kyoku wa chikai desu ka?

—Hai, sugu tonari desu.

Kono o-kane o kuni no kazoku ni  
okuritai no desu ga...

Can I cash traveler's  
checks here, please?

—Yes, you can.

Which bank issued the  
checks?

Bank of America.  
180 dollars, please.

—Please show me your  
passport.

Wait a minute, please.  
How much is one dollar  
in yen?

—Today, it is 268 yen.  
Can I buy stamps here  
too?

—No, this is a bank.  
We don't sell stamps.  
Please go to the post  
office.

Oh, I see.  
Is the post office near  
here?

—Yes, it is right next door.  
I'd like to send this money  
to my family back home.

## 語句

- 1 *toraberazu chekku* 'traveler's check'
- 2 *kaeru* change, exchange; cash (check) cf. *kawaru* (Vi)
- 3 *kogitte* check (bank or personal)
- 4 *doru* 'dollar'
- 5 *mise-ru* show (Vi), let... see
- 6 *yōshi* form, paper used

—Would you fill out this  
form with the address  
of the recipient and  
your own address,  
please?

Altogether that's 50,000  
yen, isn't it?

Yes.

I don't know *kanji* or  
*hiragana* very well, so  
could you write them for  
me?

—OK. But your Japanese  
is very good.

Not really. I can speak  
Japanese, but I can't write  
*kanji* or *hiragana* very  
well.

I find it very difficult to  
read and write Japanese.

—It's interesting, isn't it?  
We Japanese can read  
and write English, but  
we have difficulty speak-  
ing it.

- for a specific purpose
- atesaki mailing address
- jūsho address
- kinyū (Nv) filling out (form), fill in (blanks)
- hira-gana (Japanese characters) cf. *kata-kana*, *kan-ji*
- 11 *kawari ni* instead, in place (of)

—Kono *yōshi*<sup>6</sup> ni atesaki<sup>7</sup> to  
anata no *jūsho*<sup>8</sup> o *kinyū*<sup>9</sup>-shite-kudasai.  
Zenbu de go-man-en desu ne?

Hai.

Watashi wa kan-ji ya hira-gana<sup>10</sup> ga  
heta desu kara, sumimasen ga,

kawari ni<sup>11</sup> kaite-kudasaimasen ka?

—Ē, ii desu yo. Demo, Nippon-go wa  
totemo o-jōzu desu ne.

Iyā, hanasu koto wa dekimasu ga,  
kan-ji ya hira-gana wa sukoshi shika  
kaku koto ga dekimasen.

Nippon-go wa yondari kaitari suru  
koto ga, totemo muzukashii desu.

—Omoshiroi desu ne.

Watashi-tachi Nippon-jin wa

Ei-go o yondari kaitari suru koto wa  
dekimasu ga, hanasu koto ga nakanaka  
dekimasen.



▶ Bank of Tokyo

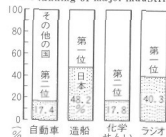
産業 —2

日本の工業生産高はアメリカについて、ソ連とを並べている。戦後まず繊維工業などの軽工業が発達した。そして、日本製品は急速に世界市場へ進出することができたが、それはおもに日本の労働者の勤勉努力と低賃金によっていた。1960年ごろからは重工業、化学工業が日本の工業の中心になった。すぐれた技術が日本の工業をささえている。造船、自動車工業は特に有名だ。化学繊維、合成繊維の技術も非常に進んでいる。

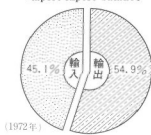
日本にとって貿易はきわめて重要である。日本は資源が少ないから原料を外国から輸入している。それを加工して輸出する。つまり加工貿易ということができる。近年輸出額が輸入額よりも多い。これからは輸出と輸入のバランスをとることが必要だ。

貿易の相手国ではアメリカが一番である。アメリカは日本の輸入・輸出額の約1/3を占めている。以前は綿花、羊毛が輸入の中心で、綿織物、おもちゃが輸出の中心であった。しかし今日では石油、鉄が輸入の中心である。輸出品のおもなものは船舶、自動車、テレビ、ラジオなどである。カメラや時計などの精密製品は評判がいい。日本人は手先が器用で、細かい仕事がじょうずである。

World ranking of major industries



Import-export balance



(1972年)

Japan is led by the U.S.A. but ranks with the U.S.S.R. in industrial production. After World War II, light industry developed first and Japanese products were able to advance rapidly into world markets, supported by Japanese labor's diligent efforts and low wages. Since around 1960, the heavy and chemical industries have been the center of Japanese industry.

Superior technology also supports Japan's industry. Japanese shipbuilding and automobile engineering are especially well-known. Chemical and synthetic fibers are advanced too.

Trade is very important to Japan, which imports raw materials and processes them for export. Recently, exports have come to exceed imports, and it is necessary for Japan to strike a balance between the two.

The U.S.A. is Japan's biggest trading partner, accounting for about 1/3 of Japan's total trade. While cotton and wool used to be the main import items and cotton textiles and toys used to be the main exports, today petroleum and iron are the prime imports and the main exports are ships, automobiles, television sets, radios, etc. Precision products like cameras and watches are also highly regarded, as the Japanese are skillful with their hands and good at detailed work.

語句

- 1 seisan-daka amount of production
- 2 kata shoulder
- 3 narabe-ru put...side by side, arrange;
- 4 sen'i fiber, textile
- 5 kei-kogyō light industry
- 6 seihin product cf. -sei
- 7 shijō market
- 8 shinshtsutsu (Nv) advance, launch
- 9 omo-ni mainly
- 10 rōdō-sha laborer
- 11 kimben (Na) diligent
- 12 doryoku (Nv) efforts
- 13 tei-chingin low wages
- 14 ...ni yor-u depend upon...
- 15 jū-kō-gyō heavy industry
- 16 kakaku chemistry
- 17 sugureta (PreN) superior, excellent
- 18 gjitsutsu techniques
- 19 sasae-ru support
- 20 zōsen shipbuilding
- 21 kakagu-sen'i chemical fibers
- 22 gōsei-sen'i synthetic fibers
- 23 ...ni totte for...
- 24 bōkei foreign trade
- 25 kiwamete extremely
- 26 jūyō (Na) important
- 27 shigen resource
- 28 genryō raw material
- 29 kakō (Nv) processing, process
- 30 yushutsu (Nv) export
- 31 kakō-bōkei manufacturing trade
- 32 -gaku amount (finance) cf. -daka
- 33 baransu 'balance'
- 34 baransu o tor-u 'balance' (V)
- 35 hitusuyō (Na) necessary
- 36 aite-koku the other country (in a relation involving two countries)
- 37 shime-ru occupy
- 38 izen before, the past
- 39 menka=men cotton
- 39 yōmō wool
- 40 men-orimono cotton textile
- 41 orimono textile +or-u (weave)
- 41 omocha toy
- 42 konnichi today, nowadays
- 43 yushutsu-hin export product
- 44 senpaku ship, vessel
- 45 seimitsu (Na) precision, fine
- 46 hyōban reputation
- 47 tesaki fingers
- 48 kiyō (Na) skillful, dextrous, handy
- 49 komaka-i small and fine; detailed

# 第 15 課

## ドライブ

TAPE  
No. 4  
Side 2

① あさっての <sup>にちようび</sup> 日曜日、あなたは  
ひまが ありますか。

—はい、ありますが、何て  
しょうか。

友だちの <sup>くるま</sup> 車が あいています  
から、ドライブに <sup>い</sup> 行きたいと <sup>おも</sup> 思います。わたしは <sup>にっぽん</sup> 日本  
の <sup>うんてんめんきよ</sup> 運転免許が ありませんが、あなたは <sup>も</sup> 持っていますか。

—はい、わたしは <sup>おととし</sup> 去年 <sup>めんきよ</sup> 免許を <sup>と</sup> 取りました。  
では、<sup>ひつこう</sup> 日光へ <sup>いっしょ</sup> いっしょに <sup>ドライブ</sup> ドライブを <sup>し</sup> しませんか。



② —いいですね。この <sup>くるま</sup> 車は <sup>クーラー</sup> クーラー <sup>も</sup> も ありますね。いち  
ばん <sup>あたらしい</sup> 新しい <sup>かたち</sup> 型です。この <sup>かたち</sup> 型は <sup>デザイン</sup> デザインが <sup>よく</sup> よく  
て <sup>ばりき</sup> 馬力も ありますから、<sup>とて</sup> とても <sup>にんき</sup> 人気 <sup>も</sup> も あります。  
<sup>よく</sup> よく <sup>し</sup> 知っていますね。

—わたしは <sup>まだ</sup> まだ <sup>くるま</sup> 車 <sup>が</sup> が ありませんから、<sup>いちだい</sup> 一台 <sup>か</sup> 買いた  
いと <sup>おも</sup> 思っています。

<sup>あまり</sup> あまり <sup>やす</sup> 安いのは、<sup>こしょう</sup> 故障する <sup>こと</sup> ことが <sup>あり</sup> ありますから、<sup>だめ</sup> だめ

ですよ。

③ この <sup>へん</sup> 辺の <sup>けしき</sup> 景色は <sup>すばらしい</sup> すばらしいですね。

—わたしは <sup>この</sup> この <sup>ちかく</sup> 近くまで <sup>に</sup> 二、<sup>さんかい</sup> 三回 <sup>ようじ</sup> 用事で <sup>きた</sup> 来た <sup>こ</sup> こ  
とが <sup>あり</sup> あります。

わたしは <sup>とうきョう</sup> 東京から <sup>きた</sup> 北の <sup>ほう</sup> 方へ <sup>きた</sup> 来た <sup>こと</sup> ことが <sup>あり</sup> ありませ  
んから、<sup>なん</sup> 何でも <sup>めづらしい</sup> めづらしいです。

—<sup>むこう</sup> 向こうの <sup>やま</sup> 山が <sup>あかぎ</sup> 赤城山 <sup>です</sup> です。

そうですね。名まえを <sup>き</sup> 聞いた <sup>こと</sup> ことが <sup>あり</sup> あります。



▲Mt. Akagi

### 語句

- 1 *doraibu* (Nv) 'drive'  
2 *untten-menkyo* driver's license  
menkyo license  
3 *Nikkō* (a place name)  
4 *kōra* 'cooler,' air conditioner

- 5 *kata=katachi* model, style, type  
6 *dezain* 'design'  
7 *bariki* horsepower  
8 *ninki* popularity  
ninki ga ar-u be popular

- 9 *amari* extremely, too  
10 *koshō* (Nv) breakdown, being out of  
order  
11 ...koto ga ar-u occasionally See § 69  
12 *keshiki* view, scenery

- 13 *ni-san-kai* two or three times  
14 *-ta koto ga ar-u* See § 69  
15 *nan demo* anything, whatever  
16 *Akagi-san* (name of a mountain)

## Dai 15-ka Doraibu

1 Asatte no Nichi-yōbi, anata wa hima ga arimasu ka?

—Hai, arimasu ga, nan deshō ka?

Tomodachi no kuruma ga aite-imasu kara, *doraibu* ni ikitai to omoimasu. Watashi wa Nippon no unten-menkyo ga arimasen ga, anata wa motte-imasu ka?

—Hai, watashi wa kyo-nen menkyo o torimashita.

Dewa, Nikkō e issho-ni *doraibu* o shimasen ka?

2 —Ii desu ne. Kono kuruma wa *kūrā* mo arimasu ne. Ichiban atarashii kata desu ne. Kono kata wa *dezain* ga yokute bariki mo arimasu kara, totemo ninki ga arimasu.

Yoku shitte-imasu ne.

—Watashi wa mada kuruma ga arimasen kara, ichi-dai kaitai to omotte-imasu.

Amari yasui no wa, koshō-suru koto ga arimasu kara, dame desu yo.

3 Kono hen no keshiki wa subarashii desu ne.

—Watashi wa kono chikaku made ni-san-ka'i yōji de kita koto ga arimasu.

Watashi wa Tōkyō kara kita no hō e kita koto ga arimasen kara, nan demo mezurashii desu.

—Mukō no yama ga Akagi-san desu.

Sō desu ka. Namae o kiita koto ga arimasu.

## Lesson 15 A Drive

1 Are you free the day after tomorrow, Sunday?

—Yes, but what?

My friend's car is available, so I thought it would be nice to go for a drive.

I don't have a Japanese driver's license, but do you have one?

—Yes, I got a license last year.

Then why don't we go for a drive to Nikko?

2 —This is nice. This car even has air conditioning too, doesn't it?

It's the latest model. This is a very popular model, since it is good-looking and has lots of horsepower.

You know a lot about cars, don't you?

—I don't have a car yet, but I want to buy one.

The very cheap ones break down, and so they're no good.

3 Isn't the scenery along here beautiful?

—I've been near here two or three times on business.

I've never been north of Tokyo before, so it's all new to me.

—That mountain over there is Mt. Akagi.

Is that so? I've heard the name.

### ANSWERS (pp. 184, 185)

I. 1. Q: ...hōmon-shita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Iie, ichi-do mo hōmon-shita koto ga arimasen.

2. Q: ...okureta koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ichi-do dake okureta koto ga arimasu. 3. Q: ...kita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, nan-do mo kita koto ga arimasu. 4. Q: ...yonda koto ga arimasu ka? A: Iie, mada yonda koto ga arimasen. 5. Q: ...itta koto ga arimasu ka? A: Iie, ik-kai mo itta koto ga arimasen. 6. Q: ...atta koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ni-do dake atta koto ga arimasu. 7. Q: ...mita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, ik-kai dake mita koto ga arimasu. 8. Q: ...hanashita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, san-do hodo hanashita koto ga arimasu. 9. Q: ...kiita koto ga arimasu ka? A: Hai, nan-do mo kiita koto ga arimasu.

II. 1. omoidashimasu→omoidasu koto ga arimasu. 2. mimasu→miru koto ga arimasu. 3. shimasu→suru koto ga arimasu. 4. kimasu→kuru koto ga arimasu. 5. kakemasu→kakeru koto ga arimasu.

III. Kono kaisha wa... 1. heya ga yaku 300 arimasu. 2. kaigi-shitsu ga ōkii desu. 3. setsubi ga ii desu. 4. sha-in ga sukunai desu. 5. kinmu-jikan ga gozen 9-ji kara gogo 5-ji made desu. 6. kyūryō ga ii desu.

IV. 1. Watashi wa atama ga itai desu. 2. Watashi no kaisha wa Yōroppa ni shi-ten ga itsu-tsu arimasu. 3. Watashi wa Fuji-san ni nobotta koto ga arimasu ga, ima demo sono utsukushii hi-no-de o omoidasu koto ga arimasu. 4. Anata wa Nippon-go de tegami o kaita koto ga arimasu ka?

## § 68 Expressions of Possession

$N_1$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{wa} \\ \text{niwa} \end{array} \right\}$	$N_2$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{arimasu.} \\ \text{oi desu.} \\ \text{sukunai desu.} \end{array} \right\}$	‘ $N_1$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{has} \\ \text{has many/much} \\ \text{has few/little} \end{array} \right\}$	’ $N_2$ .’
-------	--	-------	--	---------	---	------------

e.g. Anata wa kyōdai ga arimasu ka? ‘Do you have any brothers or sisters?’

—Hai, ani ga hito-ri to imōto ga futa-ri arimasu.

‘Yes, I have one elder brother and two younger sisters.’

Kyōto wa o-tera ga ōi desu. Shikashi kōjō wa sukunai desu.

‘Kyoto has many temples, but few factories.’

NB: This pattern looks almost like the pattern expressing existence or location introduced in § 12, but is different in several ways.

(1) This pattern expresses that somebody or something ( $N_1$ ) possesses something ( $N_2$ ), rather than ‘there is something at a certain place.’  $N_1$  here may or may not be an N of place as in § 12; it can be a person or an abstract being.

(2) This pattern allows *arimasu* to be used for Animate N. Compare:

Anata wa oku-san ga arimasu ka? ‘Do you have a wife? (= Are you married?)’

\*Ima uchi ni oku-san ga arimasu ka? ‘Is (your) wife at home now?’

Possession can be expressed by the Verbal Predicate ‘(..o) motte-imasu’ (motte being the -te form of the verb *motsu* ‘to hold’), which may be closer to the English ‘have.’ However, this expression is not commonly used in daily conversation, and is limited to instances in which  $N_2$  is an inanimate object.

e.g. Anata wa ima o-kane o ikura motte-imasu ka?

(=Anata wa ima o-kane ga ikura arimasu ka?)

‘How much money do you have now?’

\*Anata wa oku-san o motte-imasu ka?

## § 69 Expressions of Experience

$N_1$  wa ... V-ta koto ga arimasu. ‘ $N_1$  has had the experience of V-ing.’

e.g. Anata wa Hokkaidō e itta koto ga arimasu ka? —Iie, arimasen.

‘Have you ever been to Hokkaido?’ —‘No, I have never been there.’

NB: If the Present form (*iku*, *taberu*, etc.) is used in this pattern in place of V-ta, it means ‘It sometimes happens that...’ or ‘There are cases in which...’

e.g. Kono tokei wa (tokidoki) susumu koto ga arimasu.

‘This watch sometimes runs fast.’

## § 70 The ‘Whole’ and its ‘Part’

When one selects something ( $N_1$ ) as the Topic, and then wants to make some comment on a part of  $N_1$  or something belonging to or closely related to  $N_1$  ( $N_2$ ) the following pattern is used. The Predicate is typically (but not necessarily) Adjectival.

$N_1$  wa  $N_2$  ga ...

e.g.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{me ga } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ōkii desu.} \\ \text{aoi desu.} \end{array} \right. \text{ ‘As for Mary, her eyes are } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{large.} \\ \text{blue.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{Meari wa } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{kami no ke ga } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nagai desu.} \\ \text{kirei desu.} \end{array} \right. \text{ ‘Mary has } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{long hair.} \\ \text{beautiful hair.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{o-tō-san ga byōki desu.} \text{ ‘Mary’s father is ill.’} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Zō wa } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hana ga nagai desu.} \\ \text{ashi ga futoi desu.} \end{array} \right. \text{ ‘As for elephants, their trunks are long.} \\ \text{‘Elephants have fat legs.’} \end{array} \right.$

Kono machi wa kōgai ga hidoi desu. ‘This town has awful pollution.’

Ano hito wa o-jii-san ga yūmei-na seiji-ka deshita.

‘That person, his grandfather was a famous politician.’

Kono jidōsha wa katachi wa ii desu ga, *enjin* wa warui desu.

‘This car looks nice, but the engine is no good.’

## I. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (hikōki ni noru) Anata wa hikōki ni notta koto ga arimasu ka?

A: (ichi-do mo) Iie, ichi-do mo notta koto ga arimasen.

1. Q: (Nippon no katei o hōmon-suru) A: (ichi-do mo<sup>1</sup>)  
 2. Q: (kaigi ni okureru<sup>2</sup>) A: (ichi-do dake)  
 3. Q: (kimono o kiru) A: (nan-do mo)  
 4. Q: (Kawabata Yasunari<sup>3</sup> no shōsetsu o yomu) A: (mada)  
 5. Q: (Hokkaidō e iku) A: (ik-kai mo<sup>4</sup>)  
 6. Q: (sha-chō<sup>5</sup> ni au) A: (ni-do dake)  
 7. Q: (Kabuki<sup>6</sup> o miru) A: (ik-kai dake)  
 8. Q: (Nippon no sarari-man<sup>7</sup> to hanasu) A: (san-do hodo)  
 9. Q: (Nippon no dentō-ongaku<sup>8</sup> o kiku) A: (nan-do mo)

## II. Rewrite the sentences using '...koto ga arimasu.'

Nagasaki<sup>9</sup> wa watashi no furusato<sup>10</sup> desu ga, 15(jū-go)-nen mae ni Tōkyō e dete-kimashita.<sup>11</sup> Ima wa watashi no kazoku wa dare mo imasen.

Ex. Ima demo tokidoki Nagasaki e ikimasu.

→Ima demo Nagasaki e iku koto ga arimasu.

1. Ima demo tokidoki sono fūkei<sup>12</sup> o omoidashimasu.<sup>13</sup>  
 2. Ima demo tokidoki furusato no yume<sup>14</sup> o mimasu.  
 3. Ima demo tokidoki omoide-banashi<sup>15</sup> o shimasu.  
 4. Ima demo tokidoki tomodachi kara tegami ga kimasu.  
 5. Ima demo tokidoki tomodachi ni denwa o kakemasu.

## 語句

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 ichi-do mo...nai never  | 9 Nagasaki (a place name in Kyushu) |
| 2 okure-ru be delayed/late/slow   | 10 furusato birthplace, home town   |
| 3 Kawabata Yasunari (a novelist and 1968 Nobel prize winner; 1899-1972) | 11 dete-kuru come out               |
| 4 ik-kai =ichi-do once  | -te-kuru ...and come; come ...ing   |
| 5 sha-chō president (of a company)                                      | See § 87                            |
| 6 Kabuki (traditional Japanese drama)                                   | 12 fūkei =keshiki landscape, scene  |
| 7 sarari-man 'salaried man'   | 13 omoidas-u recall cf. omoide      |
| 8 dentō-ongaku traditional music  | 14 yume dream                       |
|   | yume o mi-ru dream (V)              |

## III. Read the following and then write about the company, using the '...wa...ga' construction.

Watashi-tachi no kaisha wa furukute, taihen yūmei desu. Tatemono mo furukatta node kyo-nen atarashii biru ga dekimashita.<sup>16</sup> Naka wa taihen hirokute, heya ga yaku 300 arimasu. Ōki-na kaigi-shitsu<sup>17</sup> mo arimasu. Mata, atarashikute benri-na jimukikai<sup>18</sup> ya konpyūta<sup>19</sup> nado mo saikin hairimashita. Desukara, sha-in no kazu wa sukunai desu. Kinmu-jikan<sup>20</sup> wa gozen<sup>21</sup> 9(ku)-ji kara gogo 5(go)-ji made desu. Kyūryō ga ii node minna yoku hatarakimasu.



Ex. (tatemono) →Kono kaisha wa tatemono ga atarashii desu.

- |                             |                  |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. (heya)                   | 4. (sha-in)      |
| 2. (kaigi-shitsu)           | 5. (kinmu-jikan) |
| 3. (setsubi <sup>22</sup> ) | 6. (kyūryō)      |

## IV. Put the following into Japanese.

1. I have a headache.  
 2. My company has 5 branch offices in Europe.  
 3. I have climbed Mt. Fuji and I still sometimes recall the beautiful sunrise.<sup>23</sup>  
 4. Have you ever written a letter in Japanese?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 15 omoide-banashi talking about the old days -banashi=hanashi story | 19 konpyūta 'computer'                          |
| 16 deki-ru be completed, come into existence                        | 20 kinmu-jikan on-duty hours                    |
| 17 kaigi-shitsu meeting/conference room                             | kinmu (Ny) work, duty, service (office/company) |
| 18 jimukikai office machine   | 21 gozen in the morning, a.m. cf. gogo          |
| jimu office work  | 22 setsubi equipment, facilities                |
|   | 23 hi-no-de sunrise                             |

## ODOROKIMASHITA!

Nippon niwa shūkan-shi<sup>1</sup> ga takusan arimasu ne.

—Ē, zenkoku-teki<sup>2</sup>-na kibo<sup>3</sup> no

shūkan-shi dake de, sō... ,

nana-jus-shurui<sup>4</sup> gurai arimasu.

Hō... Kore wa odorokimashita.<sup>4</sup>

Gekkan<sup>5</sup> no zasshi mo oi desu ka?

—Totemo oi desu.

Sōgō-zasshi<sup>6</sup> ya bungaku,<sup>7</sup> geijutsu<sup>8</sup> no zasshi, soreni shumi no zasshi, tatoeba,<sup>9</sup> gorufu, shashin, tsuri<sup>10</sup> no zasshi, ongaku no zasshi; ryokō no zasshi ni<sup>11</sup> jūtaku<sup>12</sup> zasshi; mikon<sup>13</sup> no josei muke<sup>14</sup> no zasshi ni, shufu<sup>15</sup> muke no zasshi; otoko no ko, onna no ko, sore-zore<sup>16</sup> no tame no zasshi...

Sorewa-sorewa<sup>17</sup> takusan arimasu yo.

Zenbu de sen-shurui ijō arimasu.

You have many weekly magazines in Japan, don't you?

—Yes, counting only national weeklies, well..., there are about 70.

Oh, that's quite a surprise. Are there many monthly magazines too?

—There are lots.

There are very general magazines; literary and artistic magazines; and then magazines on various hobbies; for example, golf, photography, fishing, and music; magazines on travel and on housing; magazines for unmarried women and for housewives; magazines for boys and magazines for girls....

Yes, there are a lot, really.

Altogether there are more than 1,000 of them.

## 語句

- 1 shūkan-shi weekly magazine
- shūkan published weekly
- shi magazine
- 2 zenkoku-teki (Na) national
- 3 kibo scale, scope
- 4 odorok-u be surprised
- 5 gekkan published monthly
- 6 sōgō-zasshi general magazine
- sōgō- general, all-round
- 7 bungaku literature
- 8 geijutsu art
- 9 tatoeba for example
- 10 tsuri fishing, angling-tsur-u (fish, angle, hang)
- 11 ...ni adding to...
- 12 jūtaku house, residence

In general, the Japanese read a lot of books.

Even in crowded trains everyone's always reading something.

That's quite a surprise. Moreover, there are lots of big bookshops...

I went to that bookstore in Shinjuku again yesterday, and I was really impressed at the selection they have.

—That bookstore is particularly well-known for its foreign book section. I'm majoring in architecture, but are there any bookstores specializing in engineering texts?

—I'm sure there are some in Kanda.

- 13 mikon unmarried cf. kekkon (marriage)
- 14 ...muke=...muki intended for
- 15 shufu housewife
- 16 sore-zore (N/Adv) each, respectively
- 17 sorewa-sorewa really; so much
- 18 ippan-ni in general
- ippan general
- 19 nani ka something
- 20 hon-ya bookshop
- 21 ...shi ...and also
- 22 yōsho-bu foreign book section
- yōsho books from Western countries
- 23 kōgaku-kankei on engineering
- kōgaku engineering
- kankei (Nv) relation

Ippan-ni,<sup>18</sup> Nippon-jin wa yoku hon o yomimasu ne.

Man'in no densha no naka demo

mina kanarazu nani ka<sup>19</sup> yonde-imasu ne.

Are niwa odorokimashita.

Soreni ōki-na hon-ya<sup>20</sup> ga takusan arimasu shi<sup>21</sup>....

Kinō mo Shinjuku no hon-ya ni ikimashita ga, nan demo sorotte-iru node kanshin-shimashita.

—Ano hon-ya wa tokuni yōsho-bu<sup>22</sup> ga yūmei desu.

Watashi wa senmon ga kenchiku desu ga, kōgaku-kankei<sup>23</sup> senmon no hon-ya mo arimasu ka?

—Kanda niwa kitto aru to omoimasu.





## Japanese Writing

Japanese writing uses both *kanji* and *kana*. *Kana* includes *hiragana* and *katakana*. A long time ago, there was no alphabet in Japan, so the characters for writing were borrowed from neighboring China. As ancient China was then ruled by the Han (Kan) Dynasty, the characters were called *kanji* and the writing *kanbun*.

Because *kanji* has many strokes, it takes a long time to write. Thus the Japanese created *hiragana* and *katakana*. The *hiragana* あ is a simplification of the *kanji* 安, and the *katakana* ア is part of the *kanji* 阿.

Until the Heian Period, Japanese culture was strongly influenced by the Chinese, and all official writings were in *kanbun*.

*Katakana* was used by Buddhist priests in reading their scriptures. *Hiragana* was used by women. Men also used it in their private writings. This pattern remains even in the present styles of writing Japanese.

*Kanji* has Chinese readings and Japanese readings. These are called *on* and *kun* readings, but we have to study both of them.

経国集卷第一  
東宮學士從五位  
上  
臣聞天學書韻全支文  
者以知符共故文章者  
人倫之欲窮理盡性以  
文皆然。然後君子歷  
為之有觀儀楚漢以來

## 日本の文字

日本の文字には漢字とかながあります。かなには、ひらがなとカタカナとがあります。むかし、日本には文字がなかったので、おとなりの中国から借りました。古代の中国は、漢時代が有名でしたので、中国の文字を漢字、中国の文章を漢文といいます。漢字は、画数が多いため、書くときに時間がかかりました。そこで、日本人はひらがなとカタカナを作りました。ひらがなの「あ」は漢字の「安」を簡単にしたもので、カタカナの「ア」は漢字「阿」の一部です。

日本の文化は、平安時代まで、中国の影響が強く、公式の文章はすべて漢文でした。

カタカナは、仏教の僧侶たちが経典を読むときによみがなとして使いました。ひらがなは女性に使いました。男性も私用の文章では使うこともありまし

た。その傾向は現代日本語の文体にも残っています。

漢字には、中国風の読み方と日本風の読み方があります。

それを音と訓とありますが、わたしたちはそのどちらをも勉強することが必要です。

安	あ	ア	阿
以	い	イ	伊
宇	う	ウ	宇
衣	え	エ	江
於	お	オ	於

語句

- 1 moji letter, script, characters
- 2 kana (Japanese letters)
- 3 kata-kana (Japanese letters)
- 4 kodai ancient times
- 5 Kan-jidai Han Period  
Kan Han Dynasty (China, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.) cf. kan-ji
- 6 bunshō sentence
- 7 kan-bun Chinese writing
- 8 kaku-sū the number of strokes
- 9 -sū number
- 9 sokode therefore, so
- 10 ichi-bu one part
- 11 kōshiki formal, official
- 12 subete all
- 13 Bukkyō Buddhism
- 14 sōryo monk
- 15 kyōten Buddhist scriptures, sutra
- 16 yomi-gana *kana* used as phonetic symbols
- 17 dan-sei man, male
- 18 shiyō private use
- 19 gendai-Nippon-gō modern Japanese  
gendai (N) modern (times)
- 20 buntai writing style
- 21 Chūgoku-fū Chinese style  
-fū ...style, taste
- 22 yomi-kata how to read, reading  
-kata how to
- 23 on (phonetic reading of a Chinese character)
- 24 kun (Japanese reading of a Chinese character)

- ① 近ごろ「恍惚の人」ということばがよく使われます。これは老人という意味で言われています。もともとは小説の名まえです。この小説は有吉佐和子という作家によって書かれました。
- ② 日本には昔、まずい百姓のあいだに「うばすて」という風習がありました。まずしくて老人にご飯を食べさせることができないから、山に老人をすてに行かせました。これも「楮山節考」という小説に書かれています。これは昔の話で、もちろん今ではこんなことはありません。
- ③ 日本は戦後大きな発展をしましたが、現在老人問題をはじめいろいろな問題が生まれています。そして大きな関心もたれています。それは社会保障制度の問題であると同時に、若者をもふくめてわたした

## 語句

- 1 Kōkotsu no Hito (the title of a novel)  
kōkotsu ecstasy  
2 -are-ru See § 71  
3 rōjin old man/woman, the aged  
4 Ariyoshi Sawako (novelist; 1931- )  
5 ...ni yotte (Passive) by... See § 71  
6 mazushi-i poor, humble  
7 yakushō peasant, farmer  
8 ...no aida ni/de among  
9 uba-sute discarding old women  
-sute ←sute-ru (discard)  
10 fūshū custom  
11 -sase-ru See § 72  
12 sute-ru throw away, dump, discard  
13 -ase-ru =-sase-ru See § 72  
14 Narayama-bushi-kō (the title of a novel by Fukazawa Shichiro)  
15 hatten (Nv) development  
16 genzai (N/Adv) at present, present time  
17 rōjin-mondai problems of the aged  
mondai problem  
18 ...o hajime beginning with..., especially...  
19 umare-ru be born  
20 kanshin concern  
21 shakai-hoshō-seido social security system  
shakai society

ち みんなの生きがいの問題でもあるからです。

- ④ わたしは「恍惚の人」を読んでいろいろと考えさせられました。わたしは友人にもこの小説を買って読ませたいと思っています。これからは若い人たちも自分の問題として老人問題を考えなければならないと思います。

## うばすての話

あるおばあさんがむすこにせおわれて山のなかへすてられに行くとき、何度も木のえだを折って道にすてました。そのわけをむすこにたずねられて、おばあさんは「おまえが帰るとき道のしるべだ。」と言いました。そう言われてむすこはなみだを流し、またおばあさんをせおって家へ帰りました。

- hoshō (Nv) security  
22 dōji the same time  
...to dōji ni at the same time  
23 waka-mono young person  
waka ←waka-i (young)  
24 fukume-ru include  
25 iki-gai purpose in life, reason for living  
26 -rare-ru See § 71  
27 yūjin=tomodachi friend  
28 kore kara wa from now on, hereafter  
29 aru (PreN) a certain...  
30 (o-)bā-san old woman; grandmother  
31 musuko son cf. musume (daughter)  
32 se-o-u carry on the back, be burdened with  
33 eda branch, twig  
34 or-u bend; break  
35 wake reason  
36 omae you (sing.) (Familiar or slightly derogatory)  
cf. omae-tachi (pl.)  
37 michi-shirube guidepost, milestone  
38 namida tears  
39 nagas-u (Vt) let flow  
namida o nagas-u shed tears

## Dai 16-ka Rōjin-mondai

1 Chika-goro 'Kōkotsu no Hito' to iu kotoba ga yoku tsukawaremasu. Kore wa rōjin to iu imi de iwarete-imasu. Motomoto wa shōsetsu no namae desu. Kono shōsetsu wa Ariyoshi Sawako to iu sak-ka ni yotte kakare-mashita.

2 Nippon niwa mukashi, mazushii hyakushō no aida ni 'uba-sute' to iu fūshū ga arimashita. Mazushikute rōjin ni gohan o tabesaseru koto ga dekinai kara, yama ni rōjin o sute ni ikasemashita. Kore mo 'Narayama-bushi-kō' to iu shōsetsu ni kakarete-imasu. Kore wa mukashi no hanashi de, mochiron ima dewa konna koto wa arimasen.

3 Nippon wa sen-go ōki-na hatten o shimashita ga, genzai rōjin-mondai o hajime iroiro-na mondai ga umarete-imasu. Soshite ōki-na kanshin ga motarete-imasu. Sore wa shakai-hoshō-seido no mondai de aru to dōji ni, waka-mono o mo fukumete watashi-tachi minna no iki-gai no mondai demo aru kara desu.

4 Watashi wa 'Kōkotsu no Hito' o yonde iroiro to kangaesaseremashita. Watashi wa yūjin nimo kono shōsetsu o katte yomasetai to omotte-imasu. Kore kara wa wakai hito-tachi mo jibun no mondai to shite rōjin-mondai o kangaenakereba naranai to omoimasu.

### Uba-sute no hanashi

Aru o-bā-san ga musuko ni se-owarete yama no naka e suterare ni iku tokī, nan-do mo ki no eda o otte michi ni sutemashita. Sono wake o musuko ni tazunerarete, o-bā-san wa "Omae ga kaeru toki no michi-shirube da." to iimashita. Sō iwarete musuko wa namida o nagashi, mata o-bā-san o se-otte ie e kaerimashita.

## Lesson 16 Problems of the Aged

1 The term "*kokotsu no hito*" has recently come into wide-spread use. This is used to refer to the aged. Originally, it was the title of a novel. The novel was written by an authoress named Ariyoshi Sawako.

2 A long time ago in Japan, there was a custom of "*ubasute*" among impoverished farmers. Because they were too poor to feed their old people, they took them out and abandoned them in the mountains. This is described in the novel *Narayama-bushi-ko*. Yet this is an ancient story and such things are no longer done.

3 Although Japan has made great progress since the War, the present situation has given rise to the problem of the aged and a diversity of other problems. There is great concern over these issues. At the same time as this is a problem of the social security system, it is also a question of life values for all of us, including even the young.

4 Reading *Kokotsu no Hito* made me think about many things. I would like to buy this book for my friends to read too. I feel that young people must think about the problems of the aged as their own problems.

### A Story of *Ubasute*

Once when an old woman was being carried on her son's back into the mountains to be abandoned, she broke off branches from the trees and threw them on the path as they went. When her son asked her why she was doing this, she said, "So you won't get lost on the way home." When the son heard this, he began crying, picked up his mother again, and returned home with her on his back.

### ANSWERS (pp. 196, 197)

I. 1. Kono atarashii kyōka-sho wa Tōkyō no shuppan-sha kara hakkō-sarete-iru. (sarete-imasu) 2. Kyō michi de watashi wa kirei-na onna no hito ni hanashi-kakerareta. (hanashi-kakeremashita) 3. Kare wa minna kara gichō ni erabareta. (erabaremashita) 4. Kōgai-mondai wa ōku no kuni no gaku-sha ni yotte kenkyū-sarete-iru. (sarete-imasu) 5. Ano kodomo wa haha-oya ni shikarareta koto ga nai. (shikarareta koto ga arimasen) 6. *Supin-go* wa yaku 20-ka-koku no hito-bito ni yotte hanasarete-iru. (hanasarete-imasu) 7. 'Genji Monogatari' wa Murasaki Shikibu to iu onna no hito ni yotte kakareta to ōku no gaku-sha ni iwarete-iru. (iwarete-imasu)

II. 1. Sensei wa watashi o yobimashita. 2. Watashi no kaban wa dare ka ni akeraemashita. 3. Kono hanashi wa mada dare nimo shirarete-imasen. 4. Sono dorobō wa dare ni tsukamaeraremashita ka? 5. Sono ko-inu wa shinsetsu-na hito ni hirowaremashita.

IV. 1. sanpo-sase 2. nomase 3. tabesase 4. yasumase 5. sase/yarase 6. nesase  
V. 1. *Watashi wa kare ni 2-jikan matas(er)aremashita.* (I was made to wait for him for 2 hours.) 2. *Watashi wa mai-asa hana ni pan o kai ni ikas(er)aremasu.* (I am made to go to buy bread every morning by my mother.) 3. Sono gakusei wa sensei ni onaji koto o nan-do mo iwas(er)aremashita. (That student was made to say the same thing again and again.)

VI. 1. *Watashi wa imōto ni/o yūbin-kyoku e ikasemashita.* 2. Kono jisho wa Nippon de hiroku tsukawarete-imasu. 3. Dōzo watashi ni/o ikasete-kudasai. 4. Kono kaisha wa 1920-nen ni tateraremashita. 5. Kyo-nen yaku 200-man-bon no kasa ga kono kōjō de tsukurare-mashita ga, sono hanban ga omo-ni *Ameriko* ni yushutu-saremashita. 6. *Watashi wa nomitaku arimasen deshita ga, tomoto-jusu o nomas(er)aremashita.*

## § 71 Passive Construction

$$N_1 \text{ wa } N_2 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ni} \\ \text{ni yotte} \\ \text{kara} \end{array} \right\} \text{V-(r)are-ru.} \quad \text{'N}_1 \text{ is V-ed by N}_2 \text{'}$$

e.g. Dorobō wa keikan ni tsukamae-rare-ta.

'thief' 'policeman' 'was caught'

'The thief was caught by the policeman.'

cf. Keikan ga dorobō o tsukamae-ta. 'The policeman caught the thief.'

NB: (1) This pattern indicates that  $N_1$  is affected by  $N_2$ 's action expressed by

V.

(2) The Passive form of V is obtained by attaching the Auxiliary -are- or -rare- to the Stem of V, the former for 1st Group V (e.g. koros-u 'kill' → koros-are-ru; kak-u 'write' → kak-are-ru), and the latter for 2nd Group V (e.g. tabe-ru 'eat' → tabe-rare-ru; mi-ru 'see' → mi-rare-ru). Other Auxiliary elements such as masu, nai, etc. are carried over unchanged.

(3) The 'agent' (performer of the action) ( $N_2$  above) takes ni, ni yotte, or kara, depending upon the kind of V. Roughly speaking, ni is for the verbs expressing actions directly affecting an object, such as killing, pushing, breaking, chasing, etc.; kara for verbs expressing directed movement (kara showing origin), such as sending, giving, receiving, ordering, etc.; and ni yotte for most other verbs. However, when the agent is clear, Active sentences are more common than Passive sentences.

(4) In addition to this Passive construction, which is essentially the same as the passive construction in English, there is also a peculiarly Japanese passive which involves the intransitive verbs.

e.g. Watashi wa kinō kaeri ni ame ni furareta.

(literally 'I was rained on yesterday on my way home.')

Kanojo wa kodomo no toki chichi ni shinarete kurō-shimashita.

(literally 'She was died on by her father when she was a child and had a hard time.')

Such expressions are used when the subject suffered some loss or trouble because of an event, and hence this has been called the 'passive of suffering (or misfortune).' Although they look like the ordinary passive, they can not be converted into 'active' sentences.

## § 72 Causative Construction

$$N_1 \text{ wa/ga } N_2 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{o} \\ \text{ni} \end{array} \right\} \text{V} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ase-} \\ \text{-sase-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ru.} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{'N}_1 \text{ makes (lets) N}_2 \text{ do...'} \\ \text{'N}_1 \text{ causes N}_2 \text{ to do...'} \end{array}$$

e.g. Watashi wa otōto o Tōkyō e ik-ase-mashita.

'I made (let) my brother go to Tokyo.'

Kare wa kodomo ni gohan o tabe-sasete-imasu.

'He is letting the child eat.' (He is feeding the child.)

Watashi o ikasete-kudasai. 'Please let me go.'

NB: (1) The Causative form is obtained by attaching -ase- to the stems of 1st Group V and -sase- to 2nd Group V. Suru becomes saseru and kuru becomes kosaseru.

(2) The Object  $N_2$  takes ni when the V is transitive, and either ni or o when it is intransitive.

(3) The Causative is used only when  $N_2$  is lower than  $N_1$  in status or age, or it is inanimate. cf. -te-morau (See § 74)

(4) The Causative form may be combined with the Passive form.

e.g. Otōto wa chichi ni Tōkyō e ik-ase-rare-mashita (or, ik-asare-mashita)

'My brother was made to go to Tokyo by my father.'

The Passive form of the Causative form usually implies that the subject is forced to do something against his will.

I. Rewrite the following in the Passive form, and then in the Polite style.

1. Tōkyō no shuppan-sha<sup>1</sup> ga kono atarashii kyōka-sho o hakkō<sup>2</sup>-shite-iru.
2. Kyō michi de kirei-na onna no hito ga watashi ni hanashi-kaketa.<sup>3</sup>
3. Minna ga kare o gichō<sup>4</sup> ni eranda.<sup>5</sup>
4. Ōku no kuni no gaku-sha<sup>6</sup> ga kōgai<sup>7</sup>-mondai o kenkyū-shite-iru.
5. Ano haha-oya<sup>8</sup> wa kodomo o shikatta<sup>9</sup> koto ga nai.
6. Yaku 20(ni-juk)-ka-koku<sup>10</sup> no hito-bito ga *Supein-go* o hanashite-iru.
7. Murasaki Shikibu<sup>11</sup> to iu onna no hito ga 'Genji Monogatari'<sup>12</sup> o kaita to ōku no gaku-sha ga itte-iru.

II. Change the voice: (Active to Passive and Passive to Active)

1. Watashi wa sensei ni yobaremashita.<sup>13</sup>
2. Dare ka<sup>14</sup> ga watashi no kaban<sup>15</sup> o akemashita.
3. Dare mo mada kono hanashi o shitte-imasen.
4. Dare ga sono dorobō<sup>16</sup> o tsukamaemashita<sup>17</sup> ka?
5. Shinsetsu-na hito ga sono ko-inu<sup>18</sup> o hiroimashita.<sup>19</sup>

III. Answer the following questions.

1. Anata no kuni dewa donna uta ga yoku utawarete-imasu ka?
2. Anata no kuni dewa dono shinbun ga ichiban ōku no hito ni yomarete-imasu ka?
3. Anata no kuni dewa donna mono ga yushutsu-sarete-imasu ka?

## 語句

- 1 shuppan-sha publisher (company)
- 2 hakkō (Nv) publication
- 3 hanashi-kake-ru speak to, address
- 4 gichō chairman (of meeting, conference)
- 5 erab-u elect; choose, select
- 6 gaku-sha scholar
- 7 kōgai environmental pollution

- 8 haha-oya mother cf. chichi-oya (father)
- 9 shikar-u scold
- 10 -ka-koku (number of) countries
- 11 Murasaki Shikibu (the authoress of *Genji-Monogatari*; 978-1016?)
- 12 *Genji Monogatari* *The Tale of Genji* (the oldest novel in Japan, written by

4. Anata no kuni dewa donna mono ga yunyū-sarete-imasu ka?
5. Anata no daigaku wa nan-nen gurai mae ni tateraremashita ka?

IV. Fill in the blanks using the Causative forms.

Watashi no kodomo wa karada ga yowai<sup>20</sup> node, mai-asa (1. <sup>(take a walk)</sup> )masu. Asa-gohan ni wa gyūnyū<sup>21</sup> o (2. <sup>(drink)</sup> )te, yasai<sup>22</sup> to kudamono o takusan (3. <sup>(eat)</sup> )masu. Kodomo ga gakkō kara kaette kara wa, sukoshi (4. <sup>(take a rest)</sup> )te, sono ato de karui undō o (5. <sup>(do)</sup> )<sup>23</sup>masu. Yoru wa hayaku (6. <sup>(go to bed)</sup> )masu.



V. Rewrite the following sentences in the Passive form and tell what they mean.

1. Kare wa watashi o 2-jikan matasemashita.
2. Haha wa mai-asa watashi ni *pan* o kai ni ikasemasu.
3. Sensei wa sono gakusei ni onaji koto o nan-do mo iwesemashita.

VI. Put the following into Japanese.

1. I let my younger sister to go to the post office.
2. This dictionary is widely<sup>24</sup> used in Japan.
3. Please let me go.
4. This company was established in 1920.
5. About two million umbrellas were produced in this factory last year, and half of them were exported, mainly to the U.S.
6. I didn't want to, but I was forced to drink the tomato juice.

- a court lady Murasaki Shikibu)
- monogatari tale
- 13 yob-u call, summon; invite
- 14 dare ka somebody, anybody
- 15 kaban bag, briefcase, suitcase
- 16 dorobō thief, robber
- 17 tsukamae-ru catch hold of
- 18 ko-inu small dog, puppy

- 19 hiro-u pick up cf. sute-ru
- 20 yowa-i weak
- 21 gyūnyū (cow's) milk
- 22 yasai vegetables
- 23 sare-ru make (someone) do See § 72
- 24 hiroku widely, by many people ← hiro-i

## KARĀ-TEREBI?

Kono *terebi* wa *dezain* ga totemo ii desu ne. *Karā* desu ka?

—Hai, *saishin-gata*<sup>1</sup> no *karā-terebi* desu. *Toranjisu*<sup>2</sup> desu kara *denki-dai*<sup>3</sup> ga *sonna-ni* kakarimasen.

Hito-tsu ikaga desu ka?

Hoshii desu nē....

Demo, *takai* deshō ne?

—*Rōn*<sup>4</sup> demo ii desu yo.

*Kakari*<sup>5</sup> no *mono* ni *tetsuzuki-sase-mashō* ka?

*Ni-juk-kai-barai*<sup>6</sup> de OK desu.

\* \* \*

—*Rei* no<sup>7</sup> *haijaku*<sup>8</sup> no *hannin*<sup>9</sup> ga *tsukamaeremashita* ne.

*Sō* desu ka. *Shinbun* de *hōdō*<sup>10</sup>-*sare-mashita* ka?

—*lie*, *saki-hodo*<sup>11</sup> no *raijo* no *nyūsu*<sup>12</sup> de *hōsō*<sup>13</sup>-*sare-mashita*.

*Terebi* o *tsukete-goran*<sup>14</sup>-*nasai*.

The design of this television is very good. Is it color?

—Yes, it is the newest model color TV. Since it is transistorized, your electricity bills are not so high.

Wouldn't you like to have one?

Yes, I would....

But it's probably expensive, isn't it?

—Loans are available.

Shall I get our man in charge to fill out the forms for you? Twenty installments would be OK.

\* \* \*

—That hijacker was caught, you know.

Is that so? Was it reported in the newspaper?

—No, it was broadcast over the last radio news. Switch on the TV.

## 語句

- 1 *saishin-gata* the newest model
- 2 *saishin* (N) the newest, the latest
- 3 *toranjisu* 'transistor'
- 4 *denki-dai* electricity charges, power rates  
-*dai* charge, fee
- 5 *rōn* 'loan,' easy payment plan
- 6 *kakari* (N) (a clerk) in charge
- 7 *kai-barai* ...times installment, payments  
-*barai* payment  
←*harā-u*
- 8 *rei* no that...in question
- 9 *haijaku* 'highjack'
- 10 *hannin* criminal

It's just time for the noon news, so this incident will certainly be broadcast.

\* \* \*

My TV is out of order.

—That's inconvenient, isn't it? Shall I have my younger brother fix it? His major is electrical engineering, and so he can easily fix it.

Oh, that would be very nice.

I'd really appreciate it. Can he fix it here, or shall I take it to your brother's place?

—No, my brother can come here. This is his summer vacation, so he's free now.

*Chōdō*<sup>15</sup> ima o-hiru no *nyūsu* no *jikan*<sup>16</sup> desu kara, *kitto* kono *jiken*<sup>17</sup> no *koto* ga *hōsō-saremasu* yo.

\* \* \*

*Terebi*, *koshō* na n desu.<sup>18</sup>

—Sore wa *fu-ben* desu ne.

*Watashi* no *otōto* ni *naosamashō*<sup>19</sup> ka? *Otōto* wa *denki-kōgaku*<sup>20</sup> ga *senmon* desu kara, *kantan-ni* *shūri*<sup>21</sup>-*shimasu* yo.

Sore wa *arigatai*<sup>22</sup> desu ne.

*Zehi* o-*negai-shitai* desu.

*Koko* de *shūri* ga *dekimasu* ka, *soretomo*, kono *terebi* o *otōto-san* no o-*taku* e *motte-ikasemashō*<sup>23</sup> ka?

—*Iya*, *otōto* ni *koko* e *kosasemasu*.

Ima *natsu-yasumi* de, *otōto* wa *hima* desu kara.



- 10 *hōdō* (Nv) report (news)
- 11 *saki-hodo* a while ago
- 12 *nyūsu* 'news'
- 13 *hōsō* (Nv) broadcast
- 14 *-te goran-nasai* Why don't you...?; Just do...
- 15 *chōdō* just
- 16 ...no *jikan* time for...
- 17 *jiken* incident, happening, affair
- 18 ...n desu = ...no desu  
The fact is that See §101
- 19 *naos-u* mend, fix
- 20 *denki-kōgaku* electrical engineering
- 21 *shūri* (Nv) mend, fix
- 22 *arigatai* convenient, gracious, kind
- 23 *motte-ik-u* take, bring

## 日本の歴史—2

「大化の改新」では土地の私有が許されなかった。これが「公地公民」の土地制度とよばれている。しかし、例外として、寺や神社や高い位の人々は、特別に土地が与えられた。また、八世紀のなかごろ、新しく土地が開かれ、その土地の私有が許された。その結果、だんだん私有地がふえ、奈良時代から平安時代にかけて、土地制度は徐々にくずされていった。

藤原氏は多くの私有地をもち、中央政府の高い官職を独占し、自分たちのむすめを天皇と結婚させた。そしてその皇后の男子を天皇にし、政治を自由にあやつった。

藤原氏以外の人々は地方の役人になった。これが武士階級である。初め平家が、のちに源氏が勢力を得た。1192年源頼朝によって鎌倉に幕府が開かれ、武家政治が始められた。1338年足利氏によって、京都に室町幕府が開かれ、16世紀まで続いた。

この間1274年と1281年にモンゴルの大軍が北九州に攻めてきたが、台風が吹いて多くの船がしずんだ。これを「神風」と言う。これ以後九州や瀬戸内海沿岸の漁民は朝鮮半島や中国大陸まで行って貿易をした。彼らは武装していたので、「倭寇」と言われて、おそれられた。

一方、ポルトガル・スペインなどから貿易船が来て、鉄砲やキリスト教などが伝えられた。織田信長や豊臣秀吉はキリスト教を保護したが、徳川幕府はこれを禁止した。それから開国まで約二百年間鎖国政策がとられる。この間わが国の文化は西欧の近代文明からおくれるが、独自の文化が栄えた。

The Taika reforms prohibited private ownership of land and instituted a system of public ownership. However, temples, shrines, and high-ranking people were allowed to own land, these regulations becoming still laxer as new land was opened later. As a result, private landholdings were gradually expanded and the restrictions on landownership fell into disuse in the Nara and Heian periods.

The Fujiwara family had extensive landholdings, monopolized official positions within the central government, and married its daughters into the Imperial family. They then installed those offspring as Emperor to gain a free hand. The non-Fujiwara's were officials in outlying districts, constituting a warrior class. First the Heike and then the Genji clans took control. In 1192, Minamoto no Yoritomo established the Kamakura Shogunate. The Muromachi Shogunate established in Kyoto in 1338 lasted into the 16th century.

After Mongol forces attacking Japan in 1274 and 1281 had their fleets destroyed by "Divine Winds," Japanese journeyed to Korea and China for trade. Being armed, however, they were called "Wako" and were much feared. At the same time, traders from Portugal and Spain brought firearms and Christianity to Japan. Christianity was first protected by some lords, but it was banned by the Tokugawa Shogunate. During Japan's nearly 200 years of isolation, modernization lagged behind the West while a uniquely Japanese culture was developed.

## 語句

- 1 tochi land, estate
- 2 shi-yū private ownership
- 3 yurus-u allow, permit, forgive
- 4 Kōchi-kōmin public-land-public-people
- 5 kurai rank, status
- 6 naka-goro around the middle (of...)
- 7 hirak-u (Vi/Vt) cultivate; open
- 8 shiyū-chi private land/estate
- 9 ...kara...ni kakete from...through/as far as...
- 10 jojo-ni gradually
- 11 kuzus-u destroy, pull down
- 12 kanshoku government post
- 13 dokusen (Nv) monopolize
- 14 Kōgō Empress cf. Tennō (Emperor)
- 15 jiyū-ni freely; unrestrictedly
- 16 ayatsur-u operate
- 17 ...igai except...
- 18 bushi warrior, samurai
- 19 kaikyū (social) class
- 20 Hei-ke the Taira family
- 21 Genji the Minamoto family
- 22 e-ru get, obtain
- 23 Minamoto no Yoritomo (1147-99)
- 24 Kamakura (a place name)
- 25 Bakufu Japan's feudal government
- 26 buke samurai family cf. bushi
- 27 Ashikaga-shi the Ashikaga family
- 28 Muromachi (a place name)
- 29 kono-kan during this time, meanwhile

- 30 Mongoru 'Mongol'
- 31 tai-gun large army/force
- 32 yurus-u army, force, military
- 33 Kita-Kyūshū Northern Kyushu
- 34 seme-ru attack
- 34 fune ship 35 shizum-u (Vi) sink
- 36 Kami-kaze Divine Wind
- 37 kore-igo after this
- 38 Seto-naikai Seto Inland Sea
- 39 genonin fisherman
- 40 tairiku continent
- 41 busō (Nv) armament
- 42 Wākō Japanese pirates
- 43 osore-ru fear, be afraid/frightened
- 44 ip-pō one side; on the other hand
- 45 Portoguru 'Portugal'
- 46 -sen ship 47 teppō gun
- 48 Kirisuto-kyō Christianity
- 49 Oda Nobunaga (1534-82)
- 50 Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1536-98)
- 51 hogo (Nv) protection
- 52 Tokugawa (a family name)
- 53 kinshi (Nv) prohibition
- 54 kaikoku opening of the country
- 55 sakoku national isolation (policy)
- 56 seisaku policy
- 57 Seiō Western Europe
- 58 kindai modern age cf. gendai
- 59 bunmei civilization cf. bunka
- 60 dokuji (N) unique, indigenous
- 61 sakae-ru flourish, thrive

# 第 17 課

## 銀 婚 式

TAPE  
No. 5  
Side 1

- ① きょうは わたしたちの 両親の 銀婚式です。 父と 母  
が 結婚してから 二十五年 たちました。 わたしたち 子  
も 三人は 心から 両親を 祝ってあげたいと 思います。
- ② 弟と 妹は 何か すばらしい おくり物を あげると 言っ  
ています。 わたしは 旅行の 切符を あげたいと 思います。
- ③ 両親は 戦争の 直後に 結婚しました。 苦しい 生活の  
中で わたしたち 三人を よく じょうぶに 育ててくれまし  
た。 また わたしを 大学にまで 行かせてくれました。 両親  
の 青春時代は たいへんだったと よく 聞かされます。 戦

▼Sitting in a happy circle



語句

- 1 ryōshin both parents  
2 ginkon-shiki silver wedding  
3 kokoro kara heartily, from the bot-  
tom of one's heart  
4 -te-age-ru See § 74  
5 okuri-mono gift, present

- 6 age-ru give See § 73  
7 sensō (Nv) war  
8 choku-go (N) immediately after  
9 kurushi-i hard, trying, needy  
10 seikatsu (Nv) living, daily life  
11 sodate-ru (Vt) raise, bring up, grow

争<sup>まじ</sup>で 十分<sup>じゅうぶん</sup>に 勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup>が でき<sup>あ</sup>なかつた、 外国語<sup>がいこくご</sup>なども 教<sup>おし</sup>えて  
もら<sup>ら</sup>なかつた<sup>15</sup>と 言<sup>い</sup>います。

\* \* \*

- ④ きょうの お祝<sup>いわ</sup>いは とても 楽<sup>たの</sup>しかった<sup>は</sup>です。 子<sup>こ</sup>どもた  
ちから プレゼント<sup>16</sup>を もら<sup>ら</sup>って、 両親<sup>17</sup>は たいへん 喜<sup>よろこ</sup>びま  
した。 そして なみだぐ<sup>18</sup>んでいました。 父<sup>ちち</sup>は みんなに 記念<sup>きねん</sup>  
の せんす<sup>19</sup>を くれ<sup>た</sup>しました。 それから、 みんなで いろい<sup>20</sup>ろな  
ことを 話<sup>は</sup>したり、 歌<sup>うた</sup>を 歌<sup>うた</sup>ったり しま<sup>し</sup>ました。 めずらしく  
母<sup>はは</sup>が こと<sup>こと</sup>を ひ<sup>ひ</sup>いてくれ<sup>た</sup>ました。
- ⑤ 両親<sup>19</sup>の 二十五年<sup>20</sup>の 結婚生活<sup>21</sup>は たいへん 多<sup>おほ</sup>くの こと  
を 教<sup>おし</sup>えてくれ<sup>た</sup>ました。

▼A Koto concert



- 12 -te-kure-ru See § 74  
13 seishun-jidai (one's) youthful days  
14 seishun youth  
14 jūbun (Na/Adv) enough  
15 -te-mora-u See § 74  
16 purezento 'present,' gift

- 17 mora-u receive, be given See § 73  
18 namida-gum-u be tearful  
19 sensu fan  
20 kure-ru give See § 73  
21 kekkon-seikatsu married life



## Dai 17-ka Ginkon-shiki

1 Kyō wa watashi-tachi no ryōshin no ginkon-shiki desu. Chichi to haha ga kekkon-shite kara ni-jū-go-nen tachimashita. Watashi-tachi kodomo san-nin wa kokoro kara ryōshin o iwatte-agetai to omoimasu.

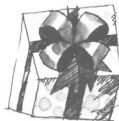
2 Otōto to imōto wa nani ka subarashii okuri-mono o ageru to itte-imasu. Watashi wa ryokō no kippu o agetai to omoimasu.

3 Ryōshin wa sensō no choku-go ni kekkon-shimashita. Kurushii seikatsu no naka de watashi-tachi san-nin o yoku jōbu-ni sodatete-kuremashita. Mata watashi o daigaku ni made ikasete-kuremashita. Ryōshin no seishun-jidai wa taihen datta to yoku kikasaremasu. Sensō de jūbun-ni benkyō ga dekinakatta, gaikoku-go nado mo oshiete-morawanakatta to iimasu.

\* \* \*

4 Kyō no o-iwai wa totemo tanoshikatta desu. Kodomo-tachi kara *purezenzo* o moratte, ryōshin wa taihen yorokobimashita. Soshite namida-gundemashita. Chichi wa minna ni kinen no sensu o kuremashita. Sore kara, minna de iroiro-na koto o hanashitari, uta o utattari shimashita. Mezurashiku haha ga koto o hiite-kuremashita.

5 Ryōshin no ni-jū-go-nen no kekkon-seikatsu wa taihen ōku no koto o oshiete-kuremashita.



## Lesson 17 Silver Wedding Anniversary

1 Today is our parents' silver wedding anniversary. It is twenty-five years since my father and mother were married. We three children would heartily like to congratulate them.

2 My younger brother and younger sister say they are going to give them a wonderful present. I think I will give them a travel coupon.

3 My parents were married right after the War. Even though life was hard, they did a good job of bringing the three of us up healthy. They even sent me to college. I have often heard how difficult things were when they were young. Because of the War, people could not study enough. And it is said that foreign languages were not taught at school.

\* \* \*

4 The celebration today was great fun. Our parents were very happy to get presents from their children. They were moved to tears. My father gave all of us commemorative fans. Then we all talked, and sang, and had a good time. Mother even played the *koto* for us.

5 Our parents' twenty-five years of married life has really taught us a lot.

### ANSWERS (pp. 208, 209)

I. 1. age, age, age 2. kure, moratta 3. kure 4. age, kure  
5. kure, kure, age, morat, kure, morai, age

II. (a) Watashi wa tomodachi ni tanjō-bi no patri ni kite-moraimashita. (b) Tomodachi wa watashi no imōto ni kakuteru o tsukutte-moraimashita. (c) Tomodachi wa watashi no imōto ni hiite-moraimashita. (d) Watashi wa tomodachi no hito-ri ni piano o hiite-moraimashita. (e) Watashi-tachi wa haha ni oishii gochisō o tsukutte-moraimashita.

III. 1. Watashi wa kanojo kara kirei-na *Kurisumasu-kādo* o (okutte-)moraimashita. (Kanojo wa watashi ni...o (okutte-)kuremashita.) 2. "Kare wa anata ni kippu o kuremashita ka?" "Iie, kuremasen deshita." ("Anata wa kare kara...moraimashita ka?" "Iie, moraimasen deshita.") 3. Kodomo ni michi o oshiete-moraimashita. (Kodomo ga...oshiete-kuremashita.) 4. Sensei ga isha o yonde-kudasaimashita. (Sensei ni...yonde-itadakimashita.) 5. Kyō wa jisho o ni-satsu motte-imasu kara, kore o kashite-agemasu.

## § 73 Verbs of Giving and Receiving

In Japanese, the verbs expressing giving and receiving depend upon WHO gives to WHOM. Thus, for example, the English verb 'to give' takes entirely different Japanese verbs in the following:

- a. I gave the teacher a pen.  
 b. The teacher gave me a pen.  
 a'. Watashi wa sensei ni pen o **agemashita**. (<age-ru)  
 b'. Sensei wa watashi ni pen o **kuremashita**. (<kure-ru)

Furthermore, an English sentence such as *b* can be converted into:

- c. I was given a pen by the teacher. (=I got a pen from the teacher.)

Japanese has still another verb **mora(w)-u** which corresponds to the passive form of the English 'give.'

- c'. Watashi wa sensei ni/kara pen o **moraimashita**.

The decisive factors in the choice of verbs are the grammatical 'persons' (first, second, or third person) of the giver and the recipient.

The verb **age-ru** is chosen when:

- 'I/we give something to you/him/her.' (1→2, 3); 'You give to him/her.' (2→3) or; 'He/she gives to him/her.' (3→3)

The verb **mora(w)-u** is chosen when:

- 'I/we receive from you/him/her.' (1←2, 3); 'You receive from him/her.' (2←3) or; 'He/she receives from him/her.' (3←3)

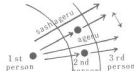


The verb **kure-ru** is chosen when:

- 'You/he/she give to me/us.' (2, 3→1) or; 'He/she gives to you.' (3→2)

These three verbs also have their 'honorific' counterparts which are used to express special respect for the person involved in the relation. **Sashiageru**, instead of **ageru**, is used when the recipient is notably superior to the giver in age and/or status; **itadaku**, instead of **mora(w)u**, when the giver is superior to

the recipient; and **kudasaru**, instead of **kureru**, when the giver is obviously superior to the recipient.

The uses of these Verbs of giving may be pictured as follows:

- A: X ga Y ni N o {**agemasu.**  
**sashiagemasu.**
- 'X gives N to Y.'
- 
- B: X ga Y {**ni**  
**kara**} N o {**moraimasu.**  
**itadakimasu.**
- 'X {is given  
{receives} N {by  
{from} Y.'
- 
- C: Y ga X ni N o {**kuremasu.**  
**kudasaimasu.**
- 'Y gives N to X.'
- 

## § 74 Expressions of Benefactive Acts—Giving and Receiving Acts

Doing something for the benefit of someone else is regarded in Japanese as essentially the same as giving a thing to someone. Thus the Verbs expressing giving and receiving are attached (as auxiliaries) to the '-te form' of the Verb expressing the action. The uses of such Compound Verbs follow the same rules as in § 73.

- A: X ga Y ni (...o) V-te-agemasu. 'X does...for Y.'
- e.g. Watashi wa Tarō ni Ei-go o oshiete-agemashita.
- B: X ga Y ni (...o) V-te-moraimasu. 'X has Y do...(for X).'
- e.g. Watashi wa Tarō ni Nippon-go o oshiete-moraimashita.
- C: Y ga X ni (...o) V-te-kuremasu. 'Y does...for X.'
- e.g. Tarō ga watashi ni Nippon-go o oshiete-kuremashita.

- I. Fill in the blanks with 'ageru,' 'morau,' or 'kureru.'
- Mai-toshi<sup>1</sup> watashi wa kazoku no tanjō-bi<sup>2</sup> ni okuri-mono o shimasu. Kotoshi wa chichi ni *seta*<sup>3</sup> o ( )mashita shi, haha niwa kutsu o ( )mashita. Ane niwa hon o katte-( )mashita.
  - Watashi ga daigaku ni haitta toki, chichi ga watashi ni 1-man-en ( )mashita. Watashi wa ima made<sup>4</sup> sonna-ni takusan no o-kozukai<sup>5</sup> o ( )koto ga arimasen deshita kara, totemo ureshikatta<sup>6</sup> desu.
  - Kono aida watashi-tachi no Nippon-go no sensei ga kyōshitu de Nippon no uta o utatte-( )mashita.
  - Watashi wa kinō Yamada-san ni o-kane o kashite<sup>7</sup>-( )mashita ga, mada kare wa kaeshite<sup>8</sup>-( )masen.
  - Sumisu-san wa Kanada-jin de, Furansu-go to Ei-go ga dekimasu. Nippon ni kite kara han-toshi<sup>9</sup> desu ga, mada Nippon-go ga jōzu dewa arimasen. Kono aida Sumisu-san ga "Nippon-go o oshiete-( )masen ka?" to watashi ni tanomimashita.<sup>10</sup> Watashi wa "Hai, ii desu. Sono kawari<sup>11</sup> ni watashi ni Furansu-go o oshiete-( )masen ka?" to iimashita. Sumisu-san wa "Ii desu yo." to itte-( )mashita node, ima watashi wa Sumisu-san ni Nippon-go o oshiete-( )te, sono kawari ni Furansu-go o oshiete-( )te-imasu. Sumisu-san wa tokidoki Kanada no kirei-na kitte o watashi ni ( )masu. Kyō mo watashi wa kirei-na hana no kitte o kare ni ( )mashita. Desukara, kondo no Kurisumasu<sup>12</sup> ni watashi wa nani ka Nippon no mono o kare ni ( )tai to omotte-imasu.

語句

- 1 mai-toshi every year, yearly  
 2 tanjō-bi birthday  
 tanjō (Nv) birth  
 3 *seta* 'sweater'

- 4 ima made until now, before  
 5 kozukai pocket money, allowance  
 6 ureshi-i happy, glad  
 7 kas-u lend cf. kari-ru (borrow)

II. Read the following and rewrite the underlined sentences to begin with the designated words.

Kinō wa watashi no tanjō-bi deshita. Tomodachi ga tanjō-bi no *pāti* ni kite-kuremashita. <sup>(a)</sup> Watashi wa tomodachi ni iroi-ro-na *purezento* o morai-mashita. <sup>(b)</sup> Watashi no imōto wa tomodachi ni *kokuteru*<sup>13</sup> o tsukutte-agemashita. <sup>(c)</sup> Tomodachi no hito-ri ga watashi ni *piano* o hiite-kuremashita. <sup>(d)</sup> Watashi-tachi wa minna de utattari odottari shimashita. Ban-gohan ni haha ga watashi-tachi ni oishii gochisō o tsukutte-kuremashita. <sup>(e)</sup>



- (a) Watashi wa  
 (b) Tomodachi wa  
 (c) Tomodachi wa  
 (d) Watashi wa  
 (e) Watashi-tachi wa

III. Put the following into Japanese.

- I received a beautiful Christmas card<sup>14</sup> from her.
- "Did he give you the ticket?" "No, he didn't."
- I had a child show me the way.
- The teacher called a doctor for me.
- I have two dictionaries with me today. I will lend this one to you.

- 8 kaes-u return  
 9 han-toshi half a year  
 10 tanom-u ask, request, ask a favor of  
 11 sono kawari (ni) instead of that

- 12 Kurisumasu 'Christmas'  
 13 kokuteru 'cocktail'  
 14 kado 'card'

## KIREI DESU NĒ!

*Pātī* no kai-jō<sup>1</sup> ga wakaranai no desu<sup>2</sup> ga, dō shimashō?

—Watashi mo hakkiri<sup>3</sup> wakarimasen ga, daijōbu desu yo. Yamada-san fusai<sup>4</sup> ga kuruma de tsurete-itte-kuremasu kara.

Sore wa arigatai desu ga, wazawaza<sup>5</sup> koko made kite-morau no wa kinodoku<sup>6</sup> desu nē.

—Ii desu yo. Futa-ri wa *doraibu* ga suki na n desu. Soreni, kono aida anata ga Kyōto o annai-shite-ageta deshō? Sono o-rei<sup>7</sup> no tsumori<sup>8</sup> deshō kara, mā<sup>9</sup> ii desu yo.

Sō desu ka...? Sorejā, tsurete-itte-moramashō.

—Yamada-san wa go-ji goro ni watashi no uchi ni yotte<sup>10</sup>-kuremasu kara, yo-ji-han goro oku-san to issho-ni kite-kudasai.

I don't know where the party is. What can I do?

—I'm not sure myself, but it's all right. Mr. and Mrs. Yamada will take us by car.

That's very good of them, but I'm sorry that they have to come all this way for us.

—That's all right. They both like to drive. Anyway, you showed them around Kyoto the other day, didn't you? Maybe they mean to repay you. Anyway, it's okay. Really? Then, let's go with them.

—Mr. Yamada will drop over to my house around five, so please come with your wife at about four-thirty.

## 語句

- kai-jō meeting place, site
- ...no desu = ...n desu
- hakkiri (to) clearly, distinctly
- fusai Mr. and Mrs. ...
- wazawaza (Adv) going out of one's way (to do something)
- kinodoku (Na) sorry, sad, pitiful
- (o-)rei thanks, gratitude
- tsumori intention, motive See § 77
- mā perhaps, well
- yor-u drop in, stop over
- uketsuke reception

—Please get a rose from the receptionist, and put it at the pocket of your suit.

Yours is a white rose, since you are a special guest.

Will they make me give a speech at the party? I'm not good at making speeches.

—Since it is an informal group, you don't need to worry about it.

Now it's starting.

That person in the grey suit is Mr. Tanaka.

I'll introduce you later.

The girl in the beautiful *kimono* next to him is Tanaka's daughter.

How beautiful!

—Certainly is. The colors on the *kimono* are gorgeous.

No, no, I meant the young lady.

(office/desk) ←uketsuke-ru (accept/take up)

12 *sūtsu* 'suit'

13 *poketto* 'pocket'

14 *sas-u* stick, pierce, prick, stab

15 *supichi* 'speech'

16 *kiraku* (Na) easygoing, carefree

17 *nakama* company, party, colleague, comrade

18 *ki ni suru* worry about, be concerned over

19 *gurū* 'grey'

20 *o-jō-san* young lady/girl; daughter (Polite)

—*Uketsuke*<sup>17</sup> de bara no hana o moratte-kudasai. Sore o *sūtsu*<sup>12</sup> no *poketto*<sup>13</sup> ni sashite<sup>14</sup>-kudasai. Anata wa shiroi bara desu;

tokubetsu no o-kyaku-sama desu kara.

*Pātī* de *supichi*<sup>15</sup> o saseraremasu ka?

Watashi wa *supichi* ga nigate na n desu ga...

—Iya, *kiraku*<sup>16</sup>-na *nakama*<sup>17</sup> desu kara, sō ki ni shinakute<sup>18</sup> ii desu yo.

Sā, hajimarimasu yo.

Ano *gurū*<sup>19</sup> no *sūtsu* no hito ga

Tanaka-san desu.

Ato de *shōkai*-shite-agemashō.

Sono tonari no *kirei*-na *kimono* no onna no hito wa Tanaka-san no o-jō-san<sup>20</sup> desu.

*Kirei* desu nē!

—*Kirei* deshō. Ii iro no *kimono* desu.

Iya, iya, o-jō-san ga *kirei* da to itta no desu!

## 日本人

ジャパニーズ<sup>1</sup>・スマイル<sup>2</sup>という ことばが ある。日本人は、よく わけのわからない<sup>3</sup> わらい<sup>4</sup>を すると いわれる。外国人は うす気味悪く<sup>5</sup> 思い、これについて 悪口<sup>6</sup>を 言うが、それは 日本人の 気質<sup>7</sup>を 知らないからである。

日本人は 昔から よい、悪いという 判断を 直接に はっきりと 言う ことを 避ける。相手の 立場<sup>9</sup>を 考えて、その人を 傷つける ことを おそれるからである。

日本人は いつも 相手の 立場<sup>10</sup>を 考えて、ものを 言う。英語では 自分の 答えが 肯定の ときは、'Yes'、否定の ときは、'No' と 言うが、日本語の 「はい」や 「いいえ」は 相手の 問い方<sup>17</sup>を 重んじる<sup>18</sup>。たとえば、「行きませんか。」と 聞かれた ときは、「はい、行きません。」とか「いいえ、行きます。」と 答える。行かない ことを 相手に 予想<sup>19</sup>して 聞いていると 考えるからである。

人に 物を あげる ときでも、「つまらない 物ですが」と 言う。人を よんで ごちそうする ときも「何も ありませんが」と 言う。理論的には 「つまらない 物を もらっても しかたがない」、 「ない 物は 食べられない」と 考えられる。しかし、日本人は 自分で 自分の 物を 「よい 物」とか 「りっぱな 物」 などとは 言わない。それは 自分の 考え方<sup>22</sup>を 相手に おしつける ことを 避けたいからである。

日本人の 表現は このように いつも 複雑な 日本人の 心理を 反映している。

## The Japanese

The Japanese are said to have an inscrutable grin dubbed "the Japanese smile." Uneasy in its presence, foreigners speak ill of this smile, but such criticism simply shows their lack of understanding.

The Japanese people have long avoided making direct and explicit judgments of good or bad. Instead, care is taken to consider the other person's position and not to hurt his feelings, and this has become an ingrained habit. Although English uses "yes" when the respondent's answer is affirmative and "no" when it is negative, the Japanese "hai" and "iie" depend upon the phrasing of the question. Thus "Don't you want to go?" is answered with "Yes, I don't." or "No, I do." in accordance with the asker's assumption that the person does not want to go.

Even giving someone something is accompanied by the disclaimer that "It's a mere trifle." Although it would not make sense to be giving out mere trifles, the Japanese hesitates to praise his gift to someone, this out of reluctance to impose a value judgment upon the recipient. In such ways does Japanese speech reflect the Japanese psychology.

### 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 <i>Japanizu</i> 'Japanese'                                     | 15 <i>kōtei</i> (Nv) affirmation                                    |
| 2 <i>sumairi</i> 'smile'   | 16 <i>hitei</i> (Nv) negation                                       |
| 3 <i>wake no wakaranai</i> inscrutable, impossible to understand | 17 <i>toi-kata</i> how it is asked<br>toi ←to-u (inquire, ask)      |
| 4 <i>warai</i> laughter ←wara-u                                  | 18 <i>omoniji-ru</i> make much of, attach importance to             |
| 5 <i>usu-kimi-waru-i</i> weird, eerie                            | 19 <i>yošō</i> (Nv) expectation, forecast                           |
| 6 <i>waru-kuchi</i> slander, abuse, "bad mouth"                  | 20 <i>riron-teki</i> (Na) theoretical, logical                      |
| 7 <i>kishitsu</i> disposition                                    | 21 <i>riron</i> theory, logics                                      |
| 8 <i>chokusetsu</i> (N/Adv) direct                               | 21 <i>jibun de</i> by oneself cf. <i>hitori de</i> (for/by oneself) |
| 9 <i>sake-ru</i> avoid   | 22 <i>kangae-kata</i> way of thinking, how one thinks about things  |
| 10 <i>tachiba</i> standpoint, point of view, position            | 23 <i>oshitsuke-ru</i> press, force                                 |
| 11 <i>kizu-tsuke-ru</i> injure                                   | 24 <i>hyōgen</i> (Nv) expression                                    |
| 12 <i>osore-ru</i> be afraid; worry                              | 25 <i>shinri</i> state of mind, psychology                          |
| 13 <i>mono o i-u</i> say something                               | 26 <i>han'ei</i> (Nv) reflect                                       |
| 14 <i>kotae</i> (N) answer ← <i>kotae-ru</i>                     |   |

# 第 18 課

## 論文を書く

TAPE  
No. 5  
Side 1

① ある新聞社が「日本人 および 日本文化」というタイトルで論文を募集しています。わたしは日本の伝統文化に興味をもっていますから、論文を書こうと思います。題は「日本の伝統文化と現代」にしようと思います。たいへんむずかしい問題ですが、以前から一度まとめてみようと思っていました。さっそく資料を整理したり、図書館へ行ったりして、勉強しようと思っています。外国人の日本についての研究書ももっと読もうと考えています。

② わたしの友人のスミスさんは貿易の仕事をしています。わたしの友人の「日本への外国観」という題で論文を書くつ



### 語句

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 shinbun-sha newspaper company                   | 8 kyōmi interest, concern           |
| 2 oyobi and (Formal)                              | 9 -ō See § 75                       |
| 3 Nippon-bunka Japanese culture                   | 10 dai title                        |
| 4 taiteru 'title'                                 | 11 -yō See § 75                     |
| 5 ronbun thesis, essay                            | 12 izen (N) before                  |
| 6 boshū (Nv) inviting people to apply; recruiting | 13 ichi-do (N/Adv) once             |
| 7 dentō-bunka traditional culture                 | 14 matome-ru (Vt) arrange; complete |
|   | 15 -te-mir-u do...and see See § 89  |

もりだと 言っています。彼は、いつか二人でいろいろ話し合おう、また図書館へも行こうと言っています。

③ 先日アメリカの友人から手紙が来ました。その中で彼は、「わたしは論文を書くつもりです。日本の映画について考えてみるつもりです。」と書いています。わたしは外国人の「日本映画論」はとてもおもしろいと思いました。わたしは、おたがいによい論文を書きましょうと返事を出しました。

▼ A movie theater in Ueno



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 16 seiri (Nv) put things in order, (re-) arrange | -a-u do something together with somebody else       |
| 17 kenkyū-sho research papers/book               | 22 sen-jitsu the other day                          |
| 18 -kan view of...                               | 23 -ron theory/discussion on/of...                  |
| 19 tsumori intention See § 77                    | 24 (o-)tagai-ni each other, mutually                |
| 20 itsu ka some time, someday                    | 25 henji (Nv) answer, reply (to a letter), response |
| 21 hanashi-a-u talk with each other, discuss     |   |

## Dai 18-ka Ronbun o Kaku

1 Aru shinbun-sha ga “Nippon-jin oyobi Nippon-bunka” to iu *tailoru* de ronbun o boshū-shite-imasu. Watashi wa Nippon no dentō-bunka ni kyōmi o motte-imasu kara, ronbun o kakō to omoimasu. Dai wa “Nippon no dentō-bunka to gendai” ni shiyō to omoimasu. Taihen muzukashii mondai desu ga, izen kara ichi-do matomete-miyō to omotte-imashita. Sassoku shiryō o seiri-shitari, tosho-kan e ittari shite, benkyō-shiyō to omotte-imasu. Gaikoku-jin no Nippon ni tsuite no kenkyū-sho mo motto yomō to kangaete-imasu.

2 Watashi no yūjin no *Sumisu*-san wa bōeki no shigoto o shite-imasu ga, “Nippon-jin no gaikoku-kan” to iu dai de ronbun o kaku tsumori da to itte-imasu. Kare wa, itsu ka futa-ri de iroiro hanashi-aō, mata tosho-kan e mo ikō to itte-imasu.

3 Sen-jitsu *Amerika* no yūjin kara tegami ga kimashita. Sono naka de kare wa, “Watashi wa ronbun o kaku tsumori desu. Nippon no eiga ni tsuite kangaete-miru tsumori desu.” to kaite-imasu. Watashi wa gaikoku-jin no “Nippon-eiga-ron” wa totemo omoshiroi to omoimashita. Watashi wa, o-tagai-ni yoi ronbun o kakimashō to henji o dashimashita.



▲Movie theaters in Shinjuku

## Lesson 18 Writing an Essay

1 One of the newspapers is soliciting essays on “The Japanese People and Japanese Culture.” Since I am interested in traditional Japanese culture, I think I will write an essay. I think I will call it “Japan’s Traditional Culture and the Present.” It is a very difficult topic, but I have been wanting to organize my thoughts on this for some time. I think I will start studying it right away, organizing my material, going to the library, and otherwise working on it. I also want to read more of what foreign researchers have written about Japan.

2 A friend of mine named Smith, who is working for a trading company, says he plans to write an essay on “Japanese Views of Foreign Lands.” He says we should get together some day to have a long talk and go to the library.

3 A letter came from my American friend the other day. In it, he wrote, “I intend to write an essay. I plan to give some thought to Japanese films.” I think a foreigner’s views on Japanese films would be very interesting. I wrote back with the hope that we both write good essays.



### ANSWERS (pp. 220, 221)

- I. 1. kikimashō/kikō 2. ikimashō/ikō 3. haraimashō/harao 4. machimashō/matō 5. mimashō/miyō 6. sōji-shimashō/sōji-shiyō 7. kimashō/koyō 8. kimemashō/kimeyō
- II. 1. shiyō 2. aō 3. tabeyō 4. narō 5. kao
- IV. 1. A: ...iku tsumori desu. B: ...ikanai tsumori desu. 2. A: ...hanasu... B: ...hanasanai... 3. A: ...kuru... B: ...konai... 4. A: ...yameru... B: ...yamenai... 5. A: ...shūshoku-suru... B: ...shūshoku-shinai...
- V. 1. benkyō-suru 2. mi ni ikimashō 3. shiyō 4. ikō 5. tsurete-iku
- VI. 1. Rai-getsu kara jidōsha no unten o narau/narai-hajimeru tsumori desu. (...naraō/narai-hajimeyō to omoimasu.) 2. Kare ni riyū o setsumei-suru tsumori deshita ga, wasuremashita. 3. Mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru tsumori desu. (...iyō to omoimasu.)

## § 75 Expressions of Will or Intent (1)

The speaker can express his will or intent, or ask the will or intent of the listener, simply by using the Present form of Verbs, affirmative or negative.

- e.g. Anata wa ikimasu ka? 'Will you go?' 'Are you going?'  
 —Hai, ikimasu. 'Yes, I will go.' 'Yes, I am going.'  
 —Iie, ikimasen. 'No, I won't go.' 'No, I am not going.'

Will or intent can also be expressed by the 'Volitional form' of Verbs: ik-ō, nom-ō, nor-ō (1st Group); tabe-yō, mi-yō (2nd Group); and shiyō, koyō (Irregular). All take the -mashō form in the Polite style.

- e.g. Mado o akemashō/akeyō ka? 'Shall I open the window?'  
 (The speaker is asking the will or desire of the listener about an action to be taken by the speaker.)

Ashita Kyōto e ikimashō/ikō. 'Let's go to Kyoto tomorrow.'

(The speaker is proposing or suggesting to the listener that they do something together.)

Sā, mō neyō (ka). 'Well, I may as well go to bed.'

(The speaker is talking to himself.)

## § 76 Expressions of Will or Intent (2)

(Watashi wa) V(Volitional form) **to omoimasu/omotte-imasu.**

'I think I will do...'; 'I am thinking of doing...'

- e.g. (Watashi wa) kaisha o yameyō to omoimasu.

'I think I'll quit my company.'

(Watashi wa) rai-nen kuni e kaerō to omotte-imasu.

'I am thinking of going back to my country next year.'

NB: The difference between omoimasu and omotte-imasu is that omoimasu indicates the speaker's thoughts at the moment of speech, whereas omotte-imasu indicates that he has had that idea or intention over a longer span of time, including the time of speech. The subject of both these Present form Verbs is assumed to be the speaker himself, even if it is not mentioned. The Past form can take a third-person subject.

## § 77 Expressions of Will or Intent (3)

(Watashi wa) V(Dict. form) **tsumori desu.** 'I intend to do...'

- e.g. Watashi wa bengoshi ni naru tsumori desu.

'I am going to be (intend to be) a lawyer.'

Watashi wa ano toki kaisha o yameru tsumori deshita.

'At that time I intended to quit the company.'

## § 78 Expressions of Will or Intent—Summary and Comparison

All the patterns introduced here are concerned primarily with the will or intent of *the speaker* (or *the listener* in a question). The Present forms and the Volitional forms express the will or intent of the speaker directly and subjectively, while those patterns introduced in § 76 and § 77 express it as a fact and with a more objective attitude. Thus to express past will (of anybody), it is necessary to use the patterns in § 76 and § 77.

In order to express the will or intent of a third person, such forms as '... to itte-imasu' ('he says that...'), '... rashii desu' ('it seems that...'), and so on must be added. (See § 63, § 112)

- e.g. Yamada-san wa kuni e kaeru tsumori da to itte-imasu.

'Mr. Yamada says that he intends to go back home.'



I. Practice the pattern using the key phrases below.

Ex. (shinbun o yomu) Shinbun o yomimashō/yomō.

- (nyūsu o kiku)
- (kissa-ten e iku)
- (o-kane o harau)
- (tomodachi o matsu)
- (eiga o miru)
- (heya o sōji-suru)
- (mō ichi-do kuru)
- (ryōkō no sukejūru<sup>1</sup> o kimeru<sup>2</sup>)

II. Make dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: (kondo no Nichi-yōbi) (doko e iku) Anata wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi  
doko e ikō to omotte-imasu ka?

A: (yama) Yama e ikō to omotte-imasu.

- Q: (kyō ie e kaette kara) (nani o suru) A: (tenisu)
- Q: (ashita) (dare ni au) A: (tomodachi)
- Q: (kon-ban<sup>3</sup>) (nani o taberu) A: (o-sushi)
- Q: (shōrai<sup>4</sup>) (nani ni naru) A: (seiji-ka<sup>5</sup>)
- Q: (bōnasu<sup>6</sup> de nani o kau) A: (sutereo)

III. Make dialogs using 'tsumori' with the key phrases in II.

Ex. Q: Anata wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi doko e iku tsumori desu ka?

A: Yama e iku tsumori desu.

## 語句

- sukejūru 'schedule'
- kime-ru (Vt) decide cf. kimar-u (Vi)
- kon-ban tonight, this evening
- shōrai (N/Adv) in the future, time to come
- seiji-ka politician, statesman

- bōnasu 'bonus'
- yame-ru stop...ing; quit
- ichi-nichi-jū all day long
- ukiyo-e (a kind of "floating-world" art developed in the Edo Period)
- tenran-kai exhibition

IV. Practice the pattern using the key phrases below.

Ex. (piano o kaimasu) A: Watashi wa piano o kau tsumori desu.

B: Watashi wa piano o kawanai tsumori desu.

- (ano daigaku ni ikimasu)
- (kare ni hanashimasu)
- (ashita daigaku e kimasu)
- (Nippon-go no benkyō o yamemasu<sup>7</sup>)
- (ano kaisha ni shūshoku-shimasu)

V. Fill in the blanks.

Kinō no Nichi-yōbi, watashi wa ichi-nichi-jū<sup>8</sup> (1. <sup>study</sup> ) tsumori deshita ga, asa tomodachi kara denwa ga atte, "Bijutsu-kan de ukiyo-e<sup>9</sup> no tenran-kai<sup>10</sup> ga arimasu kara (2. <sup>let's go to see</sup> )." to sasowaremashita.<sup>11</sup> Watashi mo ukiyo-e ga dai-suki<sup>12</sup> desu kara, benkyō wa yoru ni (3. <sup>will do</sup> ) to omotte, tomodachi to issho-ni dekakemashita. Shikashi, hito gaippai de hairu koto ga dekimasen deshita. Tsugi no Nichi-yōbi niwa asa hayaku (4. <sup>will go</sup> ) to omoimasu. Imōto mo (5. <sup>take</sup> ) tsumori desu.



VI. Put the following into Japanese.

- I think I will start learning to drive next month.<sup>13</sup>
- I intended to have explained the reason<sup>14</sup> to him, but I forgot.
- I am thinking of staying in Japan for one more<sup>15</sup> year.

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 11 saso-u invite, call for, tempt                                       | 15 mō more                |
| 12 dai-suki (Na) like...very much cf.                                   | mō ichi-nen one more year |
| dai-kirai (hate)  |                           |
| 13 rai-getsu next month cf. rai-shū<br>(next week), rai-nen (next year) |                           |
| 14 riyū reason  |                           |

## HIKKOSU TSUMORI

Rippa-na o-uchi desu ne. Niwa mo hiroi shi, heya mo okute benri da shi, ii desu ne.

—Ni-nen mae ni tateta n desu ga ne.

Chotto komatta koto<sup>1</sup> ga arimashite ne<sup>2</sup>....

Dō shita n desu ka?

—Iya, kōgai desu yo. Kinjo<sup>3</sup> ni kōjō ga dekimashite ne. Kemuri<sup>4</sup> yara<sup>5</sup> sōon<sup>6</sup> yara de, nayamasareru<sup>7</sup> n desu yo.

Sore wa ikemasen nē.... Sekkaku<sup>8</sup> ii o-uchi o tateta noni,<sup>9</sup> zannen desu ne.

—Ē, sorede, ima hikkosō<sup>10</sup> to omotte-iru no desu. Kono ie wa, zannen nagara,<sup>11</sup> uru tsumori desu.

Shikashi, kōgai de kōjō o uttaeru<sup>12</sup> koto ga dekimasen ka?

—Sō shiyō to omotte, kinjo no hito-tachi to sōdan<sup>13</sup>-shita no desu ga,

Lovely house, isn't it?  
The yard is big, and it's convenient with so many rooms. How nice!

—I built it two years ago, but we've been having some trouble.

What's the trouble?

—Well, it's pollution. A factory has been built in the neighborhood and we're annoyed by the smoke and noise.

That's terrible. After you built such a lovely house, that's too bad.

—Yes, so I'm thinking of moving. I hate to do it, but I'm going to sell this house.

But can't you file a suit against the factory over the pollution?

—I thought of that and talked it over with the

neighbors, but it appears to be a rather difficult problem....

Is that so? And where are you going to move to?

—I think I'll live in a really quiet neighborhood this time. Fortunately I found a good apartment.

I'm glad you did.

—Yes. It faces south and has a park right in front of it. It's on the second floor of a five-story apartment building. I like it very much. I'm going to move in next month. Please come and see us there.

Thank you.

nakanaka<sup>14</sup> muzukashii mondai deshite ne....

Sō desu ka. Sorede, doko e hikkosu tsumori desu ka?

—Kondo wa hontō-ni shizuka-na tokoro ni sumō to omotte-iru n desu yo.

Saiwai, ii *manshon*<sup>15</sup> ga arimashite ne.

Sore wa yokatta desu ne.

—Ē, minami-muki<sup>16</sup> de chōdo ie no mae ga kōen desu. Go-kai-date<sup>17</sup> no

ni-kai de, totemo ki ni itte<sup>18</sup>-iru n desu.

Rai-getsu hikkosu tsumori desu. Ichi-do zehi asobi<sup>19</sup> ni kite-kudasai.

Arigatō gozaimasu.

## 語句

- 1 komatta koto trouble, difficulty
- 2 ...-te ne, you know
- 3 kinjo neighborhood
- 4 kemuri smoke
- 5 ...yara=ya for example ...and
- 6 sōon noise
- 7 nayamas-u afflict, annoy cf. *nayam-u* (be vexed)
- 8 sekkaku...noni with much trouble/effort (in vain)
- 9 ...noni in spite of the fact that...
- 10 hikkos-u move (to a different house)
- 11 zannen nagara While it seems a shame/regret

- 12 uttae-ru file a suit, complain; appeal to
- 13 sōdan (Nv) consultation
- 14 nakanaka (+A) rather; quite cf. *nakanaka* p. 154: 6
- 15 *manshon* 'mansion' (expensive apartment)
- 16 minami-muki (N) facing south  
-muki facing...; suitable for...
- 17 -kai-date -story
- 18 ki ni ir-u catch one's fancy, be in one's favor
- 19 asobi (N) play, pastime  
←*asob-u*



## 日本の文学—1

日本の文学作品中で、いちばん古い作品は「古事記」や「日本書紀」の中の歌です。この時代には、特定の作者もなく、人の口から口へ伝えられたと言われています。

八世紀の中ごろ、「万葉集」ができました

▼From *Kojiki*

したが、このころ、すでに日本人によって漢詩集も作られていました。

九世紀は、日本の政治・文化がすべて中国風になったので、国風暗黒時代と言われています。しかし、やがて

雅文化が復活して905年に「古今集」ができました。

「古事記」や「日本書紀」や「風土記」などの中の伝説が人々に語り伝えられ、「竹取物語」などの物語が生まれました。

また、歌の説明から長い物語が生まれました。その代表が「伊勢物語」です。

有名な「源氏物語」はこの二種類の物語の性質を受けついでいます。「源氏物語」は十一世紀の初めに書かれました。世界最古のすばらしい文学作品の一つですが、当時は女子どもの読み物と思われていました。

「源氏物語」より古い「土佐日記」もかなで書かれています。この「土佐日記」の初めに、「男が日記というものを書いている。女のわたしも書いてみよう。」と言っています。作者の貫之は男でしたが、女の立場で日記を書くつもりでした。かな文学はこのように当時は女性の文学でした。

此天初夜於高倉生尾邊  
秋伏見御夢而發神祕  
今傳聖帝空境前非近  
雖出竊吞異文不固素  
今神皇降臨於地體  
天皇即世降臨於地體  
水而於天降臨於地體  
皇魂駕降於地體

The oldest Japanese literary works are said to be the anonymous poems handed down orally and finally recorded in the *Kojiki* and *Nihonshoki*.

*Manyōshū* was produced in mid-eighth century, by which time there were already Japanese anthologies of Chinese poetry.

While all aspects of Japanese culture was "Sino-ized" in the ninth century and native customs fell into eclipse, Japanese traditions were soon revived and *Kokinshū* was compiled in 905.

The legends in *Kojiki*, *Nihonshoki*, *Fudoki*, and others are folk tales, giving rise to stories such as *Taketori-Monogatari*. There were also long stories created to explain poems, of which *Ise-Monogatari* is typical.

*Genji-Monogatari* was influenced by both types. Although one of the world's oldest great works of literature, having been written early in the eleventh century, this was at first thought of as a story for women and children.

*Tosa-Nikki*, written even before *Genji-Monogatari*, also uses *kana* script. While it begins "Men are writing things called diaries, and I think I too will keep one even though a woman," the author, Tsurayuki, was actually a man trying to write from a female perspective using the "feminine" *kana*.

## 語句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 bungaku-sakuhin literary works  | times)   |
| sakuhin a piece of work   | 13 katari-tsutae-ru hand down orally from generation to generation |
| 2 Nihon-shoki ("history" book compiled in 720)  | 14 Taketori Monogatari (the title of a romance)                    |
| 3 tokutei no specific   | 15 daihyō (Nv) represent; representative                           |
| 4 sakusha author, artist  | 16 Ise Monogatari (the title of a romance)                         |
| 5 Manyō-shū (the oldest anthology of Japanese poems, compiled in the 8th century) -shū collection | 17 seishitsu nature, temper, character                             |
| 6 sude-ni=mō already (Formal)   | 18 uke-tsugu-u inherit   |
| 7 Kanshi-shū anthology of Chinese poems   | 19 sekai sai-ko the oldest in the world                            |
| 8 Kokufū-ankoku-jidai the Dark age of nationalism   | 20 sai-ko the oldest   |
| 9 kokusui-bunka nationalistic culture   | 21 yomi-mono reading matter, things to read                        |
| 10 fukkatsu (Nv) revival  | 22 Tosa Nikki (the title of a diary)                               |
| 11 Kokin-shū (anthology of Japanese poems compiled in the 10th century)                           | 23 Tsurayuki (?-945)   |
| 12 Fudo-ki (local documents of ancient  | 24 kana-bungaku (literature written in hiragana)                   |
|   | 24 kono yō-ni in this way, like this                               |

第 19 課

彼の こと

TAPE  
No. 5  
Side 2

① 彼は 来るでしょうか。

—わかりませんね。来ないかもしれません。この間から  
青い 顔を、よく つかれたと 言っていました。  
どこか からだが 悪いのでしょうか。病気 かもしれません  
ね。

—そうかもしれません。しかし あの ようすでは ほか  
に 何か なやみが あるにちがいません。

② そうですね。近ごろの 彼  
は ようすが 少し おかし  
いですね。よく お酒を 飲  
んだり、夜 おそく 帰った  
りしています。きっと 何か  
が あったにちがいません  
ん。

—仕事の ことでしょうか。  
それとも 失恋したのか  
もしれません。何か  
言っていましたか。



③ いいえ。彼は もともと 明るい 元気な 青年です。

その うち きっと 元気な 顔を見せるでしょう。

—わたしも そうだろうと 思います。しかし 一度 ゆっ  
くり 話し合った ほうが いいですね。一度 彼の  
所へ いっしょに 行ってみましょう。

④ それは いいかもしれませんね。きっと 喜ぶでしょう。

早い ほうが いいですね。あすは どうですか。

—いいです。それでは わたしが 彼に 連絡します。



語句

- 1 deshō See § 79  
2 ...kamo shirenai it may be that,  
See § 80  
3 doko ka somewhere  
4 yōsu (N) appearance, state of affairs

- 5 hoka (N) other  
6 nayami trouble, worry  
7 ...ni chigai na-i it is certain that...;  
it must be See § 81  
8 okashi-i strange; funny

- 9 shitsuren (Nv) lost love, broken  
heart  
10 akaru-i bright, light; cheerful  
11 seinen young man  
12 sono uchi before long

- 13 mise-ru (Vt) show, let...see  
14 ...darō (Plain style of deshō)  
See § 79  
15 tokoro place  
16 renraku (Nv) contact, get in touch

## Dai 19-ka Kare no Koto

### 1 Kare wa kuru deshō ka?

—Wakarimasen ne. Konai kamo shiremasen. Kono aida kara aoi kao o shite, yoku tsukareta to itte-imashita.

Doko ka karada ga warui no deshō ka? Byōki kamo shiremasen ne.

—Sō kamo shiremasen. Shikashi ano yōsu dewa hoka ni nani ka nayami ga aru ni chigai arimasen.

### 2 Sō desu ne. Chika-goro no kare wa yōsu ga sukoshi okashii desu ne.

Yoku o-sake o nondari, yoru osoku kaettari shite-imasu. Kitto nani ka ga atta ni chigai arimasen.

—Shigoto no koto deshō ka? Soretomo shitsuren-shita no kamo shiremasen. Nani ka itte-imashita ka?

### 3 Iie. Kare wa motomoto akarui genki-na seinen desu. Sono uchi kitto genki-na kao o miseru deshō.

—Watashi mo sō darō to omoimasu. Shikashi ichi-do yukkuri hanashi-atta hō ga ii desu ne. Ichi-do kare no tokoro e issho-ni itte-mimashō.

### 4 Sore wa ii kamo shiremasen ne. Kitto yorokobu deshō. Hayai hō ga ii desu ne. Asu wa dō desu ka?

—Ii desu. Soredewa watashi ga kare ni renraku-shimasu.



▲A back street in Shinjuku

## Lesson 19 A Friend

### 1 I wonder if he will come.

—Who knows? Maybe not. He has looked pale for a while and talks of being tired a lot.

Maybe there is something wrong with him. Maybe he is sick.

—Maybe. But the way he was, I am sure it is something else, that something is troubling him.

### 2 You are right. He has been a little strange lately. He has been drinking a lot and staying out late at night. There must be something wrong.

—I wonder if it could be his work. Or maybe he has fallen out of love. Has he said anything to you?

### 3 No. He has always been a bright and cheerful lad. In time, his face will regain its cheerfulness.

—I think so too. But still, maybe it would be best to sit down and have a long talk with him. Shall we go to his place sometime?

### 4 Maybe that would be a good idea. It would surely cheer him up. The sooner the better. How about tomorrow?

—Fine. I will tell him we are coming.

### ANSWERS (pp. 232, 233)

- I. A. desu, desu B. desu, deshō C. kuru deshō D. ryokō-shinai deshō  
 II. 1. (She will go to the sea tomorrow.) 2. (She will likely go to the sea tomorrow.)  
 3. (It may be that she will go to the sea tomorrow.) 4. (She will surely go to the sea tomorrow.)  
 III. 1. ugokanai 2. omoi 3. benri 4. yunyū-hin  
 IV. 1. noboru 2. iku 3. ikanai 4. ōi 5. miru 6. subarashii 7. samui 8. motte-ikō  
 V. 1. Kare wa kan-ji o yomu koto ga dekimasen kara, kono hon ga wakanai kamo shiremasen. 2. Kare wa Nippon-go de tegami o kaku koto ga dekimasu. Sukunakutomo ichi-nen (wa) benkyō-shita ni chigai arimasen.

## § 79 Expressions of Guessing (1)

The Present forms of Predicates may be used to express the speaker's opinion about what will happen in the future.

e.g. Ashita wa ame desu. 'It will rain tomorrow.'

Tarō wa kyō kimasu. 'Taro will come today.'

When the speaker is less sure, however, the Auxiliary form **-deshō** (**darō** in the Plain style) is added to the Present or Past forms of the Predicates. In the case of 'N/Na/A+desu,' **deshō** replaces **desu**.

N/Na	} <b>deshō.</b>	'I guess....' 'Probably....'
A (present or past)		
V (present or past)		

- e.g. Ashita wa ame deshō. 'I guess it will rain tomorrow.'  
 Ashita wa atsui deshō. 'It will probably be hot tomorrow.'  
 Tarō wa kyō kuru deshō. 'Taro will probably come today.'  
 Hanako wa konai deshō. 'I guess Hanako won't come.'  
 Tarō wa mō kaetta deshō. 'I guess Taro has gone home already.'

Adverbs such as **tabun** and **osoraku**, meaning 'maybe' and 'probably,' often occur with the 'deshō form.'

## § 80 Expressions of Guessing (2)

When the speaker is still less sure, or when he thinks that there is only a slight possibility, the form '**-kamo shiremasen/shirenai**' is used instead of **deshō**.

e.g. Ashita wa ame kamo shiremasen.

'It might rain tomorrow.' 'It might happen that it rains tomorrow.'

Tarō wa kita kamo shiremasen. 'It is possible that Taro came.'

When the sentence ends with **-kamo shiremasen**, adverbs such as **hyotto**

**suru to** or **moshi ka suru to** often precede the Predicate to indicate that the speaker is uncertain about what he is going to state.

e.g. Hyotto suru to ashita wa ame kamo shiremasen.

'It just might rain tomorrow.'

Tarō wa moshi ka suru to kyō konai kamo shiremasen.

'It just might be Taro does not come today.'

## § 81 Expressions of Guessing (3)

On the other hand, if the speaker wants to emphasize that he is quite sure about what he is saying, he may add **-ni chigai arimasen/nai**.

e.g. Ashita wa ame ni chigai arimasen.

'It will rain tomorrow for sure.'

Tarō wa kuru ni chigai arimasen.

'Taro will certainly come.'

The adverb **kitto** is very often used with such Predicates.

e.g. Ashita wa kitto ame ni chigai arimasen.

'I am sure it will rain tomorrow no doubt.'

Kare wa kitto sensei ni chigai arimasen.

'There is no doubt about it that he is a teacher.'

These adverbs, **kitto**, **tabun**, **osoraku**, **hyotto suru to**, and so on, are called 'Modal Adverbs,' because they are in agreement with the speaker's mental attitude. They help the listener to anticipate what the speaker is going to say, which is always expressed by the final form of the sentence.

## I. Complete the sentences using 'desu' or 'deshō.'

A. { Kinō wa Getsu-yōbi deshita.  
Kyō wa Ka-yōbi \_\_\_\_\_.  
Ashita wa Sui-yōbi \_\_\_\_\_.

B. { Kinō wa ame deshita.  
Kyō wa kumori<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
Ashita wa tabun hare \_\_\_\_\_.

C. { Kare wa kinō daigaku e kimashita.  
Ashita mo tabun daigaku e \_\_\_\_\_.

D. { Kare wa kyo-nen no natsu ichi-do mo ryokō-shimasen deshita.  
Kotoshi mo tabun \_\_\_\_\_.

## II. Compare the following sentences.

1. Kanojo wa ashita umi e ikimasu.
2. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku deshō.
3. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku kamo shiremasen.
4. Kanojo wa ashita umi e iku ni chigai arimasen.

## III. Substitute the key words for the underlined parts.

Ex. (operated by hand) A: Kono kikai wa te<sup>2</sup> de ugoku kamo shiremasen.

B: Kono kikai wa te de ugoku ni chigai arimasen.

## 語句

- 1 kumori cloudy weather ←kumor-u (get cloudy)  
2 te hand, arm  
3 ren-kyū consecutive holidays

- 4 ani elder brother cf. ane (elder sister), otōto (younger brother), imōto (younger sister)  
5 kaze o hik-u catch cold

1. (doesn't work)
2. (heavy)
3. (convenient)
4. (imported article)

## IV. Fill in the blanks.

Ashita to asatte wa ren-kyū<sup>3</sup> desu kara, watashi wa ani<sup>4</sup> to Fuji-san ni (1. <sup>climb</sup>) tsumori desu. Chichi mo watashi-tachi to issho-ni (2. <sup>go</sup>) kamo shiremasen. Haha mo yama ga suki desu ga, ima kaze o hiite<sup>5</sup>-imasu kara, tabun (3. <sup>not go</sup>) deshō. Ima wa daigaku mo natsu-yasumi-chū<sup>6</sup> desu kara, doko demo gakusei-tachi ga (4. <sup>many</sup>) to omoimasu. Watashi-tachi wa Fuji-san no chōjō<sup>7</sup> de asa-hi<sup>8</sup> o (5. <sup>see</sup>) tsumori desu. Sono nagame<sup>9</sup> wa kitto (6. <sup>wonderful</sup>) ni chigai arimasen. Fuji-san no chōjō niwa mada yuki ga atte, (7. <sup>cold</sup>) kamo shiremasen kara, sētō o (8. <sup>will bring</sup>) to omoimasu.



## V. Put the following into Japanese.

1. As he cannot read *kanji*, he might not understand this book.
2. He can write a letter in Japanese. He must have studied Japanese for at least<sup>10</sup> a year.

- 6 -chū (N/Adv) during...; in the midst of...  
7 chōjō summit  
8 asa-hi morning sun, rising sun

- 9 nagame view ←nagame-ru (look around)  
10 sukunakutomo at least

## DŌZO KOCHIRA E

Uketsuke wa kochira deshō ka?

—Hai, sō desu.

Kokusai<sup>1</sup>-bu no Maeda<sup>2</sup>-san ni aitai no desu ga.

—Maeda bu-chō<sup>3</sup> de gozaimasu<sup>4</sup> ne.

Shitsurei desu ga, o-kyaku-sama wa nan to osshaimasu<sup>5</sup> ka?

Igirisu no Bureau desu. Yamada-san no shōkai desu ga, bu-chō-san wa go-zonji<sup>6</sup> nai kamo shiremasen.

—Renraku-shite-mimasu. Shibaraku soko ni o-kake ni natte o-machi-kudasai.

(Denwa ni) Kochira uketsuke desu ga, Maeda bu-chō oraremasu<sup>7</sup> ka? Bureau-san to iu kata<sup>8</sup> ga miete<sup>9</sup>-imasu.

O-tōshi<sup>10</sup>-shimashō ka?...

Hai, shōchi<sup>11</sup>-shimashita.

O-matase-shimashita. Bu-chō wa ma-

Is this the reception desk?

—Yes, it is.

I'd like to see Mr. Maeda of the International Division.

—Do you mean Division Chief Maeda? Excuse me, but may I have your name, please?

I'm Mr. Brown from England. I have an introduction from Mr. Yamada, but I don't think Mr. Maeda knows me.

—I'll contact him.

Please be seated for a minute.

(on the phone)

This is the reception desk. Is Mr. Maeda there? A Mr. Brown is here to see you. Shall I send him up?... Yes, sir. I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. Mr. Maeda

will be down shortly. Will you wait in that room, please? Oh, no, I'm sorry. Some people may be using that room. Let me show you to another room. This way, please.

Thank you. Being a receptionist seems to be a busy job, isn't it?

—Well, I don't know.

But it is an important job and we all do our best. This room, please. I'll bring you a cup of tea soon.

Thanks.

mo-naku<sup>12</sup> orite-mairimasu.<sup>13</sup>

Soko no ōsetsu-shitsu<sup>14</sup> de o-machikudasai. Iya, shitsurei-shimashita,<sup>15</sup>

soko wa ima shiyō-chū<sup>16</sup> kamo shiremasen. Betsu<sup>17</sup> no o-heya ni goannai-mōshiagemasu.<sup>18</sup> Dōzo kochira e.

Arigatō. Uketsuke no o-shigoto wa isogashii deshō ne?

—Ē, mā.... Demo, taisetsu-na shigoto desu kara, watashi-domo<sup>19</sup> issō kenmei<sup>20</sup> yatte-orimasu.<sup>21</sup>

Kono heya desu. Dōzo.

Sugu-ni<sup>22</sup> o-cha o o-mochi-shimasu.<sup>23</sup>

Dōmo.

## 語句

- 1 kokusai- international
- 2 Maeda (a family name)
- 3 bu-chō department chief
- 4 ...de gozaimasu (very Polite form of desu)
- 5 ossharu (Honoric form of i-u)
- 6 go-zonji (N) being informed of; acquainted with
- 7 orare-ru (Honoric form of i-ru)
- 8 kata = hito (Polite)
- 9 miete-ru (Honoric form of kuru, i-ru)
- 10 tōs-u let...pass, show in (visitor)
- 11 shōchi (Nv) understand, know, agree
- 12 ma-mo-naku soon, presently
- 13 -te-mairimas-u (Humble

- form of -te-kuru)
- 14 ōsetsu-shitsu drawing/reception room
- 15 Shitsurei-shimashita (Cph; used in apologizing)
- 16 shiyō-chū (N) be occupied, be in use shiyō (Nv) use
- 17 betsu (N) something else, different
- 18 -mōshiagemasu (Humble form of suru)
- 19 watashi-domo we (Humble)
- 20 issō kenmei with all one's might
- 21 or-u = i-ru See § 37
- 22 sugu(-ni) (Adv) soon, immediately
- 23 o-mochi-suru (Polite form of motte-iku/-kuru)

▼Office buildings in Tokyo





## The Japanese Economy

Japan's economic growth rate is the highest in the world, GNP marking a 9.17-fold expansion between 1955 and 1971 to become third-largest in the world, surpassed only by the U.S. and the U.S.S.R. However, per-capita income was still 13th in 1971, prices have shown inflationary annual increases, and the social infrastructure is strikingly inadequate.

While Japanese unemployment is a low 1.2%, working conditions are not so favorable, people averaging a 42-hour week yet earning only ¥66,000 per month before taxes.

Although various social security systems have been provided, they are deficient both qualitatively and quantitatively. For example, social security payments are only 1/4 to 1/5 those of Italy, England, and other nations—and only 1/8 those in West Germany! Even though improvements may be expected, it will be some years before Japan catches up with Sweden or West Germany.

In addition, Japanese economic growth has also been accompanied by the very important problems of pollution generated, but this issue is taken up elsewhere.

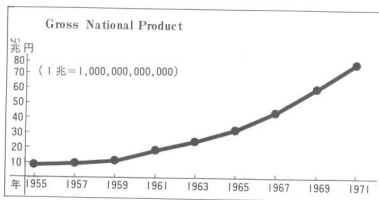
## 経済生活

日本の経済成長率は世界第一位と**言**われている。1971年の国民総生産、GNPは1955年に**比**べて、9.17倍になり、アメリカ、ソ連に**つ**いで、世界第三位である。しかし一人当たりの**所得**は1971年現在、世界第13位である。物価は毎年**上**昇して、インフレの傾向にある。公共施設の**不足**も目立**っ**ている。

日本の失業率は、低く**て**、わずか1.2%であるが、労働条件はあまりよくない。労働時間は平均週42時間ぐら**い**であり、その平均賃金は税金を**ふ**くめて月66,000円ぐら**い**だ。

いろいろな社会保障制度は**一**応あるが、その内容や額は**ま**だ**不**十分である。今、社会保障の一人当たりの給付額はイタリアやイギリスの**1**/**4**から**1**/**5**、西ドイツの**1**/**8**である。今後、社会保障は**も**っと**充**実するだろうが、スウェーデンや西ドイツに**追**いつくまでには、何年もかか**る**に**ち**が**い**ない。

日本はこの経済成長のうらに**も**う**一**つ大きな問題**を**も**っ**ている。それは公害の問題だ。これについては別の章で述べよう。



### 語句

- keizai-seikatsu economic life
- keizai-seichō-ritsu economic growth rate  
seichō (Nv) growth
- kokumin-sō-seisan gross national product (GNP)  
sō- general..., all...
- kurabe-ru compare (with)
- shotoku income
- genzai as of...
- bukka commodity prices
- mai-nen every year
- jōshō (Nv) going up, rise
- infure 'inflation'
- kōkyō-shisetsu public facilities  
kōkyō public  
shisetsu institution, facilities
- fusoku (Nv) shortage
- medats-u stand out, be conspicuous
- shitsugyō (Nv) unemployment
- wazuka (Na) only, no more than
- rōdō-jōken working conditions  
jōken condition
- rōdō-jikan working hours
- heikin (N/Adv) average
- ichiō (N/Adv) to speak tentatively/roughly
- naiyō content
- mada-mada still; not yet (more emphatic than mada)
- fu-jūben (Na) not enough
- kyūfu-gaku delivery, payment  
kyūfu (Nv) payment
- Nishi-Doitsu West Germany  
nishi west
- kongo from now on, in the future
- oitsuk-u overtake, catch up with
- ura back/reverse side  
cf. omote (surface, face)
- shō chapter

## 第 20 課

### わたしの ふるさと

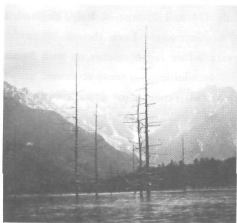
TAPE  
No. 5  
Side 2

① 昨夜、ゆめを 見ました。ふるさとの ゆめです。

わたしの ふるさとは 信州の 小さな 村です。東京へ 出て来たら 仕事が 忙しくて、めったに 帰れません。今年度の 年末には 五年ぶりに 帰る つもりです。

② 信州は 日本アルプスの 山々や 湖など 美しい 景色で 有名です。また そばや

みそが おいしくて よく 知られています。いまでは 全国 どこでも 買えます。先日 も ふるさとの みそが 恋しくて デパートへ 買いに行きました。評判が よくて よく 売れています。と 店員も 言っていました。



▲ Kamikochi in Shinshu

③ わたしの 家から 日本アルプスの 山々が 見えます。

#### 語句

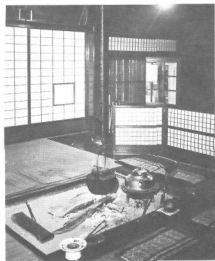
- 1 saku-ya last night  
saku- last... cf. saku-jitsu (yesterday), saku-nen (last year)  
2 Shinshū (a district name)  
3 -e-ru See § 82  
4 nen-matsu (N/Adv) (toward) the end of the year  
-matsu the end of... cf. getsu-matsu  
5 -buri after an interval of..., for the first time in...

- 6 Nihon Arupusu the Japan Alps  
7 soba (a kind of Japanese noodle)  
8 koishi-i that one longs for/misses  
9 hyōban reputation  
10 ure-ru sell (well) See § 83  
11 ten-in attendant, store clerk  
12 mie-ru be visible, can be seen See § 83  
13 naki-goe (sounds of animals in general) cry, whine, call, sing, chirp, twit-

夏は とても すずしくて、ときどき うぐいすの 美しい 鳴き声 が 聞こえます。また すぐ 近くの きれいな 川で 泳げます。冬は たいへん 寒いですが、雪は とても 美しいです。近くで スキーも スケートも できます。冬の 寒い 夜、いろりを かこんで いろいろ 話し合う ことも とても 楽しいです。

④ 父母は どうしているでしょうか。父母の ことが 思い 出されます。何度か 東京見物に さそいましたが、畑の 仕事などが 忙しくて なかなか 出て来られません。

⑤ もう 向こうは かなり 寒いだらうと 思います。雪が 降っているかも知れません。この 冬は 久しぶりに 本場の そばが 食べられます。今から 楽しみです。



▲ An irori

- ter, etc.; crying (sobbing, weeping, etc.) of people  
nak-u weep, cry, whine, call, sing, chirp, etc.  
14 kikoe-ru be audible, can be heard See § 83  
15 suki 'skiing'  
16 sukato 'skating'  
17 irori (a Japanese-style fireplace)  
18 fubo father and mother  
19 nan-do ka several times

- 20 hatake (farm) field  
21 -rare-ru See § 82  
22 hisashi-buri (N) after a long interval  
23 hon-ba (N) the home of, the best place for  
24 tanoshimi pleasure, what one looks forward to → tanoshim-u (enjoy)

## Dai 20-ka Watashi no Furusato

1 Saku-ya, yume o mimashita. Furusato no yume desu.

Watashi no furusato wa Shinshū no chiisa-na mura desu. Tōkyō e dete-kite kara shigoto ga isogashikute, mettani kaeremassen. Kondo no nen-matsu niwa go-nen-buri ni kaeru tsumori desu.

2 Shinshū wa Nihon-*Arupusu* no yama-yama ya mizuumi nado utsukushii keshiki de yūmei desu. Mata soba ya miso ga oishikute yoku shirarete-imasu. Ima dewa zen-koku doko de demo kaemasu. Sen-jitsu mo furusato no miso ga koishikute *depāto* e kai ni ikimashita. Hyōban ga yokute yoku urete-imasu to ten-in mo itte-imashita.

3 Watashi no ie kara Nihon-*Arupusu* no yama-yama ga miemasu. Natsu wa totemo suzushikute, tokidoki uguisu no utsukushii naki-goe ga kikomasu. Mata sugu chikaku no kirei-na kawa de oyogemasu. Fuyu wa taihen samui desu ga, yuki wa totemo utsukushii desu. Chikaku de *suki* mo *sukēto* mo dekimasu. Fuyu no samui yoru, irori o kakonde iroiro hanashi-au koto mo totemo tanoshii desu.

4 Fubo wa dō shite-iru deshō ka. Fubo no koto ga omoi-dasaremasu. Nan-do ka Tōkyō-kenbutsu ni sasoiimashita ga, hatake no shigoto nado ga isogashikute nakanaka dete-koraremasen.

5 Mō mukō wa kanari samui darō to omoimasu. Yuki ga futte-iru kamo shiremasen. Kono fuyu wa hisashi-buri ni hon-ba no soba ga taberaremasu. Ima kara tanoshimi desu.



▶ A farmhouse

## Lesson 20 My Home Town

1 I had a dream last night. It was a dream about my home town. It is a small village in the Shinshu region. I have been so busy with my work since I came to Tokyo that I have not been able to go back very often. I plan to go back this December for the first time in five years.

2 Shinshu is famous for the beautiful scenery of the mountains and lakes of the Japan Alps. It is also well-known for its delicious *soba* and *miso*. Now you can buy them anywhere in Japan. The other day I was longing for some *miso* from Shinshu and went to a department store to buy it. The clerk said it is very popular and sells well.

3 I can see the Japan Alps from my home. The summers are very cool and we can sometimes hear the nightingale's beautiful song. We can also swim in a clear river nearby. The winters are very cold, but the snow is just beautiful. We can ski and skate nearby. During the cold winter nights, it is great fun to gather around the hearth and talk.

4 I wonder how my parents are. I often think about them. I have invited them to come sight-seeing in Tokyo several times, but they are too busy with farming and everything to get away easily.

5 It is probably rather cold in Shinshu already. There may even be snow. This winter I will be able to enjoy real *soba* for the first time in many years. I am looking forward to it already.

### ANSWERS <pp. 244, 245>

1. Anata wa *Supein-go* ga hanasemasu ka? 2. ...*viski* ga nomemasu ka? 3. ...mō is-shū-kan matemasu ka? 4. ...ie ga kaemasu ka? 5. ...sashimi ga taberaremasu ka? 6. ...asa hayaku okiraremasu ka? 7. ...Nippon-go de denwa ga kakeraremasu ka? 8. ...kuruma ga unten dekimasu ka? 9. ...kaigi ni shusseki-dekimasu ka? 10. ...mō ichi-do koko e koraremasu ka?
- III. 1. noremassen deshita 2. tsukemasen deshita 3. kikoemasu 4. dekimasen 5. miemasu 6. mieru 7. miemasen
- IV. 1. "Koko wa dōro no jidōsha no oto ga kikoemasen ka?" "Hai. Kono heya wa taihen shizuka desu kara, yoku benkyō-dekimasu." 2. Kinshi desu kara, kokuban no ji ga miemasen. 3. Kono hon wa taihen yoku urete-ite, kotoshi no *besuto-serā* no hito-tsu desu.

## § 82 Expressions of Ability

As has already been noted, the idea 'someone can do (is able to do) something,' can be expressed with the pattern: (§ 66)

X wa (N O) V (Dict. form) koto ga dekimasu.

This pattern can be simplified by using what is called the 'Potential form' of the Verb.

X wa  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} V\text{-}(Stem) (1st\ Group) \text{-}e\text{-} \\ V\text{-}(Stem) (2nd\ Group) \text{-}rare\text{-} \end{array} \right\}$  masu.

e.g. Watashi wa shinbun o yomu koto ga dekimasu. 'I can read the paper.'  
→Watashi wa shinbun ga yom-**e**-masu.

Anata wa Ei-go o oshieru koto ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you teach English?'  
→Anata wa Ei-go ga oshie-**rare**-masu ka?

The Irregular Verb suru becomes dekiru.

e.g. Anata wa unten-suru koto ga dekimasu ka? 'Can you drive?'  
→Anata wa unten dekimasu ka?

The other Irregular Verb kuru changes to either **koreru** or **korareru**.

e.g. Anata wa ashita hito-ri de koko e koremasu/koraremasu ka?  
'Can you come here tomorrow by yourself?'

NB: (1) The Potential form of Verbs is inflected just like 2nd Group Verbs.

(2) When a Verb takes the Potential form, it gains an Adjective-like quality, so that the (original) object of the Verb (e.g. *shinbun* in the first example above) becomes the Subject of the Predicate, taking the Particle *ga*, instead of *o*, as seen in above examples.

cf. 'I can read the paper.' → 'The paper is *readable*.'

## § 83 Expressions of 'Spontaneity'

Expressions in English such as 'I can see Mt. Fuji from my window,' 'Can you hear me?' (over the telephone), or 'Do you understand this?' often appear in Japanese as 'Mt. Fuji is visible from my window.' 'Is my voice audible?' 'Is this understandable?' (or, 'Is this clear?'). The forms of the verbs used here are the same as the Potential forms, with a few exceptions as shown below. They are called the 'Spontaneous forms,' as distinct from the Potential forms, because they do not mean that something (Mt. Fuji or the voice in the above examples) has a certain ability to do something, but rather that such came about spontaneously, or that something has such and such innate property.

One of the striking differences between Japanese and English is that in expressions involving feeling (like, dislike, hate, etc.), perception (see, hear, smell, etc.), or conception (think, regard, etc.), Japanese prefers expressing as 'subject' what is usually expressed as 'object' in English. Some examples have already come up.

Compare the following English and Japanese expressions.

'I love you.' Anata ga suki desu.

'I want coffee.' *Kōhi* ga hoshii desu.

'I need a million yen now.' (Watashi wa) ima hyaku-man-en irimasu.

'Can you teach English?' (Anata wa) Ei-go ga oshieraremasu ka?

'We can see Mt. Fuji clearly today.' Kyō wa Fuji-san ga yoku miemasu.

'Can you hear me?' (Watashi no koe ga) kikoemasu ka?

Compare also such expressions as the following.

'This book sells well.' Kono hon wa yoku uremasu.

'This knife doesn't cut well.' Kono *naifu* wa yoku kiremasen.

'Do you understand this?' Kore ga wakarimasu ka?

I. Make questions and answers with the key phrases as shown in the example.

Ex. (write *kanji*) Q: Anata wa kan-ji ga kakemasu ka?

A: Hai, kakemasu. (or, lie, kakemasen.)

- (speak Spanish)
- (drink whisky)
- (wait another week)
- (buy a house)
- (eat *sashimi*)
- (get up early in the morning)
- (make a telephone call in Japanese)
- (drive a car)
- (attend<sup>1</sup> the meeting)
- (come here once again)

II. Answer the following questions.

- Anata wa *gita*<sup>2</sup> ga hikemasu ka?
- Anata wa *taipu* ga utemasu ka?
- Anata wa saikin yoku nemuremasu ka?
- Anata wa kan-ji ga iku-tsu gurai yomemasu ka?
- Anata wa hyaku-*mētoru* o jū-byō<sup>3</sup> inai<sup>4</sup> de hashiremasu ka?
- Anata wa *rajio* no shūri ga dekimasu ka?
- Anata wa nan-*mētoru* gurai oyogemasu ka?

## 語句

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>shusseki</i> (Nv) attendance, presence | 5 <i>itsumo no</i> usual, as always |
| 2 <i>gita</i> 'guitar'                      | 6 <i>uta-goe</i> singing voice      |
| 3 -byō second(s)                            | 7 <i>oto</i> sound                  |
| 4 ...inai within...                         | 8 <i>hiru-yasumi</i> lunch break    |

III. Fill in the blanks.

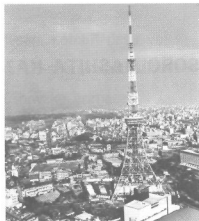
Watashi no kaisha wa Tōkyō no kōgai ni arimasu. Watashi no ie kara kaisha made *basu* de san-jup-pun gurai desu. Shikashi, kesa wa ku-ji goro ni okimashita kara, itsumo no<sup>5</sup> *basu* ni (1. could not board). Sukoshi aruite, densha ni norimashita. Shikashi, itsumo no jikan niwa (2. could not arrive).

Kaisha no chikaku ni ongaku-gakkō ga atte, itsumo kirei-na uta-goe<sup>6</sup> ya *piano*

no oto<sup>7</sup> ga (3. can be heard). Hiru-yasumi<sup>8</sup> niwa *biru* no okujō<sup>9</sup> e ikimasu. Soko dewa wakai hito-tachi ga *barē-bōru* o shite-imasu. Watashi wa *barē-bōru* ga (4. cannot play) kara, tomodachi to hanashitari, atari no keshiki o nagame-tari<sup>10</sup> shimasu. *Biru* no okujō kara wa Tōkyō-tōwā<sup>11</sup> ga yoku (5. can be seen). Fuji-san ga (6. can be seen) koto ga arimasu. Shikashi, kumori no hi ya ame no hi niwa dochira mo (7. cannot be seen).

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

- "Don't you hear (the noise of) the cars in the street here?"  
"No. It is very quiet in this room. I can study well."
- Being near-sighted,<sup>12</sup> I cannot see (the writing<sup>13</sup> on) the blackboard.
- This book is selling very well; and is one of this year's best sellers.<sup>14</sup>



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 9 <i>okujō</i> roof (topmost floor) of a building | 12 <i>kinshi</i> =kin-gan (N) near-sighted  |
| 10 <i>nagame-ru</i> look at, view                 | 13 <i>ji</i> letter, character, handwriting |
| 11 <i>tōwā</i> 'tower'                            | 14 <i>besūto-sērā</i> 'best seller'         |

## SOROIMASHITA KA?

- A: Mō minna soroimashita<sup>1</sup> ka?  
Shuppatsu-dekimasu ka?
- B: Iie, Kobayashi<sup>2</sup>-san to Yamada-san ga mada desu.
- A: Iya, Yamada-san wa kyūyō<sup>3</sup> de korarenai to denwa ga arimashita.
- B: Suruto,<sup>4</sup> ato wa Kobayashi-san dake desu ne?
- C: Kare wa jikan ni rōzu<sup>5</sup> da kara, okureru kamo shiremasen ne.
- B: Densha wa nan-ji ni demasu ka?
- A: Hachi-ji ni-jū-go-fun ni demasu. Daijōbu desu, mada jikan wa arimasu yo.
- C: Kyō wa yukkuri to Chūzenji-ko<sup>6</sup> ga miraremasu ka ne?
- A: Chūzenji-ko to Kegan-no-taki<sup>7</sup> o mawatte, roku-ji niwa ryokan ni tsukemasu. Yuttari-shita<sup>8</sup> sukejūru desu.

- A: Are we all here now?  
Can we get started?
- B: No, Mr. Kobayashi and Mr. Yamada are not here yet.
- A: Mr. Yamada phoned to say that something has come up suddenly making it impossible for him to come.
- B: Then, that leaves only Mr. Kobayashi.
- C: He's very careless about time, so he may be late.
- B: What time does the train leave?
- A: It leaves at 8:25. It's all right, we still have time.
- C: Can we take our time seeing Lake Chuzenji today?
- A: After looking round Lake Chuzenji and Kegan Falls, we can get to the inn by six o'clock. This is a leisurely schedule.

## 語句

- 1 soro-u complete preparations (in the sense of having everyone/everything needed ready)
- 2 Kobayashi (a family name)
- 3 kyūyō urgent business
- 4 suruto then
- 5 rōzu 'loose'
- 6 Chūzenji-ko Lake Chuzenji
- 7 Kegan-no-Taki Kegan Falls
- 8 yuttari-shita (+N)

- B: Ah, there he is! Mr. Kobayashi has arrived. Kobayashi! Over here!
- K: Sorry to be late. No excuse for it. I thought I might not get here in time, so I came by taxi.
- B: In your haste, are you sure you didn't forget anything?
- K: There's nothing to worry about. I got everything ready before I went to bed last night.
- A: Now that everyone's here, we have to hurry. I'm afraid we might miss the train.

- B: Ā, kita! Kobayashi-san ga kimashita yo.  
Kobayashi-san, kotchi<sup>9</sup> desu yo!
- K: Iyā..., okurete-shimaimashita.<sup>10</sup>  
Dōmo mōshiwake arimasen.<sup>11</sup>  
Ma ni awana<sup>12</sup> ka to omotte, takushi de kimashita.
- B: Sonna-ni awatete,<sup>13</sup> wasure-mono<sup>14</sup> wa arimasen ka?
- K: Sore wa shinpai irimasen.  
Saku-ya junbi-shite kara nemashita kara.
- A: Sā, kore de zen'in<sup>15</sup> soroimashita.  
Sukoshi isoganakereba<sup>16</sup> narimasen.  
Ressha ni norenai kamo shiremasen yo.



- without squeezing
- 9 kotchi (this way; here cf. atchi (that way), dotchi (which way, where))
- 10 -te-shima-u See § 88
- 11 mōshiwake na-i inexcusable, unpardonable
- 12 ma ni a-u be in time
- 13 awate-ru make haste, rush, hurry, be frantic
- 14 wasure-mono something left behind
- 15 zen'in all the members
- 16 isog-u hurry

## 日本の 芸能

お正月です。 笛や 太鼓の音が聞こ

えてきます。あれは「しし舞」です。

ししは 普通の ライオンの ことで、

このような おどりは アジアの 各地で

見られます。日本では、昔の 人が この

おどりで 田畑から しみや いのししを 追い出しました。

日本の 農村では、昔から 田の 神をまつて、おどりました。その

おどりは「田楽」と言われました。千年ほど前、朝鮮から アジア大

陸の音楽が 伝えられました。それを「散楽」と言います。それが

「猿楽」となり、これと 田楽から「能」が できました。

十四世紀ごろ 世阿弥という 人が「花伝書」を 書き、能の 理論を

完成しました。能では「幽玄」という ことばがよく 使われます。

たとえば、世阿弥は「岩に 花が 咲く。それが 幽玄だ。」と 言ってい

ます。あなたの 心の 目に 幽玄の 花が 見えませんか。

「狂言」は 短い 劇で、こっけいな ものが 多く、普通は 能の 間に

上演されますが、それだけでも 上演できます。

「文楽」は 散楽の 中の 人形劇です。十六世紀の 中ごろから 28 年

かわって 三味線が 伴奏に 使われました。十八世紀ごろ 近松という、

人気作家が 出て、文楽が 民衆に 愛されました。

「歌舞伎」は、十七世紀ごろ 出雲の お国という 女が 京都で 人々に

見せ、たいへん 評判になりました。江戸時代、能は 武士の 芸術、

歌舞伎は 町人の 芸術と され、武士は 表向きには 歌舞伎を 見に

行けませんでした。



▲No

## Japanese Arts

The sound of drums and flutes at New Year's signals the coming of the "lion dance." Common throughout Asia, "lion dances" were once performed in Japan to drive deer and wild boar from the fields. Farmers in ancient times also had the *Dengaku* festival dedicated to the god of the rice paddies. In addition, there was the *Sangaku* music introduced from the Asian mainland by way of Korea some 1,000 years ago. This later became *Sarugaku*, and it is the combination of these two, *Dengaku* and *Sarugaku*, which gave birth to *No*.

The ideals of *No* were set forth in a book called *Kadencho* written by Zeami around the 14th century, and one of the words commonly used to express this esthetic is *yugen*. For example, Zeami wrote "A flower blooms upon a rock. This is *yugen*." Can you picture this fanciful flower?

*Kyogen* are short, usually comical, plays. Although typically performed between *No* segments, they can also be played alone.

*Bunraku* is a puppet theater form within the *Sangaku* tradition. After *shamisen* replaced *biwa* accompaniment in the mid-16th century, *Bunraku* became popular with the masses in the 18th century with the emergence of the playwright Chikamatsu.

*Kabuki* was acclaimed in the 17th century when an actress named Okuni from Izumo performed in Kyoto. Still, *No* was theater for the *samurai* and *Kabuki* was for the common man, *samurai* not openly attending *Kabuki* performances.

### 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 geinō performing arts, entertainment                         | 21 iwa rock   |
| 2 fue flute  | 22 me eye   |
| 3 taiko drum   | 23 Kyōgen (an interlude comedy)   |
| 4 shishi-mai lion dance mai dance                              | 24 kokkei (Na) funny, humorous  |
| 5 shion 'lion'   | 25 jōen (Nv) put on (a show)  |
| 6 Ajiō 'Asia'  | 26 Bunraku (a puppet drama)   |
| 7 kaku-chi each place, every part of the country               | 27 ningyō-geki puppet play  |
| kaku- each cf. sekai-kak-koku (each/every nation in the world) | 28 biwa (a traditional musical instrument)  |
| 8 ta-hata rice paddies and vegetable fields ta rice field      | 29 ...ni kawatte taking the place of...   |
| 9 inoshishi wild boar  | 30 shamisen (a traditional musical instrument)  |
| 10 nō-son agricultural village cf. gyo-son (fishing village)   | 31 bansō (Nv) accompaniment   |
| 11 matsu-ur enshrine, deity                                    | 32 Chikamatsu (1653-1724)   |
| 12 Dengaku (a traditional dance)                               | 33 ninki-sak-ka popular writer  |
| 13 Ajiō-tairiku Asian Continent                                | 34 minshū people, general public; common people   |
| 14 Sangaku (a traditional dance)                               | 35 ai (Nv) love   |
| 15 Sarugaku (a traditional dance)                              | 36 Izumo no Okuni (?-1607)  |
| 16 Nō-(gaku) No theater  | 37 Edo-jidai Edo Period (1603-1867) Edo (the old name for Tokyo)  |
| 17 Zeami (founder of No; 1363-1443)                            | 38 chōnin townsman (in Edo Period)  |
| 18 Kaden-sho (title of a book)                                 | 39 omote-muki (N) officially, on the surface (implying that the real state of affairs is hidden behind) |
| 19 kansei (Nv) complete  |   |
| 20 yūgen (N) subtle and profound                               |   |

## 第 21 課

### 久しぶりの訪問

TAPE  
No. 6  
Side 1

- ① 先日 久しぶりに友人の山口さんをたずねました。  
彼は小説を書いています、まだあまり有名ではありません。彼の家は郊外の団地にあります。
- ② 彼は音楽がたいへん好きですから、レコードを持って行きました。ドボルザークの「新世界より」です。彼はドボルザークがとても好きです。
- ③ 彼は仕事ちゅうはいつもドアにかぎをかけておきます。そこで、前もって電話をしておきました。  
雨上がりでしたから、団地のどの家のベランダにもかさやせんたく物がほしてありました。
- ④ 彼は久しぶりの訪問をとても喜んでいました。「好きなレコードを持って来てくれてありがとう。」と言いました。机の上には本やペンや原稿用紙がいっぱい置いてありました。彼はきょうじゅうに原稿を書いてしまわなければならないと言いながらさっそくウイスキーを出してきました。わたしは「だいじょうぶかい、仕事をしってしまったほうがいいんじゃないか。きょうはもうすぐ

帰るよ。」と言いましたが、彼は「だいじょうぶだ。もうほとんどできている。」と言って引き止めました。

- ⑤ 彼はもう何日も人と会わずに仕事をしていたからでしょうか、小説のこと、音楽のことなどを夢中になってしゃべりました。彼は「おなかがすいてきたね。ご飯にしようか。」と言いましたが、仕事のじゃまになってはいけないので、断って帰って来ました。帰りに、彼は今度の小説は自信があるから、ぜひ読んでみってくれと言いました。



▲An apartment complex in Tokyo

#### 語句

- 1 Yamaguchi (a family name) kagi o kake-ru lock (V)  
2 danchi large (apartment) complex 7 -te-ok-u See § 85  
3 Doboruzéku 'Dvořák' 8 mae-motte in advance, beforehand  
4 Shin-sekai yori 'From the New World' 9 ame-agari (N) after the rain  
5 shigoto-chū (N) at work, while working \*ame ga agar-u (it stops raining)  
6 kagi key, lock 10 dono...mo every...  
11 beranda 'verandah'

- 12 sentaku-mono washing, laundry  
13 hos-u (VI) dry (in the sun)  
14 -te-aru See § 84  
15 genkō-yōshi manuscript paper  
genkō manuscript  
16 ja =dewa (Colloquial)

- 17 hiki-tome-ru ask someone to stay  
18 muchū (N) utter absorption  
19 shaber-u chatter; talk  
20 jama ni nar-u be in the way  
21 kotowar-u refuse, decline; warn  
22 jishin self-confidence



## Dai 21-ka Hisashi-buri no Hōmon

1 Sen-jitsu hisashi-buri ni yūjin no Yamaguchi-san o tazunemashita. Kare wa shōsetsu o kaite-imasu ga, mada amari yūmei dewa arimasen. Kare no ie wa kōgai no danchi ni arimasu.

2 Kare wa ongaku ga taihen suki desu kara, rekōdo o motte-ikimashita. Doboruzāku no “Shin-sekai yori” desu. Kare wa Doboruzāku ga totemo suki desu.

3 Kare wa shigoto-chū wa itsumo doa ni kagi o kakete-okimasu. Sokode, mae-motte denwa o shite-okimashita.

Ame-agari deshita kara, danchi no dono ie no beranda nimo kasa ya sentaku-mono ga hoshite-arimashita.

4 Kare wa hisashi-buri no hōmon o totemo yorokonde-imashita. “Suki-na rekōdo o motte-kite-kurete arigatō.” to iimashita. Tsukue no ue niwa hon ya pen ya genkō-yōshi ga ippai oite-arimashita. Kare wa kyō-jū ni genkō o kaite-shimawanakereba naranai to iinagara sassoku uisuki o dashite-kimashita. Watashi wa “Daijōbu kai? Shigoto o shite-shimatta hō ga ii n ja nai ka? Kyō wa mō sugu kaeru yo.” to iimashita ga, kare wa “Daijōbu da. Mō hotondo dekite-iru.” to itte hiki-tomemashita.

5 Kare wa mō nan-nichi mo hito to awanaide shigoto o shite-ita kara deshō ka, shōsetsu no koto, ongaku no koto nado o muchū ni natte shaberimashita. Kare wa “Onaka ga suite-kita ne. Gohan ni shiyō ka?” to iimashita ga, shigoto no jama ni natte wa ikenai node, kotowatte kaette-kimashita. Kaeri ni, kare wa kondo no shōsetsu wa jishin ga aru kara, zehi yonde-mite-kure to iimashita.

## Lesson 21 A Visit to a Friend

1 I visited my friend Yamaguchi the other day for the first time in a long time. He is a novelist, but he is not very well known yet. He lives in a housing development in the suburbs.

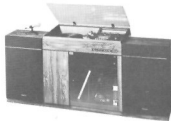
2 Since he is very fond of music, I took him a record. It was Dvořák's *New World*. He likes Dvořák a lot.

3 He always keeps the door locked when he is working. So I had called ahead to tell him I was coming.

Since it had just rained, all of the verandahs had umbrellas and wash hanging out to dry.

4 He was very pleased at having me visit. “Thank you for bringing me this good record,” he said. His desk was covered with books, pens, manuscript paper, and the like. He said he had to finish writing something by tomorrow, but while saying that, he got out a bottle of whisky for us. I said, “Is it okay? Shouldn't you finish your work? I won't stay very long today.” but he stayed me with “It's all right. It's almost finished.”

5 Maybe it was because he had been working for days without talking with anyone. He talked nonstop about novels, music, and everything. Although he said he was hungry and suggested we eat, I turned down the offer and came home because I didn't want to keep him from his work too long. As I was leaving, he told me he had confidence in the story he was writing and told me to be sure to read it.



### ANSWERS (pp. 256, 257)

I. 1. tabete-shimaimashita 2. kaite-shimaimashita 3. benkyō o shite-shimaimashita 4. shirabete-shimaimashita 5. tsukatte-shimaimashita

IV. 1. B: motte-iki A: motte-ika 2. B: tabete-iki 3. A: tsurete-ike B: tsurete-itte

V. 1. katte-kite 2. tsurete-ki 3. yonde-ki

VI. 1. kimashita 2. kimashita 3. ikimasu 4. ikimasu 5. kimashita

## § 84 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (1)

V-te-aru (V: active, transitive)

This form indicates that something is in a certain state, but it is different from other stative expressions in that this implies that the state has been brought about by an unidentified person.

e.g. *Doa ni kagi ga kakete-arimasu.* 'The door is locked.'

(Almost synonymous with '*Doa ni kagi ga kakatte-imasu.*')

In addition this pattern often involves the meaning of being ready.

e.g. *Heya ga totte-arimasu.* (toru 'take')

'There is a room reserved.'

## § 85 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (2)

V-te-oku (V: active, transitive or intransitive)

This means 'to put or leave something in a certain state' with the implication that the action is intended as preparation for some future use or occasion.

e.g. *Denki o tsukete-okimashō.*

'Let's leave the light on (because we are coming back soon, etc).'

*Denwa o kakete-oita hō ga ii desu.* 'You'd better call (ahead).'

## § 86 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (3)

V-te-iku 'do...and go' or 'go...ing'

e.g. *Gohan o tabete-ikimashō.* 'Let's finish lunch and then go.'

*Kodomo wa hashitte-ikimashita.* 'The child went running.'

## § 87 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (4)

V-te-kuru

(1) 'do...and come' or 'come ...-ing'

e.g. *Gohan o tabete-kimashita.* 'I ate before I came.'

*Kamera o motte-kite-kudasai.* 'Please bring your camera.'

(2) Event in progress—toward the speaker:

e.g. *Samuku natte-kimashita ne.* 'It's gotten colder, hasn't it?'

## § 88 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (5)

V-te-shima(w)u 'bring an action (V) to an end' or 'finish...'

e.g. *Ano hon o yonde-shimaimashita ka?* 'Have you finished the book?'

NB: This form is used mainly to emphasize, in one way or another, the completion of an action or event, the effect varying depending upon the form (Past, Imperative, Volitional, etc.) and the context.

e.g. *Baka-na koto o itte-shimatta.* 'I have said a foolish thing.'

*Hayaku tabete-shimai-nasai.* 'Come on. Finish up (eating) quickly!'

*Kyō-jū ni kono shigoto o shite-shimao.*

'Let's finish this work today.'

## § 89 V-te + Auxiliary Verbs (6)

V-te-miru 'do...and see (how it will turn out)' or 'try ...ing and see'

e.g. *Ichi-dō haite-mite-kudasai.* 'Please try them on (and see if they fit).'

*Yamada-san wa uchi ni iru deshō ka?* 'I wonder if Yamada's at home.'

—*Sā...Denwa o kakete-mimashō.*

'Who knows? Why don't we call him up (and find out)?'

I. Make questions and answers with the key phrases using 'te-shimau' as shown in the example.

Ex. (kono hon o yomu)

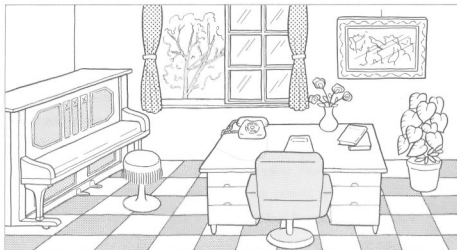
Q: Anata wa mō kono hon o yonde-shimaimashita ka?

A: Hai, mō yonde-shimaimashita.  
(or lie, mada desu.)

- (hiru-gohan o taberu)
- (ronbun o kaku)
- (shiken no benkyō o suru)
- (mondai o shiraberu<sup>1</sup>)
- (o-kane o tsukau)

II. Describe the interior of the room using 'te-aru' as shown in the example.

Ex. Mado ga akete-arimasu.



III. Using the picture above, make dialogs with 'te-OKU' as shown in the example.

Ex. Q: Mado o akete-okimashō ka?

A: Hai, akete-oite-kudasai. (or lie, akete-okanaide-kudasai.)

語句

- 1 shirabe-ru examine, investigate,  
check  
2 dōbutsu-en zoo

- dōbutsu animal cf. shokubutsu  
(plants)  
3 hito-hako one box/package

IV. Practice the following dialogs adding the appropriate 'te-iku' forms.

1. A: Ashita yama e ikimashō.

B: Kamera o ( )mashō ka?

A: Iie, kamera wa ( )nai hō ga ii deshō.

2. A: Ima kara Nara e ikimasu ga, mukō ni tsuite kara hiru-gohan o tabe-mashō ka?

B: Iya, koko de ( )mashō.

3. A: Watashi no kodomo wa dōbutsu-en<sup>2</sup> e ikitagatte-imasu ga, watashi wa isogashikute ( )masen.

B: Soredewa, watashi ga ( )agemashō.

V. Complete the sentences using the appropriate forms of 'te-kuru.'

1. Tabako-ya e itte, tabako o hito-hako<sup>3</sup> ( )-kudasai.

2. Kanojo wa pāti ni kodomo o ( )mashita.

3. Haha ga byōki desu kara, watashi wa isha o ( )masu.

VI. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of 'kuru' or 'iku.'

1. Higashi no sora ga akaruku-natte-( ).

2. Ame ga futte-( ).

3. Niji<sup>4</sup> ga dandan kiete<sup>5</sup>-( ).

4. Kokoro to kokoro ga hanarete-( ).

5. Kare no kangae<sup>6</sup> ga wakatte-( ).

4 niiji rainbow

5 kie-ru disappear

6 kangae thought, idea ←kangae-ru

## NOKOSHITE-OKITAI

—Kore ga Kyōto no Minami-za<sup>1</sup> desu.  
Takusan no kanban<sup>2</sup> ga kakete<sup>3</sup>-arimasu  
ne.

—Ē, yakusha<sup>4</sup> no namae ga kaite-ari-  
masu. 'Maneki'<sup>5</sup> to iimasu.  
Sā, hairimashō.

Kippu o katte-kimashō ka?

—Iya, kippu wa mō katte-arimasu.  
Kono mae Kyōto e kita toki ni  
katte-okimashita.

Sono hi niwa nakanaka kaemasen.  
Sore wa arigatai...

—Dō desu, omoshirokatta desu ka?

Ē, taihen omoshirokatta desu ga, kotoba  
ga wakarimasen deshita.

—Kotoba wa Nippon-jin nimo nakanaka  
wakari-nikui<sup>6</sup> desu yo.

Wakai hito wa amari mi ni ikimasen.

—This is the Kyoto  
Minami-za Theater.

There sure are a lot of  
signboards hanging out-  
side.

—Yes, the names of the  
actors are written on  
them.

They're called "maneki."  
Let's go in.

Shall I get the tickets?

—No, I already have our  
tickets. I bought them  
the last time I came to  
Kyoto.

It's quite difficult to buy  
same-day tickets.

That's very nice of you.

—How did you like it?  
Interesting?

Yes, it was very interest-  
ing, although I didn't  
understand the words.

—The language is difficult  
for Japanese too. Young  
people don't go to see  
it very often.

## 語句

1 Minami-za (the name of  
the *Kabuki* theater in  
Kyoto)

-za .. theater

2 kanban signboard, adver-  
tising billboards

3 kake-ru hang

4 yakusha actor

5 Maneki billboards ←  
manek-u (invite)

6 -nikui difficult to...

You're right. There were  
a lot of old people there.

—If this continues, *Kabuki*  
may die out. I'd like to  
see this preserved.

Are *No* and *Kyogen* in  
the same state?

—They're dying out, too.  
It's regrettable that the  
traditional arts of Japan  
are perishing, isn't it?

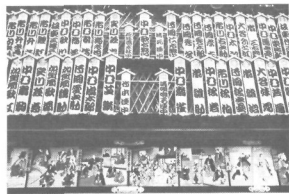
Sō desu ne. O-toshiyori<sup>7</sup> ga ōkatta desu  
ne.

—Kabuki mo kono-mama dewa  
horonde<sup>8</sup>-shimau kamo shiremasen.  
Nokoshite<sup>9</sup>-okitai desu.

Nō ya Kyōgen mo onaji desu ka?

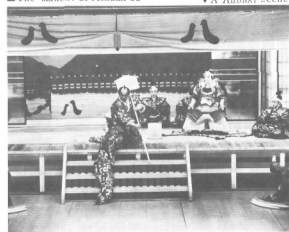
—Onaji yō-ni sutarete<sup>10</sup>-imasu.

Nippon no koten<sup>11</sup>-geijutsu ga  
nakunatte-iku no wa zannen desu ne.



▲ The maneki at Minami-za

▼ A Kabuki scene



7 toshiyori (N) old (per-  
son)

8 horob-u =horobi-ru (Vi)  
cease to exist, decline,  
decay

9 nokos-u (Vt) leave  
behind, preserve  
cf. nokor-u (Vi)

10 sutare-ru go out of use,  
die out, decline

11 koten classics

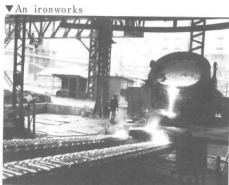
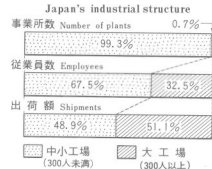
企 業

日本は、大企業がふえてきたが、まだまだ中小企業が多い。事業所総数の約99%が、従業員300人未満の中小企業である。逆に、従業員1,000人以上の大企業は、全体の0.2%ぐらいいかない。従業員数では、中小企業が全体の67%以上を占めている。一般に、中小企業は、大企業に比べて、労働条件が悪く、生産性も低い。大企業は、部品などを賃金の安い中小企業に下請けさせている。

一方、鉄鋼産業や自動車産業、電機産業などの中には、世界有数の大企業もあつた。三井、三菱、住友、安田などの戦前の財閥も依然として、主要な位置を占め、多くの産業部門に、それぞれの系列会社を持っている。

明治以来、資本主義の発展が非常に急速だった。国家の保護が、急速な発展の要因だったと言える。このような政策が、日本経済の中に、二重構造をもたらし、大企業と中小企業の格差を拡大してきた。

現在、日本の企業は、国営、公営、私営に分けられる。日本国有鉄道(国鉄)、たばこなどの専売事業、国有林業などは、国営である。地下鉄、市電、市バスなどは公営で、あとは私営である。また、会社事業の中では、株式会社組織のものがいちばん多い。



Although large-scale industries have expanded, most of Japanese industry is still small, approximately 99% of all places of work employing fewer than 300 people. By contrast, industries employing 1,000 or more account for only 0.2% of the total. Thus small business employs more than 67% of the working population. Generally, labor conditions are worse and productivity is lower in small businesses. Yet the major companies subcontract the manufacture of parts etc. to these smaller companies where wages are lower.

At the same time, Japanese steel, automobile, electrical equipment, and other companies are among the world's leaders. The prewar Mitsui, Mitsubishi, Sumitomo, Yasuda, and other zaibatsu groups are still important and still have their affiliates throughout the industrial structure.

Spurred on by state protections, Japanese capitalism has grown rapidly since the Meiji Restoration, yet these policies have induced a dual structure with increasing disparities between large and small companies.

Japanese industry includes such state-run enterprises as the Japanese National Railways, the Japan Monopoly Corporation, and the national forest services; public-operated utilities such as subways, streetcars, buses, and others; and all the rest private enterprises, most of them joint-stock companies.

語句

- 1 dai-kigyō big business
- 2 chūshō-kigyō small- and medium-size business
- 3 jigyō-sho place of business
- 4 sō-sū the total number
- 5 sū-in the number of...
- 6 jūgyō-in employee, worker
- 7 gyaku (N) reverse
- 8 ...ni kurabete as compared with
- 9 seisan-sei productivity
- 10 buhin parts of a machine
- 11 shita-uke subcontract
- 12 tekkō iron and steel
- 13 sekai-yūsū among the greatest in the world
- 14, 15, 16, 17 Mitsui, Mitsubishi, Sumitomo, Yasuda (names of zaibatsu groups)
- 18 sen-zen (N/Adv) prewar time cf. sen-go (postwar time)
- 19 zaibatsu gigantic business concerns, capital cliques
- 20 izen to shite still, as it used to be
- 21 shuyō=omo (Na) main
- 22 ichi position
- 23 bunon field, section
- 24 keiretsu-gaisha member company of a big business group
- 25 Meiji (name of an Emperor [1852-1912] and era [1868-1912])
- 26 ...irai since...
- 27 shihon-shugi capitalism
- 28 kokka nation, state
- 29 yōin main factor/cause
- 30 ni-jū-kōzō dual structure
- 31 motaras-u bring about
- 32 kakusa difference
- 33 kudai (Nv) expansion, enlarging
- 34 koku-ei (N) government-operated
- 35 kō-ei (N) public-operated
- 36 shi-ei (N) privately operated
- 37 wake-ru classify; divide, distribute
- 38 Nippon-kokuyū-tetsudō=Koku-tetsu Japanese National Railways
- 39 senbai-jigyō monopoly business
- 40 ringyō forestry
- 41 shi-den city streetcar
- 42 shi-bōsu city bus
- 43 kabushiki-gaisha joint-stock company
- 44 soshiki organization, system

第 22 課  
冬の手紙

TAPE  
No. 6  
Side 1

- ① だんだん 寒く なってきましたが、その後 お変わり  
ありませんか。わたしは かぜを ひいてしまいました。毎  
朝の 出勤が とても つらいです。あなたも 奥さんも 気  
をつけてください。
- ② 先日は 突然 おじゃまして ご迷惑を かけました。久  
しぶりでしたので、つい ゆっくりしてしまいました。奥さ  
んにも 親切に してもらって たいへん うれしかったです。
- ③ もう 三か月で あなたも 一兄の 父親に なりますね。  
何かと たいへんでしょうが、家庭が いっそう 楽しく に  
ぎやかに なるでしょうね。
- ④ あの 夜 帰り道 少し お酒に よっていたので、川べ  
りを ぶらぶら 歩きました。風が ヒューヒューと 吹い  
ていましたが、あまり 寒く 感じませんでした。それは  
お酒の せいばかりではなくて、あなたがたの ことが ほの  
ぼのと むねの 中に あったからでしょう。

語句

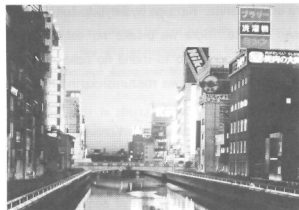
- 1 sono go after that, from that time on,  
since then  
2 o-kawari arimasen ka? (Cph) Hope  
you are still well. (=lit. Have there  
been any changes in your situation?)  
3 shukkin (Nv) go to work  
4 tsura-i hard, painful, hard to bear  
5 totsuzen (Adv) suddenly  
6 meiwaku (Nv/Na) annoyance, nui-  
sance, bother

- meiwaku o kake-ru cause trouble,  
make a bother of oneself  
7 tsui in spite of oneself, without  
intending  
8 ichi-ji one child  
9 chichi-oya =chichi father cf. haha-  
oya (mother)  
10 nani ka to in various ways, with this  
or that, somehow  
11 issō (Adv) all the more

その 夜は 都会には めずらしく 星が きらきらと か  
がやいていました。

- ⑤ もう すぐ お正月ですね。これから しばらく 忙しく  
なって、なかなか 会えないでしょうが、おたがいに しっ  
かり がんばって よい 年を むかえましょう。
- ⑥ さくらの ころには 赤ちゃんに 会えますね。  
それでは、お元気で。奥さんと おなかの 赤ちゃんに  
よろしく。

12月3日



▲Dotonbori in Osaka

- 12 kaeri-michi the way back  
13 yo-u get drunk  
14 kawa-beri river bank  
15 bura-bura (to) (onomat) idly, aim-  
lessly  
16 hyū-hyū (to) (onomat) (sound of  
whistling wind)  
17 ...no sei owing to..., caused by...,  
the fault of...  
18 hono-bono (to) (onomat) warmly;

- dimly, faintly  
19 mune chest, heart  
20 kira-kira(to) (onomat) twinkle, glitter  
21 kagayak-u glitter, glisten, twinkle  
22 shikkari (to) (onomat) firmly, tightly,  
decidedly, positively  
23 ganbar-u exert oneself, put up a  
good fight, persist, stand firm, hang  
in  
24 aka-chan baby

# Dai 22-ka

## Fuyu no Tegami

1 Dandan samuku natte-kimashita ga, sono go o-kawari arimasen ka? Watashi wa kaze o hiite-shimaimashita. Mai-asa no shukkin ga totemo tsurai desu. Anata mo oku-san mo ki o tsukete-kudasai.

2 Sen-jitsu wa totsuzen o-jama-shite go-meiwaku o kakemashita. Hisashi-buri deshita node, tsui yukkuri-shite-shimaimashita. Oku-san nimo shinsetsu-ni shite-moratte taihen ureshikatta desu.

3 Mō san-ka-getsu de anata mo ichi-ji no chichi-oya ni narimasu ne. Nani ka to taihen deshō ga, katei ga issō tanoshiku nigiyaka-ni naru deshō ne.

4 Ano yoru kaeri-michi sukoshi o-sake ni yotte-ita node, kawa-beri o bura-bura arukimashita. Kaze ga hyū-hyū to fuite-imashita ga, amari samuku kanjimasen deshita. Sore wa o-sake no sei bakari dewa nakute, anata-gata no koto ga hono-bono to mune no naka ni atta kara deshō.

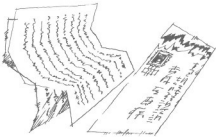
Sono yoru wa tokai niwa mezurashiku hoshi ga kira-kira to kagayaite-imashita.

5 Mō sugu o-shōgatsu desu ne. Kore kara shibaraku isogashiku natte, nakanaka aenai deshō ga, o-tagai-ni shikkari ganbatte yoi toshi o mukae-mashō.

6 Sakura no koro niwa aka-chan ni aemasu ne.

Soredewa, o-genki de. Oku-san to onaka no aka-chan ni yoroshiku.

12(jū-ni) gatsu 3(mik-)ka



# Lesson 22

## A Winter Letter

December 3

1 It is getting colder, but how have you been? I have caught a cold. It is very hard to get up and go to work every morning. You and your wife please take care not to catch colds.

2 I am sure my sudden appearance was an imposition on you both the other day. And since I had not seen you for so long I absently overstayed myself. I was very happy that your wife was also so kind to me.

3 In just another three months you will be a father. I am sure it will be very demanding, but it will also brighten up and enliven your household.

4 After leaving your home, I was still a little high from the wine and walked amblingly along the river bank. Although the wind was whistling by, I did not feel very cold. I think this is attributable not only to the wine but also to the warm glow which seeing you both had left in me.

Unusual for the big city, the stars were also out brightly that night.

5 Soon it will be New Year's. We will probably be too busy for a while to get together again, but let us both continue doing our best and have a good year next year.

6 I will be around to see the baby in cherry blossom time.

Farewell and good health to you. Please also give my best to your wife and unborn baby.

### ANSWERS (pp. 268, 269)

I. 1. ...ippai-ni narimashita. 2. ...kirei-ni narimashita. 3. ...takaku narimashita. 4. ...hima-ni narimashita. 5. ...isogashiku narimashita. 6. ...benri-ni narimashita. 7. ...kuraku narimashita. 8. ...yūmei-ni narimashita.

II. 1. kirei-ni 2. yasuku 3. hayaku 4. shizuka-ni 5. karuku 6. osoku 7. ōku 8. akaruku  
III. 1. wan-wan 2. nyā-nyā 3. zā-zā 4. pyū-pyū 5. gata-gata 6. ton-ton 7. rin-rin 8. pachi-pachi 9. gū-gū 10. suya-suya

IV. Watashi no machi wa onsen de taihen yūmei-ni narimashita. Mukashi wa ryokō-sha mo hotondo nakute, shizuka-na mura deshita. Shikashi kono-goro wa machi-jū ga nigiyaka-ni narimashita. Atarashiku tetsudō ga dekite, kōtsū mo benri-ni narimashita. Mata soko no hito-bito wa ryokō-sha ni totemo shinsetsu desu.

## § 90 Adverbs (3)

A-ku } (+V)  
Na-ni }

cf.

A-i } (+N)  
Na-na }

e.g. Samuku narimashita. 'It has gotten cold.'

cf. Kyō wa samui desu. 'It is cold today.'

samui hi 'a cold day'

Kanojo wa kirei-ni narimashita ne.

'She has gotten pretty, hasn't she?'

cf. Kanojo wa kirei desu. 'She is pretty.'

kirei-na hito 'a pretty person (girl)'

## § 91 'A-ku' form used as N

Some of the -ku (adverbial) forms of adjectives are used as Nouns.

e.g. Gakkō no chikaku ni sunde-imasu.

'I live near (in the neighborhood of) the school.'

Kane no oto ga tōku kara kikoete-kimasu.

'The sound of a bell can be heard from afar.'

Kono sensō de ōku no hito ga shinimashita.

'Many people died in this war.'

NB: \*ōi hito ga...

## § 92 Adverbs (4): 'Onomatopoeia'

Like some other languages, Japanese abounds in what is called 'onomatopoeia' or 'onomatopoetic words.'

Some of them are used just to imitate sounds.

e.g. Pisutoru o pan-pan to utta. '(He) shot the pistol bang-bang!'

Inu ga wan-wan to hoeru. 'The dog barks bow-wow.'

More difficult for the non-native speaker, however, are those that are used to describe various manners in which an action or event takes place. Following are some of the most frequently used onomatopoetic expressions.

**hakkiri (to)** 'clearly,' 'articulately.'

e.g. Motto hakkiri kaite-kudasai. 'Please write more clearly.'

Hakkiri wakarimasen. 'I don't know exactly.'

**yukkuri (to)** 'leisurely,' 'without rush,' 'slowly'

e.g. Motto yukkuri hanashite-kudasai. 'Please speak more slowly.'

Dōzo yukkuri mite-kudasai. 'Please take your time looking at it.'

**don-don** 'rapidly,' 'without restraint'

e.g. Bukka ga don-don agarimasu. 'Prices are skyrocketing.'

Don-don shitsumon-shite-kudasai.

'Please don't hesitate to ask questions.'

Yushutsu ga don-don fuete, ichi-oku-en o koemashita.

'Exports increased rapidly, and exceeded 100 million yen.'

**shikkari** 'hard,' 'tightly,' 'with precision,' 'without fail'

e.g. Rōpu o shikkari musunde-kudasai. 'Tie the rope tightly.'

Shikkari benkyō-shi-nasai yo. 'Study hard.'

## § 93 Some Idiomatic Expressions Involving Onomatopoeia

**at-to iu ma ni** 'While I was saying, 'Attt!' = 'Before I could say Jack Robinson.' = 'In the wink of an eye'

e.g. Nippon e kite, atto iu ma ni is-shū-kan tachimashita.

'A week has passed in just a twinkling since I came to Japan.'

At-to iu ma ni hi wa hirogarimashita.

'The fire spread in a flash.'

**soro-soro**

e.g. Mō soro-soro jikan desu. 'It's about time (to start/end something).'



I. Transform the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Atama ga itai desu.) Atama ga itaku narimashita.

- (Onaka ga ippai desu.)
- (Kanojo wa chika-goro kirei desu.)
- (Bukka ga takai desu.)
- (Shigoto ga hima desu.)
- (Kaisha ga isogashii desu.)
- (Kōtsū ga benri desu.)
- (Soto ga kurai desu.)
- (Kono kaisha wa *toranjisutā-rajio*<sup>1</sup> de yūmei desu.)

II. Transform the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. (Kono *zubon*<sup>2</sup> wa nagai desu.) Kono *zubon* wa nagai desu kara, mō sukoshi mijikaku shite-kudasai.

- (Kono heya wa kitanai<sup>3</sup> desu.)
- (Heya-dai<sup>4</sup> ga takai desu.)
- (Jidōsha no *supido*<sup>5</sup> ga osoi desu.)
- (Sawagashii desu.)
- (Nimotsu<sup>6</sup> ga omoi desu.)
- (Kaigi no jikan ga hayai<sup>7</sup> desu.)
- (Kyūryō ga sukunai desu.)
- (Kono heya wa kurai desu.)

## 語句

- toranjisutā-rajio* 'transistor radio'
- zubon* trousers
- kitana-i* dirty
- heyā-dai* room rent
- supido* 'speed'
- nimotsu* luggage, load
- haya-i* early; rapid, fast
- nyā-nyā* (to) (onomat) mew, meow

- rin-rin* (to) (onomat) (sound of a small bell)
- pyū-pyū* (to) (onomat) (sound of wind)
- zā-zā* (to) (onomat) (sound of pouring rain)
- ton-ton* (to) (onomat) (sound of someone knocking)
- suya-suya* (to) (onomat) (a manner of

III. Choose a suitable word from group (A) and fill in the blanks in the sentences of group (B).

(A) *nyā-nyā*,<sup>8</sup> *rin-rin*,<sup>9</sup> *pyū-pyū*,<sup>10</sup> *zā-zā*,<sup>11</sup> *ton-ton*,<sup>12</sup> *suya-suya*,<sup>13</sup> *wan-wan*<sup>14</sup>, *pachi-pachi*<sup>15</sup>, *gū-gū*<sup>16</sup>, *gata-gata*<sup>17</sup>

- (B) 1. Inu ga ( ) *naite*<sup>18</sup>-imasu.  
 2. Neko ga ( ) *naite*-imasu.  
 3. Ame ga ( ) *futte*-imasu.  
 4. Tsuyoi kaze ga ( ) *fuite*-imasu.  
 5. To ga ( ) *natte*<sup>19</sup>-imasu.  
 6. Dare ka ga to o ( ) *tataite*<sup>20</sup>-imasu.  
 7. *Beru*<sup>21</sup> ga ( ) *natte*-imasu.  
 8. Minna ga te o ( ) *tatakimashita*.  
 9. Chichi ga ( ) *nete*-imasu.  
 10. Aka-chan ga ( ) *nete*-imasu.

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

My town became well-known for its hot springs.<sup>22</sup> It had been a quiet village with few visitors<sup>23</sup> before, but nowadays the whole town has become lively. A new railway was built and it is easier now to get to the town. People there are also very kind to visitors.



▲The Unzen spa in Nagasaki

sleeping soundly)

- wan-wan* (to) (onomat) bowwow
- pachi-pachi* (to) (onomat) (cracking or clapping)
- gū-gū* (to) (onomat) (sound of someone sleeping, mostly snoring)
- gata-gata* (to) (onomat) (rattling sound)

18 *nak-u* weep, cry, whine, call, note, chirp, etc.

19 *nar-u* (something) make a sound or noise

20 *tatak-u* strike, hit, knock, tap

21 *beru* 'bell'

22 *onsen* hot spring

23 *ryōkō-sha* traveler, visitor

## AME GA YAMIMASHITA

- A: Daibu<sup>1</sup> atatakaku natte-kimashita ne.  
 B: Ē, soro-soro<sup>2</sup> ume<sup>3</sup> no kisetsu desu ne.  
 A: Ima demo yappari<sup>4</sup> anata wa o-cha no o-keiko<sup>5</sup> ni kayotte<sup>6</sup>-irasshaimasu ka?  
 B: Ē, mada tsuzukete-imasu no yo.  
 A: Yoku tsuzukimasu wa ne. Misete-itadakō ka shira?  
 B: Dewa, chotto shitaku<sup>7</sup> o shite-kimasu kara, sukoshi o-machi-kudasai ne.  
 .....  
 B: Ikaga desu ka?  
 A: Taihen kekkō deshita. Kibun<sup>8</sup> ga sukkiri<sup>9</sup>-shimashita. O-cha wa hontō-ni ii desu ne.  
 B: O-cha o tatete-iru toki wa, kibun ga yuttari-shimasu wa.  
 A: Urayamashii wa. Watashi nante,<sup>10</sup>

- A: It has gotten warmer, hasn't it?  
 B: Yes, it'll soon be time for the plum blossoms.  
 A: Are you still taking tea ceremony lessons?  
 B: Yes, I still keep it up.  
 A: That's good that you do. Will you show me?  
 B: Well, since I'll have to get things ready, can you wait a little?  
 .....  
 B: How do you like it?  
 A: I like it very much. It's very refreshing. The tea is really good.  
 B: I always feel so at ease while I'm making tea.  
 A: I envy you. As for me,

## 語句

- 1 daibu=daibun considerably  
 2 soro-soro (to) (onomat) slowly; little by little; pretty soon  
 3 ume plum  
 4 yappari=yahari (Adv) as was expected  
 5 keiko (Nv) practice, training, lessons  
 6 kayo-u commute  
 7 shitaku (Nv) preparations, arrangements  
 8 kibun feeling, mood  
 9 sukkiri (to) (onomat) refreshed; clear-cut  
 10 ...nante such a wretched thing as  
 11 nen-jū all the year round

- I'm too busy all year to do things like this.  
 B: Look, the rain's stopped, and it's clearing up. Let's open the *shoji*.  
 A: Oh, how splendid your garden is. Isn't the color of the moss so much prettier after a rain? And in a little while the flowers will gradually blossom and the garden will be gay.  
 B: I make my flower arrangements with flowers from the garden.  
 A: Did you also arrange the flowers in the *toko-no-ma*?  
 B: Yes. But flower arrangement is very difficult, and it's hard to get good at it.

- 12 bata-bata (to) (onomat) bustling about  
 13 shōji sliding door of paper on a framework (Japanese)  
 14 nure-ru get wet  
 15 don-don (to) (onomat) (expressing force or rapidity)  
 16 kir-u (Vt) cut  
 17 ike-ru arrange (flowers)  
 18 toko-no-ma alcove (Japanese)  
 19 o...ni nar-u (Honorific of suru) See § 118  
 20 dakedo however (←da keredomo)  
 21 o-hana=ike-bana flower arrangement

- nen-jū<sup>11</sup> bata-bata<sup>12</sup> isogashikute...  
 B: Ara, ame ga yande, soto ga akaruku narimashita ne. Shōji<sup>13</sup> o akemashō.  
 A: Mā, rippa-na o-niwa desu ne. Ame ni nurete,<sup>14</sup> koke no iro ga utsukushiku narimashita ne. Kore kara don-don<sup>15</sup> hana ga saki-hajimete, o-niwa ga nigiyaka-ni naru deshō ne.  
 B: Niwa kara o-hana o kitte<sup>16</sup>-kite iketari<sup>17</sup> shimasu no yo.  
 A: Ano toko-no-ma<sup>18</sup> no o-hana mo anata ga o-ike ni natta<sup>19</sup> no?  
 B: Ē, dakedo,<sup>20</sup> o-hana<sup>21</sup> wa muzukashii wa. Nakanaka jōzu-ni naranai no.



## 都市問題

人口は大都市に集中しているが、1965年ごろからは、大都市の人口増加のテンポがぶくなって、大都市周辺地域で人口がどんどん増加している。大都市の中心部の過密がひどくなったので、その周辺部の通勤の可能な地域に向かって人口が移動し、ドーナツ型と言われる現象が起こってきた。1970年には、首都圏、中京圏、京阪神圏の三大都市圏の人口が、全人口の43%を占めた。この結果、東北、北陸、山陰、四国、九州などの地域、特に、いなかでは人口が非常に減少して、過疎の現象が現われた。

過密の地域と過疎の地域で、いろいろな問題が表面化してきた。大都市やその周辺地域では、朝夕の交通渋滞、満員電車の混雑ぶりがすさまじい。地価は高くなり、住宅不足は深刻になっている。せまい家に、テレビ、冷蔵庫、せんたく機などの電気製品や、たんすなどの家具がぎっしり置かれている。そのうえ、大気や水のよごれはひどく、生活環境は、ますます悪くなってきた。一方、農村では人口流出がはげしくなり、医師がいなくなったり、鉄道が廃止されたりして、だんだん暮らしくなくなってくる。これがいっそう、過疎化を進め、集団離村が、あちこちで問題になっている。



Although people continue to crowd into the big cities, the pace has slowed since 1965 and population increases have shifted to outlying areas. Extreme overcrowding in downtown districts has deflected people to suburban towns within commuting range, thus giving rise to the doughnut phenomenon. By 1970, 43% of the total Japanese population lived in the Capital Tokyo Sphere, Chukyo Sphere, and Keihanshin Sphere.

As a result, Tohoku, Hokuriku, San'in, Shikoku, Kyushu, and other rural areas have been drained of their people.

People in and around the big cities face commuter traffic jams, commuter trains filled to overflowing, soaring land prices, and a housing shortage. Their small apartments are packed with television sets, refrigerators, washing machines, dressers and other electrical appliances and furniture. In addition, they face the threat of air and water pollution making the life environment even worse.

On the other hand, desolate rural villages are often without doctors, their train service is cut off, and life there has become more difficult. There have even been cases of entire villages being abandoned in the face of this isolation.

## 語句

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 dai-toshi big city, metropolis                         | 29 man'in-densha jam-packed train  |
| 2 tenpo 'tempo'  | 30 konzatsu (Nv) crowding, confusion   |
| 3 nibu-i dull  | 31 -buri manner, way, style  |
| 4 shūhen (N) outskirts, circumference                    | 32 susamaji-i terrifying   |
| 5 chiiki area  | 33 chi-ka price of land  |
| 6 kamitsu (Na) overcrowding cf. kaso                     | 34 jūtaku-busoku housing shortage  |
| 7 hido-i awful, cruel, terrible                          | 35 shinkoku (Na) serious, grave  |
| 8 tsūkin (Nv) commute, go to work/ the office            | 36 reizoko refrigerator  |
| 9 kanō (Na) possible                                     | 37 sentaku-ki washing machine  |
| 10 muka-u turn toward, be headed for                     | 38 denki-seihin electrical appliance   |
| 11 idō (Nv) movement                                     | 39 tansu cabinet (for clothes), dresser  |
| 12 dōnatsu 'doughnut'                                    | 40 kagu furniture  |
| 13 genshō phenomenon                                     | 41 gishshi (to) (onomat) (the way many things are squeezed into a small space) |
| 14 okoru happen, occur                                   | 42 okau put, set   |
| 15 shuto-ken Capital Sphere                              | 43 sono ue (Adv) moreover, on top of that                                      |
| 16 Chūkūyō (Nagoya and vicinity)                         | 44 taiki air, atmosphere   |
| 17 Keihanshin Kyoto, Osaka, and Kobe                     | 45 yogore spot, smudge, contamination  |
| 18 san-dai the three biggest...                          | ←yogore-ru (get dirty/polluted)  |
| 19, 20, 21 Tōhoku, Hokuriku, San'in (areas within Japan) | 46 kankyō environment  |
| 22 inaka countryside; one's home town                    | 47 masu-masu increasingly  |
| 23 genshō (Nv) decrease cf. her-u                        | 48 ryūshutsu (Nv) outflow  |
| 24 kaso desolution, depopulation                         | 49 hageshi-i violent   |
| 25 araware-ru appear                                     | 50 ishi=isha (medical) doctor  |
| 26 hyōmen-ka (Nv) coming to the surface                  | 51 haishi (Nv) abolishment   |
| 27 asa-yū (N/Adv) morning and evening                    | 52 susume-ru (Vt) push forth, promote, hasten cf. susum-u (Vi)                 |
| 28 kōtsū-teitai traffic congestion                       | 53 shūdan group  |
|  | 54 ridan (Nv) leaving a hamlet   |
|  | 55 achi-kochi (N) here and there   |

① あなたは文章を書くことがとてもじょうずだと山田さんが言っていました。

—いや、それでもありません。文章を書くことはたいへん好きですが……。文章と言えば小説の「書き出し」などはたいへん参考になりますね。「国境の長いトンネルを抜けると雪国であった。夜の底が白くなった。信号所に汽車が止まった。」これは川端康成の「雪国」の「書き出し」です。

② わたしも知っています。たいへん有名な文章ですね。小説が好きな人ならたいてい知っていますね。  
—とても印象的な文章ですからね。小説家は特に小説の「書き出し」に気を使いますね。わたしだったらとてもこんな文章は書けません。夏目漱石の「草枕」も有名ですね。

## 語句

1 ...to ieba speaking of...	11 Yuki-guni (the title of a novel)
2 kaki-dashi opening paragraph	12 ...nara See § 95
-dashi ↔ -das-u (begin to...)	13 inshō-teki (Na) impressive
3 sankū reference	inshō impression
4 kuni-zakai (national/country) border	14 -tara See § 94
5 tonneru 'tunnel'	15 totemo very much; (not...) by any means
6 nuke-ru go through	16 Natsume Sōseki (novelist; 1867-1916)
7 -to See § 96	17 Kusa-makura (the title of a novel)
8 yuki-guni snow country	kusa grass makura pillow
9 soko bottom	18 chi=chie wisdom
10 shingō-jo signal station	

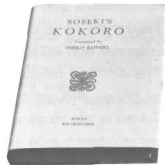
③ どんな文章ですか。

—「山路を登りながらこう考えた。智に働けば角が立つ。情にさはりゃ流される。意地を通せばきゅうくつだ。とにかくに人の世は住みにくい。」

④ とてもおもしろい文章ですね。一度その小説を読んてみたいです。漱石はあまり読んでいません。どんな作品をまず読んだらいいでしょうか。

—わたしなら「心」をすすめます。外国人はこれを読むと日本人のものの考え方がよくわかって言いますね。続いて、「それから」や「門」も読んでみたらいいでしょう。図書館へ行けば全集があります。よかったです。わたしのを貸しましうか。

⑤ だれかが借り出していて、もし図書館になかったら、貸してもらえますか。



19 -ba See § 95	earthly life
20 kado ga tats-u the corners stick out (and hurt people)	28 susume-ru recommend
21 jō sentiment, emotion (cf. kanjō)	29 Sore kara (the title of a story)
22 sao (bamboo) pole, rod, oar	30 Mon (the title of a story)
23 iji pride, will, stubbornness	mon gate
24 tōs-u (Vt) let...through	31 zenshū complete works (usually literature)
25 kyūkutsu (Na) stuffy, squeezing, not free, restricting, cramped	32 yokattara if it's all right, if you don't mind See § 94
26 tokaku (ni) (Adv) be apt to	33 kari-das-u check out (a book from a library)
27 hito no yo this world of men, this	

## Dai 23-ka Bunshō

1 Anata wa bunshō o kaku koto ga totemo jōzu da to Yamada-san ga itte-imashita.

—Iya, sō demo arimasen. Bunshō o kaku koto wa taihen suki desu ga... Bunshō to ieba shōsetsu no ‘kaki-dashi’ nado wa taihen san-kō ni narimasu ne. “Kuni-zakai no nagai tonneru o nukeruto yuki-guni de atta. Yoru no soko ga shiroku natta. Shingō-jo ni kisha ga tomatta.” Kore wa Kawabata Yasunari no ‘Yuki-guni’ no ‘kaki-dashi’ desu.

2 Watashi mo shitte-imasu. Taihen yūmei-na bunshō desu ne. Shōsetsu ga suki-na hito nara taitei shitte-imasu ne.

—Totemo inshō-teki-na bunshō desu kara ne. Shōsetsu-ka wa tokuni shōsetsu no ‘kaki-dashi’ ni ki o tsukaimasu ne. Watashi dattara totemo konna bunshō wa kakemasen. Natsume Sōseki no ‘Kusa-makura’ mo yūmei desu ne.

3 Donna bunshō desu ka?

—“Yama-michi o noborinagara kō kangaeta. Chi ni hatarakeba kado ga tatsu. Jō ni sao saseba nagasareru. Iji o tōseba kyūkutsu da. Tokaku ni hito no yo wa sumi-niku.”

4 Totemo omoshiroi bunshō desu ne. Ichi-do sono shōsetsu o yonde-mitai desu. Sōseki wa amari yonde-imasen. Donna sakuhin o mazu yondara ii deshō ka?

—Watashi nara ‘Kokoro’ o susumemasu. Gaikoku-jin wa kore o yomuto Nippon-jin no mono no kangae-kata ga yoku wakaruru to iimasu ne. Tsuzuite, ‘Sore kara’ ya ‘Mon’ mo yonde-mitara ii deshō. Toshokan e ikeba zen-shū ga arimasu. Yokattara watashi no o kashimashō ka?

5 Dare ka ga kari-dashite-ite, moshi tosho-kan ni nakattara, kashite-morae-masu ka?

## Lesson 23 On Writing

1 Mr. Yamada tells me you write very well.

—Not really. I like very much to write, but... Speaking of writing, I find it helps me a lot to read the lead-ins to novels. “The train came out of the long tunnel into the snow country. The earth lay white under the night sky. The train pulled up at a signal stop.” This is the beginning of Kawabata Yasunari’s *Yuki-guni* (‘Snow Country’). (trans. Edward G. Seidensticker)

2 Yes, I know it. It is quite a famous passage. Anyone who likes to read is probably familiar with it.

—It is really a striking bit of writing. Novelists are especially careful of how they start their novels. I could never write sentences like these. Natsume Soseki’s *Kusa-makura* (‘The Three-Cornered World’) is also very well known.

3 How does it go?

—“Going up a mountain track, I fell to thinking. Approach everything rationally, and you become harsh. Pole along in the stream of emotions, and you will be swept away by the current. Give free rein to your desires, and you become uncomfortably confined. It is not a very agreeable place to live, this world of ours.” (trans. Alan Turney)

4 It is very interesting. I would like to read that novel sometime. I have not read much of Soseki. What would you suggest I start with?

—I would recommend *Kokoro*. It is supposed to be good for foreigners who want to understand the Japanese way of thinking. And then it would probably be good to read *Sore kara* and *Mon*. If you go to the library, they would have his complete works. Shall I lend you mine?

5 Would you let me borrow yours if someone has checked out the library’s and I can not get it there?

### ANSWERS (pp. 280, 281)

- I. 1. kaitara/kakeba Neg.→kakanakattara; kakanakereba 2. benkyō-shitara/benkyō-sureba Neg.→benkyō-shinakattara; benkyō-shinakereba 3. futtara/fureba Neg.→furanakattara; furanakereba 4. tsutaetara/tsutaereba Neg.→tsutaenakattara; tsutaenakereba 5. takakattara/takakereba Neg.→takaku nakattara; takaku nakereba 6. yokattara/yokereba Neg.→yoku nakattara; yoku nakereba 7. shizuka dattara/shizuka-nara Neg.→shizuka de nakattara; shizuka de nakereba 8. byōki dattara/byōki nara Neg.→byōki de nakattara; byōki de nakereba 9. shinshi dattara/shinshi nara Neg.→shinshi de nakattara; shinshi de nakereba II. 1. ...jōzu dattara, ... 2. ...kanemochi dattara, ... 3. ...ōkikattara, ... 4. ...oyogetara, ... 5. ...otoko dattara, ... III. 1. kōsa-ten 2. ginkō 3. yūbin-kyoku 4. hon-ya 5. gakkō IV. Kare ga kitaru, oshiete-kudasai. Kare ga konakattara, anata ga kawari ni kenkyū-sho e itte-kuremasen ka? Kyō watashi ga hima dattara, ishho-ni ikitali desu ga... Mukō de jikken no kekka o setsumei-shite-kureru deshō. Wakaranai koto ga attara, enryo-naku kiite-kudasai.

## § 94 Conditional Expressions (1)

V-tara, ...

'If..., ...'

A-kattara, ...

'When...has done..., ...'

N/Na dattara, ...

'Provided..., ...'

(Form: the Past form (§ 41)+ra)

e.g. Ame ga furimasu (furu). 'It rains.'

Ame ga futtara, watashi wa ikimasen. 'If it rains, I won't go.'

Hiru-gohan o tabetara, watashi no heya e kite-kudasai.

'When you have eaten lunch, please come to my room.'

Yasukattara (←yasui), kaimasu. 'If it is cheap, I will buy it.'

Gakusei dattara (←gakusei da/desu), han-gaku desu.

'It is half-price (=There is a 50% discount) if you are a student.'

NB: (1) The adjective ii (=yoi) becomes yokattara (not ikattara).

(2) The negative forms:

furimasen→furanai→furanakattara 'if it doesn't rain'

samui→samuku nai→samuku nakattara 'if it is not cold'

gakusei da→gakusei de(wa) nai→gakusei de nakattara

'if you are not a student'

## § 95 Conditional Expressions (2)

V { (1st Group) (Stem+) -eba, ...

(2nd Group) (Stem+) -reba, ...

sureba (←suru)/kureba (←kuru), ... 'If..., ...'

A-kereba, ...

N/Na nara, ...

e.g. Ame ga fureba, shigoto wa yasumi desu. 'If it rains, there's no work.'

Nichi-yōbi nara, uchi ni imasu. 'If it's Sunday, I will be home.'

NB: The adjective ii becomes yokereba (not ikereba).

## § 96 Conditional Expressions (3)

V

A

N/Na da

(Plain Present form)+-to, ...

'(If you) do..., then...'

'If..., then...'

e.g. Ano kado o magaruto, yūbin-kyoku ga miemasu.

'If you turn that corner, you'll see a post office.'

('Turning the corner, you will...')

Ni ni ni o tasuto, yon ni narimasu.

'If you add 2 to 2, it will become 4.' '2 and 2 makes 4.'

## § 97 Comparison of the Three Conditional Expressions

The ranges of meaning covered by the three Conditionals **-tara**, **-(r)eba**, and **-to** overlap to a large extent, almost so much that they appear to be synonymous and freely interchangeable. There are, however, some slight differences in nuance and use. Following are some of the main points that should be noted here. For convenience, we will let 'P' stand for the first sentence (clause) ending with one of the Conditional forms, and 'Q' for the following 'consequent' sentence (clause).

(1) 'P-reba Q' and 'P-to Q' imply that Q is a necessary or natural consequence of P, and therefore these two are more commonly used in mathematics, logic, physics, etc. than 'P-tara,' which has an implication that the speaker is reserving judgment on Q. Thus 'P-tara Q' is preferred when the whole sentence involves invitation or suggestion ('-mashō'), request or order ('-te-kudasai' or '-nasai'), permission ('-temo ii desu'), prohibition ('-tewa ikemasen'), etc.

(2) 'P-tara' is mostly used in the spoken language; 'P-reba' is rather limited to the written, and 'P-to' is both spoken and written.

I. Fill in the blanks with the Conditional forms and then make the sentences negative.

Ex. Anata ga kono *kamera* o (kattara/kaeba), watashi mo kaimasu. (buy)  
 Neg.→Anata ga kono *kamera* o kawanakattara (kawanakereba), watashi mo kaimasen.

- Anata ga tegami o ( ), kare mo tegami o kaite-kureru deshō.  
(write)
- Yoku ( ), anata wa shiken ni tōru<sup>1</sup> deshō. (study)
- Ashita ame ga ( ), watashi wa yama e ikimasen. (rain)
- Kare ni sono koto o ( ), kare wa kaette-kuru deshō. (inform)
- Moshi<sup>2</sup> heya-dai ga ( ), watashi wa sono heya o karimasen.  
(expensive)
- Kono hon ga ( ), imōto ni yomasemasu. (good)
- Sono heya ga ( ), soko de shigoto o shimasu. (quiet)
- Kanojo ga ( ), watashi-tachi wa ryokō ni ikimasen. (sick)
- Kare ga ( ), watashi wa kare to kekkon-shimasu. (gentleman<sup>3</sup>)

II. Make sentences using the Conditionals as shown in the example.

Ex. Watashi wa tori dewa arimasen.→Moshi watashi ga tori dattara, anata no tokoro e tonde-iku deshō.

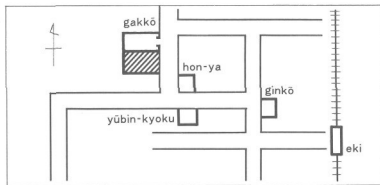
- Watashi wa Nippon-go ga jōzu dewa arimasen.
- Watashi wa kanemochi<sup>4</sup> dewa arimasen.
- Watashi no uchi wa ōkiku nai desu.

## 語句

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 tōru pass                            | 5 massugu (Adv) straight        |
| 2 moshi (Adv) if, provided             | 6 magaru (Vi) turn; bend        |
| 3 shinshi gentleman                    | cf. mageru (Vt)                 |
| 4 kanemochi (N) rich; a rich man/class | 7 hidari-gawa (N) the left side |

- Watashi wa oyogemasen.
- Watashi wa otoko dewa arimasen.

III. Use the map to fill in the blanks.



Eki kara massugu<sup>5</sup> ikuto, (1. ) ga arimasu. Migi e magaruto,<sup>6</sup> sugu (2. ) ga arimasu. Soko o hidari e magatte sukoshi ikuto, hidari-gawa<sup>7</sup> ni (3. ) ga arimasu. Sono mae ni (4. ) ga arimasu. Sono yoko no michi o kita e sukoshi ikuto, (5. ) ga arimasu.

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

When he comes, please let me know. If he doesn't come, will you go to the research institute<sup>8</sup> in his stead? If I were free today, I would like to go with you. There they will explain the results of their experiment.<sup>9</sup> If there is anything you don't understand, please feel free<sup>10</sup> to ask.

- |               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| 8 kenkyū-sho  | research institute             |
| 9 jikken (Nv) | experiment                     |
| 10 enryo-naku | without hesitation/<br>reserve |

enryo (Nv) reserve, hesitation,  
modesty

## JIKO GA OKOREBA...

Kuruma ga taihen konde-imasu ne.

—Kyō wa Do-yōbi desu kara ne.

Shinai no dōro wa doko mo kuruma de ippai desu.

Konna noro-noro-uten<sup>1</sup> nara, aruita hō ga hayai kamo shiremasen yo.

—Kuruma o unten shite-iruto minna ira-ira<sup>2</sup>-shimasu.

Nippon no dōro wa naze konna-ni<sup>3</sup> komu no desu ka?

—Kōtsū-ryō<sup>4</sup> ga konna-ni fuetemo, dōro-seibi<sup>5</sup> ga oitsuite-ikanai kara deshō ne.

Koko wa tokuni hidoi desu ne.

—Koko wa kōsoku-dōro<sup>6</sup> no iri-guchi de, ryōkin-sho<sup>7</sup> ga aru kara desu.

Ryōkin-sho<sup>8</sup>tte?

—Yū-ryō-dōro<sup>9</sup> desu kara, ryōkin o toraremasu.<sup>10</sup>

There're so many cars.  
—Because today's Saturday. All the city roads are full of cars.

At this snail's pace, it may be faster to walk.

—Everyone gets irritated when driving.

Why are the roads so crowded in Japan?

—It may be because road improvement has not kept up with the increase in traffic volume.

This area is especially bad.

—Because this is the entrance to the expressway and there are toll gates.

Toll gates?

—This is a toll road and so we have to pay to use it.

## 語句

1 noro-noro-uten (Nv) driving slowly (in a traffic jam)

noro-noro (to) (onomat) slowly, lazily

2 ira-ira (to) (onomat) irritated, impatient

3 konna-ni (Adv) like this

4 kōtsū-ryō traffic volume

ryō quantity, amount

5 dōro-seibi road construction

seibi (Nv) build, provide, maintain, arrange, improve

6 kōsoku-dōro express-way, highway

kōsoku (N) high speed

7 ryōkin-sho toll gate

8 ....tte? Did you say...? What is...? See § 106

9 yū-ryō-dōro toll road

yū-ryō (N) charged cf.

What? You have to pay to use the road?

—Once we get past this part, the rest is easy.

From there on the speed limit is 100 km per hour.

But, it would be terrible if there were an accident.

—Yes. If you're careless on the expressway,

there'd be a big accident before you knew it.

You're all right though, aren't you?

—Yes, leave it to me.

mu-ryō, tada (free)

10 tor-u take

11 Hē? What a surprise!

12 tsūkō (Nv) passing, transit

13 sugi-ru go past; exceed

14 raku (Na) easy, comfortable

15 sokudo-seigen speed limit

sokudo speed seigen (Nv) limit

16 okor-u happen, occur

17 ukkari (to) (onomat) carelessness, absent-minded

18 at-to iu ma ni before you can say Jack Robinson, in the twinkling of an eye

19 makase-ru leave (something) to (someone), trust (somebody) with (something)

Hē<sup>11</sup>? Tsūkō<sup>12</sup> ni o-kane ga iru no desu ka?

—Koko o sugiruto,<sup>13</sup> ato wa raku<sup>14</sup> desu. Sokudo-seigen<sup>15</sup> wa hyak-kiro desu kara.

Shikashi, moshi jiko ga okoreba<sup>16</sup> taihen desu ne.

—Ē, kōsoku-dōro dewa, ukkari<sup>17</sup>-shite-iruto, at-to iu ma ni<sup>18</sup> dai-jiko ni nari masu.

Anata wa daijōbu deshō ne?

—Ē, makasete<sup>19</sup>-oite-kudasai.





## 日本の芸術

日本の芸術は自然をたいせつにする。たとえば、お茶やお花でも、四季おりの道具を使う。俳句にも、必ず、季語があって、伝統的な約束を守らなければならぬ。歳時記を見ると、季語がくわしく説明してある。

菊の香や 奈良には古き仏たち  
芭蕉

この句の季語は「菊」で、これは秋の句である。菊は春でも、夏でも、冬でも咲いているが、春の菊だったら、「菊苗」とか、「菊若葉」と言わなければならない。夏の菊だったら、「夏菊」と言わなければならない。冬なら、「寒菊」と言わなければならない。

自然のままをたいせつにすることも、日本の芸術の特徴である。庭園を例にとってみよう。西歐の庭なら、円形や三角形の幾何学的 図形の花壇を造ったり、噴水をこしらえたりする。しかし、日本人は、庭に木を植えたり、石を置いたり、池や水の流れを作ったりするときにも、できるだけ、自然の美しさをとどめようとする。ときには、へいの外そとのけしきしきも庭にわのながめの一部いちぶと考えると、庭を造る。これを借景しやくけいという。

このように、日本の芸術はつねに自然との永遠えいゑんの一致いちじを求める。



▶The garden at Daisenin

## Japanese Arts

Nature plays an important part in Japanese arts, as in the tea ceremony or flower arrangement with their seasonal accessories. *Haiku* too has a traditional commitment to seasonal terms, and these are explained in *Sajiki*.

Kiku no ka ya                      The scent of chrysanthemums and  
Nara ni wa furuki                Long resident in Nara  
Hotoketachi                        Buddhist spirits

In this *haiku* by Basho, *kiku* (Chrysanthemum) is used as the seasonal clue to autumn. While these do also bloom in other seasons, spring chrysanthemums would have to be indicated by *kikunae* or *kikuwakaba*, summer ones by *natsugiku*, and winter ones by *kangiku*.

It is characteristic of Japanese art to present nature as it truly is. Whereas the typical Western garden would have a geometrically designed flower bed and a fountain, the Japanese strive to retain the beauty of nature by planting trees, placing rocks, and providing a flow for water in the pond. Gardens are sometimes even created so as to incorporate the outside view as part of the setting. This is called borrowing the scenery.

In all these ways, Japanese arts constantly seek eternal oneness with nature.

### 略句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 shizen (N/Na) nature; natural   | 22 en-(kei) (N) circle   |
| 2 shiki oriori (N) for each season oriori (N) occasion cf. ori                | -kei shape   |
| 3 dōgu tool   | 23 san-kaku-(kei) (N) triangle (=three cornered shape)   |
| 4 ki-go special seasonal terms in <i>haiku</i> poems to show the seasons      | 24 kikagaku-teki (Na) geometrical kika-gaku geometry   |
| 5 dentō-teki (Na) traditional   | 25 zukei (geometrical) figure  |
| 6 yakusoku (Nv) promise, appointment  | 26 funsui fountain   |
| 7 Sajji-ki (a glossary of <i>ki-go</i> )                                      | 27 koshirae=ru make  |
| 8 kuwashi-i detailed  | 28 ue-ru (Vt) plant  |
| 9 <i>kiku chrysanthemum</i>   | 29 ishi stone, rock  |
| 10 ka =kaori scent, smell   | 30 nagare (N) flow ←nagare-ru (Vi)   |
| 11 ...ya (special ending for <i>haiku</i> poems)                              | 31 dekuru dake as...as possible  |
| 12 furuki (archaic)=furu-i  | 32 utsukushi-sa beauty←utsukushi-i   |
| 13 hotoke Buddha  | 33 todome-ru detain; stop; leave...as it is  |
| 14 ku a <i>haiku</i> phrase   | 34 toki niwa sometimes   |
| 15 <i>kiku-nae</i> young chrysanthemum plant <i>nae</i> young plant           | 35 hei fence   |
| 16 <i>kiku-waka-ba</i> young chrysanthemum leaves <i>waka-ba</i> young leaves | 36 shakkei making use of the scenery (e.g. mountains) behind the garden (lit. 'borrowing scenery') |
| 17 <i>natsu-giku</i> summer chrysanthemum                                     | 37 tsune ni always   |
| 18 <i>kan-giku</i> winter chrysanthemum <i>kan</i> coldness, winter           | 38 eien (N) eternity   |
| 19 <i>tokuchō</i> characteristic, distinctive feature                         | 39 itchi (Nv) oneness, coincidence, agreement  |
| 20 <i>teien</i> =niwa garden  | 40 motome-ru seek; ask for, demand; buy  |
| 21 rei example  |  |

## 第 24 課

### 広告・宣伝・コマーシャル

TAPE  
No. 6  
Side 2

- ① あそこに 止まっている 電車に 乗りますか。  
—いいえ、あれは 京都へ 行く 電車です。わたしたちが 乗る 電車は もう すぐ 来るとしてよ。
- ② ところで、近ごろ 駅には きれいな ポスターが たくさん ありますね。あれには 「Discover Japan」と 書いてありますよ。このごろ 英語を 使った 広告が 多いです。
- まちがった 英語の 使い方も よく 見かけます。あまり たくさん 英語が 使っている 広告も ありますね。この間、「クールな タッチで ハードな アクションを ダイレクトに サービスする『ナポレオン・ソロ』」という 映画の 宣伝が ありました。一度 聞いた だけで どういう 意味か わかりますか。
- ③ うーん…。英語だけでなく フランス語や 中国語などを 使った 広告も 多いです。
- そうですね。必要以上に 外国語を 使う ことは よく

#### 語句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 posuta 'poster'   | 7 <i>tatchi</i> 'touch'  |
| 2 har-u stick, paste, affix                                 | 8 <i>hada</i> (Na) 'hard'  |
| 3 machigatta (+N) +machigatte-i-ru<br>mistaken, wrong       | 9 <i>akushon</i> 'action'  |
| machiga-u =machigae-ru make a<br>mistake/an error, be wrong | 10 <i>dairekuto</i> (Na) 'direct'  |
| 4 tsukai-kata usage, how to use                             | 11 <i>Napoleon Solo</i> 'Napoleon Solo' (the<br>title of a TV film series) |
| 5 mikake-ru see/find/notice by chance                       | 12 <i>senden</i> (Nv) advertisement, publicity,<br>propaganda              |
| 6 <i>koru</i> (Na) 'cool'                                   | 13 <i>dō iu...</i> what kind of...   |

ないですね。

- ④ 近ごろ わたしの 子どもが テレビコマーシャルで 言った ことばを よく 使うので 困っています。「がんばらなくっちゃ」という ことばがよく 流行していますね。
- 薬の テレビコマーシャルでしょう。薬を のんで がんばる 必要があるか どうか 疑問ですね。
- ⑤ おしつけがましい 広告や 日本語を 混乱させる 宣伝は ほんとうに 困りますね。



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 14 Ūn Hmmm  | 20 ...ka dō ka whether...or...                                 |
| 15 hitsuyō iijō ni more than is needed                                    | 21 gimon question, doubt                                       |
| 16 <i>terebi-komasharu</i> 'TV commercial'                                | 22 <i>oshitsuke-gamashi-i</i> wishing to have<br>one's own way |
| 17 ...nakutcha (Colloquial)=...nakutewa/<br>nakereba narimasen have to... | oshitsuke-ru press against/down,<br>force                      |
| 18 <i>ryūkō</i> (Nv) fashion, popularity                                  | -gamashi-i look/sound like                                     |
| 19 -te made even taking the trouble of<br>...ing                          | 23 <i>konran</i> (Nv) confusion                                |

## Dai 24-ka

### Kōkoku, Senden, Komāsharu

- 1 Asoko ni tomatte-iru densha ni norimasu ka?  
—Iie, are wa Kyōto e iku densha desu. Watashi-tachi ga noru densha wa mō sugu kuru deshō.
- 2 Tokorode, chika-goro eki niwa kirei-na *posutā* ga takusan hatte-arimasu ne. Are niwa “Discover Japan” to kaite-arimasu yo. Kono-goro Ei-go o tsukatta kōkoku ga ōi desu ne.  
—Machigatta Ei-go no tsukai-kata mo yoku mikakemasu. Amari takusan Ei-go ga tsukatte-aru kōkoku mo komarimasu ne. Kono aida, “Kūru-na fatchi de hādo-na akushon o dairekuto-ni sābisu-suru ‘Napoleon Sora’” to iu eiga no senden ga arimashita. Ichi-do kiita dake de dō iu imi ka wakarimasu ka?
- 3 Ūn... Ei-go dake de naku *Furansu-go* ya *Chūgoku-go* nado o tsukatta kōkoku mo ōi desu ne.  
—Sō desu ne. Hitsu-yō ijō ni gaikoku-go o tsukau koto wa yoku nai desu ne.
- 4 Chika-goro watashi no kodomo ga *terebi-komāsharu* de itta kotoba o yoku tsukau node komatte-imasu. “Ganbaranakutchā” to iu kotoba ga yoku ryūkō-shite-imasu ne.  
—Kusuri no *terebi-komāsharu* deshō. Kusuri o nonde made ganbaru hitsuyō ga aru ka dō ka gimon desu ne.
- 5 Oshitsuke-gamashii kōkoku ya Nippon-go o konran-saseru senden wa hontō-ni komarimasu ne.

## Lesson 24

### Advertising

- 1 Do we get on that train stopped over there?  
—No, that is the train to Kyoto. Our train will be along soon.
- 2 Say, there has been an abundance of beautiful posters in the stations lately. That one says, “Discover Japan.” A lot of the advertising uses English now.  
—There is also considerable English used incorrectly. Advertisements that use too much English really turn me off. The other day I saw a movie advertisement for “Napoleon Solo—straight-served hard action with a cool touch.” How are we supposed to understand that the first time through?
- 3 Hmm... And it is not only English but also French, Chinese, and all the others which are used a lot.  
—You are right. Foreign words are used far more than necessary.
- 4 My kid has gotten into the bad habit of using the catch-phrases from television commercials. “Gotta try harder” was a big one a while ago.  
—That was from a health-drink commercial. But I wonder if it is really necessary to try harder to the extent of taking that stuff.
- 5 Something ought to be done about hard-sell commercials and advertising which debases the Japanese language.

#### ANSWERS (pp. 292, 293)

- I. 1. Watashi ga/no kaita shōsetsu wa nagai desu. 2. Kare ga/no totta shashin wa kirei desu. 3. Watashi ga sensei kara karita hon wa omoshirokatta desu. 4. Watashi wa chichi ga (watashi ni) tsukutte-kureta tsue o mai-nichi tsukatte-imasu. 5. Watashi ga tomodachi kara/ni moratta *roita* wa gaikoku-sei desu.
- II. 1. Anata wa kono *rojio* ga ikura ka shitte-imasu ka? 2. Anata wa kare ga megane o kakete-ita ka dō ka oboete-imasu ka? 3. Yamada-san wa mata kuru ka dō ka wakarimasen. 4. Yamada-san no tsutomete-iru kaisha wa doko ka oshiete-kudasai. 5. Watashi wa jibun no kangae-kata ga tadashii ka dō ka wakaranakatta.
- III. 1. doko e iku 2. doko de katta 3. Watashi ga hanashite-ita 4. susumeru/ichiban ii to omou 5. tsukurarete-iru/tsukurareru/tsukutte-iru 6. shite-iru 7. Kono kōjō de hataraitte-iru 8. Koko de tsukurareru/tsukurarete-iru
- IV. Kinō watashi wa, Ōutoria de Nippon-go o benkyō-shite-iru tomodachi kara, tegami o moraimashita. Kanojo wa Nippon no uta no *rekēdo* o okutte-kudasai to kaite-kimashita. Watashi wa *poppyra*-ongaku no suki-na otōto ni sōdan-shimashita. Otōto wa kare no tomodachi ga hataraitte-iru *rekēdo*-ya-san e watashi o tsurete-itte-kuremashita. Kare-ra ga erandekureta ongaku wa taitai watashi no zenzen shiranai uta deshita. San-mai katte, Ōutoria e kōkū-bin de okurimashita.

## § 98 Using a Sentence as a Noun Modifier

In Japanese, a modifier always precedes what is modified. This section is concerned with the Noun-modifying constructions. Observe the following:

hon 'a book'

sono hon 'that book'

Nippon-go no hon 'a book in Japanese'

watashi no Nippon-go no hon 'my book in Japanese'

sono akai hyōshi no Nippon-go no hon 'that book in Japanese  
with the red cover'

This general order is maintained even when a Noun is modified by what could be a complete sentence, no matter how long or complex it may be.

e.g. Watashi ga kinō Kyōto de katta hon wa omoshiroi desu.

'The book (which) I bought in Kyoto yesterday is interesting.'

Sore wa anata ga kyonen Tai e itta (←iku) toki (anata ga) katta (←kau) hon desu ka? (Literally translated and left in the same word order, this would be: 'that, you, last year, Thailand, to, went, time, (you) bought, book, is?')

'Is that the book you bought when you went to Thailand last year?'

NB: In using a sentence-equivalent as a Noun Modifier, a few adjustments are required ((1)-(3) below) or preferred (4).

(1) The Particle *wa*, since it shows the Topic of the (whole) sentence, cannot be used within the Noun-modifying construction. *ga* must be used when N is the subject (as is usually the case), and *o* or *ni* when N shows the object or location of V.

e.g. Watashi wa hon o katta. 'I bought a book.'

→watashi ga katta hon 'the book which I bought'

Kono hon wa watashi no tomodachi ga kakimashita.

'A friend of mine wrote this book.'

→kono hon o kaita watashi no tomodachi

'a friend of mine who wrote this book'

(2) The Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause normally takes the Plain form, since the politeness is expressed by the main clause.

e.g. Watashi wa kinō hon o kaimashita. 'I bought a book yesterday.'

→Watashi ga kinō katta hon wa omoshiroi desu. 'The book which I bought yesterday is interesting.'

Sono hi wa samukatta desu. 'It was cold that day.'

→samukatta sono hi 'that day when it was cold' (= 'that cold day')

(3) When the Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause is a Na-adjective, it takes the '-*na*' form.'

e.g. Ano hito wa kōhi ga suki desu. 'That person likes coffee.'

→kōhi ga suki-na hito 'a person who likes coffee'

(4) When the Predicate of the Noun-modifying clause ends with 'Noun + *desu*,' it changes to 'N *no*.'

e.g. Ano hito wa byōki desu. 'That person is sick.'

→byōki no hito 'a person who is sick' (= 'a sick person')

(5) In the modifying clause, 'N *ga*' and 'N *no*' are interchangeable.

## § 99 Using an Interrogative Sentence as part of another Sentence

An Interrogative sentence can be used as part of another sentence with the same modifications as noted in (1) and (2) above. When it contains no Interrogative word such as *nani*, *doko*, *dare*, etc., however, 'dō ka' must be added to '...ka.'

e.g. Kare wa doko e ikimashita ka? 'Where did he go?'

→Kare ga doko e itta ka anata wa shitte-imasu ka?

'Do you know where he went?'

Kare wa ikimashita ka? 'Did he go?'

→Kare ga itta ka dō ka watashi wa shirimasen.

'I don't know whether he went or not.'

I. Combine the sentences with the second sentence as the main clause.

- Ex. *Watashi wa Furansu de budō-shu o kaimashita. Sore wa oishii desu.*  
 →*Watashi ga Furansu de katta budō-shu wa oishii desu.*
1. *Watashi wa shōsetsu o kakimashita. Sore wa nagai desu.*
  2. *Kare wa shashin o torimashita. Sore wa kirei desu.*
  3. *Watashi wa sensei kara hon o karimashita. Sore wa omoshirokatta desu.*
  4. *Chichi wa watashi ni tsue<sup>1</sup> o tsukutte-kuremashita. Watashi wa sore o mai-nichi tsukatte-imasu.*
  5. *Watashi wa tomodachi ni raitō<sup>2</sup> o moraimashita. Sore wa gaikoku-sei desu.*

II. Combine (a) and (b) with (a) as the main clause.

1. (a) *Anata wa shitte-imasu ka?*  
 (b) *Kono rajio wa ikura desu ka?*
2. (a) *Anata wa oboete-imasu<sup>3</sup> ka?*  
 (b) *Kare wa megane o kakete-imashita ka?*
3. (a) *Wakarimasen.*  
 (b) *Yamada-san wa mata kimasu ka?*
4. (a) *Oshiete-kudasai.*  
 (b) *Yamada-san no tsutomete-iru kaisha wa doko desu ka?*
5. (a) *Watashi wa wakaranakatta.*  
 (b) *Jibun no kangae-kata wa tadashii ka?*

語句

1 *tsue* walking stick, cane  
 2 *raitō* 'lighter'

3 *oboete-i-ru* remember, keep in mind  
*obo-e-ru* memorize, remember, learn

III. Fill in the blanks to complete the translations.

1. Where does this train go?  
 →*Kore wa ( ) densha desu ka?*
2. Where did you buy this watch?  
 →*Kore wa ( ) tokei desu ka?*
3. The man I was talking with is Yamada.  
 →( ) *hito wa Yamada-san desu.*
4. Which dictionary do you recommend?  
 →*Anata ga ( ) jisho wa dore desu ka?*
5. This factory makes mostly transistor radios.  
 →*Kono kōjō de ( ) omo-na seihin wa toranjisutā-rajio desu.*
6. What kind of work does he do?  
 →*Ano hito ga ( ) shigoto wa nan desu ka?*
7. About how much do the people who work in this factory get paid?  
 →( ) *hito-tachi no chingin wa ikura gurai desu ka?*
8. Where do they export the radios produced here?  
 →( ) *rajio wa doko e yushutsu-saremasu ka?*

IV. Put the following into Japanese.

Yesterday I received a letter from my friend who is studying Japanese in Australia. She wrote asking me to send her some records of Japanese songs. I talked it over with my brother, who loves popular music,<sup>4</sup> and he took me to a record shop where a friend of his is working.

Most of the music (records) that they chose for me were songs which I didn't know at all. I bought three, which I sent to Australia by air mail.<sup>5</sup>

4 *poppyō-ongaku* 'popular,' pop music  
 5 *kōkū-bin* air mail

*kōkū* aviation

## MOKUTEKI WA?

Watashi no hanasu kotoba ga  
wakarimasu ka?

—E, yoku wakarimasu.

Watashi wa Nippon e kite mada ichi-nen  
tarazu<sup>1</sup> desu. Sorede, amari jōzu-ni  
hanasemasen.

—Sonna koto wa arimasen, rippa-na  
mon<sup>2</sup> desu yo. Tokorode, Nippon e  
kite, ichiban komatta mondai wa nan  
desu ka?

Yahari,<sup>3</sup> kotoba desu ne. Nippon-go wa  
taihen muzukashii desu.

—Nippon e kita mokuteki<sup>4</sup> wa  
nan desu ka?

Nippon no chūsei<sup>5</sup>-bungaku no kenkyū  
desu.

—Sorejā, chūsei-bungaku de  
tsukawarete-iru kotoba wa gendai no  
Nippon-go to kanari chigaimasu kara,  
taihen deshō ne.

Do you understand what  
I say?

—Yes, very well.

It's a little less than a year  
since I came to Japan, so  
I'm not so fluent.

—Oh, that's not true.

You're quite good. By  
the way, what was your  
biggest problem after  
you got here?

As might be expected, the  
language. Japanese is very  
difficult.

—What was your purpose  
in coming to Japan?

To study Japanese medie-  
val literature.

—Then, since the lan-  
guage used in medieval  
literature is quite dif-  
ferent from modern  
Japanese, you must be  
having a hard time.

You have to study lit-  
erary Japanese, don't  
you?

That's right. The classes  
at the university are not  
enough, so I'm learning  
from a friend my profes-  
sor introduced me to.

—Is he Japanese?

No, another English stu-  
dent. But he's been study-  
ing in Japan for 3 years,  
and his Japanese is very  
good. Moreover, since  
he's doing research on the  
*waka*, he understands the  
old Japanese very well.

—That's very good.

The classical writings  
are difficult even for  
Japanese. Study hard.  
Thank you.

Bungo<sup>6</sup> no benkyō o shinakereba nari-  
masen ne.

Sō desu. Daigaku no jugyō dake dewa  
ma ni awanai node, kyōju<sup>7</sup> ga shōkai-  
shite-kureta tomodachi ni oshiete-  
moratte-imasu.

—Sono hito wa Nippon-jin desu ka?

Iya, onaji *Igirisu* no gakusei desu.

Demo, kare wa san-nen mo Nippon de  
benkyō-shite-imasu kara, Nippon-go wa  
pera-pera<sup>8</sup> desu. Soreni, kare ga ken-  
kyū-shite-iru kadai<sup>9</sup> ga 'waka'<sup>10</sup> desu  
kara, furui kotoba mo yoku shitte-  
imasu.

—Sore wa yokatta desu ne.

Bungo-bun<sup>11</sup> wa Nippon-jin ni tottemo  
muzukashii kotoba desu.

Shikkari benkyō-shite-kudasai.

Dōmo arigatō.

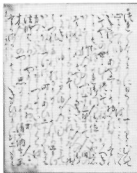
## 語句

- 1 ...tarazu less than...
- 2 mon (Colloquial)=mono
- 3 yahari=yappari as ex-  
pected
- 4 mokuteki purpose, ob-  
jective
- 5 chūsei the medieval age
- 6 bungo literary language
- 7 kyōju professor; (Nv)

## instruction

- 8 pera-pera (onomat)  
(speak) fluently
- 9 kadai theme/problem  
to be solved, task
- 10 waka (Japanese poem  
of 5-7-5-7-7 syllables)
- 11 bungo-bun Japanese in  
written style

▶From *Tsurezure-gusa*



## 公害

日本の公害問題は、世界のどの国よりも深刻だ。「公害先進国」とまで言  
う人もいる。日本経済は、戦後、高度に成長して、「経済大国」になった。

しかし、そのかげで国土は急速に荒廃して、公害が表面化してきた。

水俣と新潟の水銀中毒、四日市の大気汚染、東京、大阪近郊の光化学スモッグ、新幹線沿線の騒音と震動など、日本本土で公害は数えきれない。その

うえ、PCB など、一つの地域に限られない公害も出てきた。

工場廃液によって、河川や海が汚染され、さかにな水銀、カドミウム、PCB

などが蓄積された。さかさをよく食べる日本人にとって、これは大きな問題

だ。公害病にかかった住民は、治療法もなく、苦しんでいる。

問題が深刻化するにつれて、被害者の住民が公害反対運動に立ち上がった。

公害企業に損害賠償を求める裁判が起こされ、四日市の大気汚染訴訟などで、

いずれも住民側が勝った。

これらの結果から、企業側も真剣に公害対策に取り組む姿勢をやと見せ

はじめた。経済成長を考える前に、まず、公害対策を考えなければならないと

いう意見が強くなっている。政府なども多くの法律を作って、対策に乗り出し

ている。しかし、問題はまだ残されていて、公害はこれからの政治の大きな課

題だ。

▼ Keihin industrial area



Japan is said to have the worst pollution in the world and has been called an "advanced pollution nation." Although the economy has grown to a position of prominence since the War, this has also ravaged the land and generated intolerable pollution.

Be it the mercury poisoning in Minamata and Niigata, air pollution in Yokkaichi, photochemical smog in Tokyo and Osaka, the noise and vibration caused by super-express railways, or what have you, Japan has countless cases of environmental disruption.

When the industrial effluents pollute waterways, fish build up concentrations of mercury, cadmium, PCB, and other pollutants, and fish-eating Japanese are stricken with pollution-diseases. This has become a major social problem recently, especially as the people afflicted must suffer with no cure in sight.

As the situation has gotten worse, citizens have banded together to fight pollution. Court suits have even been instituted seeking, and winning, indemnification from polluting industries.

Many people have come to feel that pollution prevention should come before economic growth. The Government too has formulated legislation and shown concern, yet the problem remains a major unresolved political issue.

## 語句

- |    |   |    |   |
|----|---|----|---|
| 1  | senshin-koku advanced country                       | 25 | jūmin inhabitants, residents                                      |
| 2  | kōdo (Na) height, high degree, rapid, sophisticated | 26 | chiryō-hō remedy, cure  |
| 3  | tai-koku Great Power                                | 27 | chiryō (Nv) cure, medical treatment                               |
| 4  | kokudo the land of a country                        | 28 | hō method, measure  |
| 5  | kōhai (Nv) devastation                              | 29 | shukushim-u suffer, be afflicted                                  |
| 6  | Minamata (a place name)                             | 30 | shinkoku-ka becoming more serious                                 |
| 7  | Niigata (a place name)                              | 31 | -ni tsurete in proportion to, as...                               |
| 8  | suigin chūdoku mercury poisoning                    | 32 | higai-sha victim, sufferer  |
| 9  | suigin mercury                                      | 33 | higai damage  |
| 10 | chūdoku (Nv) poisoning                              | 34 | hantai-undō movement/campaign                                     |
| 11 | Yokkaichi (a place name)                            | 35 | protesting against...   |
| 12 | taiki-osen air pollution                            | 36 | hantai (Nv) opposition, objection;                                |
| 13 | osen (Nv) pollution, contamination                  | 37 | reverse, contrary undō (Nv) movement, campaign; physical exercise |
| 14 | kinōkō suburbs, area near the city                  | 38 | tachi-agar-u stand up, set oneself to                             |
| 15 | kōkagaku-sumoggu 'photochemical smog'               | 39 | sosōgi-baishō compensation  |
| 16 | smog (N) along the (railroad) line                  | 40 | saiban (Nv) trial (in court)                                      |
| 17 | shindō (Nv) vibration, trembling                    | 41 | okos-u (Vt) start (a movement);                                   |
| 18 | zendo the whole land                                | 42 | organize; generate (electricity)                                  |
| 19 | kazoe-kirenai countless, innumerable                | 43 | soshō (Nv) lawsuit, legal action                                  |
| 20 | kazoe-ru count                                      | 44 | izure mo each/all of them   |
| 21 | PCB polychlorinated biphenyl                        | 45 | kats-u win  |
| 22 | kgagir-u limit                                      | 46 | shinken (Na) earnest, sincere, serious                            |
| 23 | haieki waste fluid                                  | 47 | taisaku countermeasure, policy to cope with...                    |
| 24 | kawa =kawa (more common) rivers                     | 48 | torikum-u wrestle/come to grips with                              |
| 25 | kadmiumu 'Cadmium'                                  | 49 | shisei posture, attitude  |
| 26 | chikuseiki (Nv) accumulation                        | 50 | yatto (Adv) at last; with difficulty; barely                      |
| 27 | kōgai-byōki pollution-caused diseases               | 51 | iken opinion  |
| 28 | byōki-byōki disease                                 | 52 | taisaku ni noridas-u embark upon countermeasures                  |
| 29 | (byōki ni) kakar-u fall ill, suffer from a disease  |    |   |

第 25 課  
映画を見る

TAPE  
No. 7  
Side 1

① きのは 久しぶりに ひまが できたので、友人と いっしょに 映画を見に行く ことに しました。

友人は 今 上映している 中で いちばん 見たいのは チャップリンの「モダン・タイムス」だと 言いました。わたしは その 映画は ずっと 昔、 子どもの ときに 一度 見た ことが ありました。それで、今 評判の 日本映画を 見たかったのですが、友人が どうしても 「モダン・タイムス」を見たいと 言うので、それを見る ことに しました。

\* \* \*

② たいへん おもしろかったです。子どもの ときは、見て ただ ゲラゲラ 笑っていただけですが、今度は いろんな ことを 考えさせられました。まず、第一に その 新鮮さ に おどろかされました。何十年も 前に 作られているのに その 新しさは まったく おどろえていません。

③ 映画を見おわってから、友人と 喫茶店で コーヒーを 飲みながら この 映画の よさや おもしろさを 論じ合いま

語句

- 1 deki-ru be ready; come into being, form; be possible; be able to  
2 jōei (Nv) show (a movie) cf. jōen  
3 ...no See §101 (2)  
4 Chappurin 'Chaplin'  
5 Modan Taimusu 'Modern Times'  
6 dō shitemo at any cost, by any means  
7 tada only

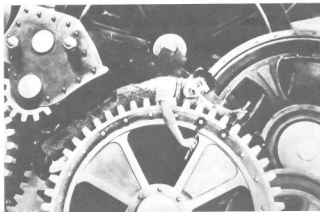
- 8 gera-gera (to) (onomat) a manner of laughing loudly and continuously  
9 ironna =iroiro-na various  
10 dai-ichi ni firstly  
11 shinsen-sa fresh ←shinsen (Na)  
12 atarashi-sa newness  
13 mattaku totally; (not) in the least  
14 otoroe-ru become weak, wither, decline

した。

④ チャップリンの 言いたい ことが よく わかったと 思います。近ごろ、わたしも 友人も 忙しくて、なかなか 映画を見る ことが できませんが、これからは できるだけ よい 映画は 見ようと いう ことになりました。

⑤ よい 映画を見る ことは たいへん いい ことです。ところが、今の 日本映画には なかなか よい 作品が ありません。エロ・グロ・ナンセンスの 映画が 多いです。これは 作る 人にも 見る 人にも 問題があると 思われます。

ほんとうに すぐれた 映画と いうのは いつまでも 生きつづける 映画の ことなのでしょう。



- 15 yo-sa good point ←yo-i (good)  
16 omoshiro-sa fun; the point of a story  
17 ronji-a-u discuss  
18 ...to iu koto ni nar-u That means...  
19 tokoroga however  
20 ero-guro-nansensu pornographic, grotesque, and nonsense  
    ero 'erotic'  
    guro 'grotesque'

- nansensu 'nonsense'  
21 ...to iu no wa ...means  
22 itsu made mo forever  
23 iki-tsuzuke-ru continue to live  
    -tsuzuke-ru continue ...ing  
24 (N/Na) na no desu See §101 (4)



## Dai 25-ka Eiga o Miru

1 Kinō wa hisashi-buri ni hima ga dekita node, yūjin to issho-ni eiga o mi ni iku koto ni shimashita.

Yūjin wa ima jōei-shite-iru naka de ichiban mitai no wa *Chappurin* no 'Modan Taimusu' da to iimashita. Watashi wa sono eiga wa zutto mukashi, kodomo no toki ni ichi-do mita koto ga arimashita. Sorede, ima hyōban no Nippon-eiga o mitakatta no desu ga, yūjin ga dō shitemo 'Modan Taimusu' o mitai to iu node, sore o miru koto ni shimashita.

2 Taihen omoshirokatta desu. Kodomo no toki wa, mite tada gera-gera waratte-ita dake desu ga, kondo wa ironna koto o kangaesaseremashita. Mazu, dai-ichi ni sono shinsen-sa ni odorokasaremashita. Nan-jū-nen mo mae ni tsukurarete-iru noni sono atarashi-sa wa mattaku otoroete-imasen.

3 Eiga o mi-owatte kara, yūjin to kissa-ten de *kōhi* o nominagara kono eiga no yo-sa ya omoshiro-sa o ronji-aimashita.

4 *Chappurin* no iitai koto ga yoku wakatta to omoimasu. Chika-goro, watashi mo yūjin mo isogashikute, nakanaka eiga o miru koto ga dekimasen ga, kore kara wa dekiru dake yoi eiga wa miyō to iu koto ni nari-mashita.

5 Yoi eiga o miru koto wa taihen ii koto desu. Tokoroga, ima no Nippon-eiga niwa nakanaka yoi sakuhin ga arimasen. *Ero-guro-nansensu* no eiga ga ōi desu. Kore wa tsukuru hito nimo miru hito nimo mondai ga aru to omowaremasu.

Hontō-ni sugureta eiga to iu no wa itsu made mo iki-tsuzukeru eiga no koto na no deshō.

## Lesson 25 Going to a Movie

1 Since I had some free time yesterday, I decided to go to a movie with a friend. My friend said he wanted to see Chaplin's *Modern Times* more than anything else showing. I had already seen it a long time ago when I was little. So I wanted to see one of the popular Japanese movies playing, but my friend insisted that he just had to see *Modern Times*, so we went to see it.

2 It was very interesting. When I saw it as a child, it only made me laugh, but this time it also made me think. I was especially surprised at how timeless it is. Even though it was made decades ago, it still has an astonishing freshness about it.

3 After the movie, we went to a coffee shop for some coffee and talked about how good and how interesting the movie was.

4 I think I understand what Chaplin wanted to say. We have both been too busy to go to movies of late, but we decided we want to see as many good movies as possible from now on.

5 It is a very good thing to see a good movie. But there are not very many good movies among the Japanese products. There is just a lot of sex, sadism, and stupidity. I think this is the fault of both the people who make movies and the people who go to see them.

A really good movie, I believe, is one that never loses its appeal.

### ANSWERS (pp. 304, 305)

I. 1. Watashi wa kinō no ban jishin ga atta koto/no o shinbun de shirimashita. 2. Anata wa ima Kyōto de ōki-na kokusai-kaigi ga hirakarete-iru koto/no o shitte-imasu ka? 3. Rai-getsu kara *basu*-dai ga agaru koto/no wa tashika desu ka? 4. Watashi wa mō sugu sō-senkyo ga aru koto/no o *rajo* no *nyū* de shirimashita. 5. Watashi wa kono hon ga zeppan ni natte-iru koto/no o tomodachi kara kikumashita. 6. Ano kaisha ga tōsan-shita no/koto wa hontō desu ka?

II. 1. ... benkyō-suru koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 2. ... yameru koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 3. ... nomanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 4. ... suwanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita). 5. ... awanai koto ni shimasu (shimashita).

III. 1. koto 2. koto/no 3. koto 4. koto 5. koto 6. koto 7. no 8. no 9. koto

IV. "Watashi ga kare kara *gite* o katta koto/no o shitte-imasu ka? Kore ga kare kara katta *gite* desu." "Kare wa *gite* o hiku koto ga dekimasu ka? Watashi wa kare ga hiku no o kiita koto ga arimasen." "Iie, kare wa hikemasen. Sorede kare wa watashi ni *gite* o uru koto ni shita no desu."

## § 100 The Use of koto

(1) Koto meaning 'matter, thing' is used just like any other Noun.

e.g. Kore wa daiji-na koto desu. 'This is an important matter.'

Watashi ga/no itta koto o oboete-imasu ka?

'Do you remember what (=the thing which) I said?'

(2) Koto is also used as a Pseudo Noun, whose function is to give a Noun-like quality to a V (as we have already seen in § 67) as well as to other types of Predicates. It can thus function to nominalize a sentence, i.e. to change a sentence into a Noun Clause.

Sentence + **koto** 'that (Sentence)'

e.g. [Kinō asoko de kaji ga arimashita. 'There was a fire there yesterday.'

Anata wa sore o shitte-imasu ka? 'Do you know that?'

→ Anata wa kinō asoko de kaji ga atta koto o shitte-imasu ka?

'Do you know that there was a fire there yesterday?'

NB: The modifications necessary (or preferred) in using a Sentence as a Noun Modifier (See NB: (1)-(5) in § 98) generally apply here, except (4), i.e., 'N desu' changes to 'N de aru (koto)' or 'N da to iu (koto),' rather than 'N no (koto).'

(3) The Pseudo Noun koto is also used in the following fixed pattern:

V (Dict. form) <b>koto ni</b>	<table border="1"> <tr><td><b>shimasu</b></td></tr> <tr><td><b>narimasu</b></td></tr> </table>	<b>shimasu</b>	<b>narimasu</b>	'I have decided to...'
		<b>shimasu</b>		
<b>narimasu</b>				
		'It is decided to...'		

e.g. Watashi wa mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru koto ni shimashita.

'I have decided to stay in Japan for another year.'

Mō ichi-nen Nippon ni iru koto ni narimashita.

'It has been decided that I am to stay in Japan for another year.'

## § 101 The Use of no

(1) The Particle no sometimes plays the same roles as koto.

e.g. Anata wa kinō asoko de kaji ga atta koto/no o shitte-imasu ka?

'Do you know that there was a fire there yesterday?'

Koko de tabako o suu koto/no wa kiken desu.

'It is dangerous to smoke here.'

No cannot replace koto, however, when koto is used in some fixed (or idiomatic) patterns, e.g., '...koto ga dekimasu,' '...koto ga arimasu,' '...koto ni shimasu/narimasu,' etc.

(2) The Emphatic Construction using no:

**...no wa...desu** 'It is...that...'

e.g. Kare wa kyo-nen Indo e ikimashita. 'He went to India last year.'

→ Kyo-nen Indo e itta no wa kare desu.

'It is he who went to India last year.'

→ Kare ga Indo e itta no wa kyo-nen desu.

'It was last year that he went to India.'

(3) The Object of Perception:

**N ga/no V no o mimasu/kikimasu,** etc. 'see/hear/etc. N doing...'

e.g. Watashi wa hen-na otoko ga heya kara dete-kuru no o mimashita.

'I saw a strange man come (or coming) out of the room.'

(4) The Explanatory Sentence: **Sentence + no/n desu**

When the speaker intends to explain a reason, cause, or circumstance, the Predicate is followed by 'no desu.'

e.g. Anata wa kinō kimasendeshita ne. 'You didn't come yesterday.'

—Hai, kuni kara haha ga kita no desu.

'(That was because) Mother came to visit me yesterday.'

Seeing someone looking pale, one will ask:

Dō shita no/n desu ka? 'What is the matter?'

—Kesa kara atama ga itai no/n desu.

'I've had a headache since this morning.'

I. Combine the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. Rai-shū shiken ga arimasu. Watashi wa sore o shirimasen deshita.

→Watashi wa rai-shū shiken ga aru koto/no o shirimasen deshita.

1. Kinō no ban jishin<sup>1</sup> ga arimashita. Watashi wa sore o shinbun de shirimashita.
2. Ima Kyōto de ōki-na kokusai-kaigi<sup>2</sup> ga hirakarete<sup>3</sup>-imasu. Anata wa sore o shitte-imasu ka?
3. Rai-getsu kara basu-dai<sup>4</sup> ga agarimasu.<sup>5</sup> Sore wa tashika desu ka?
4. Mō sugu sō-senkyō<sup>6</sup> ga arimasu. Watashi wa sore o rajio no nyūsu de shirimashita.
5. Kono hon wa zeppan<sup>7</sup> ni natte-imasu. Watashi wa sore o tomodachi kara kikimashita.
6. Ano kaisha wa tōsan<sup>8</sup>-shimashita. Sore wa hontō desu ka?

II. Transform the sentences as shown in the example.

Ex. Rai-getsu kuni e kaerimasu.

→Rai-getsu kuni e kaeru koto ni shimasu (shimashita).

1. Mai-asa Nippon-go o benkyō-shimasu.
2. Shigoto o yamemasu.
3. O-sake o nomimasen.
4. Tabako o suimasen.
5. Kanojo to aimasen.

## 語句

1 jishin earthquake

2 kokusai-kaigi international conference

3 hirakare+ru be held

4 basu-dai bus fare

5 agar+u (Vi) rise cf. age+ru (Vt)

III. Fill in the blanks using 'koto' or 'no.'

Nippon wa taihen subarashii to iu (1. ) o tomodachi kara kiite, watashi wa kyo-nen Nippon e kima-shita. Nippon e kite, odoroitte (2. ) wa, doko e ittemo hito ga taihen ōi (3. ) desu. Asa no basu ni noru (4. ) ga dekinakute, takushi de gakkō e iku (5. ) mo arimasu. Takushi ga nakanaka konakute, taihen komatta (6. ) mo arimasu.

Sen-shū wa gakkō ga yasumi datta node, Nara e ikimashita. Furu o-tera ya butsu-zō<sup>9</sup> ga sono mama nokosarete-iru (7. ) o mite, hontō-ni subarashii to omoimashita. Tomodachi ga ii to omotta (8. ) mo, tabun ano o-tera ya butsu-zō o mita kara deshō. Kondo no natsu-yasumi niwa Kyōto e mo itte-miru (9. ) ni shite-imasu.



IV. Put the following into Japanese.

"Did you know that I bought a guitar from him? This is the guitar I bought from him."

"Can he play the guitar? I have never heard him play it."

"No, he can't. That's why he decided to sell me his guitar."

6 sō-senkyō general election

senkyō (Nv) election

7 zeppan (N) out of print

8 tōsan (Nv) bankrupt

9 butsu-zō statue of Buddha

## MOSHI-MOSHI

K: Rai-shū ni bōnen-kai<sup>1</sup> ga nobita<sup>2</sup> koto wa, mō mina ni shiraseta<sup>3</sup> kai?

T: Iya, mada renraku ga tsukanai<sup>4</sup> hito ga futa-ri iru n da.

K: Sore wa komatta na.<sup>5</sup>  
Dare-dare<sup>6</sup> dai<sup>7</sup>?

T: Yamada to Satō<sup>8</sup> da yo.

K: Yamada no tokoro niwa denwa ga aru darō? Soko no kōshū-denwa<sup>9</sup> kara denwa o kakeyō yo.<sup>10</sup>

T: Un, boku ga kakete-miru yo.

T: Moshi-moshi, Yamada-san no o-taku desu ka?

Y: Hai, Yamada desu ga.

T: Masao<sup>11</sup>-kun wa imasu ka?

Y: Hai, Masao wa orimasu ga, dochira-sama deshō ka?

T: Dō-kyū<sup>12</sup> no Takada<sup>13</sup> desu.

Y: Ā, Takada-san desu ka.

K: Have you notified everyone that the year-end party has been postponed to next week?

T: No, I have two more people to contact.

K: We can't leave them uninformed. Who are they?

T: Yamada and Sato.

K: Yamada has a phone, doesn't he? Let's call him from that phone-booth.

T: Yeah, I'll try it.

T: Hello, is this the Yamada's?

Y: Yes, it is.

T: Is Masao there?

Y: Yes, he is. May I ask who's calling?

T: His classmate Takada.

Y: Oh, Mr. Takada.

## 語句

1 bōnen-kai year-end party (lit. party to forget the year gone by)

2 nobi-ru (Vi) extend, expand; be postponed

3 shirase-ru inform

4 renraku ga tsuk-u (Vi) get in touch with...

cf. renraku o tsuke-ru (Vt)  
5 ...na (vaguely exclamatory ending)

6 dare-dare who and who

7 ...dai? (Colloquial)

(WH-question) desu ka?

8 Satō (a family name)

9 kōshū-denwa public phone

kōshū (N) public

Thank you for everything you've done for Masao. Please wait a minute while I call him.

M: Hello.

T: Hello, Yamada? Takada here. How are you?

M: Oh, Takada. It's been a long time.

T: To get right to the point, it's about that year-end party. It had to be moved back to next week. Sorry I'm so late getting in touch with you.

M: And, when is it for now?

T: Next Saturday. It'll be still at the same place, but I haven't been able to contact Sato.

M: Since I'll be seeing him this Sunday, I'll tell him.

T: Great! I'll leave it all to you.

M: OK, I'll do it.

10 ...yo, ..., I say. ..., I assure you.

11 Masao (a given name(mi))

12 dō-kyū (N) the same class/grade

dō- the same...

-kyū class, grade

13 Takada (a family name)

14 Ō oh

15 tsugō convenience

16 nobas-u (Vt) postpone;

extend, expand

cf. nobi-ru (Vi)

17 De And, then

18 soitsu (Colloquial, derogatory) that one (thing or person)

Itsumo Masao ga o-sewa ni natte-imasu. Yonde-kimasu kara, sukoshi o-machi-kudasai.

M: Moshi-moshi.

T: Yā, Yamada-kun kai?

Takada da yo. Genki kai?

M: Ō,<sup>14</sup> Takada ka, hisashi-buri da ne.

T: Sassoku da ga ne, rei no bōnen-kai no koto da ga, tsugō<sup>13</sup> de, rai-shū ni nobasu<sup>16</sup> koto ni natta n da.

Renraku ga okurete mōsiwake-nai ga.

M: De,<sup>17</sup> itsu ni natta?

T: Rai-shū no Do-yōbi na n da.

Kaijō wa kono mae kimeta tokoro da ga, Satō-kun nimo renraku ga tsukanakute ne.

M: Kare to wa kondo no Nichi-yōbi ni au koto ni natte-iru kara, boku ga itte-oku yo.

T: Soitsu<sup>18</sup> wa ii. O-negai-suru yo. Yoroshiku na.

M: Ii yo, hiki-uketa.

## 日本の歴史—3

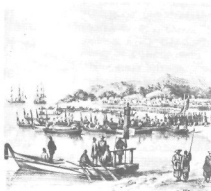
日本でも封建社会に商品経済が発達し、徳川幕府の支配力は弱くなっていった。そのころ、ヨーロッパの資本主義諸国が、相ついに幕府に、鎖国をやめて貿易することを求めてきた。幕府は、この圧力に負けて、1858年以後、アメリカ、その他の国々と条約を結び、貿易することにした。このことが、一つのきっかけになって、270年間続いた「徳川幕府」は倒れた。

1868年、幕府にかわって、天皇を中心とした新しい政府が生まれた。この革命を「明治維新」と呼んでいる。新しい明治政府は、ヨーロッパ諸国に追いつこうとして、「富国強兵策」を打ち出した。以後、日本の産業は、飛躍的に発展したが、その発展は、国家からの多額の援助と、農民や労働者の長時間労働と低賃金によってもたらされたものであった。産業が発達した結果、日本は国内市場だけではまにあわなくなり、大陸に市場を求めた。

一方、1890年に第一回の衆議院議員の選挙が行なわれたが、投票できたのは、全人口のわずかに1%にすぎなかった。言論や出版も自由ではなかった。

そうした中でも、選挙権の拡大を求める運動や、労働組合の運動が続けられた。特に、第一次世界大戦が終わった1918年

ごろから、労働運動は、一段とはげしくなった。しかし、こうした動きに対する政府の弾圧はきびしく、年々、運動も弱められ、すべての民主的な権利や思想が否定されていった。こうして、長くて、暗い戦争の時代が続くことになった。



▲ Perry's to Japan (1853)

During Japan's feudal age, a mercantile economy was developed and the power of the Tokugawa Shogunate weakened. At the same time, Western capitalism was calling upon the Shogunate to open the country to overseas trade. Yielding to such pressures, the Government concluded trade agreements with America and other nations, leading to the fall of the Shogunate 270 years after its establishment.

In 1868, a new Government was formed around the Emperor, this revolution being referred to as the Meiji Restoration. The new Government adopted a policy of "Rich Nation, Strong Army" to catch up with the West and Japan began its spectacular growth, growth supported by massive governmental assistance as well as by farmers and laborers working long hours for slight wages. As industrialization progressed, Japan sought to expand to the continental Asian market.

Although the first election was held in 1890, only a mere 1% of the population was able to vote, and there was very little freedom of speech or the press. Even so, campaigns to extend suffrage and labor union movements grew, the labor movement becoming especially active after World War I. Nevertheless, the Government moved to suppress and slowly crushed these movements, denying all democratic thoughts and rights. Thus it was that Japan entered the long, dark years of World War II.

## 語句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 hōken-shakai feudal society                                   | of Representatives   |
| cf. hōken-seido (feudal system)                                 | Shūgin the House of Representatives                                |
| 2 shōhin merchandise, commodity                                 | tiigū ginji assembly man   |
| 3 shihai-yoku ruling power                                      | 24 okona-u (formal expression of suru)                             |
| shihai (Nv) rule, govern, control                               | 25 tōhōy (Nv) vote   |
| -ryoku power, force   | 26 ...ni suginai no more than...                                   |
| 4 shokoku (many) countries                                      | 27 genron speech (as in "freedom of speech")                       |
| 5 aitsudo in succession, one after another                      | 28 shō shita naka de in such a situation, under such circumstances |
| 6 atsuryoku pressure  | 29 senkyo-ken suffrage   |
| 7 make-ru be defeated; lose                                     | -ken *-kenri (right)   |
| 8 ta no=hoka no other...  | 30 rōdō-kumiai labor/trade union                                   |
| 9 kuni-guni countries   | kumiai union   |
| 10 jōyaku treaty  | 31 Dai-ichi-ji-sekai-taisen World War I                            |
| 11 musubu-u tie; conclude                                       | 32 ichi-dan to (Adv) a grade higher/more, all the more             |
| 12 kikkake chance, turning point                                | 33 ugoki motion; trend; movement                                   |
| 13 taore-ru (V) fall over; collapse                             | 34 ...ni taisuru against, toward                                   |
| cf. taōs-u (V)  | 35 dan'atsu (Nv) oppression  |
| 14 kakumei revolution   | 36 kibishi-i harsh, rigid  |
| Meiji-ishin Meiji Restoration                                   | 37 yowame-ru (V) make...weak/feeble                                |
| fukoku-kyōhei-saku (lit. 'rich-country-strong-military policy') | 38 minshu-teki (Na) democratic                                     |
| -saku policy  | cf. minshu-shugi (democracy)                                       |
| 17 uchidas-u set forth; launch                                  | 39 kenri right   |
| 18 hiyaku-teki (Na) leaping                                     | 40 shisō (political/philosophical) thought                         |
| hiyaku (Nv) jump, leap  | 41 kō-shite thus, in this way                                      |
| 19 ta-gaku (N) great amount (of money)                          |  |
| 20 enjo (Nv) aid  |  |
| 21 nōmin farmer cf. gyomin                                      |  |
| 22 chō-jikan (N/Adv)(for) many hours                            |  |
| 23 Shūgin-gin member of the House                               |  |

# 第 26 課

## ステレオを買う

TAPE  
No. 7  
Side 1

① 山田さん、いいところで会いました。これから、ステレオを買いに行くところですが、どこか安くいい店を知らないか。

—ステレオ! それはいいですね。わたしも買いたいと思っていたところです。いっしょに見に行きましょうか。日本橋の店がいいという話です。

\* \* \*

② ステレオがほしいのですが。

—どれぐらいのがいいですか。

そうですね。わたしが楽しむために買うというより子どもたちのために買うのです。すぐこわしたりしますから、安ければ安いほどいいですが……。

—これはどうですか。手ごろだと思えますが……。

③ 一度音を聞かせてもらえますか。……少し音がかたいですね。山田さん、どうですか。

—わたしもそう思います。向こうにあるのはどうでしょう。あれは広告でいい音が出ると言っ

ていましたよ。

④ 少し高いですが、あなたの言うとおりの音ですね。

—これはいいですよ。これぐらいのがよく売れています。これは聞く人の思うとおりの音が出せます。この五つのつまみは低音や高音を調節するためのものです。

⑤ これはなかなかいいですね。山田さん どうですか。

—たいへんいいですね。わたしもこれぐらいのものがほしいです。このクラスではこれほどのものはちょっとないでしょう。

⑥ わたしは今まで忙しかったためにゆっくり音楽を楽しむこともできませんでした。これからはひまを見つけてよい音楽を聞こうと思います。音楽を聞くためのひまぐらひはぜひ作りたいですね。



語句

- 1 tokoro See § 102  
2 Nippon-bashi (a place name)  
3 tanoshim-u (Vt) enjoy  
4 tame See § 103  
5 ...to iu yori rather than...  
6 kowas-u (Vt) break, destroy

- cf. koware-ru (Vi)  
7 ...ba...hodo See § 104  
8 te-goro (Na) handy, easy to handle  
9 kata-i hard, solid cf. yawaraka-i (soft)  
10 tōri See § 105

- 11 das-u (Vt) put/take out; send; mail  
(a letter) cf. de-ru (Vi)  
12 tsumami knob  
13 tei-on low-pitched sound  
14 kō-on high-pitched sound  
15 chōsetsu (Nv) adjust

- 16 kurasu 'class'  
17 kore hodo as (N) to this degree  
18 mitsuke-ru (Vt) find out, discover  
cf. mitsukar-u (Vi)

## Dai 26-ka Sutereo o Kau

**1** Yamada-san, ii tokoro de aimashita. Kore kara, *sutereo* o kai ni iku tokoro desu ga, doko ka yasukute ii mise o shirimasen ka?

—*Sutereo!* Sore wa ii desu ne. Watashi mo kaitai to omotte-ita tokoro desu. Issho-ni mi ni ikimashō ka? Nippon-bashi no mise ga ii to iu hanashi desu.

\* \* \*

**2** *Sutereo* ga hoshii no desu ga.

—Dore gurai no ga ii desu ka?

Sō desu ne. Watashi ga tanoshimu tame ni kau to iu yori kodomotachi no tame ni kau no desu. Sugu kowashitari shimasu kara, yasukereba yasui hodo ii desu ga...

—Kore wa dō desu ka? Te-goro da to omoimasu ga...

**3** Ichi-do oto o kikasete-moraemasu ka? ..Sukoshi oto ga katai desu ne. Yamada-san, dō desu ka?

—Watashi mo sō omoimasu. Mukō ni aru no wa dō deshō. Are wa kōkoku de ii oto ga deru to itte-imashita yo.

**4** Sukoshi takai desu ga, anata no iu tōri ii oto desu ne.

—Kore wa ii desu yo. Kore gurai no ga yoku urete-imasu. Kore wa kiku hito no omou tōri no oto ga dasemasu. Kono itsu-tsu no tsumami wa tei-on ya kō-on o chōsetsu-suru tame no mono desu.

**5** Kore wa nakanaka ii desu ne. Yamada-san dō desu ka?

—Taihen ii desu ne. Watashi mo kore gurai no mono ga hoshii desu. Kono *kurasu* dewa kore hodo no mono wa chotto nai deshō.

**6** Watashi wa ima made isogashikatta tame ni yukkuri ongaku o tanoshimu koto mo dekimasendeshita ga, kore kara wa hima o mitsukete yoi ongaku o kikō to omoimasu. Ongaku o kiku tame ni hima gurai wa zehi tsukuritai desu ne.

## Lesson 26 Buying a Record Player

**1** Mr. Yamada, just the man I wanted to see. I'm on my way to buy a stereo set, and I wondered if you might know of someplace that is good but inexpensive.  
—A stereo set! That's very nice. I've been wanting to get one myself. Why don't we go looking together? There's supposed to be a good place near Nippon-bashi.

**2** We'd like to see some stereo sets.

—What sort of a set did you have in mind?

Let's see. I'm not buying it so much for my own enjoyment as for my children to have fun with. Since it will probably get broken fairly soon, the cheaper the better.

—How about this one? It's not too expensive.

**3** Could I hear how it sounds? ... Sounds a little harsh to me. What do you think, Yamada?

—I think so too. What about that one over there? The advertisements say it has good reproduction.

**4** It's a little expensive, but the sound is good.

—This is a good set. And sets in this range are selling very well. You can adjust the sound the way you like it. These five controls here are to adjust the tone.

**5** This is a nice set, isn't it? What do you think, Yamada?

—It's very nice. I'd like something like this myself. It's rare to find a set this good in this price range.

**6** I've been too busy until now to sit down and enjoy good music, but from now on I want to find the time to listen to good music. Surely I can find the time for music.

### ANSWERS (pp. 316, 317)

I. 1. (A) kaku (B) kaite-iru (C) kaita 2. (A) yomu (B) yonde-iru (C) yonda 3. (A) toru (B) totte-iru (C) totta 4. (A) hairu (B) haite-iru (C) haitta 5. (A) kakeru (B) kakete-iru (C) kaketa 6. (A) shiraberu (B) shirabete-iru (C) shirabeta 7. (A) benkyō-suru (B) benkyō-shite-iru (C) benkyō-shita 8. (A) suru (B) shite-iru (C) shita

II. (A) 1. ... iku tame ni 2. ... shiraberu tame ni 3. ... iwau tame ni (B) 1. ... neta tame ni 2. ... ki ga chisai tame ni 3. ... amari dekinai/dekinakatta tame ni III. 1. Yoyaku wa hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu. 2. Aeba au hodo kanojo ga suki ni narimasu. 3. Kōjō ga fuereba fueru hodo kōgai ga ōku narimasu.

IV. 1. tame ni 2. tōri ni 3. hodo/gurai 4. tōri; hodo 5. tōri ni 6. hodo 7. tame ni; tame ni

V. "Ima nani o shite-iru tokoro desu ka?" "Jikken ga owatte, ie ni kaeru tokoro desu." "Nan no jikken desu ka?" "Masuta-ronbun no tame no jikken desu. Jikan ga amari nakatta node, isoganakereba narimasen deshita. Isogebe isogu hodo takusan machigai o shimashita." "Kyōju ga itta tōri ni shimashita ka?" "Hai, mochiron. Shikashi kyōju ga watashi ni itte-ita hodo yasashiku wa arimasen deshita."

§ 102 The Use of *tokoro*

(1) *Tokoro*, as an ordinary Noun, means 'place.'

e.g. *O-tokoro wa doko desu ka?* 'Where is your place (=Where do you live)?'

*Koko wa Natsume Sōseki ga umareta tokoro desu.*

'This is the place where Natsume Soseki was born.'

(2) *Tokoro*, on the other hand, is used as a kind of Pseudo Noun in some fixed patterns like the following; here *tokoro* means something like 'a certain point (in time or in a process).'

**V(Dict. form)+tokoro desu** 'be about to... (at this moment)'

e.g. *Ima ginkō e iku tokoro desu.* 'I am on my way to the bank.'

**V(Past form)+tokoro desu** 'have just finished...ing now'

e.g. *Ima anata ni denwa o kaketa tokoro desu.*

'I have just phoned you.'

**V-te-iru tokoro desu** 'I am in the process of ...ing'

e.g. *Ima rokuon-shite-iru tokoro desu.* 'I am recording now.'

§ 103 The Use of *tame* (*ni*)

(1) Reason or Cause:

e.g. *Kinō kaminari ga ochita tame ni teiden ni narimashita.*

'There was a power failure because of the lightning yesterday.'

*Teiden no tame ni nani mo dekimasen deshita.*

'Because of the power failure, I couldn't do anything.'

(2) Purpose:

e.g. *Kekkon-suru tame ni o-kane o tamete-imasu.*

'I am saving money (in order) to get married.'

cf. *Gohan o tabe ni ikimasu/kimasu/kaerimasu.* (See § 34)

§ 104 The Use of *hodo* as a Pseudo Noun

e.g. *Kare wa anata ga iu hodo warui ningen dewa arimasen.*

'He is not so bad a person as you say he is.'

*Kyōto wa Ōsaka hodo ōkiku nai desu.* 'Kyoto is not so large as Osaka.'

*Anata wa Nippon-go ga jōzu desu ne.* 'You speak very good Japanese.'

—lie, sore hodo dewa arimasen.

'No, not all that much (=not to the extent that you praise me).'

*Hodo*, preceded by the Conditional '(-*r*)eba form' (See § 95), forms the following fixed pattern:

**Predicate (-*r*) eba form)+Predicate (Dict. form) hodo...**

'The more..., the more...'

e.g. *Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu.* 'The earlier the better.'

*Kangaereba kangaeru hodo wakaranaku narimasu.*

'The more I think about it, the more difficult it is to understand.'

§ 105 The Use of *tōri*

e.g. *Watashi ga iu tōri ni kaite-kudasai.*

'Please write it as I say it (=the way I say it).'

*Kore wa mina ga iu hodo kantan-na mondai dewa arimasen.*

'This is not so simple a problem as everyone says it is.'

—Sono tōri desu. 'That's right.'

§ 106 *-tte*: A Contraction in Informal Conversation

e.g. *O-mikoshi-tte nan desu ka?* (←*O-mikoshi to iu (mo)no wa nan desu ka?*)

'What is *omikoshi*, anyway?'

*Yamada-san kyō kuru-tte.* (←*Yamada-san wa kyō kuru to itte-imasu.*)

'Yamada says he will come today.'



I. Practice the pattern '...tokoro desu' as shown in the example.

Ex. (gohan o taberu) tokoro desu.

(A) Gohan o taberu tokoro desu.

(B) Gohan o tabete-iru tokoro desu.

(C) Gohan o tabeta tokoro desu.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. (tegami o kaku)  | 5. (denwa o kakeru)                          |
| 2. (shinbun o yomu) | 6. (jiko no gen'in <sup>1</sup> o shiraberu) |
| 3. (shashin o toru) | 7. (benkyō-suru)                             |
| 4. (furo ni hairu)  | 8. (ryokō no junbi o suru)                   |

II. Connect (a) and (b) using 'tame (ni).'

(A) Ex. (a) Kare wa kekkon-shimasu. (b) O-kane o tamete<sup>2</sup>-imasu.

→Kare wa kekkon-suru tame ni o-kane o tamete-imasu.

1. (a) Kanojo wa gaikoku e ikimasu. (b) Kaisha o yamemashita.<sup>3</sup>  
 2. (a) Kono mondai o shirabemasu. (b) Iin-kai<sup>4</sup> o tsukurimashō.  
 3. (a) Sotsugyō o iwaimasu. (b) *Pati* o hirakimashō.  
 (B) Ex. (a) Tomodachi to hanashite-imashita. (b) Osoku narimashita.  
 →Tomodachi to hanashite-ita tame ni osoku narimashita.  
 1. (a) Yūbe osoku nemashita. (b) Kesa wa asa-nebō<sup>5</sup> o shimashita.  
 2. (a) Kanojo wa ki ga chiisai<sup>6</sup> desu. (b) Jibun no iken o iu koto ga dekimasen.  
 3. (a) Kare wa Nippon-go ga amari dekimasen. (b) Kurō<sup>7</sup>-shimashita.

## 語句

1 gen'in cause	iin member of a committee
2 tame-ru (Vt) save (money), accumulate	5 asa-nebō (Nv) sleeping till late in the morning
3 yame-ru (Vt) quit; stop	nebō (Nv) late rising/riser
4 iin-kai committee	6 ki ga chiisa-i timid, cautious

III. Make sentences using the key phrases as shown in the example.

Ex. (shiken) (yasashii) (ii)→Shiken wa yasashikereba yasashii hodo ii desu.

1. (yoyaku<sup>8</sup>) (hayai) (ii)  
 2. (au) (kanojo ga suki ni naru)  
 3. (kōjō ga fueru) (kōgai ga ōku naru)

IV. Fill in the blanks with 'tōri (ni),' 'hodo,' 'gurai,' or 'tame (ni).'

1. *Sutoraiki*<sup>9</sup> no ( ) kyō wa densha ga tomarimasu.  
 2. Kono mihon<sup>10</sup> no ( ) tsukutte-kudasai.  
 3. Kare wa zenzen ugokenai ( ) tsukarete-imasu.  
 4. Kan-ji wa omotte-ita ( ) taihen muzukashii desu ga, kaiwa wa omotte-ita ( ) muzukashiku nai desu.  
 5. Anata ga watashi ni hanashita ( ) shimashita ga shippai<sup>11</sup>-shimashita.  
 6. Nippon no natsu wa taihen atsui desu ga, fuyu wa sore ( ) samuku nai desu.  
 7. Anata wa taberu ( ) hataraitte-imasu ka, hataraku ( ) tabete-imasu ka?

V. Put the following into Japanese.

"What are you doing now?" "I have just finished an experiment, and now I'm going home." "What is the experiment for?"

"It's for my Master's thesis.<sup>12</sup> I didn't have enough time, so I had to rush. But the more I hurried, the more mistakes I made."

"Did you do it just as your professor had told you?"

"Yes, of course. But it was not as easy as it sounded (as he had said)."

cf. ki ga ōki-i (bold, generous, broad-minded)

7 kurō (Nv) hardship, suffering

8 yoyaku (Nv) reservation

9 *sutoraiki* 'strike,' walk-out

10 mihon sample

11 shippai (Nv) failure

12 *masuta-ronbun* Master's thesis

*masuta* 'master'

## WASSHOI, WASSHOI!

—Mō soro-soro, o-matsuri no gyōretsu<sup>1</sup>  
ga kuru koro desu yo. O-shaberi<sup>2</sup> wa  
yamete, mi ni ikimasen ka?

Mochiron, ikimasu yo. O-matsuri o miru  
tame ni kita n desu kara.

—O-mise-suru hodo rippa-na mono dewa  
arimasen ga ne.

Iya, zehi, Nippon no matsuri wa  
mite-ikitai to omoimasu.

—Hora,<sup>3</sup> fue ya kane no oto ga kikoete-  
kita deshō? Yatte-kimashita<sup>4</sup> yo.  
Takusan no hito ga katsuide<sup>5</sup>-iru  
mono ga aru deshō?

Are o o-mikoshi<sup>6</sup> to iimasu.

Hohō, o-mikoshi desu ka?

—Sō desu. Chiisai hō ga kodomo no  
mikoshi de, ato kara otona no mikoshi  
mo kimashita yo.

Nani o sakende<sup>7</sup>-iru no desu ka?

—It's almost time for the  
festival procession to  
pass by here. Shall we  
stop talking and go see  
it?

Of course, let's go. I  
came here mainly for the  
festival.

—Though, honestly, it isn't  
really all that great.  
Oh, but please. I really  
want to see a Japanese  
festival before I leave.

—Listen, can you hear the  
sounds of the flutes and  
bells? Here it comes.  
Do you see that thing  
all those people are  
carrying? That's called  
an "omikoshi."

So that's an "omikoshi"!

—That's it. The small one  
is for children, and the  
adults' "omikoshi" is  
coming later.

What are they shouting?

## 語句

- 1 gyōretsu (Nv) proces-  
sion; queue
- 2 o-shaberi (Nv) chatter-  
ing ←shaber-u (speak,  
chatter)
- 3 Hora Look, There!
- 4 yatte-kuru come
- 5 katsug-u carry on the  
shoulder; play a trick on;  
be superstitious
- 6 mikoshi (a portable  
shrine used in Shinto  
festivals)
- 7 sakeb-u cry out, shout
- 8 Wasshoi, wasshoi!  
Heave-ho, heave-ho!
- 9 kake-goe encouraging  
shout

—They're shouting their  
chant of "Wasshoi, was-  
shoi!"

Isn't that a "shishimai"  
coming from behind?

—Hey, you know all about  
this. It certainly is.

I've seen photographs of  
them before. By the way,  
how many people are  
there in this parade?

—Let's see... Probably  
about a hundred or so,  
wouldn't you say?

So many! Where do they  
go?

—I'm sure they're going  
to the shrine a little way  
beyond here.

Shall we follow?

—No, let's not. Even if  
you go to the shrine,  
there's nothing special  
there.

—Are wa "Wasshoi, wasshoi!"<sup>8</sup> to  
kake-goe<sup>9</sup> o kakete-iru tokoro desu.

Ushiro no hō kara kuru no wa  
'shishi-mai' dewa nai desu ka?

—Hē, yoku shitte-imasu ne.

Sono tōri desu yo.

Izen, shashin de mita koto ga arimasu.

Tokorode, kono *paredo*<sup>10</sup> niwa nan-nin  
hodo no hito ga imasu ka?

—Sō desu ne... hyaku-nin gurai  
ja nai desu ka.

Takusan no hito desu ne.

Doko made iku no deshō ka?

—Tashika, kono saki ni aru jinja made  
da to omoimasu yo.

Tsuite-ikimashō<sup>11</sup> ka?

—Iya, yoshimashō.<sup>12</sup>

Jinja made ittatte, betsu-ni<sup>13</sup>  
dōt-te koto wa nai<sup>14</sup> desu yo.

- kake-goe o kake-ru  
shout time/encourage-  
ment
- 10 *paredo* 'parade'
  - 11 *tsuite-iku* accompany  
cf. *tsuite-kuru* See § 86
  - 12 *yos-u* = *yame-ru* stop/  
refrain from
  - 13 *bet-su-ni* (...nai) in  
particular, special
  - 14 *dōt-te koto wa nai* = *dō* to  
*iu* koto wa nai It is noth-  
ing to get excited about.;  
It's nothing to surprise  
(or worry) you.



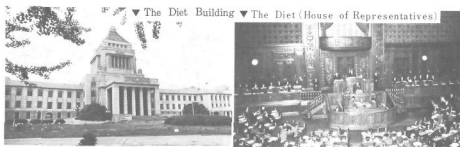
▶ Omikoshi

## 日本の政治

1945年、日本が負けて、第二次世界大戦は終わった。この悲惨な戦争に対する反省から、日本国民は、再び戦争のための武器はとらないことを強く誓っている。日本国憲法の第9条では、戦争を永久に放棄すると述べている。

ところが、今の日本には「自衛隊」がある。この「自衛隊」が憲法に違反しているかどうかについて、活発な議論がたまたまわされてきた。この問題をはじめとして、経済、外交、民生問題など、国政の重要な問題を討議するところが国会である。この国会は、衆議院と参議院とに分かれているが、それぞれの議員は、選挙によって直接、国民から選ばれる。選挙は、20歳以上のすべての国民が、自分の考えるところを政治に反映させたいせつな機会である。しかし、その投票率はそれほど高くはなく、いつも65%ぐらいである。

現在、日本にある政党は五つである。自民党、社会党、共産党、公明党、民社党である。自民党は、戦後ほとんどの期間、政権を担当してきたが、その支持率は徐々に減ってきている。今の日本には、国際平和の問題や、物価、農業、住宅、教育、老人などの問題がたくさんあって、すべて政治的解決が必要になってきている。しかし、投票率の低さにも見られるとおり、政治に対する無関心層はたいへん多い。これらの問題を政府に解決させるためには、どうしても国民ひとりひとりが、政治について、もっと真剣に考えなければならない。



▼ The Diet Building ▼ The Diet (House of Representatives)

With Japan's defeat and the end of the War in 1945, the Japanese people reacted to the tragedy of war by vowing to never again take up arms for war. Article 9 of the Japanese Constitution notes this renunciation forever of war.

However, Japan currently maintains "Self-Defense Forces" and there is considerable argument over whether or not this is in violation of the Constitution. This issue, as well as other economic, diplomatic, welfare, and other important policy questions, is to be debated and resolved in the Diet. The Diet is divided into the House of Representatives and House of Councillors, members of both houses being selected by direct popular election. While elections are thus an important chance for all adults to influence government, the voter turnout is lower than one would expect, holding steady at about 65%.

The five Japanese political parties at present are the Liberal Democratic Party (LDP), Japan Socialist Party (JSP), Japan Communist Party (JCP), *Komeito*, and Democratic Socialist Party (DSP). Although the LDP has been in power for almost all of the postwar period, its voter support has gradually fallen off.

Japan is today faced with a vast number of problems requiring political solutions, such as those of international peace, prices, agriculture, housing, education, and the aged, yet there is considerable apathy toward politics, as reflected in the low voter turnouts. However, every citizen must show more interest in politics if the Government is to solve these problems.

## 語句

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Dai-ni-ji-sekai-taisen World War II  | 17 minsei civil administration                                |
| 2 hisan (Na) miserable   | 18 kokusei national administration                            |
| 3 hansei (Nv) looking back on what one has done and trying to find what went wrong     | 19 tōgi (Nv) discuss  |
| 4 futatabi again   | 20 kettei (Nv) decision                                       |
| 5 buki weapon  | 21 kokkai the National Diet/Parliament                        |
| buki tor-u take up arms  | 22 Sangin the House of Councillors                            |
| 6 chikai-a-u promise each other, mutual vows cf. chika-u (promise, vow)                | 23 seitō political party                                      |
| 7 Nippon-koku-kenpō the Japanese Constitution  | 24 Jimin-tō the Liberal Democratic Party tō (political) party |
| 8 dai...-jō the...-th article  | 25 Shakai-tō the Socialist Party                              |
| 9 eikyū (N) eternity   | 26 Kyōsan-tō the Communist Party                              |
| 10 hōki (Nv) being up, abandon   | 27 Kōmei-tō the <i>Komei</i> Party                            |
| 11 Jieitai the (Japanese) Self-Defense Forces jie-i (Nv) self-defense -tai force, army | 28 Minsha-tō the Democratic Socialist Party                   |
| 12 ihan (Nv) violating (a rule)  | 29 seiken administrative power                                |
| 13 kappatsu (Na) active  | 30 tantō (Nv) being in charge of, being responsible for       |
| 14 giron (Nv) discussion, debate   | 31 shiji (Nv) support, backing                                |
| 15 tatakawas-u = tatakawase-ru set...to fight cf. tataka-u (fight)                     | 32 kokusai-heiwa = seikai-heiwa world peace heiwa peace       |
| 16 gaikō diplomacy cf. gaikō-kan (diplomat)  | 33 seiji-teki (Na) political                                  |
|  | 34 kaiketsu (Nv) solution                                     |
|  | 35 mu-kanshin (N/Na) indifference                             |
|  | 36 sō layer; class  |
|  | 37 hitori-hitori each of us/them                              |

# 第 27 課

## 魚 つり

TAPE  
No. 7  
Side 2

① 急に<sup>1</sup> 寒く<sup>2</sup> なりましたね。

— 寒い<sup>3</sup> はずですよ。 きょうは「大寒<sup>3</sup>」ですから。

— そうですか。 あなたは 年の<sup>4</sup> わりに そういう ことを よく 知っていますね。

— ええ、 わたしは ずっと 祖母に<sup>5</sup> 育てられましたから。

— そんな わけて、 日本<sup>6</sup>の 古い<sup>7</sup> こよみや 行事<sup>7</sup>の ことは わりあい<sup>8</sup> よく 知っています。 たしか<sup>9</sup> 二月 四日<sup>10</sup>が「立春<sup>10</sup>」で、 三月 二十一日<sup>11</sup>が「春分<sup>11</sup>」の はずです。

② 「春分<sup>12</sup>」は「お彼岸<sup>12</sup>」とも 言いますね。 昔から「暑さ<sup>13</sup> 寒さも 彼岸<sup>13</sup>まで」と 言いますから、「春分<sup>13</sup>」までは まだまだ 寒い わけてですね。

— ところで、 山田<sup>14</sup>さんは おそいですね。 もう 来る はずですが……。

③ そうですね。 きょうの 魚<sup>15</sup>つりは 彼<sup>15</sup>が いちばん 期待<sup>14</sup>し

ていたのですから、 遅れる<sup>16</sup> はずは ないでしょう。 あなたは 初<sup>15</sup>づりに 行<sup>15</sup>ったの<sup>15</sup>でしょう。 どうでしたか。

— あまり つれませんでした<sup>17</sup>が、 楽し<sup>18</sup>かったですよ。 朝 早く<sup>16</sup> まっかな 太陽<sup>17</sup>が 海<sup>18</sup>から 上<sup>18</sup>るの<sup>18</sup>を 見<sup>18</sup>ながら、 大好き<sup>19</sup>な つりを する<sup>19</sup>のですから。

④ わたしは 行<sup>20</sup>けなくて 残念<sup>20</sup>でした。 ですから、 きょうが 初<sup>20</sup>づりと いう わけです。 山田<sup>21</sup>さんは 行<sup>21</sup>ったの<sup>21</sup>でしょうか。

— あれほど つりの 好き<sup>22</sup>な 人<sup>22</sup>が 行<sup>22</sup>かなかった はずは ないでしょう。

⑤ 近<sup>23</sup>ごろは 公害<sup>23</sup>で 海<sup>24</sup>も 川<sup>24</sup>も きたなく なりましたね。

わたしたち 「つり好き<sup>25</sup>」にとっては 悲<sup>21</sup>しい こと<sup>21</sup>ですね。

— つった さかなも 安心<sup>26</sup>して 食<sup>26</sup>べられませんし、 ほん とうに 困<sup>27</sup>りますね。 家<sup>27</sup>の 近<sup>27</sup>くにも 昔<sup>27</sup>は よい つり場<sup>23</sup>が あったのに、 こんなに 遠<sup>28</sup>くまで 出<sup>28</sup>かけなければ なりません。

— なんとかすれば 海<sup>24</sup>も 川<sup>24</sup>も もっと きれい<sup>29</sup>に できる はず なんてすかね……。

### 語句

- kyū-ni suddenly
- hazu (N) supposed to. See § 107
- Dai-kan the coldest day of the year
- ...no wari ni considering...; for... (as in 'He looks young for his age.')
- sobo grandmother cf. sofu (grandfather)
- wake See § 108 7 koyomi calendar
- wariai (N/Adv) ratio, proportion; comparatively, rather

- tashika if I remember right, surely
- Risshun (the period when signs of spring show up here and there, around February 4 in the solar calendar)
- Shunbun vernal equinox (around the 21st of March in the solar calendar)
- Higan the week around March 21 and the week around Sept. 23 in the solar calendar

- uo-tsuri = sakana-tsuri fishing uo = sakana fish
- kanashi-i sad, sorrowful
- anshin (Nv) feeling of mind, freedom from care, peeling easy
- tsuri-ba fishing spot
- nan toka suru middle through, manage to do
- ...ga ne ..., I dare say
- tsuri-zuki fishing fan

## Dai 27-ka

### Uo-tsuri

#### 1 Kyū-ni samuku narimashita ne.

—Samui hazu desu yo. Kyō wa 'Dai-kan' desu kara.

Sō desu ka. Anata wa toshi no wari ni sō iu koto o yoku shitte-imasu ne.

—Ē, watashi wa zutto sobo ni sodateraremashita kara. Sonna wake de, Nippon no furui koyomi ya gyōji no koto wa wariai yoku shitteru no desu. Tashika Ni-gatsu yok-ka ga 'Risshun' de, San-gatsu ni-jū-ichi-nichi ga 'Shunbun' no hazu desu.

#### 2 'Shunbun' wa 'O-higan' to mo iimasu ne. Mukashi kara "Atsu-sa samu-sa mo Higan made" to iimasu kara, 'Shunbun' made wa mada-mada samui wake desu ne.

—Tokorode, Yamada-san wa osoi desu ne. Mō kuru hazu desu ga....

#### 3 Sō desu ne. Kyō no uo-tsuri wa kare ga ichiban kitai-shite-ita no desu kara, okureru hazu wa nai deshō. Anata wa hatsu-zuri ni itta no deshō? Dō deshita ka?

—Amari tsuremasen deshita ga, tanoshikatta desu yo. Asa hayaku makka-na taiyō ga umi kara noboru no o minagara, dai-suki-na tsuru o suru no desu kara.

#### 4 Watashi wa ikenakute zannen deshita. Desukara, kyō ga hatsu-zuri to iu wake desu. Yamada-san wa itta no deshō ka?

—Are hodo tsuri no suki-na hito ga ikanakatta hazu wa nai deshō.

#### 5 Chika-goro wa kōgai de umi mo kawa mo kitanaku narimashita ne.

Watashi-tachi 'tsuri-zuki' ni totte wa kanashii koto desu ne.

—Tsutta sakana mo anshin-shite taberaremashen shi, hontō-ni komarimasu ne. Ie no chikaku nimo mukashi wa yoi tsuri-ba ga atta noni konna-ni tōku made dekkenakereba narimashen.

Nan toka sureba umi mo kawa mo motto kirei-ni dekiru hazu na n desu ga ne....

## Lesson 27

### Fishing

#### 1 It sure has gotten cold all of a sudden, hasn't it?

—What do you expect? Today's *Daikan*, the coldest day of the year. Is that so? You know the old traditions very well for your age.

—I was brought up by my grandmother. So I have a fair acquaintance with the old Japanese customs and festivals. If I remember right, February 4 is *Risshun*, the first day of spring, and March 21 is *Shunbun*, the vernal equinox.

#### 2 The equinoxes are also called *O-higan*, aren't they? There used to be an old saying that both hot and cold last until *Higan*, so I guess we've got some more cold weather ahead of us until the equinox.

—Yamada's late, isn't he? He should be along any time now.

#### 3 You're right. He was looking forward to today's fishing the most, so I don't expect he'll be late. You went on that New Year's fishing trip, didn't you? How was it?

—Didn't catch much, but it was fun. Got up early in the morning and watched the bright red sun come up over the sea while we fished.

#### 4 I'm sorry I couldn't go. Today will be my first time this year. Did Yamada go too?

—You'd hardly expect him not to have gone, the way he loves fishing.

#### 5 But the pollution sure has dirtied the rivers and oceans. It's enough to make a fisherman want to cry.

—We can't even feel safe eating our catches, it's such a messed up situation. There used to be some good fishing spots in our neighborhood, but no more. It ought to be possible somehow to clean up the rivers and seas, but....

#### ANSWERS (pp. 328, 329)

I. (A)2+(B)8 Kyūryō-bi mae desu kara, kare wa o-kane ga nai hazu desu. (A)3+(B)2 Kanojo wa jū-nen mae ni kekkon-shimashita kara, mō kodomo ga ni-san-nin iru hazu desu. (A)4+(B)4 Sono ie wa yama no naka ni arimasu kara, shizuka-na hazu desu. (A)5+(B)1 O-tō-san mo o-kā-san mo kirei-na hito desu kara, musume-san mo kirei-na hazu desu. (A)6+(B)7 Kare wa han-jikan mae ni ie o demashita kara, mō sugu koko e kuru hazu desu. (A)7+(B)5 *Dizuni* no eiga desu kara, tanoshii hazu desu. (A)8+(B)6 Tsukue no ue ni *memo* o oite-okimashita kara, kare wa mita hazu desu. (A)9+(B)9 Kare wa san-nen mae ni sotsu-gyō-shimashita kara, ano sensei ni naratta hazu desu.

II. 1. Anata ga sonna koto ni kyōmi o mochi-hajimeta wake o hanashite-kudasai.

2. Kan-ji ni nan-tōri mo yomi-kata ga aru wake ga, kono hon ni kaite-arimasu.

3. Bukka ga konna-ni takai wake o keizai-gakusha ni kikimashita.

4. Kōbe no niku ga konna-ni oishii wake wa, ushi ni *biru* o nomaseru kara desu.

5. Kare ga kekkon-shinai wake wa, kare ni o-kane ga nai kara desu.

6. Kanojo ga kono-goro tokuni kirei-na wake wa, kanojo ga ren'ai-shite-iru kara desu.

III. 1. Kono keikaku ni tsuite nan-do mo kare ni setsumei-shite-arimasu kara, yoku shitteru hazu desu. Kare ga ima kono keikaku ni hantai-suru wake ga wakarimasen.

2. Anata ga Nippon no Bukkyō ni kyōmi o motta wake wa nan desu ka? —Ni-nen mae ni Ryōan-ji no niwa o mite, taihen kandō-shimashita. Sono toki, Bukkyō o shiranakereba, Nippon no niwa no hontō no imi ga waku hazu ga nai to oshieraremashita. Sorede, Bukkyō o benkyō-shi-hajimeta wake desu.

§ 107 The Use of the Pseudo Noun *hazu*Sentence + **hazu desu.**

'It is supposed to be that....'

'It should be that....'

NB: Negative:... ga/wa arimasen/nai.

This pattern indicates that the speaker supposes that something is a certain way and has a reason for supposing it to be so.

e.g. *Marisa wa kyō konai hazu desu.*

'I don't suppose Marisa will come today.'

This sentence means that the speaker thinks Marisa is not coming because, for instance, she told him that she was not coming, he knows that she left town the previous day, she is sick, etc.

Some more examples:

*Ima denwa shitara, kare wa uchi ni iru hazu desu.*

'If you call him now, he should be at home.'

*Yamada-san kara denwa ga atta hazu desu ga, anata wa shirimasen ka?*

'Yamada is supposed to have called me. Do you know anything about it?'

*Marisa wa Nippon-go ga jōzu-na hazu desu yo. Go-nen mo Nippon ni iru no desu kara.*

'It's quite natural (or, it's no wonder, it's nothing to be surprised at, etc.) that Marisa is good at Japanese, since she has been in Japan for five years.'

*Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka? 'Is (your) departure tomorrow?'*

—Hai, sono hazu desu. 'Yes, it is supposed to be.'

*Marisa ga sore o shiranai hazu wa arimasen.*

'It can't be (or, it is impossible) that Marisa doesn't know this.'

§ 108 The Use of the Pseudo Noun *wake*

(1) Reason:

e.g. *Kare wa naze anna-ni okotte-iru no desu ka? 'Why is he so angry?'**Anata wa sono wake o shitte-imasu ka? 'Do you know why?'*

These two sentences can be combined into one as in the following.

→*Kare ga anna-ni okotte-iru wake o anata wa shitte-imasu ka?*

'Do you know why he is so angry?'

(2) Explaining the situation:

Sentence + **wake desu.**e.g. *Kanojo wa go-nen mo Nippon ni ita no dakara, Nippon-go ga jōzu-na wake da. 'She has been in Japan for five years. No wonder (=that's the reason) she is fluent in Japanese.'*NB: In this context *wake* is interchangeable with *hazu*.*Rai-getsu shuppatsu no hazu deshita ga, is-shūkan hayaku narimashita. Sorede awatete-iru wake desu.*

'My departure was supposed to be next month, but it has been moved up a week. That is why I am in such a rush.'

*Kaisha ga gappei-shite kara, shigoto ga amari omoshiroku arimasen. Kuni no haha wa byōki desu shi, kanai mo kuni ni kaeri-tai to itte-imasu. Sonna wake de, kuni e kaeru koto ni shimashita.*

'Since my company merged, I haven't been very happy with my work.'

*My mother is ill at home, and my wife says she wants to go home. Thus (the circumstances being such), I have decided to go home.'*§ 109 The Use of *noni* 'In spite of the fact that....'e.g. *Watashi ga kawanai hō ga ii to itta noni, kare wa sono kamera o katte-shimatte, komatte-imasu. 'Although (Even though) I had told him he should not buy it, he went ahead and bought the camera anyway.'*

NB: N/Na desu+noni →N/Na na noni

I. One of the sentences in (A) is the basis, in one way or another, supporting a statement in (B). Combine them and conclude the whole sentence with 'hazu desu.'

Ex. (A)1+(B)3 Ima jū-ji go-fun mae desu kara, *depāto* wa mō sugu aku hazu desu.

(A)

(B)

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ima jū-ji go-fun mae desu.   | 1. Musume-san wa kirei desu.         |
| 2. Kyūryō-bi <sup>1</sup> mae desu.   | 2. Mō kodomo ga ni-san-nin imasu.    |
| 3. Kanojo wa jū-nen mae ni kekkon-shimashita.                               | 3. <i>Depāto</i> wa mō sugu akimasu. |
| 4. Sono ie wa yama no naka ni arimasu.                                      | 4. Shizuka desu.                     |
| 5. O-tō-san mo o-kā-san mo kirei-nahito desu.                               | 5. Tanoshii desu.                    |
| 6. Kare wa han-jikan <sup>2</sup> mae ni ie o demashita.                    | 6. Kare wa mimashita.                |
| 7. <i>Dizuni</i> <sup>3</sup> no eiga desu.                                 | 7. Mō sugu koko e kimasu.            |
| 8. Tsukue no ue ni <i>memo</i> <sup>4</sup> o oite-okimashita. <sup>5</sup> | 8. Kare wa o-kane ga arimasen.       |
| 9. Kare wa san-nen mae ni sotsugyō-shimashita.                              | 9. Ano sensei ni naraimashita.       |

II. Combine (a) and (b) with 'wake,' as shown in the example.

Ex. (a) Watashi niwa wakaranai.

(b) Kare wa naze okotte<sup>6</sup>-imasu ka?

→Watashi niwa kare ga okotte-iru wake ga wakaranai.

## 語句

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 kyūryō-bi pay day                     | 5 oite-ok-u leave...behind and come |
| 2 han-jikan half an hour                | 6 okor-u get/be angry               |
| 3 <i>Dizuni</i> 'Walt Disney' (1901-66) | 7 dō shite How, Why                 |
| 4 <i>memo</i> 'memo'                    | 8 -tōri (N) different ways/methods  |

- (a) Hanashite-kudasai.  
(b) Anata wa dō shite<sup>7</sup> sonna koto ni kyōmi o mochi-hajimemashita ka?
- (a) Kono hon ni kaite-arimasu.  
(b) Kan-ji ni naze nan-tōri<sup>8</sup> mo yomi-kata ga arimasu ka?
- (a) Keizai-gaku-sha<sup>9</sup> ni kikimashita.  
(b) Naze konna-ni bukka ga takai desu ka?
- (a) Ushi ni *biru* o nomaseru<sup>10</sup> kara desu.  
(b) Kōbe no niku<sup>11</sup> wa naze konna-ni oishii desu ka?
- (a) Kare niwa o-kane ga nai kara desu.  
(b) Dō shite kare wa kekkon-shimasen ka?
- (a) Kanojo wa ren'ai<sup>12</sup>-shite-iru kara desu.  
(b) Naze kanojo wa kono-goro tokuni kirei desu ka?

III. Put the following into Japanese using 'wake' or 'hazu.'

1. I have explained this plan<sup>13</sup> to him many times, so he should understand it well.

I can't see why he is opposed to this plan now.

2. Tell me how you came to be interested in Buddhism.

—Two years ago, I visited the garden at Ryoan-ji Temple<sup>14</sup> and was greatly impressed. I was then told that I could not understand the real meaning of Japanese gardens without knowing about Buddhism. That is why I began to study Buddhism.



▶The garden at Ryoan-ji Temple

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9 keizai-gaku-sha economist            | 12 ren'ai (Nv) love between man and woman |
| 10 nomas-u=nomase-ru make/let... drink | 13 keikaku (Nv) plan                      |
| 11 niku meat                           | 14 Ryōan-ji (a temple in Kyoto)           |

## IRASSHAIMASE

Gomen kudasai.

—Irasshaimase.

Ōsaka-dō<sup>1</sup> no 'Kokugo-gaku'<sup>2</sup> Jiten' o kudasai.

—Mōshiwake arimasen ga,  
tada-ima<sup>3</sup> shina-gire<sup>4</sup> desu.

Okashii desu ne. Sen-shū denwa de chūmon-shita toki, kyō atari<sup>5</sup> hairu hazu da to iu koto deshita yo.

Sorede kyō yotta wake desu.

—Ima sugu o-shirabe-shimasu ga,  
nan-yōbi ni go-chūmon-itadakimashita ka?

Ē... to, are wa, tomodachi no ie ni itta hi da kara, tashika, sen-shū no Do-yōbi no hazu desu.

—(Chūmon-kōdo o shirabenagara)

Ā, tashika-ni chūmon wa o-uke-shite-imasu ne. Mōshiwake arimasen ga, kyō no gogo atari hairu hazu desu

Excuse me.  
—Welcome.  
I'd like the Osaka-do *Dictionary of Japanese Linguistics*, please.

—I'm sorry, but we don't have it in stock.

That's strange. When I phoned in my order last week, I was told it would be here today or so. That's why I came by for it today.

—I'll check for you.

On what day exactly did we have your order?

Well, let me see. That was the day I visited my friend's place, so it must have been last Saturday.

—(Checking the orders)

Yes, we certainly received your order. I'm sorry, but your book will be in this

afternoon.

Then, I'll come back in a couple of days.

—I'm really sorry about this.

By the way, do you have a complete set of *The History of the Japanese Language* published by Okada-shoten?

—Yes, we should have them all. On one of the top shelves at the far end of the room.

How much for the set?

—6,400 yen. If you're not in a hurry, we can deliver them.

In that case, I'd like them delivered.

Would you please?

ga...

Jā, ni-san-nichi shite kara<sup>6</sup>  
mata kimasu.

—Hontō-ni ai-sumimasen.<sup>7</sup>

Tokorode, Okada-shoten<sup>8</sup> kara dete-iru 'Nippon-go no Rekishi' wa sorotte-imasuka?

—Ē, zenbu aru hazu desu. Ano oku no tana<sup>9</sup> no ue no hō desu.

Zenbu de ikura desu ka?

—Roku-sen-yon-hyaku-en desu.

O-isogi<sup>10</sup> de nakereba  
o-todoke<sup>11</sup>-shimasu ga...

Jā, todokete-moraimashō.

O-negai-shimasu.

## 語句

- 1 -dō (Suf. to a name of a shop)
- 2 kokugo-gaku study of the national language, Japanese (traditional) linguistics
- 3 koku-go national language
- 4 tada-ima (N/Adv) this moment, in a minute; (Cph: used when one has come home)
- 5 shina-gire (N) out of stock
- 6 atari (N/Adv) around...
- 7 (time) shite (kara) after...has passed
- 8 ai-sumimasen (Cph) very sorry
- 9 shoten book shop; publishing company
- 10 tana shelf
- 11 isogi (N) haste←-isog+u
- 12 todoke-ru deliver; report (to an office)

▼ Bookshops in Kanda





## 日本の文学—2

武家政治によって、貴族階級はおとろえた。したがって、貴族社会をえがいた「源氏物語」などの王朝文学にかわって、戦争をえがいた物語がさかんになった。その代表的なものが「平家物語」である。ここでわすれてならないのは、漢語をうまく使って、きびきびした文体を作り出したことだ。和歌の世界でも、新しい手法が生まれた。多くの戦争を経験した人々は、現

実の世界が信じられなくて、遠い過去の世界やゆめなどをえがくことが多かった。「方丈記」や「徒然草」ももりかえし無常を説いた。

やがて、庶民文学として、俳句や近世小説が生まれ、芭蕉や西鶴が活躍した。

劇の世界では近松が活躍する。この三人のそろった元禄時代は、わが文学史のルネッサンスと言われることもある。西鶴も近松も、人間の恋愛を大胆に表現した。彼らの文学は、この方向で発展すれば、当然、人間解放の文学となるはずであったのだが、封建社会の壁にはばまれて、義理人情の世界に迷いこんでしまった。近松のほとんどの劇は、心中で終わっている。自己否定の文学と言われるわけである。

▼Chikamatsu



▼Saikaku



▼Basho



As the nobility was weakened by the various warrior clans, monarchic literature such as *Genji-Monogatari* depicting the nobles' life was replaced by tales of war. *Heike-Monogatari* is typical of this genre, and these are memorable for their skillful use of Chinese words and their sharp writing.

Even in the *waka*, new techniques were born when, the many wars experienced having made it impossible for them to believe any longer in reality, people turned to the distant past and dreams for their motifs. *Hojoki*, *Tsurezure-gusa*, and others repeatedly invoke the insignificance of life.

In the mean time, *haiku* and modern novels came into being as popular literature, with Basho and Saikaku active. In the theater, Chikamasa was active. The Genroku Era which these three led is sometimes called a renaissance in Japanese literary history. Both Saikaku and Chikamasa wrote boldly of love, and had their work developed in this direction it most likely would have become a literature of liberation. However, they ran up against the barriers of feudal society and floundered on the problem of duty versus compassion. Most of Chikamasa's plays end in suicide, such that they have been called a literature of self-denial.

## 語句

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 kizoku nobleman/-woman, aristocrat                                    | masses   |
| 2 shitagatte therefore, consequently                                    | 23 kinsei the pre-modern period (Edo Period)   |
| 3 egak-u describe, depict   | 24 Saikaku (a novelist-poet in the early Edo Period; 1642-93)                            |
| 4 ōchō dynasty  | 25 katsuyaku (Nv) being active, playing an important role                                |
| 5 daihyō-teki (Na) representative, typical                              | 26 Genroku-jidai the Genroku Era (early Edo Period)                                      |
| 6 <i>Heike Monogatari The Tale of the Heike Family</i>                  | 27 bungaku-shi history of literature   |
| 7 -te naranai = -te(wa) ikenai must not                                 | -shi history ←rekishi  |
| 8 kan-go old Chinese words/language                                     | 28 <i>Renessansu</i> "Renaissance"   |
| 9 umaku skillfully, well ←uma-i (skillful, good at)                     | 29 ningen human-being  |
| 10 kibi-kibi (to) (onomat) brisk, lively; efficient                     | 30 daitan (Na) bold, daring, fearless  |
| 11 tsukuri-das-u produce, create  | 31 hōkō direction  |
| 12 shuhō technique, method  | 32 tōzen (N/Adv) as a matter of course   |
| 13 keiken (Nv) experience   | 33 kaihō (Nv) liberation   |
| 14 genjitsu (N) reality   | 34 kabe obstacle; wall   |
| 15 shinji-ru believe  | 35 habam-u hinder, obstruct  |
| 16 kako (N) the past  | 36 giri the way that a man is supposed to act in relations with other people; obligation |
| 17 <i>Hōjō-ki</i> (an essay written by Kamonō-Chōmei around 1212)       | 37 ninjō love (or hatred) or other emotions that a man naturally has as a man            |
| 18 <i>Tsurezure-gusa</i> (an essay written by Yoshida Kenko in 1324-31) | 38 mayoi-kom-u wander into a maze and get lost   |
| 19 kurikaeshi repeatedly ←kurikaes-u (repeat)                           | 39 shinjū (Nv) double suicide  |
| 20 mujō transiency of life  | 40 jiko oneself, self, ego   |
| 21 tok-u explain, preach, persuade                                      |  |
| 22 shomin the common people, the  |  |

① ウィルさん、あなたは日本の文学を研究しているそうですね。

—はい。近代文学を研究しています。アンさんも日本の文学を研究していますが、彼女のように日本語がうまくないので困っています。

② あなたもたいへんじょうずですよ。彼女は日本の古典も読めるらしいですね。ところで、新聞によれば近く京都の国際会議場で「日本文化研究国際会議」が開かれるそうですね。外国のジャパノロジストがおおぜい来るといいですよ。

—そうらしいですね。キーン教授やグルスキナ女史のよう  
うな有名な研究者がおおぜい出席するそうです。

③ わたしは専門外ですが、それはたいへんおもしろそうですね。その成果はあなたには大いに参考になりますね。

—山田さん、そろそろ帰りませんか。

雨が降りそうですから、少し急いだほうがよさそうですね。

\* \* \*

④ ウィルさん、例の国際会議はどうでしたか。新聞によるといろいろ問題があったそうですが……。ペンクラブの主催でしたが、会議の持ち方について一部の作家からいろいろと批判が出ていたらしいですね。

—ええ……。分科会も少なすぎたようでしたし、討論も日本語と英語だけで行なわれて、不都合もあつたようです。しかし、世界のジャパノロジストが初めて集まりを持ったことはたいへん意義深いことだと思います。

⑤ そうですね。そのことには問題はなさそうですね。

—それに、日本研究が戦後いちじるしく発達し、くわしい研究が行なわれるようになったことがよくわかりました。

## 語句

- 1 Uru 'Will' (a given name)  
2 sō be said to; look like See § 111  
3 yō the same way as..., like...  
4 uma-i skillful, good (at); tasty  
5 rashi-i seem to See § 112  
6 ...ni yoreba according to...  
7 chikaku in the near future  
8 Kokusai-kaigi-jō International Conference Hall  
9 Nippon-bunka-kenkyū study of Japa-

- nese culture  
10 Japanorajisuto 'Japanologist'  
11 Kin 'Keene'  
12 Gurusukina 'Gruskin'a' (a famous Soviet Japanologist)  
13 joshi Mrs., Miss, Ms. (for famous women)  
14 kenkyū-sha researcher  
15 senmon-gai (N) out of one's field/  
specialty -gai out of

- 16 seika great success, achievement  
17 ō-ni greatly, to a great extent  
18 pen-kurabu 'P.E.N. Club'  
19 shusai (Nv) sponsorship, promoting  
20 mochi-kata how to hold  
21 hihan (Nv) criticizing  
22 bunka-kai sub-committee meeting  
23 -sugi-ru too..., excessively...  
24 tōron (Nv) debate, discussion  
25 fu-tsugō (Na) inconvenience

- 26 hajimete for the first time  
cf. hajime wa at first hajime ni  
first of all  
27 atsumari meeting  
--atsumaru (assemble, gather)  
28 igi-buka-i significant, fruitful  
igi significance; sense, meaning  
-bukai = fuka-i deep  
29 ichijirushi-i remarkable, distinguish-  
ing, considerable

Dai 28-ka  
Nippon-kenkyū

- 1 Uiru-san, anata wa Nippon no bungaku o kenkyū-shite-iru sō desu ne.  
—Hai, kindai-bungaku o kenkyū-shite-imasu. An-san mo Nippon no bungaku o kenkyū-shite-imasu ga, kanojo no yō-ni Nippon-go ga umaku nai node komatte-imasu.
- 2 Anata mo taihen jōzu desu yo. Kanojo wa Nippon no koten mo yomeru rashii desu ne. Tokorode, shinbun ni yoreba chikaku Kyōto no Kokusai-kaigi-jō de “Nippon-bunka-kenkyū Kokusai-kaigi” ga hirakareru sō desu ne. Gaikoku no *Japanorojisuto* ga ōzei kuru rashii desu yo.  
—Sō rashii desu ne. Kin-kyōju ya *Gurusukina-joshi* no yō-na yūmei-na kenkyū-sha ga ōzei shusseki-suru sō desu.
- 3 Watashi wa senmon-gai desu ga, sore wa taihen omoshirosō desu ne. Sono seika wa anata niwa ō-ni sankō ni narisō desu ne.  
—Yamada-san, soro-soro kaerimashō ka?  
Ame ga furisō desu kara, sukoshi isoida hō ga yo-sasō desu ne.
- \* \* \*
- 4 Uiru-san, rei no kokusai-kaigi wa dō deshita ka? Shinbun ni yoruto, iroiro mondai ga atta sō desu ga.... *Pen-Kurabu* no shusai deshita ga, kaigi no mochi-kata ni tsuite ichi-bu no sak-ka kara iroiro to hihan ga dete-ita rashii desu ne.  
—Ē... bunka-kai mo sukuna-sugita yō deshita shi, tōron mo Nippon-go to Ei-go dake de okonawarete, fu-tsugō mo atta yō desu. Shikashi, sekai no *Japanorojisuto* ga hajimete atsumari o motta koto wa taihen igi-bukai koto da to omoimasu.
- 5 Sō desu ne. Sono koto niwa mondai wa na-sasō desu ne.  
—Soreni, Nippon-kenkyū ga sen-go ichijirushiku hattatsu-shi, kuwashii kenkyū ga okonawareru yō-ni natta koto ga yoku wakarimashita.

Lesson 28  
Japanology

- 1 I hear you're studying Japanese literature, Will.  
—Yes, I'm doing research on modern literature. Ann is also studying Japanese literature, but I'm having trouble because my Japanese is not as good as hers.
- 2 But you're quite proficient. I hear she can even read the classics. Say, I see by the paper that there's going to be an international conference on Japanese culture at the International Conference Hall in Kyoto. A lot of foreign Japanologists are supposed to come.  
—That's what I hear. There are supposed to be a lot of famous scholars coming, like Keene and Gruskina.
- 3 It's not my field, but it sounds very interesting. I expect you'll find the results of the conference very helpful.  
—I guess we'd better be getting home, Yamada.  
It looks like rain, so we'd better hurry.
- \* \* \*
- 4 How was the conference, Will? The newspapers said there were some problems, but what was it? It was sponsored by the P.E.N. Club, but it seems there was considerable criticism from some writers about the way it was done.  
—Well, there weren't enough group sessions, and the discussion was only in Japanese and English, so some people were not very happy, I hear. But I think it was still very significant as the first gathering of the world's Japanologists.
- 5 I guess you're right. There doesn't seem to be any disagreement on that point.  
—Also it showed me that Japanology has made great strides since the War and that detailed research is being done.

ANSWERS (pp. 340, 341)

- I. 1. a. ame ga furi b. ame ga furu 2. a. oishii b. oishi 3. a. yoi b. yo-sa 4. a. benri b. benri da 5. a. na-sa/naï b. nai
- II. 1. ...byōki rashii desu. 2. ...kita rashii desu. 3. ...oishii rashii desu. 4. ...nai rashii desu. 5. (none) 6. ...datta rashii desu.
- III. 1. Kare wa kanemochi rashii. 2. Kare wa kanemochi rashikatta. 3. Kare wa sensō mae wa kanemochi datta rashii. 4. Watashi wa sono hito ni ni-nen mae Kyōto de atta. Kare wa sono tōki o-kane ni komatte-ite, tochi o urō to shite-ita. Kare wa mukashi wa taihen kanemochi datta rashikatta.
- IV. 1. (yō-ni) Please write the way I write. 2. (yō-na) I once heard a story as follows. 3. (yō-ni) She gradually became able to walk. 4. (yō-ni) I did as my teacher had told me to, but it did not work. 5. (yō-na) Her cheeks are like apples. 6. (yō-ni) She prayed to God that her child would recover soon. 7. (yō-ni) She stood up suddenly as if remembering something.

## § 110 Presumption or Estimation based upon an Observation

V(Conj. form)	} +sō desu.	'It { looks like....' looks....' appears....'
A		
(stem)		
Na		
N no yō desu.		

- e.g. Ame ga furisō desu. 'It looks like rain.'  
 Himo ga kiresō desu. 'The string looks like it's going to break.'  
 Kono ringo wa oishisō desu ne. 'This apple looks delicious, doesn't it?'  
 Kono eiga wa amari omoshirosō dewa arimasen ne.  
 'This movie doesn't look very interesting, does it?'  
 Are wa sha-chō no yō desu ne. 'That man looks like the boss.'  
 NB: (...)nai becomes (...)na-sasō  
 ii becomes yo-sasō

## § 111 Hearsay

Sentence + sō desu.	'I hear that....'
	'They say that....'

- e.g. Ame ga furu sō desu. 'They (radio, newspaper, etc.) say it will rain.'  
 Kinō Hokkaidō de ō-yuki ga futta sō desu.  
 'They say there was a heavy snow in Hokkaido yesterday.'  
 Shinbun ni yoruto, ano eiga wa taihen ii sō desu.  
 'According to the newspaper, that movie is very good.'  
 Ano hito wa yūmei-na joyū da sō desu.  
 'They say she is a famous actress.'  
 Ano hito wa yūmei-na joyū datta sō desu.  
 'They say she used to be a famous actress.'

## § 112 Appearance

V (present/past)	} +rashii desu.	'It seems that....'
A (present/past)		
Na		
N		
		'It appears that....'

'...rashii desu' is ambiguous in the sense that it is not clear whether the speaker makes that statement (of presumption or estimation) based upon his own observation or based upon information he got from some other source.

- e.g. Ame ga furu rashii desu ne. 'It seems that it's going to rain.'  
 Ame ga futta rashii desu ne. '(Since the road is wet,) it looks like it rained.'  
 Kono eiga wa omoshiroi rashii ne. 'This movie is said to be interesting.'  
 or 'This movie looks interesting.'

NB: 'N rashii desu' is slightly different from 'N no yō desu.' Both mean 'N looks like...' or 'N seems/appears to be....' but 'N no yō desu' can mean that N seems to be...but is not really, as in:

'She is just like a flying fish.' → Kanojo wa (maru de) tobi-uo no yō desu. (or, tobi-uo mitai desu which is slightly colloquial).

'N rashii' cannot be used in this descriptive way.

## § 113 Other Use of yō

V (present/past)	} +yō-na/-ni ...	'In the manner of....'
A (present/past)		
Na-na/datta		
N no/datta		
		'Like....'
		'Just like....'

- e.g. Kanojo wa tobi-uo no yō-ni hayaku oyogu.  
 'She swims as fast as a flying fish.'  
 Kanojo wa Nippon-jin no yō-na kao o shite-iru.  
 'She has a Japanese-looking face.'  
 Anata ga itta yō-ni (=itta tōri), are wa muzukashii shigoto deshita.  
 'As you said, that was tough work.'

## I. Fill in the blanks using the key words.

1. (rain) a. Sora ga kumotte<sup>1</sup>-ite, ( ) sō desu.  
 b. *Rajio* ni yoruto, gogo kara ( ) sō desu.
2. (delicious) a. Ane no hanashi dewa, akai ringo no hō ga ( ) sō desu.  
 b. Kono ringo wa akakute, ( ) sō desu.
3. (good) a. Gakusei-tachi ni kiite-miruto, kono *taipu-raitā* wa hontō-ni ( ) sō desu.  
 b. Chotto miruto, kono *taipu-raitā* wa ( ) sō desu ga, hontō wa<sup>2</sup> amari yoku nai desu.
4. (convenient) a. Kono daidokoro<sup>3</sup> wa sekkei<sup>4</sup> ga yokute, ( ) sō desu.  
 b. Kanojo ni yoruto, kanojo no atarashii ie no daidokoro wa ( ) sō desu.
5. (there is no...) a. Kore yori hōhō<sup>5</sup> wa ( ) sō desu.  
 b. Sekkei-sha<sup>6</sup> no setsume<sup>7</sup> ni yoruto, kore yori hōhō wa ( ) sō desu.

## II. Correct the errors, if any.

1. Kanojo wa byōki da rashii desu.  
 2. *Takushi* ga kimashita rashii desu.  
 3. Ano mise no *kōhi* wa oishi rashii desu.  
 4. Kanojo wa o-kane ga amari nakute rashii desu.  
 5. Konban gakusei-tachi no *pāti* ga aru rashii desu.  
 6. Kare wa mukashi sensei da rashii desu.

## 語句

- 1 kumor-u get cloudy/dim  
 2 hontō wa the truth is, in reality  
 3 daidokoro kitchen

- 4 sekkei (Nv) planning, design (for a building or a city)  
 5 hōhō means, method

## III. Put the following into Japanese (in the Plain style).

1. He seems to be rich.  
 2. He seemed to be rich.  
 3. He seems to have been rich before the War.  
 4. I met the man two years ago in Kyoto. He was in financial trouble at that time and was going to sell his land. He seemed to have been very rich a long time ago.

## IV. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of 'yō (da),' and then translate the sentences.

1. Watashi no kaku ( ) kaite-kudasai.  
 2. Tsugi no ( ) hanashi o kiita koto ga aru.  
 3. Kanojo wa dandan arukeru ( ) natta.  
 4. Sensei kara oshierareta ( ) shita ga, dame datta.  
 5. Kanojo wa ringo no ( ) hoho<sup>7</sup> o shite-iru.<sup>8</sup>  
 6. Kanojo wa kodomo no byōki ga hayaku yoku naru ( ) kami-sama<sup>9</sup> ni o-inori<sup>10</sup> o shita.  
 7. Kanojo wa nani ka omoidashita ( ), totsuzen tachi-agatta.

- 6 sekkei-sha designer  
 7 hoho cheek(s)  
 8 ...o shite-i-ru have (some feature)

- See § 115  
 9 kami(-sama) God, Goddess  
 10 inori prayer ←-inor-u (pray)

## GO-SHINPAI NE....

- A: Anata no o-kā-san, nyūin<sup>1</sup>-nasatta<sup>2</sup> sō ne?
- B: Un, i-kaiyō<sup>3</sup> rashii n da.
- A: Sore wa go-shinpai ne.  
Ichi-do mimai ni ikō ka shira?
- B: Sonna hitsuyō wa nai yo.  
Sugu taiin<sup>4</sup>-dekiru rashii kara.
- A: Demo....
- B: Sore yori,<sup>5</sup> eiga ni demo ikanai?  
'Aka-hige'<sup>6</sup> ga omoshiroi rashii yo.
- A: O-kā-san ga byōki-na noni?
- B: Sore mo sō<sup>7</sup> da ne. Jā, yappari,  
byōin e ikō ka? Koko kara sonna-  
ni tōku mo nai shi.
- A: Ē, sō shimashō yo.  
Watashi, nani ka katte-iku wa.
- B: Sonna-ni ki o tsukawanakutemo ii  
yo.
- A: Demo.... Nani ga ii ka shira?  
Kudamono nanka<sup>8</sup> dō?

- A: I hear your mother has been in the hospital.
- B: Yes, it seems she's got an ulcer.
- A: You must be worried. Shall I go and look in on her some time?
- B: There's no need. I've been told that she'll be able to leave the hospital soon.
- A: But....
- B: Why don't we go to a movie instead? I hear "Red Beard" is interesting.
- A: When your mother is ill?
- B: Well, you're right... OK, shall we go to the hospital, then? It's not so far from here.
- A: Yes, let's. I'll buy something to take her.
- B: You don't need to bother.
- A: But.... What shall it be? How about fruit?

## 語句

- 1 nyūin (Nv) entering/going into the hospital, being hospitalized
- 2 nasar-u (Honorific form of suru)
- 3 i-kaiyō stomach ulcer  
i stomach kaiyō ulcer
- 4 taiin (Nv) leaving/being discharged from the hospital
- 5 sore yori rather than that, more than that
- 6 Aka-hige "Red Beard"  
(the title of a film)  
hige mustache, beard,  
whiskers
- 7 Sore mo sō da That's true too; I guess you're

- B: No. I was told she's not allowed to eat anything but hospital food. Seems everything else is out.
- A: OK, then how about magazines or flowers?
- B: Umm..., that'd be all right.
- \* \* \*
- A: Excuse me, I'd like some of these white carnations.
- C: Yes, thank you, thank you. Always a pleasure. Are they for a gift?
- A: Yes, for someone in the hospital. Could you wrap them appropriately?
- C: Here you are. Sorry to have taken so long.
- A: Thank you. OK, let's go.

- right.
- 8 ...nanka (Colloquial)=  
nado ...or the like
- 9 kinji-ru forbid
- 10 issai (N/Adv) all,  
whole, entire
- 11 *kanēshon* 'carnation'
- 12 mai-do every time, al-  
ways
- 13 byōki mimai inquiry  
after a sick person
- 14 tsutsum-u wrap, pack,  
envelop; conceal
- 15 -te-chōdai (Colloquial  
and Intimate) =-te-kuda-  
sai

- B: Iya, byōin no shokujī igai wa kinji-<sup>9</sup>  
rarete-iru sō da.  
Issai<sup>10</sup> dame rashii yo.
- A: Jā, zasshi ka o-hana ni shimashō  
ka?
- B: Un, ii darō.  
\* \* \*
- A: Oji-san, kono shiroi *kanēshon*<sup>11</sup> o  
kudasai na.
- C: Hai, mai-do<sup>12</sup> arigatō gozaimasu.  
Okuri-mono ni nasaru n desu ka?
- A: Byōki mimai<sup>13</sup> desu.  
Sono yō-ni tsutsunde<sup>14</sup>-chōdai.<sup>15</sup>
- C: Hai, o-machidō-sama.
- A: Arigatō.  
Sā, ikimashō.



## 日本の宗教

日本には、<sup>1</sup>仏教、<sup>2</sup>神道、<sup>3</sup>キリスト教など、多くの宗教がある。ある調査によると、<sup>4</sup>宗教別の人口の合計は、<sup>5</sup>全人口の2.7倍ぐらいいったそうだ。日本では、<sup>6</sup>一人の人が二つ以上の宗教をもっていることが多いのだ。この辺に日本の宗教の特徴がありそうだ。

日本人の大部分は、<sup>7</sup>形式的には<sup>8</sup>仏教徒である。しかし、<sup>9</sup>たいいてい<sup>10</sup>の家庭には、<sup>11</sup>仏壇と並んで、<sup>12</sup>神だとも祭<sup>13</sup>っている。神社とお寺の行事に同じように参加するのが、<sup>14</sup>多数の日本人の習慣である。これは、<sup>15</sup>キリスト教などの立場から見れば、<sup>16</sup>きわめて奇妙なことだが、日本では、<sup>17</sup>仏教伝来の初めから、<sup>18</sup>比較的自然に行なわれてきたようだ。

古代の日本人は、<sup>19</sup>自然界の山や川や森には、<sup>20</sup>目に見えない精霊が無数にいて、<sup>21</sup>これらの精霊や祖先の霊が、<sup>22</sup>人間を幸福にも、<sup>23</sup>不幸にもすると考えた。これらの精霊は<sup>24</sup>カミと呼ばれた。人々は、<sup>25</sup>カミのめぐみを求めるために、<sup>26</sup>あるいは、<sup>27</sup>カミのたたりをさけるために、<sup>28</sup>宗教儀礼を行なった。これが神道の起こりらしい。

六世紀に<sup>29</sup>仏教が朝鮮を経て日本に伝えられた。一般に<sup>30</sup>外国から新しい宗教がはいったときは、<sup>31</sup>衝突らしいものは、<sup>32</sup>あまり見られなかった。それは、<sup>33</sup>外国の神を合わせ<sup>34</sup>祭ったほうがきまきめがありそうだと考えたかららしい。こういう意味で、<sup>35</sup>日本の仏教では、<sup>36</sup>あらゆる時代を通じて<sup>37</sup>呪術が重要な役割を演じている。

今日、<sup>38</sup>神道は、<sup>39</sup>新年を祝い、<sup>40</sup>豊作をいねるとか、<sup>41</sup>新しく建てられる建物の安全をいねるとか、<sup>42</sup>災害の予防に用いられることが多い。結婚も<sup>43</sup>神前でする人が多い。一方、<sup>44</sup>仏教は<sup>45</sup>葬式やおぼんなどの死んだ人の霊をなぐさめる行事として、<sup>46</sup>人々の生活につながっているわけである。

There are many religions in Japan, including Buddhism, Shinto, and Christianity. Yet according to one survey, the sum of all religious affiliations comes to 2.7 times the total population. This is because each person has more than one religion, a feature characteristic of Japan.

While most Japanese are formally Buddhist, there is also a small Shinto altar next to the Buddhist altar in most homes. It is customary for people to go to both temples and shrines in the same way. While this may seem very strange in Christian eyes, it has persisted naturally since Buddhism's earliest days in Japan.

The ancient Japanese believed that there were innumerable holy spirits in nature, and that these divine spirits and ancestral spirits could act to make men blessed or damned. These divine spirits were called *kami*, and men performed religious ceremonies in order to call down their blessings and to ward off their curses. This is the origin of Shinto.

In the 6th century, Buddhism was brought to Japan by way of Korea. Because it was felt that it might be more efficacious to pray to these foreign gods as well, there has generally been little outward conflict when new religions were introduced from abroad. In this sense, superstition has played a major role in Japanese Buddhism throughout the ages.

Today, Shinto rites are used to celebrate the New Year or plentiful harvests, to pray for the safety of new building projects, and to protect against accidents, as well as for many weddings. Buddhism is used for funerals, *bon*, and otherwise to placate the dead. Thus the two are intermixed within Japanese life.

## 語句

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Shintō Shintoism  | 25 tatarai divine punishment, curse                                   |
| 2 shūkyō religion   | 26 girei ritual, courtesy   |
| 3 -betsu (N) according to the classification/distinction of...; by...   | 27 okori origin ←okor-u (originate, begin)                            |
| 4 gōkei total   | 28 he-ru go through, via...   |
| 5 dai-bubun (N/Adv) most  | 29 shōtotsu (Nv) collision; discord                                   |
| 6 keishiki-teki (Na) formally   | 30 ...rashi-i mono something like...                                  |
| 7 Bukkyō-to Buddhist cf. Kirisutokyo-to (Christian), Kaikyō-to (Moslem) | 31 awasete put together, in addition ←awase-ru (Vt) put together, fit |
| 8 butsudan a Buddhist altar   | 32 kikime effect  |
| 9 ...to narande ranking/together with                                   | 33 arayuru (+N) all sorts of  |
| 10 kami-dana a family Shinto altar                                      | 34 ...o tsūjite all through...  |
| 11 sanku (Nv) participate, join in                                      | 35 jujutsu witchcraft   |
| 12 tasū (N/Adv) a large number  | 36 yakuwari part, role (in a drama, plot)                             |
| 13 kinyō (Na) strange, queer  | 37 enjuri play (a part)   |
| 14 denrai (Nv) coming from  | 38 Shinnen New Year   |
| 15 hikaku-teki comparatively  | 39 inoru-u pray   |
| 16 shizen-kai the world of nature                                       | 40 anzen (N/Na) safety  |
| 17 mori forest  | 41 saigai disaster  |
| 18 seirei holy spirit   | 42 yobō (Nv) prevention   |
| 19 musū (N) numberless, countless                                       | 43 mochiru utilize, employ, use                                       |
| 20 sosen=senzo ancestor   | 44 shinnen (N) in the gods' presence                                  |
| 21 rei spirit, soul (of a dead person)                                  | 45 shōshi funeral   |
| 22 kōfuku (N/Na) happiness, happy                                       | 46 shinda (+N) ←shinde-iru (be dead)                                  |
| 23 fukō (N/Na) unhappiness, misfortune                                  | 47 nagasame-ru console, soothe, cheer                                 |
| 24 megumi blessing, mercy, charity                                      | 48 tsunagar-u (Vi) be connected/tied cf. tsunagi (Vt)                 |

# 第 29 課

## 後悔

TAPE  
No. 8  
Side 1

- ① 外は雨が降っているようです。ときおり風が吹いて雨がバラバラとまどを打ちます。わたしはさきほどからぼんやりしています。たばこのけむりがすうと一すじ立ち上っています。わたしはさきほどからじっとそれをながめています。ときおりまどを打つ風の音にはっとわれに帰ります。
- ② あなたはどうしているだろう……。この間は どうしてあのような別れ方をしてしまったのだろう……。今になってあなたの気持ちがいまいほどよくわかります。
- ③ あなたはほんとうに悲しそうな目をしていました。あなたは今にもなき出しそうな顔をしていました。そしてくるりと背を向けて、さようならも言わずに走り去ってしまいました。

### 語句

- 1 toki-ori occasionally  
2 para-para (to) (onomat) pattering  
3 bon'yari (onomat) absent-mindedness, not clear  
4 sūto (onomat) straight, quietly  
5 hito-suji one straight line  
6 suji straight line  
7 tachi-nobor-u ascend, go up  
8 jitto (onomat) fixedly, patiently, quietly, intently, motionlessly  
9 hatto (onomat) with a start, in surprise  
10 ware myself  
11 ware ni kaer-u come to/return to oneself

- 10 ima ni natte now things have to come to this pass, after so long a time, at this juncture  
11 kimochi feeling  
12 itai hodo to the extent that one feels pain  
13 ima nimo at any moment  
14 naki-das-u burst into tears  
15 kururi to (onomat) (turn) around, wheel (about)  
16 se the back (side)  
17 se o muke-ru turn one's back  
18 muke-ru (Vi) turn...toward  
19 iwazu ni without saying...  
20 hashiri-sar-u run away (out of sight)

④ わたしは今そのときのあなたのうしろ姿を思い浮かべています。それはとてもさびしそうな感じがしました。そのときわたしはたいせつなものを失ってしまったという気がしました。

⑤ わたしはほんとうにどうかしていたのです。仕事がうまくいかず、毎日いらいらしていたのです。自信もまったくなくなっていました。あなたの真剣なはげましやなくさめもわずらわしく感じるだけでした。やけになって飲んだお酒もただ苦い後悔の味がするだけでした。

⑥ けさ起きて鏡を見たら自分でもおどろくほどずさんだ顔になっていました。

これではわたしはだめです。今心から立ち直りたいと思います。たぶん、あすは旅先です。旅はきつとわたしをなくさめてくれるでしょう。心身とも元氣になってあなたをたずねます。

それでは、また会う日まで。

- 21 sar-u go away, leave  
22 ushiro-sugata view of someone from behind sugata figure, look (whole body)  
23 omoi-ukabe-ru imagine; recollect  
24 kanji feeling, touch, impression  
25 See §114 ...kanji ga suru feel...  
26 ushina-u lose  
27 ...ki ga suru feel (like)  
28 dō ka shite-i-ru something must be wrong  
29 umaku ik-u work well, be successful  
30 hagemashi encouragement  
31 hagemas-u (encourage, cheer up)  
32 nagusame consolation, comfort  
33 nagusame-ru (console)

- 29 wazurawashiku troublesome, annoying  
30 ing  
31 yake ni nar-u turn desperate/bitter  
32 niga-i bitter  
33 kōkai (Nv) regret  
34 aji taste  
35 kagami mirror  
36 odoroku hodo astonishingly, to a surprising extent  
37 susanda (+N) desolate, barren  
38 tachi-naor-u regain one's footing, recover  
39 tabi-saki place visited, be on a trip  
40 tabi=ryokō (Nv) trip, travel  
41 shin-shin tomo in both mind and body, physically and mentally



## Dai 29-ka

### Kōkai

1 Soto wa ame ga futte-iru yō desu. Toki-ori kaze ga fuite ame ga para-para to mado o uchimasu. Watashi wa saki-hodo kara bon'yari-shite-imasu. *Tabako* no kemuri ga sūto hito-suji tachi-nobotte-imasu. Watashi wa saki-hodo kara jitto sore o nagamete-imasu. Toki-ori mado o utsu kaze no oto ni hatto ware ni kaerimasu.

2 Anata wa dō shite-iru darō... Kono aida wa dō shite ano yō-na wakare-kata o shite-shimatta no darō... Ima ni natte anata no kimochi ga itai hodo yoku wakarimasu.

3 Anata wa hontō-ni kanashisō-na me o shite-imashita. Anata wa ima nimo naki-dashisō-na kao o shite-imashita. Soshite kururi to se o mukete, sayōnara mo iwazu ni hashiri-satte-shimaimashita.

4 Watashi wa ima sono toki no anata no ushiro-sugata o omoi-ukabete-imasu. Sore wa totemo sabishisō-na kanji ga shimashita. Sono toki watashi wa taisetsu-na mono o ushinatte-shimatta to iu ki ga shimashita.

5 Watashi wa hontō-ni dō ka shite-ita no desu. Shigoto ga umaku ikazu, maini-chi ira-ira-shite-ita no desu. Jishin mo mattaku naku natte-imashita. Anata no shinken-na hagemashi ya nagusame mo wazurawa-shiku kanjiru dake deshita. Yake ni natte nonda o-sake mo tada nigai kōkai no aji ga suru dake deshita.

6 Kesa okite kagami o mitara jibun demo odoroku hodo susanda kao ni natte-imashita.

Koredewa watashi wa dame desu. Ima kokoro kara tachi-naoritai to omoimasu. Tabun, asu wa tabi-saki desu. Tabi wa kitto watashi o nagusamete-kureru deshō. Shin-shin tomo genki ni natte anata o tazunemasu.

Soredewa, mata au hi made.

## Lesson 29

### Regret

1 It is raining outside. Sometimes the wind blows and the rain pitter-pats against my window. I have been just sitting here lazily for some time. With the smoke from my cigarette wafting dreamily upward, I just sit here watching it. Occasionally, the sound of the rain against my window abruptly recalls me to myself.

2 I wonder what you are doing. Why did we have to part that way? I know now how you must have felt then, know so much it hurts.

3 You looked so forlorn. You looked about to cry at any moment. Then suddenly you turned and were gone without so much as a fare-thee-well.

4 Even now I still recall the sight of your fleeting figure. It is a very saddening feeling. I feel as though I have lost something very important.

5 I must have been out of my mind. My work had not been going well and I was wracked with irritation every day. I had lost all confidence in myself. Your well-meant encouragement and sympathy seemed to me but mockery. The *sake* drunk to drown my self-pity left only a bitter after-taste.

6 This morning when I got up and looked at myself in the mirror, even I was surprised at how washed-out I looked.

I can not go on this way. I feel I must refresh my spirit. Tomorrow I will probably be far from here. A trip will surely do me good. When I am well again in mind and body, I will visit you again.

Until we meet again...

▼An old inn in Takayama



#### ANSWERS (pp. 352, 353)

- I. 1. nioi 2. oto 3. nioi 4. ki 5. kanji 6. ki/kanji 7. nioi/aji 8. ki 9. nioi 10. kanji  
II. 1. katachi/kakkō 2. kao 3. yōsu 4. kakkō/kao 5. yōsu 6. kao 7. katachi

## § 114 Idiomatic Expressions (1): '...ga suru'

(yō-na)	}	aji	} ga shimasu	'have a	}	taste	} (like)...
		nioi				smell	
		kanji				feeling (impression)	
		ki				mind (feeling)	

e.g. Sono sūpu wa donna aji ga shimasu ka (=aji desu ka)?

'What does the soup taste like?'

—Henna/ii/kusuri no yō-na aji ga shimasu.

'It tastes strange/good/like medicine.'

Kono kudamono wa kawatta/kusatte-iru yō-na/banana no (yō-na) nioi ga shimasu. 'This fruit smells strange/rotten/like a banana.'

Ano hito to hanashite-iruto, (marude) robotto to hanashite-iru yō-na kanji ga shimasu. 'When I talk with him, I feel as if I am talking with a robot.'

Kyō wa kaisha e iku ki ga shinaï. 'I don't feel like going to work today.'

## § 115 Idiomatic Expressions (2): '...shite-iru'

(yō-na)	}	katachi	} o shite-imasu	'have a	}	shape	} of/that...
		iro				color	
		kao				face (look)	
		kakkō				appearance	

e.g. Ano tatemono wa omoshiroi katachi o shite-imasu.

'That building has an interesting shape.'

Anata wa aoi kao o shite-imasu ne.

'You look pale.'

Sono otoko wa kojiki no yō-na kakkō o shite-imashita.

'That man was dressed like a beggar.'

## § 116 A Remark on Omission

As you have probably already noticed, Japanese allows far greater freedom for the omission of sentence elements than do most other languages. The speaker often leaves out what he believes is known or understood by the hearer in a dialog between two persons where the principals to the conversation share common situations or interests.

e.g. (Watashi wa) An desu. Dōzo yoroshiku. 'I am Ann. Glad to meet you.'

(Anata wa) gohan o tabe ni ikimasu ka? 'Are you going to eat?'

This general tendency often results in constructions which may look 'illogical' or strange if translated literally into English.

e.g. Shutchō wa tsukaremasu. 'Business trips are (things that make me) tired.'

Sore wa komarimasu. 'It is (something that will cause me to be) troubled.'

The pattern in the next section may thus be regarded as typical condensation.

## § 117 'N wa N desu' as Condensed Predicates

The very basic sentence pattern with which we began Lesson 1 in this book is capable of containing virtually all kinds of predicates, with their meanings depending entirely upon the previous statement or situation.

e.g. Watashi wa tenpura o tabemasu. Anata wa?

—Watashi wa sushi desu. (←Watashi wa sushi o tabemasu.)

Watashi wa Haneda kara shuppatsu-shimasu. 'I am departing from Haneda.'

—Sō desu ka. Watashi wa Itami desu. 'I am (departing from) Itami.'

Uchi no musuko wa rai-nen Tōkyō Daigaku o ukemasu.

'Our son is going to take the University of Tokyo entrance exam next year.'

—Sō desu ka. Uchi wa Keiō desu.

'Is that so? Ours is (going to take the exam for) Keio (Univ).'

I. Fill in the blanks with 'nioi,'<sup>1</sup> 'aji,' 'kanji,' 'ki,' or 'oto.'

1. Doko ka de sakana o yaku<sup>2</sup> ( ) ga suru.
2. Ni-kai o dare ka ga aruite-iru ( ) ga suru.
3. Kono hana wa ii ( ) ga suru.
4. Kare wa kyō konai yō-na ( ) ga suru.
5. Kinu<sup>3</sup> no kimono wa doko ka yawarakai<sup>4</sup> ( ) ga suru.
6. Erebēta-gāru<sup>5</sup> ga kyū-ni warai-dashita<sup>6</sup> node hen<sup>7</sup>-na ( ) ga shita.
7. Kono sarada wa tamanegi<sup>8</sup> no ( ) ga suru.
8. Kare wa kanojo to kekkon-suru yō-na ( ) ga suru.
9. Kono kōsui<sup>9</sup> wa bara no ( ) ga suru.
10. Kanojo wa tsumetai ( ) ga suru hito da.

II. Fill in the blanks with 'katachi,'<sup>10</sup> 'yōsu,' 'kakkō,'<sup>11</sup> or 'kao.'

1. Ano tatemono wa kyōkai<sup>12</sup> no yō-na ( ) o shite-iru.
2. Kare wa o-sake o nonda yō-na akai ( ) o shite-ita.
3. Kare wa sha-chō no mae de nanda ka<sup>13</sup> ochitsukanai ( ) deshita.
4. Kanojo wa piero<sup>14</sup> no yō-na ( ) o shite-ita.
5. Ni-kai no ( ) ga hen da. Nani ka okotta rashii.
6. Kanojo wa aoi ( ) o shite-iru. Kibun ga warui yō da.
7. Kono jidōsha wa mita koto mo nai yō-na ( ) o shite-iru.

## 語句

- 1 nioi smell, odor, fragrance  
+nio-u (smell)  
...nioi ga suru smell (of)...
- 2 yak-u bake, burn, scorch, fry  
3 kinu silk

- 4 yawaraka-i soft, tender, pliant  
5 erebēta-gāru 'elevator girl,' elevator operator  
6 warai-das-u begin to laugh  
7 hen (Na) strange, unusual

III. Practice patterns with the key phrases.

(A) Ex. (kiku no hana) Ano ie no chikaku o tōruto kiku no hana no nioi ga suru.

1. (karē-raisu)
  2. (pan o yaku)
  3. (ii)
  4. (o-cha o hiite<sup>15</sup>-iru yō da)
- (B) Ex. (sankaku) Sono isu wa sankaku no katachi o shite-iru.

1. (marui<sup>16</sup>)
  2. (dōbutsu)
  3. (hako no yō da)
- (C) Ex. (kaze) Soto de kaze no oto ga shite-iru.

1. (jidōsha)
2. (sawagashii)
3. (ame ga futte-iru yō da)

IV. Continue the dialogs as shown in the example.

Ex. a) O-cha to kōhi to dochira ga ii desu ka?

b) Watashi wa o-cha desu. Anata wa?

a) Watashi wa kōhi desu.

1. a) Nippon no eiga to gaikoku no eiga to dochira o yoku mimasu ka?
2. a) Hokkaidō to Kyūshū to dochira e ikitai desu ka?
3. a) Kare to kanojo to dochira ga suki desu ka?
4. a) Anata wa shingaku-shimasu ka, shūshoku-shimasu ka?
5. a) Anata wa densha de kayotte-imasu ka, basu de kayotte-imasu ka?

- 8 tamanegi onion  
9 kōsui perfume  
10 katachi shape  
11 kakkō shape, appearance  
12 kyōkai church

- 13 nada ka somewhat, kind of  
14 piero 'pierrot,' clown  
15 hik-u grind  
16 maru-i round, circular

## YORU NI NARUTO...

—Tōkyō dewa ima takai tatemono ga don-don taterarete-imasu.

Nippon wa jishin no ōi kuni da to kiite-imasu ga, daijōbu na n deshō ne?

—Mā, gijutsu mo shinpo<sup>1</sup>-shite-imasu kara, kitto anzen-na n deshō.

Shikashi, san-juk-kai ya yon-juk-kai de shigoto o suru no wa, amari ii kanji no mono dewa nai deshō ne.

Kono atari mo, mukashi to wa taihen-na kawari-yō<sup>2</sup> na n deshō ne.

—Kono mae inaka kara jū-nen-buri ni dete-kita chichi ga, yume no yō-na ki ga suru to itte, me o mawashite<sup>3</sup> imashita.

Sō deshō ne. Shikashi, kono yō-ni machi ga kindai-teki<sup>4</sup>-ni nareba naru hodo, Nihon-rashisa<sup>5</sup> ga ushinawarete-iku n ja arimasen ka?

—There are a lot of tall buildings being built in Tokyo nowadays.

I hear Japan has many earthquakes, but are these buildings all right?

—Well, engineering techniques are very advanced, so I'm sure they are safe. But I'll bet it's no fun to work on the 30th or 40th floor.

This area must be very different from what it was like in the old days.

—The other day when my father came from the country for the first time in 10 years, he was very surprised and said he must be dreaming.

I'll bet. But the more a city is modernized like this, the more Japanese characteristics will be lost, don't you think?

## 語句

1 shinpo (Nv) progress, advance

2 kawari-yō change, how ...has changed

..yō manner, way

3 me o mawas-u be stunned, swoon; be astonished

mawas-u (Vt) revolve; send/round

cf. mawar-u (Vi)

4 kindai-teki (Na) modern

5 -rashisa (N) -ness, characteristic quality

cf. ningen-rashisa, otoko-rashisa, kodomo-rashisa

←rashi-i See § 112

6 ...bakari ka not only... (but also)

7 ofuisu-gai 'office' street, -gai town, street

cf. chika-gai (underground shopping area)

8 hakaba graveyard, cemetery

—That's not all. The population of central Tokyo is decreasing.

For example, I hear the business centers are as quiet as graveyards at night.

Really? How could all these cars and people disappear so completely? Just thinking of it gives me an eerie feeling.

—Well, look at it in the daytime too. What with being surrounded by exhaust fumes and stinking canals, this is no place for people to live in.

It's probably just that urban modernization and human happiness don't necessarily go together.

haka grave, tomb  
9 hissori (onomat) silent, deserted

10 kaidan ghost story

11 -meita (+N) seeming to be..., something of a...

12 haiki-gasu engine exhaust

haiki (Nv) exhaust; ventilation gasu 'gas'

13 torimak-u surround

14 dobu-gawa muddy river  
dobu gutter, drainage ditch

15 tōtei...nai by no means

16 kindai-ka (Nv) modernization

17 shiawase =kōfuku (Na) happiness

18 kanarazu-shimo...nai not necessarily/always...

19 pittari (to) (onomat) the state of matching just right or fitting perfectly

—Sore bakari ka,<sup>6</sup> Tōkyō no chūshin-bu no jinkō wa sukunaku natte, ofuisu-gai<sup>7</sup> nado wa, yoru ni naruto, hakaba<sup>8</sup> no yō-ni hissori<sup>9</sup>-shite-shimau sō desu yo.

Hē..., konna-ni takusan no kuruma ya hito ga kiete-shimau no desu ka....

Nanda ka, kaidan<sup>10</sup>-meita<sup>11</sup> kanji ga shimasu ne.

—Hiru-ma wa hiru-ma de, kuruma no haiki-gasu<sup>12</sup> ni torimakare,<sup>13</sup>

dobu-gawa<sup>14</sup> wa iya-na nioi ga suru, to iu wake de, tōtei<sup>15</sup> ningen no sumeru tokoro dewa arimasen.

Toshi no kindai-ka<sup>16</sup> to ningen no shiawase<sup>17</sup> to wa, kanarazu-shimo<sup>18</sup> pittari<sup>19</sup> to ikanai, to iu koto deshō ne.



## 日本の文学—3

近代文学のあけぼのは、明治十五年の「新体詩抄」である。西欧詩の直訳<sup>3</sup>

においがするが、何<sup>4</sup>といっても、清新<sup>5</sup>の気にあふれている。散文<sup>7</sup>の世界でも、

明治二十年に「浮雲」が二葉亭四迷<sup>9</sup>によって

書かれた。この小説は、それまでの小説<sup>10</sup>とち

がって、登場人物も平凡<sup>11</sup>な一市民<sup>13</sup>であり、文

体も言文一致<sup>14</sup>で、まさに新時代<sup>16</sup>を代表する

感<sup>17</sup>があった。

しかし、間もなく政治的<sup>18</sup>にも反動期<sup>18</sup>になり、文学<sup>19</sup>

においても、古典が復活<sup>19</sup>し、小説も古い文体<sup>20</sup>で書かれる

ようになる。

ドイツやイギリスへの留学<sup>21</sup>から帰ってきた森鷗外<sup>21</sup>

夏目漱石<sup>21</sup>は、最初、日本の現実<sup>21</sup>を高いところからなが

めていたが、やがて自然主義者<sup>22</sup>と

同じように、日露戦争<sup>23</sup>後の社会<sup>24</sup>の矛盾<sup>24</sup>に立ち向かっ

て行くようになる。しかし、彼らも晩年<sup>26</sup>には「レジニ

アジョン<sup>27</sup>」や「則天去私<sup>28</sup>」の心境<sup>29</sup>にはいっていった。

他の自然主義作家<sup>30</sup>たちも現実分析<sup>31</sup>をあきらめて、単

なる私生活<sup>32</sup>の記録<sup>33</sup>を無批判<sup>34</sup>に書きとどめた。これを私

小説<sup>37</sup>といひ、日本の近代小説<sup>37</sup>の大きな特徴<sup>37</sup>となった。

社会的<sup>38</sup>にもめざめ、自我<sup>39</sup>を追求<sup>40</sup>しようとする、ほん

とらの意味<sup>41</sup>での近代文学<sup>41</sup>が一般的<sup>42</sup>になったのは、1945

年の敗戦後<sup>43</sup>からといえる。



▲Futabatei Shimei



▲Mori Ogai



▲Natsume Soseki

The dawn of modern literature was with *Shintaishi-sho* in 1882. Although at times reading like literal translations from the West, these poems were still undeniably fresh. Prose too changed with *Ukigumo* written by Futabatei Shimei in 1887. This differed from previous novels in that the characters are all ordinary townsfolk and it is written in a colloquial style, making it truly representative of the new age.

However, political reaction soon set in and literature too reverted to its classical forms. Back from their studies in Europe, Mori Ogai, Natsume Soseki, and others initially wrote as people observing the Japanese scene from on high, but they soon joined with the naturalists in speaking out on society's contradictions during the Russo-Japanese War. In later years, however, they adopted attitudes of resignation.

The other naturalists too gave up on social analysis and contented themselves with uncritical records of private life. These "I-novels" are a unique feature of the modern Japanese novel. Nevertheless, modern literature in the true sense of the term did not begin until after Japan's defeat in 1945.

語句

- 1 akebono dawn, daybreak
- 2 Shintaishi-sho (the name of an anthology of poems)
- 3 choku-yaku (Nv) literal/word-for-word translation cf. i-yaku
- 4 nan to itte mo when all is said and done, after all
- 5 seishin (Na) fresh
- 6 afure-ru overflow
- 7 sanbun prose cf. inbun, shi
- 8 Uki-gumo (the title of a novel)
- 9 Futabatei Shimei (novelist; 1864-1909)
- 10 ...to chigatte differently from...
- 11 tōjō-jinbutsu dramatis personae, cast
- 12 jinbutsu (Na) person; personality
- 12 heiban (Na) commonplace, ordinary
- 13 ichi-shimin a citizen, a member of the society
- 14 gen-bun-itchi accord of the spoken and the written languages; writing as one speaks
- 15 itchi (Nv) accord, agreement
- 15 magsa-n exactly, precisely
- 16 shin- new
- 17 ...kan feeling, impression
- 18 handō-ki reaction period
- 19 handō reaction; anti-revolutionary cf. handō-teki (reactionary)
- 20 -ki=kikan period
- 21 ...ni oite mo in... too
- 20 ...yō-ni nar-u turn out to be...
- 21 Mori Ogai (novelist; 1862-1922)
- 22 Shizen-shugi-sha Naturalist (literature)
- Shizen-shugi Naturalism (literature)
- 23 Nichi-Ro-sensō Russo-Japanese War (1904-5)
- 24 mujun (Nv) contradiction
- 25 tachi-muka-u confront, fight against
- 26 ban-nen (N/Adv) one's closing years, late in life (lit. "evening years")
- 27 *rejinashiyan* (Ogai's term) ← *resignation* (Fr.)
- 28 sokuten-kyoshi to identify oneself with nature and get rid of one's ego
- 29 shinkyō state of mind
- 30 bunseki (Nv) analysis
- 31 akirame-ru give up, resign
- 32 tannaru (PreN) mere
- 33 shi-seikatsu private life
- 34 kiroku (Nv) record, document
- 35 mu-nihan (Na) without criticism
- 36 kaki-todome-ru write down for the record
- 37 shi-shōsetsu (a particular type of novel in which the writer confines himself to describing daily happenings around him)
- 38 shakai-teki (Na) social
- 39 mezame-ru wake to
- 40 jiga self, ego
- 41 tsukyū (Nv) pursuit; chase
- 42 ippan-teki (Na) general
- 43 haisen-go (N/Adv) after the lost war, after World War II
- haisen (N) lost war, defeat

第 30 課

先生への電話

TAPE  
No. 8  
Side 1

- ①—もしもし、吉田先生のお宅でしょうか。  
奥さまでいらっしゃいますか。わたし学生時代に  
吉田先生にお世話になりました山田と申します。  
先生はおいでになりますか。  
今お出かけですか。七時ごろにはお帰りに  
なりすね。それでは、七時過ぎにもう一度お電話  
させていただきます。

\* \* \*

- ②—吉田先生でいらっしゃいますか。わたし山田です。  
ごぶさたいたしております。先生もお変わりなく、  
お元気ですか。ところで、近々、先生をお囲みし  
て同窓会を開きたいと思っております。先生に  
ぜひご出席願いたいと思ひまして……。

- ③—はい、ありがとうございます。元気でやっております。  
いつも先生がおっしゃっていましたように、

語句

- 1 Yoshida (a family name) (e.g. not calling or writing as frequently as one should)  
2 oku-sama =oku-san wife (Polite)  
3 ...to mōs-u (Humble form of...to-i-u)  
4 o-ide ni nar-u (Honorific form of i-ru, ik-u, kuru)  
5 ...sugi (N) past, after...  
6 -sasete-itadak-u (Humble form of suru)  
7 gobusata-suru fail to keep in touch  
8 -itas-u (Humble form of suru)  
9 chika-jika one of these days, before long, in the near future  
10 dōsō-kai alumni meeting  
11 dōsō (N) graduates of same school  
12 go/o...nega-u ask you to please...

「千里の道も一歩から」でがんばっております。

- ④—はい、木下君も山本さんも元気だそうです。  
はい、ぜひまたそのうちにおうかがいしたいと思  
っております。ところで、先生は毎日大学へ  
出ておられますか。一度研究室の方へもおじゃま  
したいと思っております。先生がなさった翻訳の  
お仕事たいへんごりっぱなものだと評判です。  
⑤—それでは、みなてお待ちいたしております。木下君  
が四時ごろお宅へ車でおむかえにまいります。  
それでは、きょうはこれで失礼いたします。



- 12 sen-ri (N) thousand ri (1 ri=2.44 miles)  
16 Yamamoto (a family name)  
17 ukaga-u (Humble) ask; visit  
13 ip-po one step  
18 orare-ru (Honorific form of i-ru)  
14 Sen-ri no michi mo ip-po kara (proverb) A journey of a thousand miles must begin with the first step. (=High buildings have low foundations.)  
15 Kinoshita (a family name)  
19 kenkyū-shitsu study room, laboratory  
20 hon'yaku (Nv) translation  
21 mukae coming for; going to see  
→mukae-ru

## Dai 30-ka Sensei e no Denwa

- 1—Moshi-moshi, Yoshida-sensei no o-taku deshō ka?  
Oku-sama de irasshaimasu ka? Watashi gakusei-jidai ni Yoshida-sensei ni o-sewa ni narimashita Yamada to mōshimasu.  
Sensei wa o-ide ni narimasu ka?  
Ima o-dekake desu ka? Shichi-ji goro niwa o-kaeri ni narimasu ne.  
Soredewa, shichi-ji sugi ni mō ichi-do o-denwa-sasete-itadakimasu.

\* \* \*

- 2—Yoshida-sensei de irasshaimasu ka? Watashi Yamada desu.  
Go-busata-itashite-orimasu. Sensei mo o-kawari naku, o-genki desu ka? Tokorode, chika-jika, sensei o o-kakomi-shite dōsō-kai o hirakitai to omotte-orimasu. Sensei ni zehi go-shusseki negaitai to omoi-mashite...

- 3—Hai, arigatō gozaimasu. Genki de yatte-orimasu. Itsumo sensei ga osshatte-imashita yō-ni, "Sen-ri no michi mo ip-po kara" de ganbatte-orimasu.

- 4—Hai, Kinoshita-kun mo Yamamoto-san mo genki da sō desu.  
Hai, zehi mata sono uchi ni o-ukagai-shitai to omotte-orimasu.  
Tokorode, sensei wa mai-nichi daigaku e dete-oraremasu ka? Ichi-do kenkyū-shitsu no hō e mo o-jama-shitai to omotte-orimasu. Sensei ga nasatta hon'yaku no o-shigoto taihen go-rippa-na mono da to hyōban desu.

- 5—Soredewa, mina de o-machi-itashite-orimasu. Kinoshita-kun ga yo-ji goro o-taku e kuruma de o-mukae ni mairimasu.  
Soredewa, kyō wa korede shitsurei-itashimasu.

## Lesson 30 Telephoning a Teacher

- 1—Hello, is this Professor Yoshida's house? ... Mrs. Yoshida? ... This is Mr. Yamada, a former student of Professor Yoshida's. Is the Professor in? ... Oh, he's out now, is he? But he'll be back around seven o'clock, will he? If I may then, I'll call back around seven.

\* \* \*

- 2—Professor Yoshida? This is Yamada. I'm sorry to have been out of touch for so long. ... How have you been? ... The reason I called is that we would like to have a reunion and would like to invite you. We thought if you could please come....

- 3—Yes, thank you. I'm fine. I'm plugging away one step at a time just like you told us to. ...

- 4—Yes, Mr. Kinoshita and Miss Yamamoto are fine. ...  
Yes, we would all like to come and see you some time. Do you go to the university every day? ... Someday I would like to visit you at your office there too. Everybody's talking about what an excellent job you did with that translation. ...

- 5—Then we will all be looking forward to seeing you then. Mr. Kinoshita will be around about four to pick you up. ...  
Thank you, and good-bye until the reunion.

### ANSWERS (pp. 364, 365)

- I. 1. kakareru; o-kaki ni naru 2. matareru; o-machi ni naru 3. kawareru; o-kai ni naru 4. akerareru; o-ake ni naru 5. omowareru; o-omoi ni naru  
II. 1. mōshimasu 2. irasshaimasu/oraremasu 3. oraremasu/irasshaimasu 4. kaerareru/o-kaeri ni naru 5. o-machi-shitemo 6. o-kake (ni natte) 7. Donata 8. o-kyaku-san 9. ossharu/iwareru 10. o-machi ni natte-irasshaimasu 11. o-matase-shita 12. go-yō 13. mōshimasu 14. mairimashita 15. o-kaki ni natta/kakareta 16. o-hanashi 17. o-kiki-shitai 18. ukagai-mashita 19. itadaita 20. gozaimasu  
III. O-wakare no hi ga tōtō kimashita. Watashi ga Kyōto o tatta hi wa ame deshita. Tomodachi no Tarō-san ga mi-okuri ni eki e kite-kuramashita. Kare no o-kā-san mo kite-kudasaimashita. O-kā-san wa "Shujin mo mairu tsumori deshita ga, kyūyō no tame ni mairu koto ga dekimasen deshita. Anata ni yoroshiku to mōshite-imashita." to osshaimashita. O-kā-san wa utsukushii *fēburu-kurosō* o kudasaimashita. Watashi no tame ni somete-kudasatta no desu. Tarō-san ga "Goran. Koko ni anata no namae ga kan-ji de somete-arū yo." to iimashita.

Hassha no *beru* ga nari-hajimemashita. O-kā-san wa, "Mata irasshai ne. O-machi-shite-imasu," to osshaimashita.

## § 118 The System of 'Honorifics'

Japanese is a language having an intricate system of what are generally called 'honorific' forms, by means of which the speaker expresses his particular respect for the person mentioned in a sentence.

The prefix *o-* or *go-* attached to a Noun referring to a person or a thing belonging to the person is one such form, as you have already seen, especially in the Conversation sections. These prefixes can be attached to adjectives too when they show the state of the person the speaker respects. Generally speaking, *o-* is attached to native Japanese Nouns or Adjectives, and *go-* to Chinese-origin Nouns or Adjectives.

e.g. *Anata no o-tō-san no go-iken wa dō desu ka?*

'What is your father's opinion?'

cf. *Watashi no chichi no iken wa...desu.* 'My father's opinion is....'

*Imōto-san wa o-kirei desu ne.* 'Your sister is pretty, isn't she?'

cf. *Kare no imōto wa kirei desu.* 'His sister is pretty.'

Verbs also take the Honorific forms when the speaker wants to express respect for the person who performs the action expressed by the Verb. There are two general ways by which you can make the Honorific forms: one is to use the Passive form (§ 71), and the other is to use the pattern '*o-/go-* V(Conj. form) ni narimasu (Plain style: *naru*).

e.g. *Yamada-san ga kore o kakimashita.* 'Mr. Yamada wrote this.' (Neutral)

→ *Yamada-san ga kore o kakaremashita.* (Honorific by Passive)

→ *Yamada-san ga kore o o-kaki ni narimashita.* (Honorific)

*Ano hito wa nani o kenkyū-shite-imasu ka?* (Neutral)

'What is he doing research on?'

→ *Ano hito wa nani o kenkyū-sarete-imasu ka?* (Honorific by Passive)

→ *Ano hito wa nani o go-kenkyū ni natte-imasu ka?* (Honorific)

There are some Honorific forms, however, where it is difficult to find any formal similarities with their 'neutral' counterparts, and these are the ones that are most frequently used in daily conversation.

Neutral	Honorific
<i>ikimasu</i> ('go'), <i>kimasu</i> ('come'), <i>imasu</i> ('be, stay')	<i>irasshaimasu</i> or <i>oide ni narimasu</i>
<i>iimasu</i> ('say')	<i>osshaimasu</i>
<i>mimasu</i> ('see')	<i>go-ran ni narimasu</i>

i. e.g. *Anata wa ashita doko e irasshaimasu ka?* 'Where are you going tomorrow? —Kyōto e ikimasu. 'I am going to Kyoto.'

*Sha-chō-san wa irasshaimasu ka?* 'Is your President in?'

—*Hai, imasu.* —'Yes, he is in.'

## § 119 The Humble Forms

The speaker can express his respect not only by using the Honorific forms as seen above, but also by using 'Humble' Verb forms to refer to himself and other members of his group. What he does is to 'elevate' others relatively by 'lowering' himself. Most frequently used Humble forms include: *mōshimasu* in place of *iimasu* (e.g. *Watashi wa Jon to mōshimasu.* 'I call myself John.' or 'My name is John.');

*mairimasu* in place of *ikimasu* or *kimasu* (e.g. *Mō ichi-dō mairimasu.* 'I will come again.');

and *itashimasu* in place of *shimasu*.

## § 120 Additional Remark

The Honorific and Humble forms should be distinguished from the Polite and Plain styles of § 41, although all are related to the speaker's intention to be polite.

In the Polite style, the politeness is always directed to the person spoken to, whereas in the honorific (or humble) expressions it is directed to the particular person mentioned in the sentence, who may or may not be the hearer.

*Ano hito wa sō itta.*

→ *Ano hito wa sō osshatta.*

*Ano hito wa sō iimashia.*

'He said so.'

→ *Ano hito wa sō osshaimashita.*



I. Make the Honorific forms as shown in the example.

Ex. yomu→yomareru; o-yomi ni naru.

- kaku
- matsu
- kau
- akeru
- omou

II. Replace the underlined parts with their Honorific or Humble forms.

Buraun: Gomen-kudasai. Watashi wa Buraun to iimasu. Yamada-sensei wa imasu ka?

Joshu<sup>1</sup>: Yamada-sensei wa ima kaigi ni dete-imasu.

Mō sugu kaeru to omoimasu ga...

B: Ā, sō desu ka. Sukoshi koko de mattemo ii desu ka?

J: Kono isu ni kakete-kudasai.

Yamada: Dare ka kyaku desu ka?

J: Hai, Buraun-san to iu kata ga saki-hodo kara matte-imasu.

Y: Ā, sō desu ka. Mataseta yō desu ne. Watashi ga Yamada desu ga donna yō<sup>2</sup> desu ka?

B: Watashi wa Buraun to iimasu. Igirisu kara kimashita. Sensei no kaita hon o yonde, zehi ichi-do hanashi o kikitai to omotte tazunemashita.

Koko ni watashi no kyōju ni moratta shōkai-jō<sup>3</sup> ga arimasu.

## 語句

- joshu assistant
- yō =yōji errand, business
- shōkai-jō letter of introduction/recommendation

- tōtō at last, finally
- tats-u start, leave
- mi-okur-u see off
- shujin master; husband

III. Put the following into Japanese, using Honorific and Humble forms where appropriate.

The day of parting finally<sup>4</sup> came. It was raining the day I left<sup>5</sup> Kyoto. My friend Taro came to the station to see me off.<sup>6</sup> His mother came too. She said, "My husband<sup>7</sup> was going to come too, but could not come because of unexpected business. He sends you his best regards." She gave me a beautiful tablecloth.<sup>8</sup> She had dyed<sup>9</sup> it for me. "Look,<sup>10</sup>" Taro said, "here is your name in *kanji*." The bell signaling the train's departure<sup>11</sup> began to ring. His mother said, "Come again. We'll be waiting for you."

▼Kyoto



- tēburu-kurosu 'tablecloth'
- etc.
- some-ru dye
- goran (Honorific) (Imperative) Look
- hassha (Nv) starting of train, bus

## MOCHIRON YOROKONDE . . .

—Yā, o-matase-shimashita. Kikaku<sup>1</sup>-bu no Tanaka to mōshimasu. Daitai<sup>2</sup> no o-hanashi wa Kawai<sup>3</sup>-bu-chō kara kiite-  
orimasu ga, kyō wa saishū-teki<sup>4</sup>-na puran<sup>5</sup> o o-mochi-itadaita wake desu  
ne.

Hai, watashi-domo no hō demo, sono go  
iroiro to kentō<sup>6</sup> o kasanemashita kekka,  
kono mae ni o-shimeshi<sup>7</sup>-kudasatta dai-  
san-puran de ikō, to iu koto ni iken ga  
itchi-shimashita.

Kore ga keikaku-sho<sup>8</sup> desu.

—Naruhodo. . . , kore de ikimasuto, hiyō<sup>9</sup>  
no ten<sup>10</sup> demo, daibu raku ni narimasu  
ne. . . .

Chōdo yokatta. Jitsu wa<sup>11</sup> gogo san-ji  
kara, watashi-domo no kikaku-kaigi ga  
gozaimasu node, yoroshikattara,<sup>12</sup>  
obuzāba<sup>13</sup> to shite go-shusseki-  
kudasaimasen ka?

—Sorry to have kept you waiting. I'm Mr. Tanaka of the Planning Division. I've gotten most of the story from Mr. Kawai. I understand you've brought the final plans today?

Yes. After looking everything over, we've agreed on Plan 3 that you showed us last time. And I have the plan right here.

—Now let's see. . . . If we do it this way, financially too, it is fairly easy. You've come at just the right time. Actually we're having a planning meeting at 3 p. m. today. If you'd like why don't you attend as an observer?

## 語句

- 1 kikaku (Nv) planning
- 2 daitai (N) outline
- 3 Kawai (a family name)
- 4 saishū-teki (Na) final
- 5 puran 'plan'
- 6 kentō (Nv) investigation, scrutiny, examination
- 7 shimes-u show, suggest
- 8 keikaku-sho plan, blueprint
- 9 hiyō expense, cost
- 10 ten point
- 11 jitsu wa the fact is, to tell the truth
- 12 yoroshikattara if you don't mind, if you like
- 13 obuzāba 'observer'
- 14 yorokonde with pleasure
- 15 kensetsu (Nv) construction, founding
- 16 hakobi arrangement, stage, process

Of course, I'd be glad to. —I expect the construction of the new factory will probably begin the beginning of next year. Before that we'll send five or so of our staff to secure the site.

We're not limited to construction work, so if there's anything else we can do to help, please don't hesitate to say so.

—Say, we seem to have a couple of hours before the meeting. Why don't we go for lunch together?

Yes, thank you.

—Fine. . . . Hey, Nishida, get us a taxi, will you? And tell Mr. Kawai that I'll be out for a while with our guest. Well, let's go. We can leave the plan here with the secretary. Please come this way.

- 17 genchi (N) on the spot
- 18 -mei (Count. for persons)
- 19 yōchi site for. . .
- 20 kakuho (Nv) ensure, secure
- 21 kōji (Nv) construction, building work
- 22 hōmen direction; area
- 23 kyōryoku (Nv) cooperation
- 24 oshim-u grudge, hold dear; regret
- 25 nan-nari to anything, whatever it is
- 26 mōshitsuke-ru give orders, bid
- 27 Nishida (a family name)
- 28 -tamae (Polite request usually to juniors)
- 29 hisho secretary
- 30 azuke-ru give. . . in trust, deposit

Mochiron yorokonde<sup>14</sup> shusseki-sasete-itadaki-mashō.

—Rai-nen no hajime niwa, shin-kōjō no kensetsu<sup>15</sup> to iu hakobi<sup>16</sup> ni naru hazu desu ga, sono mae ni genchi<sup>17</sup> ni watashi-domo no sha-in o go-mei<sup>18</sup> bakari okuri, yōchi<sup>19</sup> no kakuho<sup>20</sup> no shigoto o sasetai to omotte-imasu.

Watashi-domo mo, kōji<sup>21</sup>-kankei dake de naku, sono hōmen<sup>22</sup> demo kyōryoku<sup>23</sup> o oshimanai<sup>24</sup> tsumori desu kara, nan-nari<sup>25</sup> to o-mōshitsuke<sup>26</sup>-kudasai.

—Ikaga deshō, kaigi made ni mada ni-jikan bakari aru yō desu shi, go-  
issho-ni shokuji demo?

Ê, kekkō desu.

—Jā. . . . Ā, Nishida<sup>27</sup>-kun, kuruma o yonde-kuren ka ne? Sore kara, o-kyaku-sama o o-tsure-shite sukoshi gaishutsu-shite-iru to Kawai-bu-chō ni tsutaete-oite-kure-tamae.<sup>28</sup> Jā, dekaemashō. Keikaku-sho wa hisho<sup>29</sup> ni azukete<sup>30</sup> okimashō. Dōzo, kochira desu.

## はぎの露 —「源氏物語」から—

明石中宮さまは、近く御所にお痛りにならなければなりませんので、紫の上が、おやすみになっているおへやに、お別れのごあいさつを申しあげるために、いらっしやいました。おりしも秋風が吹いて、はぎが、ほの白く夕やみの中にゆらいでおりました。

そこへ源氏の君がいらっしやいました。源氏は、ふとんから身を起こされて、庭をながめていらっしやる紫の上をごらんになり、たいそうおどろかれて、「起きていらっしやっても、およろしいのでございますか。姫君とごいっしょで、少しはお気もお晴れになりましたか。」とおっしゃいました。紫の上は、源氏の君のおやさしいお心づかいにむねをおいじめになりながら、歌をお作りになって、はぎの露のように、すぐ消えさるであろうご自身の生命のはかなさを述べられました。

庭のはぎがはげしくゆれ動いて、まさに露がこぼれ落ちそうなのをごらんになりながら、源氏の君ははらはらとなみだをお流しになって、お歌をお返しになり、露と争って消えてゆくこの世に、だれが先に死に、だれが生き残るなどということがないようにしたいものですとなげられました。

このようにして、紫の上は、明け方近く、中宮にお手を取られながら、露のように、はかなくおなくなりになりました。

▼ A scene from *Genji-Monogatari*

As the Empress Akashi was soon to have to return to the Imperial Court, she went to the room where the ill Lady Murasaki was resting to bid her farewell. As they were talking, the autumn wind blew and the clover fluttered blazing white in the twilight.

Prince Genji came upon this scene and, surprised at seeing Lady Murasaki up and gazing out on the garden, asked if it was all right for her to be up and if she felt better and happier by spending some time with the Empress. Lady Murasaki, moved so deeply by Prince Genji's tender considerations, composed a poem comparing her fleeting life to the soon-disappearing dew on the clover.

Watching the clover in the garden as it shook and seemed indeed to drop its dew, Prince Genji shed profuse tears and composed a poem in reply lamenting that it is not possible in this world where men's lives vie with the dew for transitoriness to break the pattern of some's passing away first and others' staying behind.

In this way, her hand clasped by the Empress, Lady Murasaki ended her dewly brief life and passed away near dawn.

## 語句

- Akashi Chūgū Empress Akashi Chūgū (the title given to the Crown Princess)
- Gosho residence of a member of the Imperial family
- Murasaki-no-ue (the name of the wife of Hikaru Genji; the current empress; mother-in-law of Akashi no Chūgū)
- mōshi-age-ru (Humble form of *i-u*)
- orishimo (Archaic) just then, on that occasion
- aki-kaze cold autumnal wind
- hagi (the name of a flower)
- hono-jiroku (Adv) pale white, dimly
- yū-yami evening twilight, dusk
- yurag-u sway; shake; flicker
- Genji-no-Kimi His excellency/highness Genji  
 Genji = Hikaru Genji (the main character of *The Tale of Genji*)  
 Kimi honorable person; prince
- futon quilt
- mi body
- taisō = totemo, hijō-ni
- yoroshi-i all right
- hime-gimi princess
- hare-ru turn nice, clear up
- kokoro-zukai care, consideration
- itame-ru hurt, give pain, injure
- uta poem, song
- tsuyu dew/drop, dew
- kie-sar-u vanish, disappear
- ...de arō be likely to...
- jishin oneself
- seimei = inochi life
- hakana-sa transiency ← hakana-i (short-lived, momentary)
- yure-ugok-u sway, quake, heave
- yure-ru (Vi) shake, rock
- kobore-ochi-ru overflow and drop off  
 kobore-ru (Vi) fall, spill
- hara-hara (to) (onomat) (the way in which things very light and feeble drop one after another)
- kaes-u (Vi) answer; return
- araso-u compete; dispute; struggle
- kiete-yuk-u die away, vanish  
 -te-yuk-u = te-ik-u
- saki ni ahead, previously
- iki-nokor-u survive, live longer than
- tai mono desu would like to...if possible
- nagek-u lament, grieve
- ake-gata (N/Adv) at daybreak
- te o tor-u grasp/take another's hand
- nakunar-u die (=shin-); disappear

## Conjugation of Verbs, Auxiliaries, Adjectives, and Copula

		Dictionary form	Conjunctive form	te form	ta form (Past)	tara form (Conditional)	tari form
V E R B S	1st Group	kak-u	kaki	kaiite	kaita	kaitara	kaitari
		oyog-u	oyogi	oyaide	oyoida	oyoidara	oyoidari
		os-u	oshi	oshite	oshita	oshitara	oshitari
		yom-u	yomi	yonde	yonda	yondara	yondari
		shin-u	shini	shinde	shinda	shindara	shindari
		yob-u	yobi	yonde	yonda	yondara	yondari
		mats-u	machi	matte	matta	matlara	matтари
	nor-u	nori	notte	notta	nottara	nottari	
	ka(w)-u	kai	katte	katta	kattara	kattari	
	2nd Group	tabe-ru	tabe	tabete	tabeta	tabetara	tabetari
mi-ru		mi	mite	mita	mitara	mitari	
Irreg.		suru	shi	shite	shita	shitara	shitari
		kuru	ki	kite	kita	kitara	kitari
A U X I	Polite	--masu	--mashite	--mashita	--mashitara	--mashitari	
	Passive	-(r)are-ru	-(r)are	-(r)arete	-(r)areta	-(r)aretara	-(r)aretari
	Causative	-(s)ase-ru	-(s)ase	-(s)asete	-(s)aseta	-(s)asetara	-(s)asetari
Adj.	samu-i	samuku	samukute	samukatta	samukattara	samukattari	
Copula	da	de	deshite	datta	dattara	dattari	
	desu		deshite	deshita	deshitara	deshitari	

**NB** (1) All 1st Group Verbs whose stems end with the same consonant are conjugated in the same way. For instance, *ru-u* ('sell'), *tor-u* ('take'), and *kæru* ('go home') are conjugated in the same way as *nor-u* above. The only exception to this general rule is *ik-u* ('go'), which, although its stem ends with 'k', is conjugated like *itte*, *itta*, *ittara*, *ittari*, *ikô*, *ike*, *ikeba*, *ikanai*, *ikareru*, *ikeru*, *ikasuru*.

(2) The grouping of a Verb into 1st Group or 2nd Group is indicated in the footnote where it first appears. In this book, 1st Group Verbs are shown as '...u'; and 2nd Group Verbs as '...ru.'

(3) 'Na Adjectives' consisting of the Stem (the form preceding *na*) plus a Copula, conjugation is done with the Copula.

Presumptive/Volitional form	Imperative form	reba form (Conditional)	Negative form	Passive form	Potential form	Causative form
kakô	kake	kakeba	kakanai	kakareru	kakeru	kakaseru
oyogô	oyoge	oyogeba	oyoganai	oyogareru	oyogeru	oyogaseru
osô	ose	oseba	osanai	osareru	oseru	osaseru
yomô	yome	yomeba	yomanai	yomareru	yomeru	yomaseru
shinô	shine	shineba	shinanai	shinareru	shineru	shinaseru
yobô	yobe	yobeba	yobanai	yobareru	yoberu	yobaseru
matô	mate	mateba	matanai	matareru	materu	mataseru
norô	nore	noreba	noranai	norareru	noreru	noraseru
kaô	kae	kaeba	kawanai	kawareru	kaeru	kawaseru
tabeyô	tabero	tabereba	tabenai	taberareru	taberareru	tabesaseru
miyô	miro	mireba	minai	mirareru	mirareru	misaseru
shiyô	shiro (seyo)	sureba	shinai	sareru	(dekiru) korareru	saseru kosaseru
koyô	koi	kureba	konai	korareru	(s)aserareru (s)aseraru	(s)aserareru
--mashô	(--mase)	(--masureba)	masen			
-(r)areyô	-(r)arero	-(r)arereba	-(r)arenai			
-(s)aseyô	-(s)asero	-(s)asereba	-(s)asenai			
samukarô		samukereba	samuku nai			
darô		nara	de(wa) nai			
deshô		de(wa) arimasen				

(4) The Presumptive/Volitional forms of Verbs expressing voluntary actions indicate 'volition' as in will, intention, or invitation (See §§ 49 & § 76), and those of Verbs expressing non-voluntary actions, events, or states; Adjectives; and the Copula indicate the speaker's presumption or assumption.

(5) The negative forms of Verbs are conjugated in almost the same way as 'i Adjectives,' becoming *kakanai*, *kakanakatta*, *kakanakereba*, etc. For '-nakute', however, '-naide' or '-zu-ni' is sometimes used, as in *Kakanaide-kudasai*. ('Please do not write.') and *Kakazu-ni kaerimashita*. ('I went home without writing.')

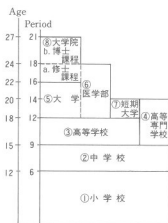
## Numerals and the Counting System

	Chinese-origin Numerals	Abstract Number + Counter (See § 14)					Native Japanese	
		+ mai	+ satsu	+ hon	+ dai	+ tsū	Things	People
1	ichi	ichi-mai	is-satsu	ip-pon	ichi-dai	it-tsū	hito-tsu	hito-ri
2	ni	ni-mai	ni-satsu	ni-hon	ni-dai	ni-tsū	futa-tsu	futa-ri
3	san	san-mai	san-satsu	san-bon	san-dai	san-tsū	mit-tsu	san-nin
4	shi	yo(n)-mai	yon-satsu	yon   shi   -hon	yon-dai	yon-tsū	yot-tsu	yo-nin
5	go	go-mai	go-satsu	go-hon	go-dai	go-tsū	itsu-tsu	go-nin
6	roku	roku-mai	roku-satsu	rop-pon	roku-dai	roku-tsū	mut-tsu	roku-nin
7	shichi	shichi   nana   -mai	nana-satsu	nana-hon	nana-dai	nana-tsū	nana-tsu	shichi   nana   -nin
8	hachi	hachi-mai	has-satsu	hachi-hon	hachi-dai	hat-tsū	yat-tsu	hachi-nin
9	kyū	kyū-mai	kyū-satsu	kyū-hon	kyū-dai	kyū-tsū	kokono-tsu	kyū-nin
10	jū	jū-mai	jus-satsu	jup-pon	jū-dai	jut-tsū	tō	jū-nin

11	jū-ichi	100	hyaku	10,000	ichi-man
12	jū-ni	156	hyaku-go-jū-roku	100,000	jū-man
13	jū-san	200	ni-hyaku	1,000,000	hyaku-man
14	jū-shi, jū-yon	300	san-byaku	4,000,000	yon-hyaku-man
15	jū-go	400	yon-hyaku	10,000,000	sen-man
16	jū-roku	500	go-hyaku	30,000,000	san-zen-man
17	jū-shichi, jū-nana	600	rop-pyaku	100,000,000	ichi-oku
18	jū-hachi	700	nana-hyaku	1,000,000,000	jū-oku
19	jū-kyū, jū-ku	800	hap-pyaku	10,000,000,000	hyaku-oku
20	ni-jū	900	kyū-hyaku	100,000,000,000	sen-oku
21	ni-jū-ichi	1,000	sen	1,000,000,000,000	it-chō
22	ni-jū-shi, ni-jū-yon	1,973	sen-kyū-hyaku-nana-jū-san		
30	san-jū	2,000	ni-sen	0	rei (or zero)
40	yon-jū	3,000	san-zen	0.5	rei-ten-go
50	go-jū	4,000	yon-sen	0.176	rei-ten-ichi-nana-roku
60	roku-jū	5,000	go-sen	1/2	ni-bun-no-ichi
70	nana-jū	6,000	roku-sen	3/4	yon-bun-no-san
80	hachi-jū	7,000	nana-sen		
90	kyū-jū	8,000	has-sen		
99	kyū-jū-kyū	9,000	kyū-sen		

## Education System

1. Primary (or Elementary) School
2. Junior High (or Middle) School
3. High School
4. Technical College
5. University (or College)
6. School of Medicine
7. Junior College
8. Graduate School
  - a. Master's Course
  - b. Doctorate Course



## Main Fields of Study

Bungaku	literature	Igaku	medical science
Koku-bungaku	Japanese literature	nai-ka	general medicine
or Nihon-bungaku		ge-ka	surgery
Ei-bungaku	English literature	Shi-gaku	dentistry
Gengo-gaku	linguistics,	Yaku-gaku	pharmacology
	philology	Kenchiku (-gaku)	architecture
Tetsugaku	philosophy	Doboku-kōgaku	civil engineering
Shakai-gaku	sociology	Toshi-keikaku	urban planning
Shinri-gaku	psychology	Kikai-kōgaku	mechanical engineering
Rekishi (-gaku)	history	Senpaku-kōgaku	shipbuilding
Chiri (-gaku)	geography	or Zōsen-kōgaku	
Hōritsu (-gaku)	law, jurisprudence	Denki-kōgaku	electrical engineering
Seiji-gaku	political science	Denshi-kōgaku	electronic engineering
Keizai (-gaku)	economics	Yakin-gaku	metallurgy
Keiei-gaku	business administration	Jōhō-kōgaku	information science
Tōkei-gaku	statistics	Nō-gaku	agriculture
Kyōiku-gaku	education	Ringyō	forestry
Sōgaku	mathematics	Nōgyō-keizai-gaku	agricultural economics
Butsuri (-gaku)	physics	Suisan-gaku	fishery
Kagaku	chemistry	Bijutsu	fine arts
Dōbutsu-gaku	zoology	Onkaku	music
Shokubutsu-gaku	botany	Engeki (-gaku)	theater
Seibutsu-gaku	biology		

# INDEX

1. This index gives each entry first in romanized and then in Japanese script as it is commonly written. The first number following an entry is the page on which it first appears, while larger-type page numbers are for relevant grammatical explanations.
2. Verbs and other words which change with use are given in their dictionary forms.
3. For reference, this index also includes words given in footnotes to help explain other words, even when these do not appear in the text proper.

A	
ア ああ	30
ã ああ	27
abiru 浴びる	124
abunai あふない	125
achi-kochi あちこち	272
achira あちら	15, 106
achiragawa あちら川	106
adana あだ名	139
afurero あふれる	356
ageru 上げる	304
ageru あげる	202, 206
teageru	202, 207
ai 愛	248
aida 間	40, 123
...no aida	118, 190
aitsutsu あいさつ	107
aisumimasen	
あいすみません	331
aite 相手	164
aite-koku 相手国	176
aitsuide あいついで	308
aji 味	347, 350
aji ga suru	350
Ajia アジア	248
Ajia-tairiku	
アジア大陸	248
aka 赤	106
aka-chan 赤ちゃん	263
akadashi 赤出し	114

Akagi-san 赤城山	179
Aka-hige 赤ひげ	342
akai 赤い	29
akarui 明るい	82, 227
Akashi Chûgû	
明石中宮	368
Aka-tonbo 赤とんぼ	154
ake 一あげ	94
akebono あけぼの	356
akegata 明け方	368
akeru あける	104, 119
aki 秋	68
akikaze 秋風	368
akimatsuri 秋祭り	92
akirameru あきらめる	356
akôdion アコーデオン	166
aku あく	89, 126
okushon アクション	286
Ama no gawa 天の川	80
amari あまり	22, 27, 178
amari...nai	22
...amari ...あまり	46
ame 雨	68
ame ga agaru	250
ame-agari 雨上がり	250
Amerika アメリカ	68
ana 穴	104
anata あなた	11
anata-gata あなたがた	11
ane 姉	138
ani 兄	233
ani 兄	233
anna あんな	27, 155
anna-ni あんなに	27
annai 案内	150
annai-sho 案内所	150
ano あの	22, 26
anshin 安心	323
anzen 安全	344
ao 青	106
aol 青い	71
ao-shingû 青信号	107
Ara あら	90
Arashi-yama 嵐山	71
arasu 争う	368
arawareru 現われる	272
arayuru あらゆる	344
are あれ	10, 15
are hodo	323
areru	190, 194
orerugi アレルギー	163
arigatai ありがたい	199
arigatô ありがたい	18
(dewa)arimasen	
(では)ありません	10
arimasu あります	38
Ariyoshi Sawako	
有吉佐和子	190
(...de)aru ...であらう	368
aru ある	34
netsu ga aru	113
tearu	250, 254
aru ある	191
aruite 歩いて	31
aruiwa あるいは	140
aruku 歩く	31
Arupusu アルプス	102

asa 朝	46
asa-gohan 朝ご飯	46
asa-hi 朝日	233
asa-nebô 朝寝坊	316
asa-yû 朝夕	272
asatte あさって	113
aseru	190, 195
ashi 足	71
Ashikaga-shi 足利氏	200
ashita あした	56
asobi 遊び	223
asobu 遊ぶ	82
asoko あそこ	11, 15
asu あす	94
Asuka-jidai 飛鳥時代	128
atama 頭	104
atama ga itai	161
ataeru 与える	140
atarashi 新しい	22
atarashisa 新しい	298
atari あたり	22, 330
...atari ...あたり	140
atatakai 暖かい	115
atesaki あて先	175
ato あと	107, 152
ato de	91, 123
atsui 熱い	115
atsui-shingû	118
atsumari 集まり	335
atsumaru 集まる	335
atsumeru 集める	91
atsuryoku 圧力	308
atsusa 著さ	118
atto iu ma ni	
あつという間に	267, 283
au 会う	64
au 一合う	215
awasete 合わせて	344
awaseru 合わせる	345
awateru あわてる	247
ayatsuru あやつる	200
azukeru 預ける	367

Bakufu 幕府	200
ban 晩	53
banashi (=hanashi) 話	—184
bangô 番号	89
ban-gohan 晩ご飯	89
bangumi 番組	160
ban-nen 晩年	356
ban-shô 伴奏	248
bara ばら	10
barai 一払い	198
boransu パランス	176
boransu o toru	176
borê-bôru バレーボール	127
bariki 馬力	178
Bashô 芭蕉	71
basu バス	57
basu-dai バス代	304
bosuketto-bôru	
バスケットボール	127
bata-bata (to)	
ばたばた(と)	271
ben 便	83
benchi ベンチ	83
benkyô 勉強	46
benri 便利	28
ben-tô 弁当	82
beranda ベランダ	250
beru ベル	269
beshuto-serâ	
べらぶら(と)	262
bestose-ra	
betsu 別	245
betsu 別	245
betsu 別	344
betsu-ni 別に	319
bi (=hi) 一日	47
biyutsu 美術	22
biyutsukan 美術館	41
biki (=hiki) 一匹	41
biru ビール	30
biru ビール	47
biwa びわ	248
bôeki 貿易	176
boku はく	58
bon (=hon) 一本	34
bônasu ボーナス	220
bônenkai 忘年会	306
Bon-odori 盆踊り	119
bon'yari ほんやり	346
bôringu ボーリング	149
bôru ボール	83
bôru-pen ボールペン	83
boshû 募集	214
bu 一部	140

bungaku-sakuhin	
文学作品	224
bungaku-shi 文学史	332
bungo 文語	295
bungo-bun 文語文	295
bunka 文化	95
bunka-kai 分科会	335
bunmei 文明	200
Bunraku 文楽	248
bunshô 文章	188
bunseki 分析	356
buntai 文体	188
bura-bura (to)	
ぶらぶら(と)	262
buranko ぶらんこ	82
buri ぶり	238
buri ぶり	272
bushi 武士	200
busu 武装	140
butsu 部数	200
butsudan 仏壇	344
butsuzô 仏像	305
byaku (=hyaku) 一百	154
byô 一秒	244
byô 一病	296
byôin 病院	17
byôki 病気	77
byôki mimai	
病気見舞い	343

## C

cha 茶	70
chamise 茶店	70
channeru チャンネル	58
Chappurin チャップリン	298
chi 知	275

chichi 父	90	Chūgoku-fū 中国風	188
chichi-oya 父親	262	Chūgokugo 中国語	46
Chigaimasu 違います	30	Chūgokujin 中国人	56
chigai nai 違う	226, 231	Chūgū 中宮	368
...to chigatte	356	Chūkar'yōri 中華料理	114
chiheisen 地平線	95	Chūkyō 中京	272
chiho 地方	118, 128	chūmon 注文	114
chihōshi 地方紙	140	chūō 中央	128
chiki 地域	272	chūōseifu 中央政府	128
chitsai 小さい	22	chūsei 中世	294
chiisa-na 小さな	27, 95	chūsha 注射	163
chika 地下	58	chūshin 中心	95
chika 地価	272	-chūshin 一中心	128
chika-goro 近ごろ	166	chūshōki-gyō 中小企業	260
chikai 近い	23	Chūzenjiko 中禅寺湖	246
...ni chikai	23, 152		
chikai-ai 誓い合う	320	D	
chika-ika 近々	358	da だ	94, 98
chikaku 近く	70, 334	dai 題	214
Chikamatsu 近松	248	dai- 大一	116
chika-tetsu 地下鉄	64	dai- 第一	92
chūka 蓄	321	dai-...ji 第...次	116
chūka-seki 蓄積	296	dai-...jō 第...条	320
chingin 賃金	176	dai- 一台	35, 39
chippu チップ	151	dai- 一代	198
chiryō 治療	296	...dai? だい	159, 306
chiryō-hō 治療法	296	daibu だいぶ	270
chizu 地図	151	daibun 大部分	344
chō 長一	138	daibun だいぶん	107
chō 一長	34	Daibutsu 大仏	79
(te)-chōdai		daidokoro 台所	340
(一て)ちようだい	149	daigaku 大学	17
chōdo ちようど	333	daigakuin 大学院	152
chōjikan 長時間	308	daihyō 代表	224
chōjō 頂上	233	daihyō-teki 代表的	332
Chōjō-giga 鳥獣戯画	70	daiichi 第一	166
chōkkan 長期間	138	daiichi ni 二	298
choku-go 直後	202	daiichi-jisangyō	
chokusetsu 直接	212	... 第一次産業	116
choku-yaku 直訳	356	Daiichi-jisekaitaisen	
chōnin 町人	248	... 第一次世界大戦	308
chōsa 調査	140	daijūbu だいじゅうぶ	103
Chōsen 朝鮮	104	Daikan 大企業	322
chōsetsu 調節	311	daikigyō 大企業	260
chotto ちよっと	30	daikirai 大きらい	221
chū 一中	233	Daimonji 大文字	92
Chūbu-chihō 中部地方	118	Dai-ni-jisekaitaisen	
chūdoku 中毒	296	... 第二次世界大戦	320
chūgakko 中学校	152	dai-ni-jisangyō	
chūgaku 中学	82	dairekuto ダイレクト	286
chūgakusei 中学生	82	daisan-jisangyō	
Chūgoku 中国	46		

第三次産業	116
daisuki 大好き	221
daitai だいたい	68, 366
daitan 大胆	332
daitoshi 大都市	272
-daka 一高	176
dakara だから	164
...dake ...だけ	80
...dake de naku	154
-dake 一岳	102
dakedo だけど	271
dame だめ	91
-dana (=tana) 一だな	35
dan'atsu 彈圧	308
danchi 団地	250
dandan だんだん	140
dan-jo 男女	82
dan-sei 男性	188
dansu ダンス	172
dare だれ	11, 15
dare demo	173
dare ka	196
dare-dare だれだれ	306
-dari (=tari) 一だり	83
...darō ...だらう	227, 230
dari だるい	163
karada ga darui	163
-dashi 一出し	274
dasu 出す	164, 311
daibun だいた	94, 98
dattara だったら	278
de で	307
de 出	347
23,42,46,51,63,123,147	
de aru である	95
...de gozaimasu	234
...de gozaimasu	234
dekaku 出かける	124
dekiru できる	166, 170
...koto ga dekiru	166
dekiru dake	284
dekiru できる	185, 298
(...kara)dekiteru	
(...から)できている	164
demo でも	163
...demo ...でも	127
Dengaku 田楽	248
denki 電気	16
denki 電機	140
denki-dai 電気代	198
denki-ōgaku 電気工学	199
denki-méka 電機メーカー	140
denki-seihin 電気製品	272

denki sutando 電気スタンド	16
denrai 伝来	344
densetsu 伝説	80
densha 電車	46
dentō 伝統	143
dentō-bunka 伝統文化	214
dentō-ōgaku 伝統音楽	184
dentō-sangyō 伝統産業	143
dentō-teki 伝統的	284
denwa 電話	34
denwa ga aru	137
denwa ga kakaru	167
denwa o kakaru	52
denwa-bangō 電話番号	89
depōto デパート	65
dere (=tara) 一寺	101
deru 出る	59
deshi 弟子	91
dore どれ	15, 66
dore gurai	66
-dori 一取り	54
dōri 道	70
dorobō どろぼう	196
dōro-seibi 道路整備	282
doru ドル	174
doryoku 努力	176
dōsō 同意	358
dōsō-kai 同意会	358
dōtte koto wa nai	319
どうってことはない	319
Do-yō 土曜	119
Do-yōbi 土曜日	64
dōzo どうぞ	18
Dōzo yoroshiku	18
E	
e 絵	79
e へ	46, 51
E え	31
E...to ええ...と	19
-eba	278
Eberesuto エベレスト	148
eda 枝	191
Edo 江戸	248
edo-jidai 江戸時代	248
egaku 描く	332
-ehagaki 絵はがき	284
eien 永遠	79
eiga 映画	64
eiga-kan 映画館	64
Eigo 英語	56
eigyō 営業	34

Doitsu ドイツ	57
Doitsu-jin ドイツ人	57
dōji 同時	190
...to dōji ni	190
doko どこ	11, 15
doko ka	226
dokui 独自	200
dokusen 独占	200
dokyū 同級	306
dōmo どうも	18
donata どうなた	15
dōnatsu ドーナツ	272
dōndon (to)	271
dōndon (& to)	267, 271
donna どんな	23, 27
donna-ni	27
dono どの	26, 250
doraibu ドライブ	178
dore どれ	15, 66
dore gurai	66
-dori 一取り	54
dōro 道	70
dorobō どろぼう	196
dōro-seibi 道路整備	282
doru ドル	174
doryoku 努力	176
dōsō 同意	358
dōsō-kai 同意会	358
dōtte koto wa nai	319
どうってことはない	319
Do-yō 土曜	119
Do-yōbi 土曜日	64
dōzo どうぞ	18
Dōzo yoroshiku	18
E	
e 絵	79
e へ	46, 51
E え	31
E...to ええ...と	19
-eba	278
Eberesuto エベレスト	148
eda 枝	191
Edo 江戸	248
edo-jidai 江戸時代	248
egaku 描く	332
-ehagaki 絵はがき	284
eien 永遠	79
eiga 映画	64
eiga-kan 映画館	64
Eigo 英語	56
eigyō 営業	34

eigyō-ka 営業課	34
Eikoku 英国	56
ekyō 影響	140
ekyū 永久	320
Ei-Wa-jiten 英和辞典	154
eki 駅	17
ekimai 駅前	59
-en 一円	46
engan 沿岸	116
enjuu 演じる	344
enjo 奨励	308
en-kei 円形	284
enpitsu 鉛筆	40
enryo 遠慮	281
-enryo-naku	281
ensen 沿線	296
ensō 演奏	167
en-yō 遠洋	116
en-yō-gyōgi 遠洋漁業	116
erabu 遊ぶ	196
erebēta エレベーター	58
erebēta-gōru エレベーター・ガール	352
ero エロ	299
ero-guro-nansensu エロ・グロ・ナンセンス	299
eru 得る	200
-eru 得る	238, 242
Etowāru エトワール	139
F	
fu 不	76
-fu 一風	188
fu-ben 不便	89
fubo 父母	239
fudan ふだん	104
fudan-gyō ふだん着	104
Fudo-ki 風土記	224
fu 風	248
fu-jūben 不十分	236
fueru ふえる	116
fuirumu フィルム	54
fuji 婦人	104
Fuji-san 富士山	148
Fujiwara-shi 藤原氏	128
fukai 深い	335
fukei 風景	184
fukkatsu 復活	224
fukō 不幸	344
fukoku-kyōheisaku 富国強兵策	308

fuku 服	65	gaku 一学	128	gichō 議長	196	gurē グレー	211	初めまして	18	haru 張る	102
fuku 吹く	83, 100	gaku 一類	176	giku 議員	308	guro グロ	299	hajimeru 始める	46	haru はる	286
fukumeru 含める	190	gaku-bu 学部	152	gijutsu 技術	176	guru ープ	103	hajimeru 一始める	154	hashi 橋	82
Fuku no kami 福の神	80	gakusei 楽譜	166	gimon 疑問	287	guru-pu-ryokuō		haka 墓	355	hashirisaru 走り去る	346
Fukuoka 福岡	53	gakusei 学生	11	gimu 義務	152	グループ旅行	160	hakaba 幕場	355	hashiru 走る	75
fukuso 福袋	104	gakuseijidai		gimū-kyōiku 義務教育	152	グルスキナ	334	hakama はかま	104	hassha 発車	360
fukuzatsu 複雑	76	学生時代	149	ginkō 銀行	11	gyaku 逆	260	hakana-sa はかなさ	368	hatake 畑	239
fukuyō 普及	140	gaku-sha 学者	196	ginkon-shiki 銀婚式	202	gyaku ni	260	hakanai はかない	369	hataraku 働く	112
fukūyōritsu 普及率	140	gamashō がまし	287	GINZA 銀座	65	gyaku 一業	116	hakase はかせ	153	hatsu 初一	323
-fun 一分	31	ganbaru がんばる	263	girei 儀礼	344	gyōgyō 漁業	86	hakkiri (to)		hatsu-zuri 初づり	46
funo 船	200	...ga ne ...かね	323	giri 儀礼	332	gyōji 行事	110	はつきり(と)	210, 267	hatsun 初音	323
funsui 噴水	284	-garu 一がる	154	giron 議論	320	gyomin 漁民	200	hakkō 発行	140	hattatsu 発達	104
Furansu フランス	57	gasu ガス	355	gishshiri (to)		gyōretsu 行列	318	hako 箱	57	hatten 発展	190
Furansu-go フランス語	118	gata 一がた	11	ぎっしり(と)	272	gyūnyū 牛乳	197	hakobi はこび	367	hatto はっと	346
Furansu-jin		gatagata (to)		gitā ギター	244			Hakone 箱根	42	haya-oki 早起き	59
フランス人	57	がたがた(と)	269	go- ご一	91, 362			haku はく	104	hayai 速い	143
furo ふろ	89	-gawa (=kawa) 一川	80	gobusata-suru				-haku 一白	151	hayaku 早く	59
furo ni hairu	89	-gawa 一川	83	ごぶさたする	358	ha 歯	125	Hai? はあ	151	hazu はす	322, 266
furu 降る	68	geijutsu 芸術	186	gochisō ごちそう	119	habamu はばむ	332	hakushi 博士	152	Hē? へえ	283
furusu 古い	22	geinō 芸能	248	Gochisō-sama		habuku はぶく	164	hakushi-katei 博士課程	152	hei へい	284
furusato ふるさと	184	geki 劇	22	gohan ご飯	46	habuku 着く	286	hāmonika ハーモニカ	83	Heian-jidai 平安時代	104
fusai 夫妻	210	gekijō 劇場	22	Gomen-kudasai	130	haha 母	368	-han 一半	46	Heian-jingū 平安宮	78
fu-shinsetsu 不親切	76	gekkan 月刊	186	Gomen-nasai		hagaki はがき	79	hana 花	10	heibon 平凡	356
fūshū 風習	190	gemu ゲーム	103	ごめんない	127	hageshi はげしい	272	hana-mi 花見	93	heibon 平凡	356
fusoku 不足	236	gen-bun-itchi 言文一致	356	Gomen-nasai		hagemashi 助まし	347	hanareru 離れる	140	heihō- 平方一	68
Futabatei Shimei		genchi 現地	367	ごめんない	127	hagemasu 助ます	347	hanashi 話	76	Heike 平家	200
二葉亭四達	356	gendai 現代	188	go...suru ご...する	91	hagi はぎ	368	hanashiau 話し合う	215	Heike Monogatari	
futa-tabi 再び	320	gendai-Nippon-go		go-zonji ご存じ	234	haha 母	90	hanashikakeru		平家物語	332
futon ふとん	368	現代日本語	188	go 一語	17	Hahān ははん	163	hanasu 話す	196	heikin 平均	236
futsū 普通	152	gen'in 原因	316	go 一語	154	haha-oya 母親	196	hanasu 話す	82	heiva 平和	320
futsugō 不都合	335	Genji 源氏	200, 368	-goe (=koe) 一声	119	Hai はい	10, 107	hanban 半分	116	heiya 平野	68
fuyu 冬	68	Genji Monogatari		Go-gatsu 五月	56	haieki 魔鏡	296	handan 判断	128	hen 辺	106
		源氏物語	196	gogo 午後	59	handan o kudasu	128	handan o kudasu	128	hen 姿	352
		源氏の君	368	gōkei 合計	344	handō 反動	356	handō 反動	356	henji 返事	215
		源氏	332	goran ごらん	365	handōki 反動期	356	heru 出る	116	heru 出る	116
		genjitsu 現実	137	goran ni naru		Haneda 羽田	143	heru 結る	344	heta へた	166, 170
		genkan 玄関	137	ごらんになる	363	Haneda-kūkō 羽田空港	143	heya 部屋	24	heya-dai 部屋代	368
		genki 元気	77	(te)-goran-nasai		han'e 反映	212	heya 部屋	24	hi 日 (day)	47
		genkō 原稿	250	ごらんない	198	hairu はいる	71	hi 日 (sun)	95	hi 日 (day)	47
		genkō-yōshi 原稿用紙	250	...goro ...ごろ	46, 51	furo ni hairu	89	hi 日 (sun)	95	hi 日 (day)	47
		Genrokujidai		gorufu ゴルフ	42	haisen 戦戦	356	hi o tsukeru	92	hi 日 (day)	47
		元禄時代	332	gorufu-jō ゴルフ場	42	haisen-go 戦戦後	356	hidari 左手	150	hi 日 (day)	47
		genron 言論	308	gōsei 合成	176	haishi 廃止	272	hidari-gawa 左側	281	hidari 左手	150
		genryō 原料	176	gōseisen-jō 合成繊維	176	haisui 廃水	116	hidari-te 左手	150	hidai ひどい	272
		genshō 現象	272	Gosho 御所	368	haiyū 俳優	173	higai 被害	296	higai 被害	296
		genshō 減少	272	goya (=koya) 一小屋	102	hajimaru 始まる	46	higai-sha 被害者	296	higan 彼岸	322
		genzai 現在	190	gozaimasu ございます	18	hajimaru 始まる	46	higashi 東	142	hige ひげ	342
		-genzai 一現在	236	...de gozaimasu	234	hajime 初め	77	hihan 批判	335	hihan 批判	335
		gera-gera (to)		gozen 午前	185	hajime wa	77				
		ゲラゲラ(と)	298	gō-gū (to) ごうごう(と)	269	...no hajime	80				
		-getsu 一月	92	gun 軍	200	...o hajime	190				
		Getsuyōbi 月曜日	76	guri (=kuni) 一国	60	hajimete 初めて	335				
		gō 一着	65	...gurai ぐらい	31, 51	Hajimemashite					



hijō-ni 非常に	140	hiyō 費用	366
hikaku-teki 比較的	344	hi-zuke 日付	164
Hikari ひかり	143	Hō... ほう...	43
hikari 光	82	hō ほう	107, 111, 146
hikaru 光る	83	hō ga ii	106, 111
hiki 一匹	39	...no hō	167
hiki-tomeru		...no hō ga	142
		hō 法	296
引き止める	251	Hodaka 穂高	102
hiki-ukeru 引き受ける	167	...hodo ...はど	43, 142, 147, 315
hikkosu 引越す	222	are hodo	323
hikōki 飛行機	53	kaze o hodo	233
hiku ひく	88	hōdō 報道	198
		hogo 保護	200
hiku 低い	28	hoho ほう	341
hima 暇	77	Hohō ほうほう	42
hime 姫	80	hōhō 方法	340
hime-gimi 姫君	368	Hōjōki 方丈記	332
hin 一品	176	hoka ほか	68
hina-matsuri		sono hoka	68
ひな祭り	80	hōken-shakai 封建社会	308
Hina-ningyō ひな人形	80	hōken-seido	309
hino-de 日の出	185	hōki 放棄	320
hiragana ひらがな	175	Hokkaidō 北海道	68
hirakareru 開かれる	304	hōkō 広い	332
hiraku 開く	94, 200	hōkoku 報告	64
hiroi 広い	95	hōkoku-sho 報告書	64
hiroku 広く	197	Hokuriku 北陸	272
hirou 拾う	196	hōnen 方面	367
hiru 昼	47	hōmon 訪問	137
hiru-gohan 昼ご飯	58	hōmon 訪問	137
hiru-ma 昼間	130	hōmu ホーム	125
hiru-yasumi 昼休み	245	hon 本	16
hisan 悲愴	320	hon-ba 本場	239
hisashiburi 久しぶり	239	honbun 本文	164
hisho 秘書	367	hon-dana 本だな	35
hissori (to)	355	hono-bono (to)	
hitei 否定	212	hono-bono (to)	262
hito 人	11	hono-shiroku のは白く	368
hito-bito 人々	92	hon-sha 本社	275
hito no yo 人の世	275	Honshū 本州	68
hito-ri 一人	34, 39	honto ほんとう	126
hitorihitori		hontō ほんとう	94
一人一人	320	hontō ni	94
hito-suji 一筋	346	hontō wa	340
hito-tachi 人たち	28	hon-ya 本屋	187
hito-tsu 一つ	34, 39	hon-yaku 翻訳	359
hito-tsu mo...nai	126	Hora ほう	318
...no hito-tsu	92	hōritsu 法律	104
hitsuyō 必要	176	horobiru 減びる	259
hitsuyō ijō ni	286	horobu 減ぶ	259
hiyaku 飛躍	308	Hōryū-ji 法隆寺	128
hiyaku-teki 飛躍的	308		

hōsaku 豊作	92	ho へい	10
hoshi 星	80	in 委員	316
hoshii ほしい	154, 158	in-kai 委員会	316
hoshō 保証	55	iri 意地	275
hoshō 保障	190	...jō ...以上	143
hoshō-sho 保証書	55	ikaga いかが	114
hōsō 放送	198	ikayō 胃かいよう	342
hosu 干す	250	ike 池	82
hoteru ホテル	22	ikebana 生花	91
hoteru-annaisho		ikenai いけない	107, 162
ホテル案内所	150	(-tewa) ikenai	
hotoke 仏	284	(-ては) いけない	107, 111
hotondo ほとんど	47	ikeru 生ける	271
hyakkuten 百貨店	89	iki 行き	59
hyaku 百	42	ikigai 生きがい	191
hyakushō 百姓	190	ikinokoru 生き残る	368
hyōban 評判	176	ikitsuzukeru	
hyōgen 表現	212	生き続ける	299
hyōmen 表面	272	ikkai 一回	184
hyōmen-ka 表面化	272	iku 行く	46
hyotto suru to		...ni iku	70, 75
ひょっとすると	230	-teiku	254
hyū-ryō (to)	262	umaku iku	347
ビュービュー(と)		ikura いくら	54
		ikutsu ikuk	34
		ikutsu iku	30
		ima 今	34
		ima demo	80
		ima made	208
		ima nimo	346
		ima ni natte	346
		imasu います	38
		imi 意味	131
		imōto 妹	11
		in 一員	11
		...inai ...以内	244
		inaka いなか	272
		Indo インド	236
		infure インフレ	68
		inori 祈り	341
		inoru 祈る	344
		inoshishi のいしし	143
		inshō 印象	274
		inshō-teki 印象的	274
		inu 犬	40
		ippai いっぱい	70
		...de ippai	70
		ippan 一般	186
		ippan-ni	186
		ippan-teki	356
		ippo 一歩	359
		ippō 一方	200
		iken 意見	296

ira-ira (to) いらいら(と)	282	...to iu	130, 134
irasshaimase	54	(Y) to iu (X)	130, 135
いらっしやいませ	282	...to iu yori	310
irassharu		iwa 岩	248
いらっしやる	54, 363	iwai 祝い	137
ireru 入れる	91	iwau 祝う	92
kohō いろ	160, 350	iwayuru いわゆる	128
iriguchi 入り口	58	iwazu ni 言わずに	346
iro 色	43	iyai いや	102
iroiro いろいろ	30	iyā いやあ	167
ironna いろんな	298	iyā いやあ	43
irori いろり	239	izen 以前	176, 214
iru いる	34	izen to shite	
-teiru	82	自然として	260
iru いる	163	izumo no Okuni	
Ise Monogatari	224	出雲のお国	248
伊勢物語	224	izure mo いずれも	296
isha 医者	371		
ishi 医師	212		
ishi 石	284		
isogashi 忙しい	67		
isogi 急ぎ	331		
isogu 急ぐ	247		
issai いっさい	343		
issho いっしょ	58		
issho-ni	58		
isshōkenmei	235		
いっしょう懸命	262		
issō 一層	232		
isu いす	34		
itadakimasu	130		
itadaku	130, 206, 207		
いたたく	71, 161		
itai 痛い	161		
itaka ga itai	346		
itai hodo	236		
itameru 痛める	368		
itami 伊丹	143		
Itami-kūkō 伊丹空港	143		
Itaria イタリア	57		
Itaria-go イタリア語	166		
itatsu いたす	358, 363		
itaku 一致	284, 356		
itoko いとこ	11		
itsu いつ	65		
itsu ka	215		
itsu made mo	299		
itsumo いつも	22		
itsumo no	245		
iu 言う	130		
...to ieba	274		

ja ジャ	250	J	
Jā ジャあ	55		
jama ジャま	90		
jama ni naru	251		
Japanizū ジャパニーズ	212		
Japanorojizuta	334		
ジャパノロジスタ	91		
jazu ジャズ	245		
ji 字	46		
ji 一時	70		
ji 一寺	56		
ji-kuji 字引き	164		
jibun 自分	212		
jibun de	104		
jidai 時代	17		
jidōsha 自動車	320		
jietai 自衛隊	320		
jiei 自衛	356		
jiga 自我	260		
jiyō 事業	260		
jiyō-shō 事業所	79		
jika (=shika) 一じか	167		
ikan 時間	199		
...no jikan	53		
ikan 一時間	199		
iken 事件	281		
ikken 実験	100		
iko 事故	332		
iko 自己	320		
jimu 事務	185		
jimu-kikai 事務機械	185		
jin 一人	11		

jimbutsu 人物	356	<b>Junēbu</b> シュネーブ	160
jingū 一神宮	78	jū-nihito 十二ひとえ	104
jinja 神社	80	jūsho 住所	175
jinkō 人口	68	jūsu ジュース	127
jinkōmitsudo		jūtaku 住宅	186
人口密度	68	jūtakuabusoku	
Jinshin-no-ran		住宅不足	272
王車ノ乱	128	jūyō 需要	116
jishin 自信	251	jūyō 重要	176
jishin 地震	304		
jishin 自身	368	<b>K</b>	
jisho 辞書	113	ka か	10, 14
jiten 辞典	154	...ka dō ka	287
jitensha 自転車	22	ka (=kaori) 香	284
jitsuni 実	95	ka 一家	19
jitu wa 実	366	ka 一課	34
jitto じっと	346	ka 一化	116
jiyūni 自由に	200	kaban かばん	100
jo 一所	100	kabe 壁	332
jō 情	275	kabu 株	260
jō 一場	22	Kabuki 歌舞伎	184
jō 一城	78	kaburu かぶる	104
jō 一錠	163	kaburahi 袴	141
jō 一状	164	kaisha 会社	11
jōbu じょうぶ	148	kabansha-in 会社員	11
jōei	298	kaisui 海水	118
jōen 上演	248	kaisuiyoku 海水浴	118
jōhō 情報	140	kaiwa 会話	173
jōhō-katsudō		kaiyō かいよう	342
情報活動	140	kakari 係り	198
jojo-ni 徐々に	200	kakaritsuke	
jōken 条件	236	かりつけ	162
Jōmonbunka		kakaru かかる	86
縄文文化	128	kakaru かかる	42
josei 女性	160	(byōki ni) kakaru	
joshi 女史	334	かかる	296
jōshō 上昇	236	kakegoe 掛け声	319
joshu 助手	364	kakegoe o kakeru	319
jōyaku 条約	308	kakeru かける (sit)	126
joya no kane		kakeru かける (hang)	258
除夜の鐘	92	(denwa o) kakeru	52
jōzu じょうず	91, 179	(kagi o) kakeru	53
jū 一じゅう	119	kaki かき	136
jū 一重	260	kakidashi 書き出し	274
jūbun 十分	203	kakidomeru	
Jūgatsu 十月	56	書きとどめる	356
jūgyō 授業	77	kakkō かっこう	350, 352
jūgyō-in 従業員	260	kako 過去	332
jūjitsu 光栄	95	kako 加工	176
jūjutsu 呪術	344	kakōbōeki 加工貿易	176
jū-kō-gyō 重工業	176	ka-koku 一か国	196
jūmin 住民	296	kakomu 囲む	53
junki 準備	167	kaku 書く	103
		kaku 各一	248
		kaku-chi 各地	248
		kakudai 控大	260
		kakuho 確保	367
		kakumei 革命	308
		kai 会	92
		kakuritsu 確立	128

kai 一回	47	kakusa 格差	260
kai 一階	59	kaku-sū 函数	188
kai 一界	344	<b>kakuteru</b> カクテル	209
kaibarai 一回払い	198	Kamakura 鎌倉	104
kaidan 階段	150	Kamakura-jidai	
kaidan 怪談	355	鎌倉時代	104
kaidate 一階建て	223	kamera カメラ	16
kaigan 海岸	103	kami 紙	41
kaigi 会議	137	kami 神	80
kaigishitsu 会議室	185	kami-dana 神だな	344
kaikō 解放	332	Kami-kaze 神風	200
kaijō 会場	160	kamisama 神様	342
kaikan 会館	217	kamitsu 通貫	271
kaiketsu 解決	320	kamo shirenai	
kaikoku 開国	200	かもしれない	226, 230
kaikyū 階級	205	Kan 漢	188
kaimon 買い物	125	kan 寒	284
kaisha 会社	11	...kan (=kanji) ...感	356
kaisha-in	11	kan 一館	17
kaisui 海水	118	kan 一間	94
kaisuiyoku 海水浴	118	kan 一戰	214
kaiwa 会話	173	kana かな	188
kaiyō かいよう	342	kana-bungaku かな文学	224
kakari 係り	198	<b>Kanada</b> カナダ	11
kakaritsuke		<b>Kanada-jin</b> カナダ人	11
かりつけ	162	kanarazu 必ず	113
kakaru かかる	86	kanarazu-shimo...nai	
kakaru かかる	42		
(byōki ni) kakaru		kanari かなり	140
かかる	296	kanashi 悲しい	323
kakegoe 掛け声	319	kanban 看板	258
kakegoe o kakeru	319	kan-bun 漢文	188
kakeru かける (sit)	126	Kanda 神田	136
kakeru かける (hang)	258	kanō 感動	95
(denwa o) kakeru	52	kane 鐘	92
(kagi o) kakeru	53	kane 金	89
kaki かき	136	kanemochi 金持ち	280
kakidashi 書き出し	274	<b>kāneshon</b>	
kakidomeru		カーネーション	343
書きとどめる	356	kangae 考え	257
kakkō かっこう	350, 352	kangae-kata 考え方	212
kako 過去	332	kan-gaeru 考える	94
kako 加工	176	kan-giku 寒菊	284
kakōbōeki 加工貿易	176	kango 漢語	332
ka-koku 一か国	196	kanji 漢字	172
kakomu 囲む	53	kanji 感じ	347
kaku 書く	103	...kan-jia ga suru	347, 350
kaku 各一	248	Kan-jidai 漢時代	188
kaku-chi 各地	248	kanjiru 感じる	95
kakudai 控大	260	kankei 関係	187
kakuho 確保	367	kanō 観光	143
kakumei 革命	308	kan'yō 環境	272
kai 会	92	kanō 可能	272

kanajo 彼女	11	katei 家庭	80
Kansai 関西	92	katei 課程	152
kansei 完成	248	katsu 勝つ	296
kanshi 関心	190	katsudō 活動	104
Kanishi-shū 漢詩集	224	katsugu かつく	318
kanshoku 官職	200	Katsurari-kyū 桂離宮	148
kanzan 簡単	76	katsuyaku 活躍	332
Kantō 関東	92	katta desu	
<b>kanitori kurabu</b>		一かつたです	70, 74
カントリー・クラブ		kattara 一かつたら	278
kao 顔	162, 350	kau 買う	58
kaō-iro 顔色	162	kau 飼う	81
kappatsu 活発	320	kawa 川	68
kara から	46, 51	Kawabata Yasunari	
...kara dekite-iru	164	川端康成	184
...kara...ni kakete	200	kawa-beri 川べり	262
te kara	83, 87	kawirashi かわいらしい	79
kara から	70, 75	kawaisō かわいそう	106
karō カラー	54	kawaku かわく	161
<b>karō-terebi</b>		kawari 代わり	59
カラー・テレビ	140	sono kawari	59, 208
karada からだ	119	kawari ni	175
karu 被	11	kawariyō 変わりよう	354
kare 彼ら	128	kawaru 変わる	104
<b>karēndā</b> カレンダー	35	(...ni) kawatte	
<b>karē-raisu</b>		(...に)かわって	248
カーレー・ライス	58	Kayōbi 火曜日	76
karidasu 借出す	275	kayou 通う	270
kariru 借りる	124	kazan 火山	68
karitekuru		kazaru 飾る	80
借りてくる	126	kaze 風	100
karui 軽い	28	kaze かぜ	100
<b>Karukatta</b> カルカッタ	148	kaze o hiku	233
kasa かさ	16	kazoe-kirenai	
kasaneru 重ねる	104	数えきれない	296
kasen 河川	128	kazoeru 数える	296
kashioi 買い	296	kazoku 家族	41
kashira かしら	127	kazu 数	152
ka-sho 一か所	47	kae 一家	128
kasu 酒錢	272	Kegon-notaki	
kasu 貸す	208	華嚴の滝	246
Kasuga-taisha		kei 一形	284
春日大社	79	Keihanshin 京阪神	272
kata 肩	176	keikaku 計画	329
kata o naraberu	176	keikaku-sho 計画書	366
kata 型	174	keiken 経験	332
kata (=hito) 方	238	keiko けいこ	270
kata 一方	188	keikō 傾向	152
katachi 形	350, 352	keikōgyō 軽工業	176
katai 形	310	keiretsu-gaisha	
katakana かなかな	188	系列会社	260
kataritsutaeru		keisan 計算	35
語り伝える	224	keisan-ki 計算機	35

keishiki 形式	164	ki 一期	356
keishiki-teki 形式的	344	kibiki(bi) きびきび(と)	332
keizai 経済	142	kibishi きびしい	164
keizaigaku sha 経済学者	329	kibo 規模	186
keizaiseichō-ritsu 経済成長率	236	kibun 気分	270
keizaiseikatsu 経済生活	236	kieru 消える	257
kēki ケーキ	107	kiesaru 消え去る	368
kekka 結果	140	kiete-yuku 消えてゆく	368
sono kekka	140	kigae 替替え	126
kekko けっこう	130	kigo 春替	284
kekko desu	151	kigyo 企業	260
kekkon 結婚	67	kikagaku 幾何学	284
kekkon-seikatsu 結婚生活	203	kikagaku-teki 幾何学的	284
kekkon-shiki 結婚式	104	kikai 機械	28
kemuri 煙	222	kikai 機会	104
ken 券	59	kikai-ka 機械化	116
ken 一圓	272	kakaku 企画	366
ken 一権	308	kakan 期間	138
kenbutsu 見物	78	kakime きき目	344
kenbutsu-nin 見物人	119	kakake きっかけ	308
kenchiku 建築	19	kiko 氣候	104
kenchiku-ka 建築家	19	kikoeru 聞こえる	239
kenkyū 研究	167	kiku 聞く	47
kenkyū-sha 研究者	334	kiku-nae 梨苗	284
kenkyū-shitsu 研究室	359	kiku-wakaba 菊若葉	284
kenkyū-sho 研究書	214	kimaru 決まる	104
kenkyū-sho 研究所	281	kimeru 決める	268
kenpō 憲法	56	kimi 君	320
kenpō-kinen-bi 憲法記念日	56	kimi きみ	102
kenri 権利	308	kimochi 気持ち	346
kensetsu 建設	367	kimono 着物	104
kentō 検討	366	kimyō 奇砂	344
kereba 一ければ	278	kin キーン	334
keredomo けれども	51	kinben 勤働	176
kesa けさ	64	kindai 近代	200
keshiki 景色	179	kindai 近代化	355
keshite...nai 決して…ない	95	kindaiki 近代的	354
kettei 決定	320	kinen 記念	56
ki 気	106	kingan 近眼	245
ki ga chisai	316	kinjiru 禁じる	343
...ki ga suru	347, 350	kinjiru 近所	222
ki ni iru	223	kinjō 近郊	296
ki ni suru	211	kinmu 勤務	185
ki o tsukau	107	kinmu-jikan 勤務時間	185
ki o tsukeru	106	kin-nen 近年	140
ki 木	40	kinō 禁じ	58
ki 一機	35	kinodoku 気の毒	210
ki 一季	160	kinsei 近世	332
		kinshi 禁止	200
		kinshi 近視	245
		kinu 絹	352

Kinyōbi 金曜日	76	kiro 一キロ	66
kirai 記入	175	kiroku 記録	356
kippu 切符	59	kiroku 着る	284
kirai-kira (to) きらい	155, 159	kiru 切る	271
kiraku 気楽	211	kisetsu 季節	131
kirei きれい	23	kisha 汽車	83
Kirisutokyo キリスト教	200	kishitsu 氣質	212
kiro 一キロ	66	kisoku 規則	113
kiroku 記録	356	kissa-ten 喫茶店	59
kiroku 着る	284	kita 北	102
kiru 切る	271	Kita-dake 北岳	102
kisetsu 季節	131	kitai 期待	322
kisha 汽車	83	Kitayūshū 北九州	200
kishitsu 氣質	212	kitanai きたない	268
kisoku 規則	113	kitte 切手	21
kissa-ten 喫茶店	59	kitto きっと	139, 231
kita 北	102	kiwamete きわめて	176
Kita-dake 北岳	102	kiyō 器用	170
kitai 期待	322	Kiyotaki 清滝	71
Kitayūshū 北九州	200	kizoku 貴族	332
kitanai きたない	268	kizu-tsukeru 傷つける	212
kitte 切手	21	ko 子	40
kitto きっと	139, 231	ko 子一	27
kiwamete きわめて	176	ko 子一	27
kiyō 器用	170	ko 一湖	94
Kiyotaki 清滝	71	ko 一校	152
kizoku 貴族	332	Kōbe 神戸	53
kizu-tsukeru 傷つける	212	kobore-ochiru こぼれ落ちる	368
ko 子	40	koboreru こぼれる	368
ko 子一	27	kōbutsu 鉱物	116
ko 子一	27	kōcha 紅茶	59
ko 一湖	94	Kōchikōmin 公地公民	200
ko 一校	152	kochira こちら	15, 19
Kōbe 神戸	53	kodai 古代	188
kobore-ochiru こぼれ落ちる	368	Kodama こだま	143
koboreru こぼれる	368	kodama こだま	143
kōbutsu 鉱物	116	kodomo 子ども	40
kōcha 紅茶	59	kodomo-tachi 子どもたち	140
Kōchikōmin 公地公民	200	kōdo 高度	296
kochira こちら	15, 19	koe 声	113
kodai 古代	188		
Kodama こだま	143		
kodama こだま	143		
kodomo 子ども	40		
kodomo-tachi 子どもたち	140		
kōdo 高度	296		
koe 声	113		

kōe 公堂	260	kōkū-bin 航空便	293
kōen 公園	41	kokuban 黒板	35
kōen 講演	173	kokudo 国土	296
kōfuku 幸福	344	koku-ei 国費	260
kofun 古墳	104	Koku-fū-anokoku-jidai 国風暗国時代	224
Kofun-jidai 古墳時代	128	koku-gu 国語	330
kōgai 郊外	46	kokugaku 国語学	330
kōgai 公喜	196	kokumin 国民	131
kōgaku 工学	187	kokumin-sei 国民性	131
kōgaku-kankei 工学関係	187	kokumin-sō-seisan 国民総生産	236
kōgi 抗議	173	koku-nai 国内	116
kogitte 小切手	174	koku-ritsu 国立	152
kōgo 口語	164	kokusai 国際	234
Kōgō 皇后	200	kokusai-heiwa 国際平和	320
kōgo-tai 口語体	164	kokusai-kaigi 国際会議	304
kōgyō 工業	116	Kokusai-kaigiyō 国際会議場	334
kōhai 兜売	296	kokusei 国政	320
kōhī コヒー	59	kokusuibunka 国粋文化	224
kōhi o ireru こい	91	Koku-tetsu 国鉄	136
koi こい	80	kokuyō 国貨	136, 260
koi-nobori こいのぼり	80	kōkyō 公共	236
koinu 子犬	196	kōkyō-shisetsu 公共施設	236
koishī 恋しい	238	komakai 細かい	176
koji 工事	367	komasharu コマシャル	287
ko-ji 子じか	79	komatta 困ったこと	222
Kojiki 古事記	128	kome 米	92
kōjō 工場	22	kōmeidi コメディー	58
kōkagaku-sumoggu 光化学スモッグ	296	Kōmeitō 公明党	320
ko-kage 木陰	347	komu 込む	46
kōkai 後侮	82	kon 今一	76
koke こけ	101	kon-ban 今晚	18
Kōke-dera 佛寺	101	Konban wa 今晚は	220
Kokin-shū 古今集	224	konjo 今度	95
kokka 国家	260	kondo 今度	236
kokkai 国会	320	konna こんな	27, 140
kokkei こっけい	248	konna-ni こんなに	27, 282
kōkō-ritsu 国公立	152	konnicchi 今日	176
koko ここ	11, 15	Konnicchi wa 今日日は	18
kōkō 高校	43	kono この	22, 26
kōkōgaku 考古学	128	kono aida 今度	136
kokoro 広告	140	kono atari 今度	65
Kokoro 心	136	kono ma e no 今度	22
kokoro 心	136	kono tsugi 今度	107
kokoro kara 心づかい	368	kōno yō-ni 今度	224
kōkoro-zukai 心づかい	368		
kōkōsei 高校生	43		
kōkotsu 子どもつ	190		
Kōkotsu no hito 恍惚の人	190		
kokū 一国	116		
kōkū 航空	293		

kono-goro このごろ	118
kono-kan この間	200
konpyūto コンピューター	185
konran 混乱	287
kon-shū 今週	76
kon'ya 今夜	113
konzatsu 混雑	272
kō-on 高音	311
korareru 来られる	242
kore これ	10, 15
kore hodo	311
kore kara	64
kore-igo これ以後	200
Kore-kore これこれ	107
korera これら	116
kō-ritsu 公立	152
(...)koro (…の)ころ	104
kōsa 交差	106
kōsa-ten 交差点	106
kōsha 公社	59
kōshiki 公式	188
koshiraeru こしらえる	284
kōshite こうして	308
koshō 故障	178
kōshū 公衆	306
kōshū-denwa 公衆電話	306
kosode 小ぞえ	104
kōsoku 高速	282
kōsoku-dōro 高速道路	282
kōsui 香水	352
kotae 答え	212
kotaeru 答える	130
kōtai 交替	47
kōtai de	47
kotchi こっち	247
kōtei 肯定	212
koten 古典	259
koto こと	83
...koto ...この	171
...koto ga aru	178, 183
...koto ga dekiru	166
...suru koto	302
koto 琴	136
kōto コート	126
kotoba ことば	77
kōtōgakkō 高等学校	152
ko-tori 小鳥	82
kotoshi とし	67
kotowaru 断わる	251
kotozute ことづて	164
kōtsū 交通	59

Kōtsu-kōsha 交通公社 59  
 kōtsu-ryō 交通量 282  
 kōtsū-teitai 交通停滞 272  
 kowasu こわす 310  
 koya 小屋 103  
 koyomi 暦 322  
 kōzan 高山 94  
 kōzan-shokubutsu 高山植物 94  
 Kōzan-ji 高山寺 70  
 kōzō 構造 172  
 kozukai こづかい 208  
 ku 句 284  
 kuchi 口 163  
 kudamono くだもの 136  
 kudasai ください 54, 110  
 -te-kudasai 106, 110  
 (handan) o kudasu (判断を) 下す 128  
 ku-gatsu 九月 56  
 kūki 空気 23  
 kūkō 空港 143  
 kumiai 組合 308  
 kumitate 組み立てる 172  
 kumo 雲 94  
 kumori 曇り 232  
 kumoru 曇る 340  
 kun 訓 188  
 kun 一君 207  
 ku nai ーくない 22, 26  
 kuni 国 17  
 kuni-guni 国々 308  
 kuni-zakai 国境 274  
 kōra クーラー 178  
 kuraberu 比べる 236  
 ...ni kurabete 260  
 kurai 暗い 66  
 kurai 位 200  
 Kurashiki 倉敷 138  
 kurasu 暮らす 160  
 kurasu クラス 311  
 kure 暮れ 92  
 kureba 来れば 278  
 kureru 暮れる 130  
 kureru くれる 203, 206, 207  
 -te kureru 202, 207  
 kurikaeshi くり返し 332  
 Kurizumosu クリスマス 208  
 kurō 苦勞 316  
 kuroi 黒い 82  
 kuroku naru 黒くなる 102

kuru 来る 68  
 ni kuru 75  
 -te kuru 126, 184, 255  
 kūru クール 286  
 kuruma 車 89  
 kururi to くりと 346  
 kurushū 苦しい 202  
 kurushimu 苦しむ 296  
 kusa 草 274  
 Kusa-makura 草枕 274  
 kusuri 薬 163  
 kute ーくて 123  
 kutsu くつ 65  
 kuwashū 詳しい 284  
 kuzusu くずす 200  
 kyōdō キャディー 42  
 kyaku 客 107  
 kyanpu-faiyō キャンプ・ファイヤー 102  
 kyō ぎょう 58  
 kyōgen 兄弟 43  
 Kyōgen 狂言 248  
 kyōiku 教育 152  
 kyōiku-seido 教育制度 152  
 kyōju 教授 295  
 kyōkai 教会 352  
 kyōkasho 教科書 137  
 kyoku 一局 111  
 kyōkyū 供給 216  
 kyōmi 興味 114  
 kyonen 去年 67  
 kyōryoku 協力 367  
 Kyōsantō 共産党 320  
 kyōshū 競争 130  
 kyōshū 競争 152  
 kyōshūritsu 競争率 152  
 kyōten 経典 188  
 Kyōto 京都 17  
 Kyōto-eki 京都駅 70  
 kyū 急 71  
 kyū-ni 急に 322  
 kyū 一級 306  
 kyūfū 給付 236  
 kyūfugaku 給付額 236  
 kyūka 休暇 161  
 kyūko 急行 67  
 kyūkutsu 窮屈 265  
 kyūryō 給料 67  
 kyūryō-bi 給料日 328  
 Kyūshū 九州 47  
 kyūsoku 急速 116  
 kyūsokunni 急速に 116  
 kyūtei 宮廷 104

kyūyō 急用 246  
 M  
 Mā まあ 91  
 mā まあ 210  
 mā 真一 118  
 ma ni au 間に合う 247  
 machi 町 23  
 machigaera まちがえる 286  
 machigaeta まちがった 286  
 machigau まちがう 286  
 machijū 町じゅう 119  
 mada まだ 43, 62  
 mada-mada まだまだ 236  
 made まて 46, 51  
 -te made 287  
 mado 窓 35  
 mae 前 35, 38, 52  
 ...no mae ni 38  
 ...mae(ni) 123, 125  
 mae-motte 前もて 250  
 magari 曲がる 281  
 mai 舞 248  
 mai 每一 46  
 -mai 一枚 39, 41, 54  
 maisha 毎朝 46  
 maiban 毎晩 53  
 maido 毎度 343  
 -maidori 一枚どり 54  
 mainen 毎年 236  
 mainichi 毎日 52  
 mairu 参る 80, 363  
 (te)-mairimasu (て)まいます 235  
 (一)まいます 53  
 maishū 毎週 53  
 maotshi 毎年 208  
 makaseru 任せる 283  
 makeru 負ける 308  
 makka まっか 323  
 maku まく 80  
 makura まくら 274  
 ...mama ...まま 123  
 māmā ままあ 67  
 mame 豆 80  
 ma-mo-naku まもなく 235  
 mamoru 守る 113  
 man- まん一 35  
 man- 満一 92  
 -man 一万 55  
 ma-natsu 真夏 118  
 Maneki 招き 258  
 maneku 招く 80

manga 漫画 160  
 man-getsu 満月 92  
 menka 満花 66  
 man'in-densha 満員電車 272  
 man-naka まん中 35  
 Manshon マンション 223  
 Man'yōshū 万葉集 224  
 marui 丸い 353  
 masa-ni まさに 356  
 -masen ーません 50  
 -masen deshita 62  
 -mashita ーました 58, 62  
 -mashō ーましよう 106, 111  
 Mashū-ko 摩訶湖 94  
 massugu まっすぐ 65, 281  
 mastū マスター 317  
 masutō-rōbun マスター論文 317  
 -masu ーます 50  
 masu-komi マスコミ 140  
 masu-masu ますます 272  
 mata また 92, 94  
 matomeru まとめる 214  
 matsu 待つ 54, 88  
 matsu 松 80  
 -matsu 一末 238  
 Matsumoto Seichō 松本清張 160  
 matsuri 祭り 80  
 matsuru 祭る 248  
 Matōhōru マトホルン 149  
 mattaku まったく 298  
 mawari 回り 116  
 mawaru 回る 83  
 mawasu 回す 354  
 mayoi-komu 迷い込む 332  
 mazu ます 70  
 mazushii 賢しい 190  
 me 目 248  
 me o mawasu 354  
 medatsu 目立つ 236  
 megane めがね 16  
 megumi 恵み 344  
 megumu 恵む 345  
 -mei 一名 367  
 Meiji 明治 260  
 Meijishin 明治維新 308  
 meishi 名刺 18  
 -meita 一めた 355  
 meisho 名所 78  
 meiwaku 迷惑 262  
 mēkō メーカー 140

memo メモ 328  
 menbō メンバー 42  
 menka 満花 176  
 menkyo 免許 178  
 men-orimono 綿織物 176  
 menzei 免税 55  
 merodi メロディー 155  
 mētōru メートル 69  
 metani...nai 62  
 めったに...ない 47, 62  
 mezameru 目ざめる 356  
 mezurashi 珍しい 43  
 mi 身 368  
 michi 道 371  
 michi-shirube 道しるべ 191  
 midori 緑 71  
 mieru 見る 234, 238  
 migaku みがく 125  
 migi 右 38, 40  
 migite 右手 150  
 mihon 見本 317  
 mijikai 短い 76  
 mikakeru 見かける 286  
 mikon 未婚 186  
 mikoshi みこし 164  
 mimai 見舞い 318  
 ...miman ...未満 260  
 mimau 見舞う 165  
 mina 皆 42  
 Minamata 水俣 296  
 minami 南 102  
 Minami-Arupusu 南アルプス 102  
 Minami-zake 南庄 102  
 minami-muki 南向き 258  
 Minamoto no Yoritomo 源頼朝 200  
 mina-sama 皆様 164  
 minna みんな 58  
 minsei 民生 320  
 Minshō-to 民社党 320  
 minshū 民衆 248  
 minshu-shugi 民主主義 308  
 minshu-teki 民主的 308  
 miokuru 見送る 368  
 mi-orosu 見おろす 83  
 -miri ーミリ 54  
 miru 見る 214, 255  
 mise 店 70  
 miseru 見せる 174, 227  
 miso みそ 114  
 mitai みたい 339

mitsudo 密度 69  
 mitsukaru 見つかる 154  
 mitsukeru 見つける 311  
 Mitsubishi 三菱 260  
 Mitsui 三井 260  
 miyako 都 128  
 mizu 水 23  
 mizuumi 湖 95  
 mo も 10, 14  
 mō もう 58, 62  
 mō ichinen 221  
 mochi もち 80  
 mochi-ori 292  
 mochiuru 用いる 344  
 mochikata 持ち方 335  
 mochiron もちろん 103  
 modan モダン 91  
 Modan Taigusu モダン・タイムス 298  
 moji 文字 188  
 mokuteki 目的 294  
 Moku-yōbi 木曜日 76  
 mokuzai 木材 116  
 momiji もみじ 68  
 momo 桃, もも 10  
 Mon 門 275  
 mon 門 294  
 mon (=mono) もん 275  
 mondai 問題 190  
 Mongoru モンゴル 200  
 monmō 文盲 152  
 monmō-ritsu 文盲率 152  
 mono もの 95  
 mono o iu 212  
 mono 者 139  
 monogatari 物語 196  
 morau もらう 203, 206  
 -te-morau 203, 207  
 mori 森 344  
 moriawase 盛り合わせ 114  
 Mori Ōgai 森鴎外 356  
 moshi もし 280  
 -mōshi-agemasu 申し上げます 235  
 mōshi-ageru 申し上げる 368  
 moshi ka suru to 申しかけると 231  
 Mōshi-mōshi ももし 137  
 mōshi-tukeru 申しつける 367  
 mōshiwake nai 申し上げない 247  
 (...to)mōsu (...と)申す 363  
 motarasu もたらす 260

motomeru 求める 284  
 motomoto もともと 116  
 motsu 持つ 82  
 motte-ku 持って行く 199  
 motto もっと 78  
 mottoomo 最も 150  
 muchū 夢中 251  
 mūdo ムード 150  
 mu-hihan 無批判 356  
 mujun 矛盾 356  
 mujō 無常 332  
 mukae 迎え 92  
 mukaueru 迎える 359  
 mukanshin 無関心 320  
 mukashi 昔 71  
 mukau 向かう 272  
 ...muke ...向け 186  
 mukeru 向ける 346  
 ...muki ...向き 223  
 mukō 向こう 30  
 mukō-gawa 向こう側 83  
 mune 胸 262  
 mura 村 92  
 Murasaki-no-ue 紫の上 368  
 Murasaki Shikibu 紫式部 196  
 Muromachi 室町 200  
 Muromachijidai 室町時代 104  
 mur-yō 無料 151  
 mushitsutsu むし暑い 118  
 musu むす 118  
 musubi 無数 344  
 musubi 結び 164  
 musubu 結ぶ 164, 308  
 musuko むすこ 191  
 musume 娘 191  
 muzukashii むずかしい 28

N

Nagasaki 長崎 184  
 nagasu 流す 191  
 namida の なみだ 191  
 nagaku 長く 368  
 nageru 投げる 83  
 Nagoya 名古屋 112  
 nagusame 怒め 347  
 nagusameru 怒める 344  
 ...nai ...ない 94, 98  
 ...nai ...ない 116  
 ...naide kudasai ...ないてください 110  
 naiyō 内容 236  
 naka 中 34, 38  
 ...no naka de ...の中 146  
 naka-goro 中ごろ 200  
 nakama 仲間 211  
 nakanaka なかなか 154  
 ...nakatta ...なかった 94  
 ...nakatta desu ...なかった 74  
 nakereba narimasen ...なければなりません 106, 110  
 nakidasu 泣き出す 346  
 nakigoe 鳴き声 239  
 naku 鳴く 239  
 naku 泣く 269  
 nakunaru なくなる 368  
 naku-naru なくなる 80  
 ...nakutcha ...なくっちゃ 287  
 namae 名前 11  
 namida 涙 191  
 namida-gumi 涙ぐむ 203  
 nan (=nani) 何 10, 15  
 nan- 何- 34  
 nanda ka 何だか 352  
 nan demo 何でも 179  
 nando ka 何度か 239  
 nan-do mo 何度度も 155  
 nani 何 40, 56  
 ...nani ka ...なに 187  
 ...nani ka to ...なに 262  
 nanijin 何人 56  
 nan-ji 何時 64  
 ...nanka ...なんか 342  
 nan-nari to 何なりと 367  
 nan-nin 何人 34  
 ...no desu ...なのです 299  
 nansensu ナンセンス 299  
 ...nante ...なんて 270  
 nan to ittemo ...なに 270  
 ...ni chigai nai ...ない 226  
 nan toka suru ...ない 75

...ni kaeru 75  
 nisan-kan 二, 三回 179  
 nishi 西 236  
 ...ni oite mo 356  
 Nara 奈良 79  
 Nara-jidai 奈良時代 128  
 ...nara ...なら 167, 274, 278  
 naraberu 並べる 176  
 (...to) narande (...と)並んで 344  
 (...te) naranai (...て)ならない 332  
 narau 買う 77  
 Narayama-bushiku 山崎節 190  
 naru なる 102  
 (...ni) naru (...に)なる 107, 118  
 naru 鳴る 269  
 naruhodo なるほど 54  
 ...nasai ...なさい 18, 110  
 nasaru なさる 342  
 natsu 夏 80  
 natsugoku 夏菊 284  
 Natsume Sōseki 夏目漱石 274  
 natsu-yama 夏山 94  
 natsuyasumi 夏休み 94  
 nawa なわ 80  
 nayamasu 悩ます 222  
 nayami 悩む 226  
 nayamu 悩む 222  
 naze なぜ 167  
 naze nara なぜなら 167  
 ...n desu ...んです 199  
 ne お 22, 27  
 nē おえ 31  
 nebō 寝坊 316  
 nedan 値段 151  
 nega karū ネガ・カラ- 54  
 negai 願い 126  
 negau 願う 126  
 neko おこ 41  
 nemu 眠る 124  
 ...nen 一年 67  
 nenga-jō 年賀状 164  
 nen-ji 年じゅう 271  
 nen-matsu 年末 238  
 nen-nen 年々 116  
 nen-sei 一年生 166  
 neru 寝る 52  
 netsu 熱 113  
 ni に 23, 27, 38, 43, 46, 47, 51, 63  
 ...ni chigai nai ...ない 226  
 ...ni iku ...ない 75

...ni kaeru 75  
 nisan-kan 二, 三回 179  
 nishi 西 236  
 ...ni oite mo 356  
 Nara 奈良 79  
 Nara-jidai 奈良時代 128  
 ...nara ...なら 167, 274, 278  
 naraberu 並べる 176  
 (...to) narande (...と)並んで 344  
 (...te) naranai (...て)ならない 332  
 narau 買う 77  
 Narayama-bushiku 山崎節 190  
 naru なる 102  
 (...ni) naru (...に)なる 107, 118  
 naru 鳴る 269  
 naruhodo なるほど 54  
 ...nasai ...なさい 18, 110  
 nasaru なさる 342  
 natsu 夏 80  
 natsugoku 夏菊 284  
 Natsume Sōseki 夏目漱石 274  
 natsu-yama 夏山 94  
 natsuyasumi 夏休み 94  
 nawa なわ 80  
 nayamasu 悩ます 222  
 nayami 悩む 226  
 nayamu 悩む 222  
 naze なぜ 167  
 naze nara なぜなら 167  
 ...n desu ...んです 199  
 ne お 22, 27  
 nē おえ 31  
 nebō 寝坊 316  
 nedan 値段 151  
 nega karū ネガ・カラ- 54  
 negai 願い 126  
 negau 願う 126  
 neko おこ 41  
 nemu 眠る 124  
 ...nen 一年 67  
 nenga-jō 年賀状 164  
 nen-ji 年じゅう 271  
 nen-matsu 年末 238  
 nen-nen 年々 116  
 nen-sei 一年生 166  
 neru 寝る 52  
 netsu 熱 113  
 ni に 23, 27, 38, 43, 46, 47, 51, 63  
 ...ni chigai nai ...ない 226  
 ...ni iku ...ない 75

...ni kaeru 75  
 nisan-kan 二, 三回 179  
 nishi 西 236  
 ...ni oite mo 356  
 Nara 奈良 79  
 Nara-jidai 奈良時代 128  
 ...nara ...なら 167, 274, 278  
 naraberu 並べる 176  
 (...to) narande (...と)並んで 344  
 (...te) naranai (...て)ならない 332  
 narau 買う 77  
 Narayama-bushiku 山崎節 190  
 naru なる 102  
 (...ni) naru (...に)なる 107, 118  
 naru 鳴る 269  
 naruhodo なるほど 54  
 ...nasai ...なさい 18, 110  
 nasaru なさる 342  
 natsu 夏 80  
 natsugoku 夏菊 284  
 Natsume Sōseki 夏目漱石 274  
 natsu-yama 夏山 94  
 natsuyasumi 夏休み 94  
 nawa なわ 80  
 nayamasu 悩ます 222  
 nayami 悩む 226  
 nayamu 悩む 222  
 naze なぜ 167  
 naze nara なぜなら 167  
 ...n desu ...んです 199  
 ne お 22, 27  
 nē おえ 31  
 nebō 寝坊 316  
 nedan 値段 151  
 nega karū ネガ・カラ- 54  
 negai 願い 126  
 negau 願う 126  
 neko おこ 41  
 nemu 眠る 124  
 ...nen 一年 67  
 nenga-jō 年賀状 164  
 nen-ji 年じゅう 271  
 nen-matsu 年末 238  
 nen-nen 年々 116  
 nen-sei 一年生 166  
 neru 寝る 52  
 netsu 熱 113  
 ni に 23, 27, 38, 43, 46, 47, 51, 63  
 ...ni chigai nai ...ない 226  
 ...ni iku ...ない 75

niru 似る 105  
 nisan-kan 二, 三回 179  
 nishi 西 236  
 Nishi-Doitsu 西ドイツ 236  
 niteiru 似ている 104  
 niwa 庭 76  
 ...no 10, 15  
 ...no の 103  
 ...no ...の 298, 303  
 no desu 120  
 ...no? ...の 102, 219  
 Nō 能 248  
 nobasu 延ばす 307  
 noboru 述べる 164  
 nobonobi のびのび 167  
 noboru 伸びる 128, 306  
 nobori のぼり 80  
 noboru 登る 83, 94  
 noboru 上る 323  
 nobori 後 118  
 ...node ...ので 161  
 nodo の 140  
 ...node ...の 161  
 nodo ga kawaku 161  
 nō-gyō 農業 116  
 nō-gyōkoku 農業国 116  
 nō-gyō-seisan-butsumo 農業生産物 116  
 nohara 野原 95  
 nokoru 残る 67  
 nokosu 残す 251  
 nomimono 飲み物 115  
 nōnin 農民 308  
 nomi 飲む 47, 163  
 ...noni ...のに 222, 327  
 (taisaku ni) noridasu (対策に)乗り出す 296  
 norikaeru 乗り換える 136  
 Norikura 乗鞍 102  
 noro-noro のろのろ 282  
 ...in ...に 356  
 noro-noro-uten のろのろ運転 282  
 noru 乗る 58  
 Nippon 日本 10  
 Nippon-bashi 日本橋 310  
 Nippon-bunka 日本文化 214  
 Nippon-bunka-kenkyū 日本文化研究 334  
 Nippon-go 日本語 17  
 Nippon-jin 日本人 11  
 Nippon-joku-kenpō 日本国憲法 320  
 Nippon-kokuyū-tetsudō 日本国憲法 320  
 Nippon-kokuyū-tetsudō 日本国憲法 320  
 nyū 入院 104  
 nyūsu ニュース 198

Nyū Yōku ニューヨーク 56  
 O O  
 o を 50, 58, 59, 63  
 Ō おお 307  
 o- おー 18, 362  
 ō 大ー 92  
 る 214, 218  
 oba おば 139  
 obāsan おばあさん 191  
 oboeru 覚える 292  
 oboeteiru 覚えている 292  
 obon お盆 92  
 obuzōbō オブザーバー 366  
 ocha お茶 91  
 ...ocha o tateru 91  
 ocha-seki お茶席 101  
 ochiru 落ちる 152  
 ochitsuku 落ち着く 142  
 ōchō 王朝 332  
 O-daijin お大事に 163  
 Oda Nobunaga 織田信長 200  
 Odawara 小田原 136  
 odori 踊り 119  
 odoroku 驚く 186  
 odoroku hodo 347  
 odoru 踊る 119  
 ofufusu-gai オフィス街 355  
 ohana お花 271  
 Ohayō gozaimasu おはようございます 18  
 ōi 多い 42  
 oidasu 追出す 80  
 oide ni naru 358, 363  
 ōni 大いに 334  
 oishii おいしい 114  
 (...ni)otte mo ...にいても 356  
 oite-oku 置いておく 328  
 oitsuku 追いつく 236  
 oji おじ 139  
 ojisā おじさん 107  
 ojō-san お嬢さん 211  
 oka 丘 83  
 O-kaeri お帰りの 107  
 okāsan おかあさん 90  
 okashi おかしい 226  
 okawari arimasen ka お変わりありませんか 262  
 ōkui 大きい 22  
 ōkina 大きな 27, 140  
 okiru 起きる 46

ōkisa 大きな	68
okonau 行なう	308
okori 起こり	344
okoru 起こる	272, 283
okoru おこる	328
okosu 起こす	296
oku 奥	34
oku 置く	272
-te-oku ーておく	250, 254
oku 億	68
ōku(no) 多くの(の)	140
O...kudasai	
お…ください	54
okujō 屋上	245
o-kuni お国	18
okureru 遅れる	184
okuri-mono 贈り物	202
okuru 送る	79, 92, 152
oku-sama 奥様	358
okusan 奥さん	138
o-machidō-sama	
お待ちどうさま	115
o-machikudasai	
お待ちください	54
omae おまえ	191
ōmedetō おめでとう	137
ōmisoka 大みそか	92
omo おも	68
omoni おもに	176
omocha おもちや	176
omochisuru お持ちする	235
omoi 重い	28
omoidasu 思い出す	184
omoidae 思い出	149
omoidabanashi	
思い出話	184
omoiukaberu	
思い浮かべる	347
omonjiru 重んじる	212
omoshiroi おもしろい	28
omoshiro-sa おもしろさ	298
omote-muki 表向き	248
(...to) omou	
(…と)思う	131, 134
…(y)ō to omou	218
omotteiru 思っている	218
on 音	188
onaji 同じ	103, 147
onaka おなか	161
onaka ga suku	161
Onagai ne お願いね	126
Onagai-shimasu	
お願いします	162

ongaku 音楽	43
ongaku-daigaku	
音楽大学	166
ongaku-kyōiku	
音楽教育	167
oni 鬼	80
o...ni naru	
お…になる	271
onna 女	28
-onna no hito	28
onna no ko	40
onsen 温泉	269
Oranda オランダ	101
orareru おられる	234, 359
orei おれ	210
ori おり	164
ori-hime 織姫	80
orimono 織物	176
Oripinpic	
オリピック	140
ori-ori おりおり	284
oriru 降りる	59
orishimo おりしも	368
oru 織る	81
oru おる	90, 235
oru 折る	191
Ōsaka 大阪	53
osen 汚染	296
ōsetsu-shitsu	
応接室	235
oshaberu おしゃべり	318
oshieru 教える	91
oshimu 押し込む	367
oshitsuke-gamashii	
押しつけがましい	287
oshitsukeru	
押しつける	212, 287
osoi おそい	94
ōsōji おそうじ	92
osoraku おそらく	230
osoreru 恐れる	212, 200
ossharu	
おっしゃる	234, 363
o...suru お…する	54
Ōsutoraria	
オーストラリア	149
otagai-ni お互いに	215
otaku お宅	31
oto 音	245
otoko 男	40
otoko no ko	40
otona おとな	140
otoroeru 責める	298
otōsan おとうさん	90
otōto 弟	19
ototōi おととい	58
ototoshi おととし	67
owari 終わり	80
owaru 終わる	46
-owaru ー終わる	130
Oya 親	92
Oyasumi(nasai)	
お休みなさい	18
oyobi 及び	214
oyogi 泳ぎ	102
oyogu 泳ぐ	82
ōzei 大ぜい	82
P	
pachi-pachi パチパチ	269
paku 拍	150
pan パン	52
para-para パラパラ	346
parādō パレード	319
Pari パリ	139
pāsento パーセント	116
pasupōtō パスポート	55
pāti パティー	76
PCB	
ビー・シー・ビー	296
pen ペン	112
pen-krabu	
ペン・クラブ	335
pera-pera ペラペラ	295
pianisuto ピアニスト	136
piano ビアノ	88
piano-ensō	
ピアノ演奏	167
piero ビエロ	352
piki 匹	41
pin-yoku ピンボン	149
pittari(ito)	
ぴつたり(と)	355
poji ポジ	54
poCKET ボケット	211
pon 本	57
pyūpyū-ongaku	
ポピュラー音楽	293
Porutogaru ポルトガル	200
posutā ポスター	286
pun 分	46
puran プラン	366
purezento プレゼント	203
pūru プール	103
pyaku 百	42

pyūpyū ビュービュー	269
R	
ra ーら	116
rai 来ー	47
raigetsu 来月	221
rainen 来年	100
raion ライオン	248
raishū 来週	47
raitō ライター	292
raijo ラジオ	46
raketto ラケット	126
raku 楽	283
rareru ーられる	
191, 194, 239, 242	
ran 乱	128
rashii らしい	334, 339
...rashii mono	344
rashisa ーらしさ	354
reba ーれば	278
rei 零	152
rei 例	284
rei no 雷	344
rei 霊	198
reigai 例外	167
reizō-ko 冷蔵庫	272
rejiniashiyon	
レジニエーション	356
rekishi 歴史	104
rekōdō レコード	91
ren'ai 恋愛	329
renga れんが	22
ren-kyū 連体	233
renrakū 連絡	227
renraku ga tsuku	306
ressna 列車	143
ri 里	359
ringo りんご	40
ringyō 林業	260
rin-rin リンリン	269
rippa りっぱ	150
riron 理論	212
riron-teki 理論的	212
rison 離村	272
Rishū 立秋	118
Rishun 立春	322
ritsu 一奉	140
riyō 利用	143
riyū 理由	221
rōdō 労働	116
rōdō-ikan 労働時間	236
rōdō-jinkō 労働人口	116
rōdō-jōken 労働条件	236
rōdō-kumiai 労働組合	308
rōdō-sha 労働者	176
rōjin 老人	190
rōjin-mondai 老人問題	190
rōka 廊下	58
rokka ロッカー	35
Rokugatsu 六月	56
Roku-san-sangonsei	
六・三・三・四割	152
Rōma ローマ	57
romanchikku	
ロマンチック	80
Roman Roran	
ロマン・ロラン	160
rōn ローン	198
rōn 一論	215
ronbun 論文	214
Rōndon ロンドン	19
rōnin 浪人	152
rōnin-seikatsu 浪人生活	152
ronjyū 論じ合う	298
Roshia ロシア	149
Roshio-gō ロシア語	149
Runesansu	
ルネッサンス	332
rusu する	137
rūzu ルーズ	246
saku 咲く	282
ryō 一料	151
Ryūan-ji 竜安寺	329
ryokan 旅館	150
ryōkin 料金	143
ryōkin-sho 料金所	282
ryōkō 旅行	47
ryōkōsha 旅行社	47
ryōkō-sha 旅行者	269
ryoku 一力	308
ryōri 料理	114
ryōshin 両親	202
ryūgaku 留学	128
ryūgaku-sei 留学生	128
ryūgō 流行	287
ryūshutsu 流出	272
S	
Sā さあ	107
sabishii 寂しい	119
sōbisu サービス	116
sōbisu-gyō サービス業	116
sōbisu-ryō サービス料	151
sagasu 探す	150
sai 一歳	43
saiban 裁判	296
saigai 災害	344
saigo 最後	92
Saijiki 歳時記	284
Saikaku 西鶴	332
saikin 最近	166
saiko 最古	224
saikuringu	
サイクリング	92
saishin 最新	198
saishingata 最新型	198
saisho 最初	92
saishū-teki 最終的	366
saiwai 幸い	70
sakaeru 笑える	200
sakan 盛ん	116
sakana さかな	100
sake 酒	23
sakebu 叫ぶ	318
sakeru 遅れる	212
saki 先	106
saki ni	368
sakihodo 先ほど	198
sakka 作家	160
sakoku 鎖国	200
saku 咲く	68
-saku 一策	308
saku- 昨一	338
sakuhin 作品	224
sakuin 索引	154
sakura さくら	10
Sakura Sakura	
さくら さくら	154
sakusha 作者	254
saku-ya 昨夜	238
-sama 一様	90
sami 寒い	113
samusa 寒さ	164
-san 一さん	17
-san 一山	148
sanbun 散文	356
sandai 三大一	242
Sangaku 散歌	278
Sangin 参議院	90
sangyō 産業	325
San'in 山陰	272
sanka 参加	344
san-kaku(kei) 三角(形)	284
sankō 参考	274
sanpo 散歩	52
sao さお	275

Sapporo 札幌 94  
 sarada サラダ 160  
 sarari-man サラリーマン 184  
 saru 去る 346  
 Sarugaku 猿楽 248  
 sasaeru ささえる 176  
 saseru させる 197  
 -saseru -させる 190, 195  
 -sasete-itadaku -させていただく 358  
 sashimi さしみ 115  
 sashiageru 差し上げる 206, 207  
 sasou 誘う 221  
 sassoku さっそく 162  
 sasu さす 211  
 Sate さて 114  
 satsu 札 55  
 -satsu 一冊 34, 39  
 sawagashii 騒がしい 119  
 Sayōnara さようなら 18  
 se 背 346  
 se ga takai 149  
 -sei 一生 43  
 -sei 一製 101  
 -sei 一則 152  
 (...no)sei (...の)せい  
 seibi 整備 282  
 seichō 成長 236  
 seido 制度 128  
 seifu 政府 128  
 seigaku 声楽 166  
 seigen 制限 283  
 seihin 製品 176  
 seiji 政治 95  
 seiji-ka 政治家 220  
 seiji-seido 政治制度 128  
 seiji-taisei 政治体制 128  
 seiji-teki 政治的 320  
 seika 成果 334  
 seikatsu 生活 152, 202  
 seiken 政権 320  
 seiki 世紀 104  
 seimei 生命 368  
 seimitsu 精密 176  
 seinen 青年 227  
 Seiō 西欧 200  
 seirei 精霊 344  
 seiri 整理 214  
 seiryoku 勢力 128  
 seisaku 政策 200  
 seisan 生産 116

seisan-butsu 生産物 116  
 seisan-daka 生産高 176  
 seisan-sei 生産性 260  
 seishiki 正式 104  
 seishin 精神 128  
 seishin 清新 356  
 seishin-teki 精神的 128  
 seishitsu 性質 224  
 seishun 青春 202  
 seishunjidai 青春時代 202  
 seitō 政党 320  
 sekai 世界 116  
 sekai dai...i 世界第...位 140  
 sekai-sai-ko 世界最古 221  
 sekai-yōsū 世界有数 260  
 seki 厩 59  
 sekitan 石炭 116  
 sekiyu 石油 116  
 sekkaku...noni せっかく...のに 222  
 sekkei 設計 340  
 sekkei-sha 設計者 340  
 semai 狭い 125  
 semeru 攻める 200  
 sen 線 95  
 -sen 先- 76  
 -sen 一千 42  
 -sen 一輪 200  
 senbai 専売 260  
 senbai-jigyō 専売事業 260  
 senden 宣伝 286  
 sen-go 戦後 116  
 sen'ō 繊維 176  
 sen-jitsu 先日 215  
 senkyo 選挙 304  
 senkyo-ken 選挙権 308  
 senmon 専門 140  
 senmon-gai 専門外 334  
 senmon-shi 専門紙 140  
 senpaku 船舶 176  
 sen-ri 千里 359  
 Sen-ri no michi mo ip-pō kara 359  
 sensei 先生 286  
 senzin-koku 先達国 298  
 sen-shū 先選 76  
 sensō 戦争 202  
 sensu 罎子 203  
 sentaku 洗たく 112  
 sentaku-ki 洗たく機 272  
 sentaku-mono 洗たく物 250

sen-zen 戦前 260  
 senzo 先祖 92  
 se o mukeru 背を向ける 346  
 se-ou 背負う 191  
 setō セーター 208  
 Setō-naikai 瀬戸内海 200  
 setsubi 設備 185  
 Setsubun 節分 80  
 setsumeji 説明 172  
 sewa 世話 151  
 o-sewa ni naru 151  
 S.F. エス・エフ 160  
 -sha 一社 47  
 -sha 一着 152  
 shaberu ししゃべる 251  
 sha-chō 社長 184  
 sha-in 社員 47  
 shakai 社会 190  
 shakai-hoshō-seido 社会保障制度 190  
 shakai-teki 社会的 356  
 Shakai-tō 社会党 320  
 shakkei 借景 284  
 shamisen 三味線 248  
 Shanzerize シャンゼリゼ 139  
 shasei 写生 82  
 shashin 写真 17  
 shatsu シャツ 163  
 showō シャワー 124  
 shi 詩 356  
 ...shi ...し 187  
 -shi 一氏 128  
 -shi 一紙 140  
 -shi 一誌 186  
 -shi 一史 332  
 shiawase しあわせ 355  
 shibaraku しばらく 65  
 shi-basu 市バス 260  
 Shichi-go-san 七五三 92  
 shi-den 市電 260  
 shi-ei 私営 260  
 shigan 志願 152  
 shigan-sha 志願者 152  
 shigen 資源 176  
 shigoto 仕事 190  
 shigoto-chū 仕事ちゅう 250  
 shihai 支配 202  
 shihai-ryoku 支配力 308  
 shihon 資本 260  
 shihon-shugi 資本主義 260  
 shiji 支持 320

shijō 市場 176  
 shika しか 79  
 shika...nai しか...ない 104  
 shikaru しかる 196  
 shikashi しかし 47, 51  
 shikata しかた 59  
 shikata ga nai 59  
 shiken 試験 76  
 shiken o ukeru 152  
 shiki 式 104  
 -shiki 一式 150, 260  
 shiki 四季 160  
 shiki oriori 四季おりおり 284  
 shikkari (to) しっかり(と) 263, 267  
 Shikoku 四国 68  
 shima 島 68  
 shima-guni 島国 68  
 shimaru しまる 89  
 -te-shimau-てしまう 247, 255  
 shime-nawu しめのなわ 80  
 shimeru しめる 112  
 shimeru 占める 176  
 shimesu 示す 366  
 shimin 市民 167  
 shimin-kaikan 市民会館 167  
 shin 新- 356  
 shin-gire 品切れ 330  
 shinal 市内 143  
 shinbun 新聞 214  
 shinbun-sha 新聞社 214  
 shinda 死んだ 344  
 shindai 寝台 59  
 shindai-ken 寝台券 59  
 shinda 振動 296  
 shingaku 進学 152  
 shingaku-ritsū 進学率 152  
 shingō 信号 106  
 shita-gue 信号所 274  
 shinjiru 信じる 332  
 shinjū 心中 332  
 Shinjuku 新宿 30  
 Shinjuku-gyoen 新宿御苑 136  
 shin-kansen 新幹線 53  
 shinken 真剣 296  
 shinkoku 深刻 272  
 shinkyō 心鏡 356  
 shinpen 新年 344  
 Shinpai 心配 163  
 shippo 進歩 354

shinri 心理 212  
 shinriui 親類 139  
 Shin-sekai yori 新世界より 250  
 shinsen 新鮮 298  
 shinsen-sa 新鮮さ 298  
 shinsetsu 親切 28  
 shinshi 紳士 280  
 shin-shin tomo 心身とも 347  
 Shinshū 信州 238  
 shinsutatsu 進出 176  
 Shintaishi-shō 新詩抄 356  
 Shintō 神道 344  
 shinu 死ぬ 100  
 shinzen 神前 344  
 shippai 失敗 317  
 shiraberu 調べる 256  
 shiraseru 知らせる 306  
 Shiretoko-hantō 知床半島 94  
 shiriai 知り合い 167  
 shi-ritsu 私立 152  
 shiroi 白い 29  
 shiru 知る 83  
 shiryō 資料 128  
 shisei 氏姓 128  
 shisei-seido 氏姓制度 128  
 shisei 姿勢 296  
 shi-seikatsu 私生活 356  
 shisetsu 施設 236  
 shishi-mai しし舞 248  
 shi-shōsetsu 私小説 356  
 shisō 思想 308  
 shita 下 38, 40  
 shitagatte したがって 332  
 shitagau 従う 164  
 shita-gi 下着 65  
 shitaku たく 270  
 shita-uke 下請け 260  
 shite (kara) して(から) 331  
 (...o) shite-ru (を)している 341  
 shitei 指定 59  
 shitei-seki 指定席 59  
 shi-ten 支店 47  
 -shitsu 一室 130  
 shitsugyō 失業 236  
 shitsumon 質問 130  
 shitsurei 失礼 18  
 Shitsurei-detsu ga 18  
 Shitsurei-shimashita 235

shitsuren 失恋 226  
 shitte-iru 知っている 83  
 shiyō しよう 218  
 shiyō 私用 188  
 shiyō 使用 235  
 shiyō-chū 使用ちゅう 235  
 shi-yū 私有 200  
 shi-yū-chi 私所有地 200  
 shizen 自然 95, 164  
 shizen-kai 自然界 344  
 Shizen-shugui 自然主義 356  
 Shizen-shugi-sha 自然主義者 356  
 shizoku 氏族 128  
 shizuka 静か 22  
 shizuma 沈む 200  
 shizun シーズン 92  
 shō 章 236  
 shō 抄 356  
 -sho 一書 55, 137  
 -sho 一所 150  
 shōchi 承知 234  
 shocho 暑中 164  
 Shocho-mimai 暑中見舞い 164  
 shō-gakkō 小学校 152  
 shōgaku-sei 小学生 83  
 Shō-gatsu 正月 80  
 shō-gyō 商業 142  
 shōhin 商品 308  
 shōji 障子 271  
 shōkai 紹介 191  
 shōkai-jō 紹介状 364  
 shokubutsu 植物 94  
 shokudō 食堂 58  
 shokuji 食事 114  
 -shoku-tsuki 一食付 150  
 Shōnan-kaigan 湘南海岸 103  
 shokoku 諸国 308  
 shomin 庶民 332  
 shōra 将来 220  
 shōsetsu 小説 28  
 shōsetsu-ka 小説家 160  
 shōtai 招待 167  
 shoten 書店 331  
 shōto ショート 54  
 shotoku 所得 236  
 Shōtoku Taishi 聖徳太子 128  
 shōtotsu 衝突 344  
 -shu 一酒 57

shū 選	47	sōgō-zasshi 総合雑誌	186
shū 一集	224	soitsu そういつ	307
shūchū 集中	143	sōji そうじ	92
shūdan 集団	272	soko そこ	11, 15
shufu 主婦	186	soko 底	274
shūgaku 就学	152	sokode そこで	188
Shūgakuin-rikyū		sokudo 速度	283
修学院難宮	148	sokudo-seigen	
shūgaku-ritsu 就学率	152		
Shūgin 衆議院	308	sokuten-kyōshi	283
Shūgin-gin		則天去私	356
衆議院議員	308	someru 染める	365
shūhen 周辺	272	songai-zaishū	378
shuhō 手法	332	損害賠償	296
shujin 主人	365	sonna そんな	27, 164
shūkaku 収獲	95	sonna-ni	27, 31
shūkan 習慣	151	sonno なのに	26, 28
shūkan 週刊	186	sono hoka	68, 166
shūkan-shi 週刊誌	186	sono go	262
shukkin 出勤	262	sono go wari	59, 208
shūkyō 宗教	344	sono uchi	152, 227
shumi 趣味	42	sono ue	272
Shunbun 春分	322	sōon 騒音	222
shuppan-sha 出版社	196	sora 空	71
shuppatsu 出発	113	sore それ	10, 15
shūri 修理	199	sore hodo	43
shurui 種類	54	sore kara	51, 55
shusai 主催	335	Sore mo sō (da)	342
shūshi 修士	152	sore ni	114
shūshi-katei		sore yori	342
修士課程	152	sorede それで	58
shūshoku 就職	125	soredewa それでは	17
shūshū 収集	43	sorejā それじゃあ	139
shussekai 出席	244	Sore kara それから	275
shutchō 出張	47	Sō-ren ソ連	68
shutchō-ryōkō		Sorento ソレント	166
出張旅行	59	soretomo それとも	102
shuto 首都	17	Sorewa-sorewa	
shuto-ken 首都圏	272	それはそれは	186
shuyō 主要	260	sore-zore それぞれ	186
sō そう	10, 14, 27	soroban そろばん	148
Sō desu ka	19	soro-soro そろそろ	267, 270
sō 層	320	sorotte そろって	166
sō そう	334, 338	sorou そろう	246
sō- 総一	236	sōryo 惣店	188
soba そば	35	sosen 祖先	344
soba そば	238	sō-senkyō 総選挙	304
sobo 祖母	322	sōshiki 組織	260
sochira そちら	15	sōshiki 葬式	344
sōdan 相談	222	sō shita naka de	
soderateru 育てる	202	そうしただで	308
sode そで	104	soshite そして	46, 51
sōgō 総合	186		

sōshō 訴訟	296
sō-sū 総数	260
soto 外	38, 66
sotsugyō 卒業	152
sotsugyō-sha 卒業生	152
-sū 一敷	188, 260
subarashii すばらしい	94
subete すべて	188
sude-ni すでに	224
sue 末	138
Suēden スウェーデン	140
sūgaku 数学	167
sugata 姿	347
...sugi ...過ぎ	358
(...ni) suginai	
(...に) すぎない	308
sugiru 過ぎる	283
-sugiru ...すぎる	335
sugu すぐ	106
sugu soko	106
sugu (-ni) すぐ(に)	235
sugureta すぐれた	176
suigin 水銀	296
suigin chūdoku 水銀中毒	296
suisan-gyō 水産業	116
Sui-yōbi 水曜日	76
suiji 筋	346
sukejūru スケジュール	220
sukēto スケート	239
suki 好き	154, 159
suki スキー	239
sukkari すっかり	106
sukkiri(to) すっきり(と)	270
sukoshi 少し	47
sukoshi mo...nai	77
suku すく	161
sukunai 少ない	68
sukunakutomo	
すくなくとも	233
sumairu スマイル	212
sumi すみ	35
Sumimasen すみません	30
Sumitomo 住友	260
sumō すもう	83
sumō o toru	83
sumoggu スモッグ	296
sumu 住む	83
sumu 進む	83
sumde-iru 住んでいる	93
sumde-iru 澄んでいる	92
Supein スペイン	56
Supein-go スペイン語	56
supichi スピーチ	211

supido スピード	268
supōtsu スポーツ	92
sūpu スープ	114
sureba すれば	278
suru する	64
...ni suru	58, 128
o...suru	54
suruto すると	246
susamajii すさまじい	272
susanda すさんだ	347
sushi すし	58
sushiya すし屋	114
suso すそ	104
susumeru 進める	272
susumeru 勤める	275
susumu 進む	116
sutairu スタイル	104
sutando スタンド	16
sutareru すたれる	259
-ute 一捨て	190
sutereo ステレオ	47
sutera タテ	190
sutoraiki ストライク	317
sūtsu スーツ	211
sūto すうと	346
suwara すわら	124
suya-suya すやすや	269
suzushii すずしい	118

T

ta 田	248
-ta 一た	94, 98
-ta mama	119, 123
tabako たばこ	16
tabako o suu	53
tabako-ya たばこ屋	57
tabemono 食べ物	136
taberu 食べる	46
tabi 旅	347
tabi-saki 旅先	347
tabun たぶん	162, 230
-tachi 一たち	11
tachi-agaru	
立ち上がる	296
tachiba 立場	212
Tachikawa 立川	136
tachi-mukau	
立ち向かう	356
tachi-naoru 立ち直す	347
tachi-noboru	
立ち上る	346
tada ただ	115, 298

tada-ima ただいま	330
tadashii 正しい	154
tagai-ni 互いに	215
ta-gaku 多額	308
ta-hata 田畑	248
-tai 一たい	154, 158
-tai mono desu	368
-tai 一休	164
-tai 一隊	320
taifu 台風	68
taigeru 大軍	200
taihen たいへん	23, 27, 66
taiin 退院	342
Taika-no-kaishin	
大化の改新	128
taiki 大気	292
taiki-osen 大気汚染	276
taiko 太鼓	248
taiko-koku 大國	296
taipu タイプ	172
taipu-raito	
タイプライター	28
tairiku 大陸	200
taisaku 対策	296
taisei 休制	128
taisetu たいせつ	164
taisha 大使	79
Taishi 太子	128
taiso たいそう	368
(...ni) taisuru	
(...に) 対する	308
taitei たいてい	27, 42, 46
taitoru タイトル	214
taioya タイヤ	22
taiyō 太陽	323
taizai 滞在	138
takai 高い	28
Taketori Monogatari	
竹取物語	224
Takao 高雄	70
taki 滝	71
takusan たくさん	34
tokushi タクシー	46
-tamae 一たまえ	367
tamaneji たまげ	352
tamashii 魂	92
tame ため	310, 314
tameru ためる	316
tana たな	331
Tanabata たなばた	80
Tango no Sekku	
端午の節句	80
tango 単語	154

tanjō 誕生	208
tanjō-bi 誕生日	208
tanbaru 単なる	356
ta no 他的	308
tanomu 頼む	208
tanoshii 楽しい	71
tanoshimi 楽しみ	239
tanoshimu 楽しむ	310
tansu たんす	272
tantō 担当	320
taoreru 倒れる	308
-tara ...たら	274, 278
...tarazu ...たらず	294
-tari ...たり	83, 87
-tari, ...tari	87
tashika 確か	138, 322
tasū 多数	344
tatakawasu 戦わず	320
tataku たたく	269
tatari たたり	344
tatchi タッチ	286
tatemono 建物	222
tateru 立てる	80
tateru 建てる	128
tatoeba たとえば	186
tatsu たつ	118
tatsu 立つ	130
tatsu たつ	365
tawā タワー	245
tazuneru 尋ねる	101, 131
te 手	232
te o toru	368
-te	87
-te-ageru	
一てあげる	202, 207
-te-aru 一てある	250, 254
-te-chōdai	
一てちょうだい	343
-te-goran 一てごらん	198
-te-iku 一ていく	254
-te-iru 一ている	82, 86
-te kara 一てから	83, 87
-te-kudasai	
一てください	106, 110
-te-kureru	
一てくれる	202, 207
-te-kuru	
一てくる	126, 184, 255
-te made 一てまで	287
-te-mairimasu	
一てまいります	235
-te-miru 一てみる	214, 255
-te-morau 一てもらう	203, 207



-te ne 一てね 222  
 -teoku  
   一ておく 250, 254  
 -teshimau  
   一てしまう 247, 255  
 -te....-te 87  
 -tewa ikenai  
   一てはいけない 107, 111  
 -te-yuku 一てゆく 368  
 fêburu テーブル 40  
 fêburu-kurosu  
   テーブルクロス 365  
 tegami 手紙 53  
 te-goro 手ごろ 310  
 tei- 低一 176  
 tei-chingin 低賃金 176  
 teien 庭園 284  
 teika 定価 55  
 teimei 一ていまい 164  
 tei-on 低音 311  
 teiryû-jo 停留所 100  
 teitai 停滞 272  
 -teki 一的 128  
 teki-suru 通する 104  
 tekka 鉄火 114  
 tekkô 鉄鋼 260  
 -temo ii desu  
   一てもいいです 107, 111  
 ten 点 106, 152, 366  
 ten-in 店員 238  
 tenisu テニス 126  
 tenisu-shûzu  
   テニス・シューズ 127  
 tenki 天気 70  
 Tennô 天皇 128  
 Tennô-ke 天皇家 128  
 tenpo テンポ 272  
 tenfo テント 102  
 tenran-kai 展覧会 221  
 teppô 鉄砲 200  
 têpu テープ 154  
 tera 寺 78  
 ferebi テレビ 40  
 ferebi-komasharu  
   テレビ・コマージュル 287  
 ferebi-ko テレビっ子 140  
 tesaki 手先 176  
 tesû-ryô 手数料 151  
 tetsu 鉄 116  
 -tetsu 一鉄 64  
 tetsudô 鉄道 136  
 tetsuya 徹夜 161  
 tetsuzuki 手続き 76

to とも 39, 58, 74  
   ...to ieba 274  
   ...to iu 130, 134, 135  
   ...to iu koto ni naru 299  
   ...to iu yori 310  
   ...to omou 134  
   ...to shite 104  
 -to 一と 274, 279  
 -to 一完 320  
 tobu 飛ぶ 100  
 tochi 土地 200  
 todokero 届ける 331  
 todomeru とどめる 284  
 tôgi 討議 320  
 Tôhoku 東北 272  
 tôhyô 投票 308  
 teien 庭園 28  
 toi-awase 問い合わせ 167  
 tôji 当時 104  
 toi-kata 問い方 212  
 tôjô 登場 356  
 tôjô-jinbutsu  
   登場人物 356  
   ...toka ...とか 140  
 tokai 都会 152  
 Tôkaidô-sen 東海道線 143  
 tokaku(ni) とかく(に) 275  
 tokei とけい 16  
 toki とき 119, 122  
   ...toki ni 130  
   toki niwa 284  
 tokidoki とときどき 46  
 toki-ori 時おり 346  
 toko-no-ma 床の間 271  
 tokoro 所 136, 227  
 tokoro ところ 310, 314  
 tokorode ところで 42  
 tokoroga ところが 299  
 tôku 読く 232  
 tôku 速く 83  
 tôku no 75  
 tokubetsu 特別 105  
 tokuchô 特徴 284  
 Tokugawa 徳川 200  
 tokui- 得意 170, 173  
 tokuni 特に 140  
 tokutei 特定 224  
 Tôkyô 東京 17  
 Tôkyô-eki 東京駅 17  
 tomaru 泊まる 102  
 tomaru 止まる 113  
 tomatô-jûsu  
   トマト・ジュース 160

...tomo ...とも 104  
 ...tomo ...とも 139  
 tomodachi 友だち 64  
 tonari 隣 40  
 tonbo とんぼ 154  
 tonneru トンネル 274  
 ton-ton トントン 269  
 toraberôzu-chekku  
   トラベラーズ・チェック 174  
 toranjisûta  
   トランジスター 198  
 toranjisûta-rajio  
   トランジスタ・ラジオ 268  
 tori 鳥 41  
 tôri 通り 107  
 tôri とおり 311, 315  
 -tôri 一通り 329  
 tori-ire 取り入れ 93  
 tori-ireru 取り入れる 93  
 torikumu 取り組む 296  
 torimaku 取り巻く 355  
 tôron 討論 335  
 toru 取る 71, 282  
 tôru 通る 90, 280  
 tôsan 倒産 304  
 Tôsa Nikki 土佐日記 224  
 toshi 年 92  
 toshi 都市 149  
 toshin 都心 143  
 toshiyori 年寄り 259  
 tosho 図書 17  
 tosho-kan 図書館 17  
 tôsu 通す 234  
 tôtei...nai 355  
   とうてい...ない  
 totemo (=tottemo)  
   とても 27, 47, 274  
 tôto とうとう 365  
 tôtsuzen 突然 262  
 (...ni) totte (...に)とって 176  
 tôtte-kuru とって来る 127  
 Toyotomi Hideyoshi  
   豊臣秀吉 200  
 tou 問う 213  
 tôzen 当然 332  
 tokuni 特に 39  
 tsue つえ 292  
 tsugi 次 30  
 tsugi ni 164  
 tsugô 都合 307  
 tsugu 次ぐ 141  
 tsui つい 262  
 (...ni) tsuide(...に)ついて 140

tsuikyû 道求 356  
 tsuitachi ついたち 76  
 (...ni) tsuite  
   (...に)ついて 104  
 tsuite-iku ついていく 319  
 (...o) tsûjite  
   (...を)通じて 344  
 tsukai-kata 使い方 286  
 tsukamaeru  
   つかまえる 196  
 tsukare 疲れる 95  
 tsukareru 疲れる 47  
 tsukau 使う 107, 124  
 -ki o tsukau 107  
 tôki 通け 162  
 tsukeru つける 92, 125, 162  
   hi o tsukeru →hi  
   ki o tsukeru →ki  
 tsuki 月 92  
 -tsuki 一付き 150  
 tsuki-mi 月見 92  
 tsûkin 通動 272  
 tsûkô 通着 283  
 tsuki 着く 70  
 tsukue 机 34  
 tsukurî-dasu 作り出す 332  
 tsukuru 作る 71  
 tsukura 妻 138  
 tsuamami つまみ 311  
 tsumaranaï つまらない 28  
 tsumari つまり 152  
 tsuismetai 冷たい 71  
 tsunori つもり 210, 215, 219  
 tsunagaru つながる 344  
 tsuno ni 常に 284  
 tsûpûsu ツーピース 104  
 tsûrai つらい 42  
 Tsurayuki 貢之 224  
 tsururu 速れる 92  
 (...ni) tsurete  
   (...に)ついて 296  
 tsurete-iku 連れていく 114  
 Tsurezure-gusa 徒然草 332  
 tsuri つり 55  
 -tsuri つり 186  
 tsuru つる 186  
 tsuri-ba  
   つり場 323  
 tsuri-zuki  
   つり好き 323  
 tsutaeru 伝える 128  
 tsutomeru 勤める 139

tsutsumu 包む 343  
 tsuyoi 強い 22  
 tsuyu つゆ 94  
 tsuyu 霧 368  
 tsuyu-ake つゆ明け 94  
 tsuzukeru 続ける 197  
 -tsuzukeru 一続ける 269  
 tsuzuku 続く 118  
 -tite? 一って 282, 315

U

Ū ウー 56  
 uba-sute うばすて 190  
 uchi うち 31  
 (...no)uchi 116, 146  
 uchidasu 打ち出す 308  
 ue 上 34, 38  
 Ueno 上野 136  
 ueru 積える 284  
 ugoki 動き 308  
 ugoku 動く 124  
 uguisu うぐいす 136  
 ukiuki ウイスキー 160  
 -uji 一羽 129  
 ukagau 伺う 359  
 ukeru 受ける 152  
 uke-tsugu 受け継ぐ 224  
 uketsuke 受付 211  
 Ukiyomo 浮世 356  
 ukiyo-e 浮世絵 221  
 ukkari (to)  
   うっかり(と) 283  
 umai うまい 334  
 umaku うまく 332  
 umaku iku 347  
 umareru 生まれる 67, 190  
 ume 梅, うめ 270  
 umi 海 23  
 Ūn うん 126  
 Ūn →うん 286  
 undô 運動 92, 296  
 undô-kai 運動会 92  
 unten 運転 172  
 unten-menkyo  
   運転免許 178  
 uo 魚 322  
 uo-tsuri 魚つり 322  
 ura 裏 236  
 urayamashii  
   の顔りに 322  
 urari 悪い 167  
 ureru 売れる 238  
 ureshii うれしい 208

uri-ba 売り場 11  
 uru 売る 140  
 ushi 牛 80  
 ushi-kai 牛飼い 80  
 ushinau 失う 347  
 ushiro うしろ 35, 38  
 ushiro-sugata うしろ姿 347  
 usu-kimi-urui  
   薄気味悪い 212  
 uta 歌 83, 368  
 uta-goe 歌声 245  
 utau 歌う 82  
 utsu 打つ 172  
 utskushii 美しい 68  
 utskushisa 美しさ 284  
 utsuru 移る 128  
 uttaa 訴え 128  
 uttaeru 訴える 222

W

wa は 10, 14, 351  
 wa 輪 119  
 ...wa ...わ 159  
 -wa 一羽 39  
 Wa-E-ijin 和英辞典 154  
 waga わが 128  
 waga-kuni わが国 128  
 waka 和歌 295  
 wakai 若い 28  
 waka-mono 若者 190  
 wakare 別れ 164  
 wakareru 別れる 130  
 wakaru わかる 128, 170  
 wake 訳 191, 322, 327  
 wake no wakananai 212  
 wakeru 分ける 260  
 Wakô 懐疑 200  
 wa ne わね 102  
 wampusi ワンピース 104  
 wan-wan ワンワン 269  
 warai 笑い 119, 212  
 warai-goe 笑い声 119  
 warai-dasu 笑い出す 352  
 warau 笑う 119  
 ware 我 346  
 wariai 割合 322  
 (...no) wari ni  
   の顔りに 322  
 warui 悪い 162  
 waru-kuchi 悪口 212  
 Wa-shoku 和食 114

Wasshoi, wasshoi	
わっしよい, わっしよい	319
wasure-mono 忘れ物	247
wasureru 忘れる	127
wataru 渡る	80
watashi わたし	11
watashi-domo	
わたしたち	235
watashi-tachi	
わたしたち	11
wazawaza わざわざ	210
wazuka わずか	236
wazurawashiku	
わずらかしく	347

Y

ya や	34, 39
...ya ...や	284
Yā やあ	19
-ya 一屋	57
yōdo ヤード	42
yagate やがて	71
yahari (=yappari)	
やはり	294
yake ni naru	
やけになる	347
yaku 約	116
yaku 焼く	352
yakunin 役人	104
yakusha 役者	258
yakusoku 約束	284
yakuwari 役割	344
yakyū 野球	127
yama 山	23
yama-goya 山小屋	102
yama-michi 山道	71
yama-yama 山々	118
yameru やめる	221, 316
yamu やむ	89
yane 屋根	31
yappari やっぱり	270
...yara ...やら	222
yaru やる	127
yasai 野菜	197
yasashii やさしい	28
Yasuda 安田	260
yasui 安い	28
yasumi 休み	47
yasumu 休む	47
yatte-kuru やってくる	318
yatto やっと	296
yawarakai 柔らかい	352

Yayoi-bunka 弥生文化	128
Yayoi-jidai 弥生時代	128
yo よ	27, 31
...yo ...よ	307
-yō よう	214, 218
yō 用	364
yō 洋一	104
-yō 一用	154
yō 一様	354
yo-ake 夜明け	94
-yōbi 一曜日	47
yōbi 予防	344
yōbu 呼ぶ	139, 196
yōchi 用地	367
yō よう	334, 339
yō-na ような	339
yō-ni ように	339
...yō-ni naru	
...ようになる	344, 356
yo-dōshi 夜通し	119
yō-fuku 洋服	104
yogore よこれ	272
yogoreru よこれる	116
yoi よい	78
yōin 要因	260
yōji 用事	164
Yokkaichi 四日市	296
yoko 横	35
yokattara よかったら	275
yoku よく	47
-yoku 一浴	118
yomi-gana 読みがな	188
yomi-kata 読み方	188
yomi-mono 読み物	224
yōmō 羊毛	176
yomu 読む	47
yonaka 夜中	92
(...ni) yoreba	
(...に)よれば	334
...yori ...より	128, 146
yorokobu 喜ぶ	139
yorokonde 喜んで	367
Yōroppa ヨーロッパ	124
yoroshii よろしい	368
yoroshikattara	
よろしかったら	366
(Dōzo) yoroshiku	
(どうぞ)よろしく	18
(...ni) yoroshiku	
(...に)よろしく	164
yoru 夜	47
yoru osoku 夜おそく	140
(...ni) yoru (...に)よる	176

yo-sa よさ	298
yoru 寄る	210
yo-sasō よさそう	338
yōshi 用紙	175
-yō shiki 洋式	150
yōsho 洋書	187
yōsho-bu 洋書部	187
yosō よそ	212
yosu よす	319
yōsu 様子	164, 226
Yotsuya 四谷	30
(...ni) yotte (...に)よって	194
you 酔う	262
yōwai 弱い	197
yowameru 弱める	308
yoyaku 予約	317
yū- ター	95
yūbe ゆうべ	58
yūbin 郵便	11
yūbin-kyoku 郵便局	11
yūdai 雄大	102
yūgata 夕方	119
yūgen 幽玄	248
yū-hi 夕日	95
yūjin 友人	191
yuki 雪	68
yuki-guni 雪国	274
yukkuri (to) ゆっくり(と)	47, 267
(-te)-yuku (-て)ゆく	368
yume 夢	184
yume o miru	184
yūmei 有名	22
...de yūmei	23
yuniku ユニーク	95
yuragu 揺らぐ	368
yureru 揺れる	368
yure-ugoku 揺れ動く	368
yurusu 許す	200
yū-ryō 有料	282
yū-ryō-dōro 有料道路	282
yushutsu 輸出	176
yushutsu-hin 輸出品	176
yuttari-shita	
ゆったりした	246
yū-yami タヤミ	368

Z

-za 一座	258
zaibatsu 財閥	260
zaisei 財政	128
zaisei-teki 財政的	128

zannen 残念	173
zannen nagara	222
zaseki 席席	59
zaseki-shitei-ken	
座席指定券	59
zasshi 雑誌	140
zā-zā ザザー	269
Zeami 世阿弥	248
zenji ゼンジ	119
zei 税	55
zeiki 税金	151
-zen (=sen) 一千	151
zenbu 全部	34

zenbu de	34
zenbun 前文	164
zendo 宗土	296
zen'in 全員	247
zenkoku 全国	47
zenkoku-shi 全国紙	140
zenkoku-teki 全国的	186
Zen'yaku 前略	164
zenshū 全集	275
zei 税	68
zentai ni	68
zenzen...nai	
全然...ない	173

zeppan 絶版	304
zōka 増加	152
-zoku 一族	140
zōsen 造船	176
zubon スボン	268
zuibun ずいぶん	116
zukei 図形	284
-zuki 一好き	323
zūmu rezu	
ズーム・レンズ	54
...zutsu ...ずつ	35
zutto ずっと	77, 142



日本地図

